

# StorageTek Enterprise Library Software

---

Command, Control Statement, and Utility Reference

Version 7.1



Part Number: E20866-06  
July 2012

Submit comments about this document to [STP\\_FEEDBACK\\_US@ORACLE.COM](mailto:STP_FEEDBACK_US@ORACLE.COM).

Oracle welcomes your comments and suggestions for improving this book. Contact us at [STP\\_FEEDBACK\\_US@ORACLE.COM](mailto:STP_FEEDBACK_US@ORACLE.COM). Please include the title, part number, issue date, and revision.

Copyright ©2009, 2012, Oracle and /or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related software documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are "commercial computer software" or "commercial technical data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation shall be subject to the restrictions and license terms set forth in the applicable Government contract, and, to the extent applicable by the terms of the Government contract, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software License (December 2007). Oracle USA, Inc., 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications which may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure the safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation and /or its affiliates. Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and /or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. UNIX is a registered trademark licensed through X/Open Company, Ltd.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services.

# Contents

---

**Preface 37**

**What's New? 45**

**1. ELS Command Interfaces 51**

Unified User Interface (UI) Support 51

SMC Command Interfaces 52

Issuing SMC Commands from the Console 52

Specifying SMC Commands in the SMCCMDS or SMCPARMS Data Sets 54

SMC Commands that Specify JOBname, STEPname, and PROCstep 55

Issuing SMC Commands from a Utility 55

HSC and VTCS Command Interfaces 56

Issuing HSC and VTCS Commands from the Console 56

Issuing HSC and VTCS Commands from a Utility 58

Issuing HSC and VTCS Commands from PARMLIB 59

HSC Service Levels 61

**2. SMC Commands and Control Statements 63**

ALLOCDef 64

Description 64

Syntax 65

Parameters 66

ALLOCJob 72

Description 72

Syntax 72

Parameters 73

CMDDef	75
Description	75
Syntax	75
Parameters	75
COMMtest	77
Description	77
Syntax	77
Parameters	78
Display DRive	80
Description	80
Syntax	80
Parameters	81
Display RC	82
Description	82
Syntax	82
Parameters	83
Display Volume	84
Description	84
Syntax	84
Parameters	84
DRIVemap	85
Description	85
Syntax	85
Parameters	86
Help	87
Description	87
Syntax	87
Parameters	87
HTTP	89
Description	89
Syntax	89
Parameters	90
IDAX	92

Description	92
Syntax	92
Parameters	93
LlSt	95
Description	95
Syntax	95
Parameters	96
LOG	97
Description	97
Syntax	98
Parameters	98
METAdatA	101
Description	101
Syntax	101
Parameters	101
MONitor	103
Description	103
Syntax	103
Parameters	104
MOUNTDef	106
Description	106
Syntax	107
Parameters	108
MSGDef	111
Description	111
Syntax	111
Parameters	112
MSGJob	114
Description	114
Syntax	114
Parameters	115
POLicy	117
Description	117

Syntax	119
Parameters	120
READ	127
Description	127
Syntax	127
Parameters	127
RESYNChronize	130
Description	130
Syntax	130
Parameters	130
Route	131
Description	131
Syntax	131
Parameters	132
SERVer	133
Description	133
Syntax	134
Parameters	134
SIMulate	138
Description	138
Syntax	139
Parameters	139
Output	140
SMSDef	142
Description	142
Syntax	143
Parameters	143
STORMNGR	146
Description	146
Syntax	146
Parameters	147
TAPEPlex	148
Description	148

Syntax	149
Parameters	150
TCPIP	152
Description	152
Syntax	152
Parameters	153
TRace	155
Description	155
Syntax	156
Parameters	157
TREQDef	160
Description	160
Syntax	160
Parameters	161
TAPEREQ Control Statement	163
UEXit	170
Description	170
Syntax	171
Parameters	171
UNITAttr	173
Description	173
Syntax	174
Parameters	174
USERMsg	176
Description	176
Syntax	176
Parameters	176
<b>3. HSC and VTCS Commands and Control Statements</b>	<b>177</b>
ACTivities	178
Description	178
Syntax	178
Parameters	179
Additional JCL Requirements	180

ACTMVCgn	181
Description	181
Syntax	181
Parameters	182
Additional JCL Requirements	182
ARCHive	183
Description	183
Syntax	183
Parameters	184
ARCHive Reports	185
MOVEVTV Report	188
AUDit	189
Description	189
Syntax	190
Parameters (Real Volume Audit)	191
Parameters (Virtual Volume Audit)	194
Audit Report	195
BACKup	199
Description	199
Syntax	199
Parameters	199
Additional JCL Requirements	200
CANcel	201
Description	201
Syntax	201
Parameters	201
CAPPref	202
Description	202
Syntax	202
Parameters	203
CDs	205
Description	205
Syntax	205



Parameters	206
CDSData	208
Description	208
Syntax	208
Parameters	209
CDSDEF	210
Description	210
Syntax	210
Parameters	211
CLean	212
Description	212
Syntax	212
Parameters	212
COMMPath	213
Description	213
Syntax	214
Parameters	214
CONFIg	217
Description	217
Syntax	217
Parameters	218
CONFIg GLOBAL Statement	220
CONFIg RECLAIM Statement	228
CONFIg VTVVOL Statement	230
CONFIg MVCVOL Statement	231
CONFIg VTSS Statement	232
CONFIg RTD Statement	235
CONFIg VTD Statement	237
CONFIg CLUSTER Statement	239
CONFIg CLINK Statement	240
CONFIg HOST Statement	243
CONFIg STORMNGR Statement	244
CONFIg TAPEPLEX Statement	245

CONSolid	247
Description	247
Syntax	247
Parameters	248
Consolidation Report	249
DEComp	250
Description	250
Syntax	250
Parameters	250
Output	251
DELETSCR	253
Description	253
Syntax	253
Parameters	254
DELETSCR Report	255
DIRBLD	256
Description	256
Syntax	256
Parameters	256
DISMount	257
Description	257
Syntax	257
Parameters	258
Display	259
Display Acs	261
Display ACTive	263
Display ALl	270
Display Cap	271
Display CDS	273
Display CLInk	274
Display CLUster	277
Display CMD	280
Display COMMPath	281

Display CONFIG	282
Display DRives	286
Display DRIVE_INFO	289
Display EXceptns	292
Display LMUPDEF	295
Display LOCKs	296
Display Lsm	298
Display Message	300
Display MGMTDEF	301
Display MIGrate	302
Display MNTD	307
Display MONitor	308
Display MVC	309
Display MVCPool	315
Display OPTion	318
Display PATH	319
Display Queue	322
Display REPlicat	323
Display Requests	325
Display RTD	326
Display SCRatch	330
Display SEN	335
Display SERVER	337
Display SRVlev	338
Display Status	339
Display STORCLas	340
Display STORMNgr	342
Display TASKs	345
Display THReshld	347
Display Volser	350
Display VOLume_Info	352
Display VSCRatch	353
Display VTD	355

- Display VTSS 358
- Display VTV 364
- DRAin 368
  - Description 368
  - Syntax 368
  - Parameters 368
- DRCHKPT 369
  - Description 369
  - Syntax 369
  - Parameters 369
- DRMONitr 370
  - Description 370
  - Syntax 370
  - Parameters 371
- DRTEST 373
  - DRTEST CREATE 374
  - DRTEST PRIMEprd 379
  - DRTEST RESET 382
  - DRTEST START 383
  - DRTEST STOP 384
- EEXPORT 385
  - Description 385
  - Parameters 386
- Eject 388
  - Description 388
  - Syntax 389
  - Parameters 390
- ENter 393
  - Description 393
  - Syntax 393
  - Parameters 393
- EXECParM 395
  - Description 395

Syntax	395
Parameters	395
EXPORT	397
Description	397
Syntax	397
Parameters	398
Additional JCL Requirements	398
FMTLOG	399
Description	399
Syntax	399
Parameters	399
Additional JCL Requirements	399
IMPORT	400
Description	400
Syntax	401
Parameters	401
Additional JCL Requirements	403
INITialize	404
Description	404
Syntax	405
Parameters	405
Additional JCL Requirements	407
INVENTORY	408
Description	408
Syntax	408
Parameters	409
Return Codes	410
Inventory Report	411
LIBGen	412
Description	412
Syntax	412
Parameters	412
Additional JCL Requirements	413

Output	414
LMUPDEF	415
Description	415
Syntax	415
Parameters	416
LMUPATH Control Statement	417
LOGUTIL	419
Description	419
Syntax	420
Parameters	420
LOGUTIL FOR_LOSTMVC Statement	422
LOGUTIL GENAUDIT Statement	424
LOGUTIL LOCATE_VTV Statement	425
LOGUTIL UNDELETE Statement	427
MERGEcds	428
Description	428
Syntax	428
Parameters	429
Additional JCL Requirements	430
SLSMERGE Control Statement	431
MERGMFST	434
Description	434
Syntax	434
Parameters	434
Additional JCL Requirements	435
METAdata	436
Description	436
Syntax	436
Parameters	437
MGMTDEF	438
Description	438
Syntax	438
Parameters	439

MGMTclas Control Statement	440
MIGRSEL Control Statement	451
MIGRVTV Control Statement	454
MVCATTR Control Statement	456
STORclas Control Statement	458
STORLST Control Statement	462
STORSEL Control Statement	463
VTSSLST Control Statement	465
VTSSSEL Control Statement	467
MIGrate	470
Description	470
Syntax (Format 1)	470
Parameters (Format 1)	471
Syntax (Format 2)	472
Parameters (Format 2)	472
MNTD	473
Description	473
Syntax	473
Parameters	474
MODify	479
Description	479
Syntax	480
Parameters	480
Mount	483
Description	483
Syntax	484
Parameters	485
MOVE	488
Description	488
Syntax	488
Parameters	489
MVCDRain	491
Description	491

- Syntax 491
- Parameters 492
- MVCMaint 494
  - Description 494
  - Syntax 494
  - Parameters 495
  - Additional JCL Requirements 497
  - Return Codes 498
  - MVCMaint Reports 499
- MVCPLRPT 500
  - Description 500
  - Syntax 500
  - Parameters 500
  - Named MVC Pool Reports 502
- MVCRPT 507
  - Description 507
  - Syntax 507
  - Parameters 508
  - MVC Reports 509
- OFFload 516
  - OFFload LOGFILE 517
- OPTION TITLE Control Statement 519
  - Syntax 519
  - Parameters 519
- OPTion 520
  - Description 520
  - Syntax 521
  - Parameters 522
- PITCOPY 526
  - Description 526
  - Syntax 526
  - Parameters 526
  - Additional JCL Requirements 527



RECall	528
Description	528
Syntax	528
Parameters	529
RECLaim	530
Description	530
Syntax	530
Parameters	531
RECONcil	533
Description	533
Syntax	534
Parameters	534
RECONcil Reports	536
RECOVer	540
Description	540
Syntax	540
Parameters	540
RELease	541
Description	541
Syntax	541
Parameters	541
REPLaceall	542
Description	542
Syntax	542
Parameters	542
RESTore	543
Description	543
Syntax	543
Parameters	543
Additional JCL Requirements	544
SCRAtch	545
Description	545
Syntax	545

- Parameters 545
- SCREdist 546
  - Description 546
  - Syntax 547
  - Parameters 547
- SENter 550
  - Description 550
  - Syntax 550
  - Parameters 550
- SET 551
  - SET CLNPRFX 552
  - SET COMPRFX 554
  - SET DRVHOST 556
  - SET EJCTPAS 557
  - SET FREEZE 558
  - SET HOSTID 560
  - SET HSCLEVel 561
  - SET LOGFILE 562
  - SET MAJNAME 564
  - SET MIGOPT 565
  - SET NEWHOST 567
  - SET RMM 568
  - SET SCRLABL 569
  - SET SLIDRIVS 570
  - SET SLISTATN 575
  - SET SMF 577
  - SET TAPEPlex 578
  - SET TCHNIQE 579
  - SET VAULT 581
  - SET VAULTVOL 583
  - SET VOLPARM 584
- SRVlev 594
  - Description 594

Syntax	594
Parameters	594
STOPMN	595
Description	595
Syntax	595
Parameters	595
SWitch	596
Description	596
Syntax	597
Parameters	597
Examples	598
TRace	599
Description	599
Syntax	599
Parameters	600
TRACELKP	601
Description	601
Syntax	601
Parameters	601
UEXIT	603
Description	603
Syntax	604
Parameters	604
UNSCratch	606
Description	606
Syntax	606
Parameters	606
UNSElect	607
Description	607
Syntax	607
Parameters	608
Vary	609
Description	609

- Syntax 610
- Parameters 610
- View 614
  - Description 614
  - Syntax 614
  - Parameters 615
- VOLPCONV 619
  - Description 619
  - Syntax 619
  - Parameters 619
  - Additional JCL Requirements 620
- VOLRpt 621
  - Description 621
  - Syntax 622
  - Parameters 623
  - Additional JCL Requirements 628
- VTVMaint 629
  - Description 629
  - Syntax 629
  - Parameters 630
  - Return Codes 632
  - VTVMaint Report 633
- VTVRpt 634
  - Description 634
  - VTVRpt BASIC 635
  - VTVRpt COPIES 639
- VVAUDIT 642
  - Description 642
  - Syntax 642
  - Parameters 642
- Warn 643
  - Description 643
  - Syntax 643

Parameters 644

**4. SMC Utilities 647**

SMC Utility Return Codes and Messages 648

Unified User Interface Utility (SMCUUUI) 649

Sample JCL 650

Parameters 650

Required Data Set Definition (DD) Statements 652

JES3 Configuration Report Utility (SMCUPJS) 658

Sample JCL 658

Sample Reports 659

POLicy and TAPEREQ Batch Test Utility (SMCUTRQ) 663

Sample JCL 663

Control Cards 664

Sample Input 666

Sample Output 667

Tape Management Extract Utility (SMCUDBX) 668

Running the SMC Scratch Extract Utility 669

Using SMCUDBX with CA-1 Release 4.9 or Below 670

Using SMCUDBX with CA-DYNAM/TLMS Release 5.3 or Below 670

Syntax 671

Parameters 672

JCL Requirements 673

Output Description 674

SMC UUI Simulation Utility (SMCUSIM) 675

Phase 1 Processing 675

Phase 2 Processing 676

Sample JCL 677

Parameters 677

Required Data Set Definition (DD) Statements 680

SMCUSIM Utility Sample CSV 681

Trace Format Utility (SMCUGTF) 682

Sample JCL 682

<b>5. HSC Stand-Alone Utilities</b>	<b>683</b>
Utility Administrator (SLUADMIN)	684
Invoking SLUADMIN	684
Requesting SLUADMIN Output	689
SLUADMIN Program Return Codes	694
Reports Created By Utility Commands	694
SLICREAT	695
Creating Control Data Set Initialization JCL	696
Executing the SLICREAT Program	698
Verifying Successful Completion of the SLICREAT Program	698
Other Uses for SLICREAT	699
Scratch Conversion Utility (SLUCONDB)	700
Syntax	701
Parameters	702
JCL Requirements	704
JCL Examples	705
Output Description	707
<b>6. VTCS Stand-Alone Utilities</b>	<b>709</b>
RTV Utility	709
Syntax	709
Parameters	710
JCL Requirements	712
RTV Utility Report Messages	713
RTV LISTONLY Listing	717
RTV Decompress Listing	718
<b>A. MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values</b>	<b>719</b>
Media Type (MEDia)	719
Recording Technique (RECtech)	723
MODel Type (MODel)	726
<b>B. Library Identification</b>	<b>729</b>
ACSid	729
LSMid	729

CAPid	730
CAP Numbers	730
Panels, Rows and Columns	731
Panels	731
Rows	732
Columns	733
<b>C. Tape Management System Interface (SLUDR*) Routines</b>	<b>735</b>
SLUDRCA1	735
SLUDRRMM	736
SLUDRSMC	736
SLUDRTLm	736
SLUDRZAR	737
<b>Glossary</b>	<b>739</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>761</b>





# Figures

---

FIGURE 1-1	Example JCL Defining Sequential PARMLIB Data Sets	59
FIGURE 1-2	Example JCL Defining Partitioned PARMLIB Data Sets	60
FIGURE 2-1	ALLOCDef syntax	65
FIGURE 2-2	ALLOCJob syntax	72
FIGURE 2-3	CMDDef syntax	75
FIGURE 2-4	COMMtest syntax	77
FIGURE 2-5	Display DDrive syntax	80
FIGURE 2-6	Display RC syntax	82
FIGURE 2-7	Display Volume syntax	84
FIGURE 2-8	DRIVemap syntax	85
FIGURE 2-9	Help syntax	87
FIGURE 2-10	HTTP syntax	89
FIGURE 2-11	IDAX syntax	92
FIGURE 2-12	List syntax	95
FIGURE 2-13	LOG syntax	98
FIGURE 2-14	METAdata (SMC) syntax	101
FIGURE 2-15	MONitor syntax	103
FIGURE 2-16	MOUNTDef syntax	107
FIGURE 2-17	MSGDef syntax	111
FIGURE 2-18	MSGJob syntax	114
FIGURE 2-19	POLicy syntax	119
FIGURE 2-20	READ syntax	127
FIGURE 2-21	RESYNChronize syntax	130
FIGURE 2-22	Route syntax	131
FIGURE 2-23	SERVer syntax	134

FIGURE 2-24	SIMulate syntax	139
FIGURE 2-25	SIMulate output - No Tape Policies Applied	140
FIGURE 2-26	SIMulate output - Tape Policies Applied at IDAX	141
FIGURE 2-27	SMSDef syntax	143
FIGURE 2-28	STORMNGR syntax	146
FIGURE 2-29	TAPEPlex syntax	149
FIGURE 2-30	TCPip syntax	152
FIGURE 2-31	TRace syntax	156
FIGURE 2-32	TREQDef syntax	160
FIGURE 2-33	TAPEREQ control statement syntax	164
FIGURE 2-34	UEXit syntax	171
FIGURE 2-35	UNITAttr syntax	174
FIGURE 2-36	USERMsg syntax	176
FIGURE 3-1	ACTIvities syntax	178
FIGURE 3-2	ACTMVCgn syntax	181
FIGURE 3-3	ARCHive syntax	183
FIGURE 3-4	Example output from ARCHive	185
FIGURE 3-5	Example output from ARCHive MOVEVT	188
FIGURE 3-6	AUDit syntax	190
FIGURE 3-7	Example AUDIT utility report	195
FIGURE 3-8	BACKup syntax	199
FIGURE 3-9	CANcel syntax	201
FIGURE 3-10	CAPPref syntax	202
FIGURE 3-11	CDs syntax	205
FIGURE 3-12	CDSData syntax	208
FIGURE 3-13	CDSDEF syntax	210
FIGURE 3-14	CLean syntax	212
FIGURE 3-15	COMMPath syntax	214
FIGURE 3-16	CONFIg syntax	217
FIGURE 3-17	CONFIg GLOBAL statement syntax	220
FIGURE 3-18	CONFIg RECLAIM statement syntax	228
FIGURE 3-19	CONFIg VTSS statement syntax	232
FIGURE 3-20	CONFIg RTD statement syntax	235
FIGURE 3-21	CONFIg VTD statement syntax	237
FIGURE 3-22	CONFIg CLUSTER statement syntax	239

FIGURE 3-23	CONFIg CLINK statement syntax	240
FIGURE 3-24	CONFIg HOST statement syntax	243
FIGURE 3-25	CONFIg STORMNGR statement syntax	244
FIGURE 3-26	CONFIg TAPEPLEX statement syntax	245
FIGURE 3-27	CONSolid syntax	247
FIGURE 3-28	DEComp syntax	250
FIGURE 3-29	Example DEComp FLATDD output	251
FIGURE 3-30	Example DEComp SLSPRINT output	252
FIGURE 3-31	DELETSCR syntax	253
FIGURE 3-32	DELETSCR report	255
FIGURE 3-33	DIRBLD syntax	256
FIGURE 3-34	DISMount syntax	257
FIGURE 3-35	Display Acs syntax	261
FIGURE 3-36	Display ACTive syntax	263
FIGURE 3-37	Example Display Active and Display Queue output (no detail)	263
FIGURE 3-38	Example Display Active DETail output	264
FIGURE 3-39	Display ALI syntax	270
FIGURE 3-40	Display Cap syntax	271
FIGURE 3-41	Display CDS Syntax	273
FIGURE 3-42	Display CLink syntax	274
FIGURE 3-43	Example Display CLink output	274
FIGURE 3-44	Display CLUster syntax	277
FIGURE 3-45	Example Display CLUster output	277
FIGURE 3-46	Display CMD syntax	280
FIGURE 3-47	Display COMMPath syntax	281
FIGURE 3-48	Display CONFIG syntax	282
FIGURE 3-49	Example Display CONFIG output	283
FIGURE 3-50	Display DRives syntax	286
FIGURE 3-51	Display DRIVE_INFO syntax	289
FIGURE 3-52	Display EXceptns syntax	292
FIGURE 3-53	Display LMUPDEF syntax	295
FIGURE 3-54	Display LOCKs syntax	296
FIGURE 3-55	Example Display LOCKs output	296
FIGURE 3-56	Display Lsm syntax	298
FIGURE 3-57	Display Message syntax	300

FIGURE 3-58	Display MGMTDEF syntax	301
FIGURE 3-59	Display MIGrate syntax	302
FIGURE 3-60	Example Display MIGrate output	304
FIGURE 3-61	Example Display MIGrate DETail additional output	305
FIGURE 3-62	Example Display MIGrate AUTO output	306
FIGURE 3-63	Example Display MIGrate DELAY output	306
FIGURE 3-64	Display MNTD syntax	307
FIGURE 3-65	Display MONitor syntax	308
FIGURE 3-66	Display MVC syntax	309
FIGURE 3-67	Example Display MVC output	310
FIGURE 3-68	Display MVCPool syntax	315
FIGURE 3-69	Example Display MVCPool output (NAME POOL1)	316
FIGURE 3-70	Example Display MVCPool output (no NAME specified)	316
FIGURE 3-71	Display OPTion syntax	318
FIGURE 3-72	Display PATH syntax	319
FIGURE 3-73	Example Display PATH output	320
FIGURE 3-74	Display Queue syntax	322
FIGURE 3-75	Display REPlicat syntax	323
FIGURE 3-76	Example Display REPlicat output	324
FIGURE 3-77	Display Requests syntax	325
FIGURE 3-78	Display RTD syntax	326
FIGURE 3-79	Example Display RTD output	327
FIGURE 3-80	Example Display RTD Queued output	329
FIGURE 3-81	Display SCRatch syntax	330
FIGURE 3-82	Display SEN	335
FIGURE 3-83	Display SERVER syntax	337
FIGURE 3-84	Example Display SERVER command output	337
FIGURE 3-85	Display SRVlev syntax	338
FIGURE 3-86	Display Status syntax	339
FIGURE 3-87	Display STORCLas syntax	340
FIGURE 3-88	Example Display STORCLas output	341
FIGURE 3-89	Display STORMNgr syntax	342
FIGURE 3-90	Example Display STORMNgr output	343
FIGURE 3-91	Display TASKs syntax	345
FIGURE 3-92	Example Display TASKs output	345

FIGURE 3-93	Display THReshld syntax	347
FIGURE 3-94	Example Display THReshld output	349
FIGURE 3-95	Display Volser syntax	350
FIGURE 3-96	Display VOLUME_INFO syntax	352
FIGURE 3-97	Display VSCRatch syntax	353
FIGURE 3-98	Display VTD syntax	355
FIGURE 3-99	Example Display VTD output	356
FIGURE 3-100	Display VTSS syntax	358
FIGURE 3-101	Example Display VTSS output	359
FIGURE 3-102	Example Display VTSS Detail additional output	361
FIGURE 3-103	Display VTV syntax	364
FIGURE 3-104	Example Display VTV output	365
FIGURE 3-105	DRAin syntax	368
FIGURE 3-106	DRCHKPT syntax	369
FIGURE 3-107	DRMONitr syntax	370
FIGURE 3-108	DRTEST CREATE syntax	375
FIGURE 3-109	SLSSTATN File Example	377
FIGURE 3-110	SLSVTSS File Example	378
FIGURE 3-111	DRTEST PRIMEprd syntax	380
FIGURE 3-112	DRTEST RESET syntax	382
FIGURE 3-113	DRTEST START syntax	383
FIGURE 3-114	DRTEST STOP syntax	384
FIGURE 3-115	EEXPORT command syntax	385
FIGURE 3-116	EJect syntax	389
FIGURE 3-117	ENter syntax	393
FIGURE 3-118	EXECParm syntax	395
FIGURE 3-119	EXPORT syntax	397
FIGURE 3-120	FMTLOG syntax	399
FIGURE 3-121	IMPORT syntax	401
FIGURE 3-122	INITialize syntax	405
FIGURE 3-123	INVENTORY syntax	408
FIGURE 3-124	Example INVENTORY report	411
FIGURE 3-125	LIBGen utility syntax	412
FIGURE 3-126	LMUPDEF syntax	415
FIGURE 3-127	LMUPATH control statement syntax	417

FIGURE 3-128	LOGUTIL syntax	420
FIGURE 3-129	LOGUTIL FOR_LOSTMVC statement syntax	422
FIGURE 3-130	LOGUTIL GENAUDIT statement syntax	424
FIGURE 3-131	LOGUTIL LOCATE_VTV statement syntax	425
FIGURE 3-132	LOGUTIL UNDELETE statement syntax	427
FIGURE 3-133	MERGEcds syntax	428
FIGURE 3-134	SLSMERGE DD Statement syntax	431
FIGURE 3-135	MERGMFST syntax	434
FIGURE 3-136	MGMTDEF syntax	436
FIGURE 3-137	MGMTDEF syntax	438
FIGURE 3-138	MGMTclas control statement syntax	441
FIGURE 3-139	MIGRSEL control statement syntax	451
FIGURE 3-140	MIGRVTV control statement syntax	454
FIGURE 3-141	MVCATTR control statement syntax	456
FIGURE 3-142	STORclas control statement syntax	458
FIGURE 3-143	STORLST control statement syntax	462
FIGURE 3-144	STORSEL control statement syntax	463
FIGURE 3-145	VTSSLST control statement syntax	465
FIGURE 3-146	VTSSSEL control statement syntax	467
FIGURE 3-147	MIGrate syntax (Format 1)	470
FIGURE 3-148	MIGrate syntax (Format 2)	472
FIGURE 3-149	MNTD syntax	473
FIGURE 3-150	MODify syntax	480
FIGURE 3-151	Mount syntax	484
FIGURE 3-152	MOVE syntax	488
FIGURE 3-153	MVCDRain syntax	491
FIGURE 3-154	MVCMAINT syntax	494
FIGURE 3-155	Example MVCMAINT report	499
FIGURE 3-156	MVCPLRPT syntax	500
FIGURE 3-157	Example MVCPLRPT report (Part 1)	502
FIGURE 3-158	Example MVCPLRPT report (Part 2)	505
FIGURE 3-159	MVCRPt syntax	507
FIGURE 3-160	Example MVC summary report	509
FIGURE 3-161	Example MVC detailed report (additional fields)	514
FIGURE 3-162	OFFload LOGFILE syntax	517

FIGURE 3-163	OPTION TITLE syntax	519
FIGURE 3-164	OPTion syntax	521
FIGURE 3-165	PITCOPY syntax	526
FIGURE 3-166	RECall syntax	528
FIGURE 3-167	RECLaim syntax	530
FIGURE 3-168	RECONcil syntax	534
FIGURE 3-169	Example output from RECONcil REPORT only	536
FIGURE 3-170	Example output from RECONcil MOVEVTV	539
FIGURE 3-171	RECOVer syntax	540
FIGURE 3-172	RELease syntax	541
FIGURE 3-173	REPLaceall syntax	542
FIGURE 3-174	RESTore syntax	543
FIGURE 3-175	SCRAtch syntax	545
FIGURE 3-176	SCREdist syntax	547
FIGURE 3-177	SENter syntax	550
FIGURE 3-178	SET CLNPRFX syntax	552
FIGURE 3-179	SET COMPRFX syntax	<b>554</b>
FIGURE 3-180	SET DRVHOST syntax	<b>556</b>
FIGURE 3-181	SET EJCTPAS syntax	557
FIGURE 3-182	SET FREEZE syntax	558
FIGURE 3-183	SET HOSTID syntax	560
FIGURE 3-184	SET HSCLEVel syntax	561
FIGURE 3-185	SET LOGFILE syntax	562
FIGURE 3-186	SET MAJNAME syntax	564
FIGURE 3-187	SET MIGOPT syntax	565
FIGURE 3-188	SET NEWHOST syntax	567
FIGURE 3-189	SET RMM syntax	568
FIGURE 3-190	SET SCRLABL syntax	569
FIGURE 3-191	SET SLIDRIVS syntax	570
FIGURE 3-192	SET SLISTATN syntax	575
FIGURE 3-193	SET SMF syntax	577
FIGURE 3-194	SET TAPEPlex syntax	578
FIGURE 3-195	SET TCHNIQE syntax	579
FIGURE 3-196	SET VAULT syntax	581
FIGURE 3-197	SET VAULTVOL syntax	583

FIGURE 3-198	SET VOLPARM syntax	584
FIGURE 3-199	POOLPARM control statement syntax	586
FIGURE 3-200	VOLPARM syntax	592
FIGURE 3-201	SRVlev syntax	594
FIGURE 3-202	STOPMN syntax	595
FIGURE 3-203	SWitch syntax	597
FIGURE 3-204	TRace syntax	599
FIGURE 3-205	TRACELKP syntax	601
FIGURE 3-206	UEXIT syntax	604
FIGURE 3-207	UNSCratch syntax	606
FIGURE 3-208	UNSElect syntax	607
FIGURE 3-209	Vary syntax	610
FIGURE 3-210	Vlew syntax	614
FIGURE 3-211	VOLPCONV Control Statement syntax	619
FIGURE 3-212	VOLRpt syntax	622
FIGURE 3-213	VTVMaint syntax	629
FIGURE 3-214	VTVMaint Report	633
FIGURE 3-215	VTVRPt BASIC syntax	635
FIGURE 3-216	Example VTVRPt BASIC output	636
FIGURE 3-217	VTVRPt COPIES syntax	639
FIGURE 3-218	Example VTVRPt COPIES output	640
FIGURE 3-219	VVAUDIT syntax	642
FIGURE 3-220	Warn syntax	643
FIGURE 4-1	JCL to Execute the SMCUUUI Utility	650
FIGURE 4-2	JCL to Produce the JES3 Configuration Report	658
FIGURE 4-3	JCL to Execute the SMCUTRQ Utility	663
FIGURE 4-4	SMCUTRQ Utility Sample Output	667
FIGURE 4-5	Scratch Synchronization Between SMC Client Host and HSC CDS	668
FIGURE 4-6	SMCUDBX PARM parameter syntax	671
FIGURE 4-7	Sample JCL for Scratch Extraction Utility	673
FIGURE 4-8	Scratch Extraction Utility Sample Output Messages	674
FIGURE 4-9	JCL to Execute the SMCUSIM Utility	677
FIGURE 4-10	JCL to Execute the SMCUGTF Utility	682
FIGURE 5-1	CSV Command	690
FIGURE 5-2	JCL Example: CSV Output for the MVCRRPT command.	693



FIGURE 5-3	SLICREAT JCL Example	696
FIGURE 5-4	SLUCONDB PARM parameter syntax	701
FIGURE 5-5	Scratch Conversion Utility Sample Output - Without LIBONLY or TAPEPLEX	707
FIGURE 5-6	Scratch Conversion Utility Output - With LIBONLY or TAPEPLEX	707
FIGURE 6-1	RTV utility syntax	709
FIGURE 6-2	Example RTV LISTONLY listing	717
FIGURE 6-3	Example RTV Decompress Listing	718



# Tables

---

TABLE 3-1	Display options	259
TABLE 3-2	HSC SEN Events	336
TABLE 3-3	VTCS SEN Events	336
TABLE 3-4	Example Display VSCRatch output	354
TABLE 3-5	DRTEST options	373
TABLE 3-6	INVENTORY Return Codes	410
TABLE 3-7	Label Descriptions for Devices in Output LIBGen	414
TABLE 3-8	MGMTclas ACSlist/DUPlex Scenarios	445
TABLE 3-9	Valid MVC Media Names and Compatible SWAPTO RTD Device Types	456
TABLE 3-10	STORSEL Functions	463
TABLE 3-11	VTSSSEL Functions	468
TABLE 3-12	Valid Wildcards	471
TABLE 3-13	MVCMAINT Return Codes	498
TABLE 3-14	OFFload options	516
TABLE 3-15	SET options	551
TABLE 3-16	Mapping of Command Prefix Codes to Characters	555
TABLE 3-17	HSC State/SET SLIDRIVS Operation	573
TABLE 3-18	VTVMaint Return Codes	632
TABLE 3-19	VTVRPt options	634
TABLE 5-1	SLUADMIN Return Codes	694
TABLE 6-1	RTV Label Types	711
TABLE A-1	Media Types	720
TABLE A-2	Media Type Defaults	722
TABLE A-3	Recording Techniques	723
TABLE A-4	Recording Technique Defaults	725



# Preface

---

Oracle's StorageTek Enterprise Library Software (ELS) is a solution consisting of the following base software:

- Oracle's StorageTek Storage Management Component (SMC)  
(includes the product formerly known as StorageTek HTTP Server)
- Oracle's StorageTek Host Software Component (HSC)
- Oracle's StorageTek Virtual Tape Control Software (VTCS)
- Oracle's StorageTek Concurrent Disaster Recovery Test (CDRT)

Additionally, the following software is provided with the ELS package:

- Oracle's StorageTek Library Content Manager (LCM). LCM includes an enhanced version of the product formerly known as Offsite Vault Feature.
- Oracle's StorageTek Client System Component for MVS Environments (MVS/CSC)
- Oracle's StorageTek LibraryStation

This publication describes commands, control statements, and utilities provided by ELS base software products; SMC, HSC, VTCS and CDRT. It is intended for storage administrators, system programmers and operators responsible for configuring and maintaining ELS.

To perform the tasks described in this publication, you should already understand the following:

- z/OS operating system
- JES2 or JES3
- Enterprise Library Software (ELS)

---

## Related Documentation

### StorageTek Enterprise Library Software (ELS)

- *Introducing ELS*
- *Installing ELS*
- *ELS Syntax Quick Reference*
- *ELS Messages and Codes*
- *ELS Programming Reference*
- *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference*
- *Configuring HSC and VTCS*
- *Managing HSC and VTCS*
- *Configuring and Managing SMC*
- *ELS Disaster Recovery and Offsite Data Management Guide*

### StorageTek Library Content Manager (LCM)

- *LCM User's Guide*
- *LCM Messages and Codes*
- *LCM Quick Reference*

### StorageTek Client System Component for MVS Environments (MVS/CSC)

- *MVS/CSC Configuration Guide*
- *MVS/CSC Messages and Codes Guide*
- *MVS/CSC Operator's Guide*
- *MVS/CSC Syntax Quick Reference*
- *MVS/CSC System Programmer's Guide*

### StorageTek LibraryStation

- *LibraryStation Configuration and Administration Guide*
- *LibraryStation Syntax Quick Reference*

---

# Documentation, Support, and Training

Function	URL
Oracle Home	<a href="http://oracle.com">http://oracle.com</a>
Documentation	<a href="http://oracle.com/technetwork/indexes/documentation/index.html">http://oracle.com/technetwork/indexes/documentation/index.html</a>
Support	<a href="http://www.oracle.com/us/support/044752.html">http://www.oracle.com/us/support/044752.html</a>
Training	<a href="http://www.oracle.com/global/us/education/sun_select_country.html">http://www.oracle.com/global/us/education/sun_select_country.html</a>

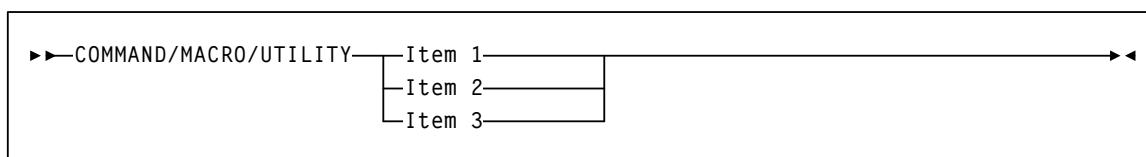
\_\_\_\_\_

## Typographic

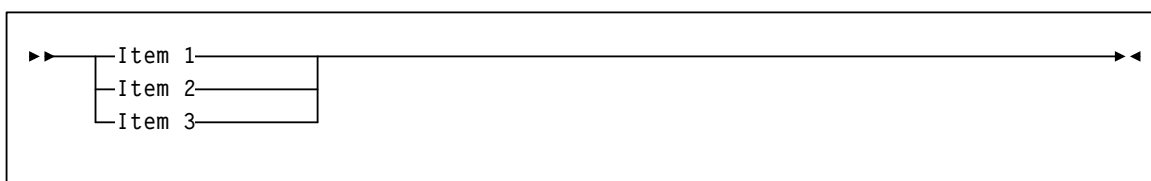
The use of mixed upper and lower case characters for commands, control statements, and parameters indicates that lower case letters may be omitted to form abbreviations. For example, you may simply enter POL when executing the POLicy command.

Syntax flow diagramming conventions include the following:

Syntax diagrams consist of a horizontal base line, horizontal and vertical branch lines, and the text for a command, control statement, macro, or utility. Diagrams are read left to right, and top to bottom. Arrows indicate flow and direction.



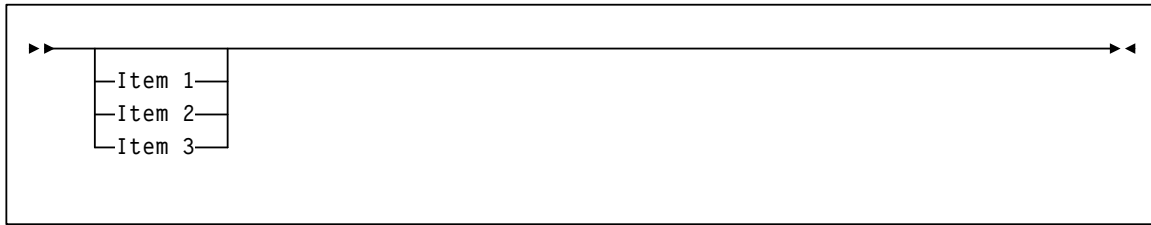
Branch lines (without repeat arrows) indicate that a single choice must be made. If one of the items to choose from is positioned on the baseline of the diagram, one item must be selected.





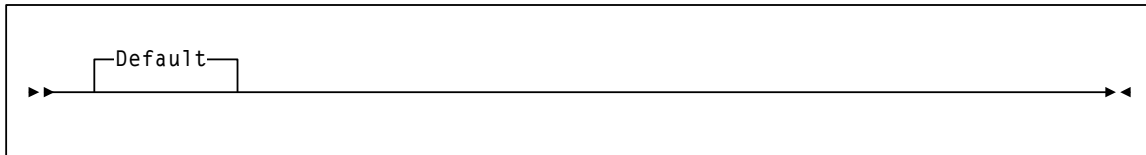
## Single Optional Choice

If the first item is positioned on the line below the baseline, one item may be optionally selected.

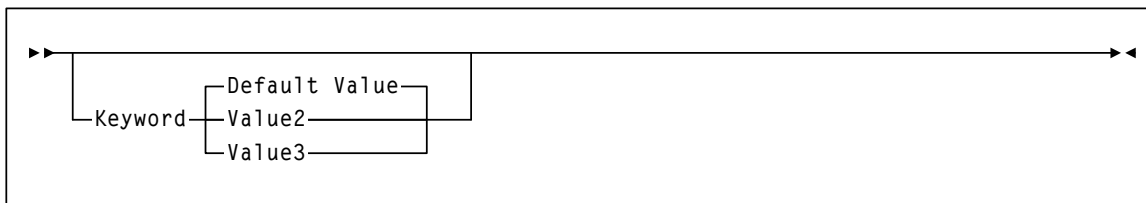


## Defaults

Default values and parameters appear above the baseline.

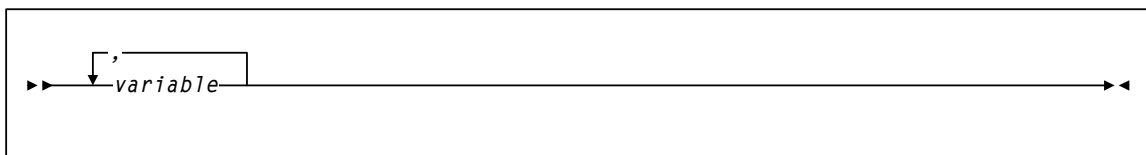


Some keyword parameters provide a choice of values in a stack. When the stack contains a default value, the keyword and the value choices are placed below the baseline to indicate that they are optional, and the default value appears above the keyword line.



## Repeat Symbol

A repeat symbol indicates that more than one choice can be made or that a single choice can be made more than once. The following example indicates that a comma is required as the repeat delimiter.



### *Keywords*

All command keywords are shown in all upper case or in mixed case. When commands are not case sensitive, mixed case implies that the lowercase letters may be omitted to form an abbreviation.

### *Variables*

Italic type is used to indicate a variable.

### *Alternatives*

A bar ( | ) is used to separate alternative parameter values.

### *Optional*

Brackets [ ] are used to indicate that a command parameter is optional.

### *Delimiters*

If a comma (,), a semicolon (;), or other delimiter is shown with an element of the syntax diagram, it must be entered as part of the statement.

### *Ranges*

An inclusive range is indicated by a pair of elements of the same length and data type, joined by a dash. The first element must be strictly less than the second element.

A hexadecimal range consists of a pair of hexadecimal numbers (for example, 0A2-0AD, or 000-0FC).

A decimal range consists of a pair of decimal numbers (i.e., 1-9, or 010-094). Leading zeros are not required. The decimal portion is referred to as an incremental range. The character positions of the incremental portion of both range elements must match, and the non incremental characters of the first element must be identical to those of the second element.

A numeric VOLSER range (*vol-range*) consists of a pair of VOLSER elements containing a decimal numeric portion of 1 to 6 digits (for example, ABC012-ABC025, or X123CB-X277CB). The decimal portion is referred to as an incremental range. The following additional restrictions apply:

- The character positions of the incremental portion of both range elements must match.
- The non incremental characters of the first element must be identical to those of the second element.
- You cannot increment two portions of a range element. If 111AAA is the first element, you cannot specify 112AAB for the second element.

- If a VOLSER range contains more than one decimal portion, any portion is valid as the incremental range. For example:

<u>A00B00</u>	the largest range that can be specified is A00B00 through A99B99.
A0 <u>B0</u> CC	the largest range that can be specified is A0B0CC through A9B9CC.
<u>000</u> XXX	the largest range that can be specified is 000XXX through 999XXX.

An alphabetic VOLSER range (*vol-range*) consists of a pair of VOLSER elements containing an incremental portion of 1 to 6 characters (for example, 000AAA-000ZZZ, or 9AAA55-9ZZZ55). This portion is referred to as an incremental range. The following additional restrictions apply:

- The character positions of the incremental portion of both range elements must match.
- The non incremental characters of the first element must be identical to those of the second element.
- You cannot increment two portions of a range element. If 111AAA is the first element, you cannot specify 112AAB for the second element.
- The alphabetic portion of the VOLSER range is defined as being from character A to Z. To increment multi-character sequences, each character increments to Z. For instance, ACZ is part of the AAA-AMM range. Examples are:

A00A0-A99A0	increments VOLSERs A00A0 through A09A0, then A10A0 through A99A0.
9AA9A-9ZZ9A	increments VOLSERs 9AA9A through 9AZ9A, then 9BA9A through 9ZZ9A.
111AAA-111ZZZ	increments VOLSERs 111AAA through 111AAZ, then 111ABA through 111ZZZ
999AM8-999CM8	increments VOLSERs 999AM8 through 999AZ8, then 999BA8 through 999CM8
A3BZZ9-A3CDE9	increments VOLSERs A3BZZ9 through A3CAA9, then A3CAB9 through A3CDE9
AAAAAA-AAACCC	increments VOLSERs AAAAAA through AAAAAZ, then AAAABA through AAACCC
CCCN <del>NN</del> -DDDNNN	increments VOLSERs CCCNNN through CCCNNZ, then CCCNOA through DDDNNN *

\* **Caution:** This is a very large range.

The number of volumes in an alphabetic VOLSER range depends on the number of elements in the incrementing portion of the VOLSER range. For an A to Z range in each character position, the number of volumes can be calculated by 26 to the power of the number of positions that are being incremented.

A-Z	$26^1$	26
AA-ZZ	$26^2$	676
AAA-ZZZ	$26^3$	17,576
AAAA-ZZZZ	$26^4$	456,976
AAAAA-ZZZZZ	$26^5$	11,881,376
AAAAAA-ZZZZZZ	$26^6$	308,915,776

### *Lists*

A list consists of one or more elements. If more than one element is specified, the elements must be separated by a comma or a blank space, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

### *Blanks*

Keyword parameters and values may be separated by any number of blanks.

## Control Statements

The standard syntax conventions for control statements are as follows:

- The only valid control statement information area is from column 1 to column 72. Columns 73-80 are ignored.
- Parameters may be separated by one or more blanks or a comma.
- A value is associated with a parameter by an equal (=) sign or by enclosing the value in parentheses, and concatenating it immediately after the parameter.
- Case (upper or lower) is ignored in actual control statements.
- Continuations are supported by including a plus (+) sign at the end of the line to be continued. A control statement is terminated if the statement is not continued.
- /\* and \*/ can be used to enclose comments in the job stream. Comments can be continued over multiple lines, but cannot be nested.

PARMLIB members **must** include a /\*...\*/ comment as the **first** control statement. Otherwise, the old format is assumed. Comments in the old format must begin with an asterisk (\*) in column 1.

For definition data sets (e.g., VOLATTRs, UNITATTRs and TAPEREQs), comments **must** be in the new format (/\*...\*/).

- Asterisk (\*) comments are **not** allowed.
- A /\*...\*/ comment in the first line is **not** required.
- The maximum length for a control statement is 1024 characters.

# What's New?

---

This publication includes information about the following ELS enhancements:

---

## Revision 06

- RECALWER (Recall with Error) parameter default behavior has changed.  
The global default is RECALWER=NO. You **cannot** override this default at the global level. Instead, you must specify RECALWER=YES at the command level.  
The RECALWER parameter default is changed to OFF for the CONSolid, EEXPORT, MVCDRain, and RECall commands.  
See:
  - [“CONSolid” on page 247](#)
  - [“EEXPORT” on page 385](#)
  - [“MVCDRain” on page 491](#)
  - [“RECall” on page 528](#)
- New VTCS commands and parameters can be used to create a DR baseline for the VSM environment.
  - The CONFIG RECLAIM includes the PROTECT parameter, used to protect an MVC from being used after it is drained or reclaimed.  
See [“CONFIG RECLAIM Statement” on page 228](#).
  - The DRCHKPT command establishes the system recovery point (checkpoint).  
See [“DRCHKPT” on page 369](#).
  - The DRMONitr command stalls job stream processing to ensure that critical data reaches its target destination.  
See [“DRMONitr” on page 370](#).
- The LMUPATH control statement LMUADDR parameter now allows a maximum of 40 IP addresses.  
See [“LMUPATH Control Statement” on page 417](#).

---

## Revision 05

- The SMC MONitor command LOWscratch parameter default value has changed from 0 to 60.  
See [“MONitor” on page 103](#).
- The SMC READ command includes the REPlacepolicy parameter, which specifies that all SMC POLICY objects be replaced by any POLICY statements found in a specified data set.  
See [“READ” on page 127](#).
- The SMC TRace command includes the COMPact parameter, used to specify whether SMC trace output is produced in a "compact" format that conserves GTF dataset space.  
See [“TRace” on page 155](#).
- The new SMC Trace Format utility (SMCUGTF) converts SMC GTF output in "compact" format into the original Trace format.  
See [“Trace Format Utility \(SMCUGTF\)” on page 682](#).
- The new METAdata command is used to show XML tags associated with a function that produces XML output.
  - For information about the SMC METAdata command, see [“METAdata” on page 101](#).
  - For information about the HSC/VTCS METAdata command, see [“METAdata” on page 436](#).
- The HSC/VTCS CONFIg STORMNGR statement includes the optional VLEDEV parameter, which allows you to specify the logical device IDs of a VLE.  
See [“CONFIg STORMNGR Statement” on page 244](#).
- The HSC/VTCS Display SCRatch command includes the REFresh parameter, used to update VSM scratch counts prior to the display occurring.  
See [“SCRatch” on page 545](#).
- The HSC/VTCS MGMTDEF STORLST control statement has changed to allow a maximum of ten STORCLAS values to be specified.  
See [“STORLST Control Statement” on page 462](#).

---

## Revision 04

- Improved control of MVC space reclaim behavior within VTCS.
  - The POOLPARM control statement includes the optional RECLaim parameter, used to control MVCPOOL space reclaim behavior.  
See [“POOLPARM Control Statement” on page 586](#).
  - Display MVCPool output includes a RECLaim status field, which specifies the space reclamation setting for the MVC pool.  
See [“Display MVCPool” on page 315](#).
- Support for the concurrent tape recall/mount feature, which improves mount time for a VTV that is not resident in the VTSS.
  - The CONFIg GLOBAL statement includes the FASTRECL parameter, used to specify whether VTCS should perform concurrent tape recall/mount for all VTSSs that support the feature.  
See [“CONFIg GLOBAL Statement” on page 220](#).
  - The CONFIg VTSS statement includes the NOERLYMT parameter, used to disable Concurrent Tape Recall/Mount feature for a VTSS.  
See [“CONFIg VTSS Statement” on page 232](#).
  - Display CONFIG output includes a GLOBAL FASTRECL field.  
See [“Display CONFIG” on page 282](#).
  - Display VTSS DETail output includes concurrent tape recall/mount features.  
See [“Display VTSS DETail Output” on page 361](#).
  - Display VTV output includes the AVOID EARLY MOUNT status field.  
See [“Display VTV” on page 364](#).
- Updated TRace command component list.  
See [“TRace” on page 599](#).
- Updated EXPORT command subsystem requirements.  
See [“EXPORT” on page 397](#).
- Updated VOLRpt command subpool information.  
See [“VOLRpt” on page 621](#).
- The maximum value for the SMC HTTP command MAXClients parameter is increased to 300.  
See [“HTTP” on page 89](#).

---

## Revision 03

- Support for Cross Tapeplex Autorecall (CTA), which allows automatic recall of electronically exported VTVs from a remote TapePlex to satisfy a mount request on the local TapePlex.

The EEXPORT command includes the TOVTSS parameter, used to specify the VTSS name to be preferenced as the receiving VTSS within the target TapePlex specified by the TOPlex parameter.

See [“EEXPORT” on page 385](#).

Additionally, various Display command outputs are revised to include CTA information.

- The CONFIg VTSS command includes the NOERLYMT parameter, used to disable the Concurrent Tape Recall/Mount feature for a VTSS.

See [“CONFIg VTSS Statement” on page 232](#).

- The Display DRives command includes the SHOWSlot parameter, used to display the drive bay location (slot) for drives in SL3000 and SL8500 libraries.

See [“Display DRives” on page 286](#).

- The Display Lsm command includes the DETail parameter, used to display detailed information for each LSM.

See [“Display DRives” on page 286](#).

- The Mount command includes the ForceRT parameter, which allows a volume to be mounted on a device with a different recording technique.

See [“Mount” on page 483](#).

- The SMC MONitor command includes the MISSEdmnt parameter, used to specify the interval after which SMC issues a message indicating that an outstanding mount is pending.

See [“MONitor” on page 103](#).

- The SMCUUI utility includes the CSVOUTX definition statement, used for reporting of exception messages associated with CSV output.

See [“Unified User Interface Utility \(SMCUUI\)” on page 649](#).

- The SMCUSIM utility includes the PLEXRC parameter, used to specify whether SMC subsystem initialization is to be terminated based on the status of TapePlexes returned from an automatically issued RESYNC command.

See [“SMC UUI Simulation Utility \(SMCUSIM\)” on page 675](#).

- The SLUADMIN utility includes revised CSV command field parameter values used to request CSV output.

See [“Requesting CSV Output” on page 690](#).



---

## Revision 02

- The SMC Display RC command is used to display information about the meaning of an SMC return or reason code, or an HSC/VTCS UUI reason code.

See [“Display RC” on page 82](#).

- The PITCOPY command uses a utility snapshot feature to produce a point-in-time copy of the CDS.

See [“PITCOPY” on page 526](#).

- The VVAUDIT command synchronizes the vault allocation map with vault volume records.

See [“VVAUDIT” on page 642](#).

- The ACTMVCgn command includes the ALL parameter, used to request that READONLY(ON) and READONLY(OFF) control statements are generated for all non-empty MVCs.

Additionally, the optional SLUSMAUD definition statement specifies that AUDIT utility control statements are generated for all non-empty MVCs, except for those in EXPORT status.

See [“ACTMVCgn” on page 181](#).

- The CONFIG GLOBAL command includes the LOCKTOUT parameter, used to specify the minimum number of minutes that a resource is locked before a status message is issued.

See [“CONFIG GLOBAL Statement” on page 220](#).

- The VOLRpt command includes the NOVOL parameter, used to specify a display of summary and/or subpool totals without producing volume detail.

See [“VOLRpt” on page 621](#).

---

## Revision 01

- Support for Oracle’s StorageTek T10000C tape drive.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#).

---

## Revision AA

- Library Location in Decimal Format  
See [“Library Identification” on page 729](#).
- Dynamic reclaim support for T10000B media  
See:
  - [“CONFIg” on page 217](#)
  - [“CONFIg RECLAIM Statement” on page 228](#)
  - [“STORclas Control Statement” on page 458](#)
  - [“RECLaim” on page 530](#)
  - [“POOLPARM Control Statement” on page 586](#)
- New SMC commands to provide XAPI support:  
See [“Display DRIVE\\_INFO” on page 289](#) and [“Display VOLume\\_Info” on page 352](#).
- The SMC Help command displays help information for SMC commands and messages.  
See [“Help” on page 87](#).
- TAPEPlex commands required at SMC Startup  
In SMC 7.1 the ability to derive TapePlex definitions based on locally defined subsystems is removed. Instead, all TapePlexes must be defined using the TAPEPlex command. If no TAPEPlex commands are found at SMC startup, the SMC subsystem terminates.  
See [“TAPEPlex” on page 148](#).
- Advanced VSM management features  
By default, advanced VSM management features are **automatically enabled** for ELS 7.1. The FEATures command, included in previous ELS releases, is no longer valid.

# ELS Command Interfaces

---

This chapter describes the various interfaces you can use to issue ELS commands. It is organized in the following sections:

- Unified User Interface (UII) Support
  - SMC Command Interfaces
  - HSC/VTCS Command Interfaces
- 

## Unified User Interface (UII) Support

Certain SMC, HSC, and VTCS commands described in this publication are supported by the UII (Unified User Interface).

The ELS UII interface is designed to standardize both internal and external interfaces into SMC, HSC and VTCS functions. The UII allows you to do the following:

- Execute commands via a utility.
- Invoke commands from a programmatic interface.
- Request output in text, XML or Comma Separated Values (CSV) format.
- Invoke commands to an HSC server from a remote client.

ELS expands the commands available through the UII interface to include all functions previously supported by the HSC PGMI and batch API interfaces. Although the existing interfaces will continue to be supported for an undetermined number of future releases, these interfaces will not be enhanced to add new data items.

---

### Note –

- Refer to the *ELS Programming Reference* for detailed information about the UII.
  - See [“Unified User Interface Utility \(SMCUUI\)” on page 649](#) for information about the SMCUI utility, used to issue UII supported SMC, HSC, and VTCS commands from a batch job.
-

---

# SMC Command Interfaces

This section includes the following topics:

- Issuing SMC Commands from the Console
- Specifying SMC Commands in the SMCCMDS or SMCPARMS Data Sets
- SMC Commands that Specify JOBname, STEPname, and PROCstep
- Issuing SMC Commands from a Utility

## Issuing SMC Commands from the Console

### Issuing Commands Using an SMC Command Prefix

Use an SMC command prefix to issue a command from the SMC console.

To define your prefix, specify the SMC CMDDef command with the PREFIX parameter in the SMCPARMS data set.

In the following example, the command prefix is defined as B@F\$:

```
CMDDEF PREFIX(B@F$)
```

---

**Note** – The PREFIX parameter can **only** be specified in the SMCPARMS data set. See [“CMDDef” on page 75](#) for more information about the CMDDef command.

---

Use the following format to issue a SMC command using a command prefix:

```
PREFIXcommand-name [parameter]
```

- PREFIX is the command prefix.
- *command-name* indicates a SMC operator command.
- *parameter* indicates an optional or required command parameter.

The command must appear immediately following (concatenated to) the prefix character.

A null character can be specified as the command prefix character. In this case, you must use the MVS MODIFY command to issue commands. See [“Issuing SMC Commands Using the MVS Modify Command” on page 53](#).

## Issuing SMC Commands Using the MVS Modify Command

Use the following command format to issue a SMC command from the MVS console using the MVS Modify (F) command:

```
F started-task-name,command-name [parameter]
```

- F indicates the MVS Modify command
- *started-task-name* indicates the SMC started task name.
- *command-name* indicates a SMC operator command.
- *parameter* indicates an optional or required command parameter.

---

### Note –

- The started task name and command name **must** be separated with a comma. Spaces are **not** allowed between the subsystem name and command name.
- Parameters and values may be separated with any number of spaces, and may optionally include an equal (=) sign. Values may also be included in parentheses.

The following are equivalent commands:

```
F SMC1MVS,MSGDEF LVL 4
F SMC1MVS,MSGDEF LVL=4
F SMC1MVS,MSGDEF LVL(4)
```

---

## Keyword Parameters

Keyword parameters that require or allow a user-supplied value can be specified in either of following formats:

- Enclosing the user-supplied value(s) in parentheses and concatenating it to the keyword. For example,

```
MINLVL(minlevel)
```

- Concatenating the user-supplied value(s) to the keyword with an equal sign. For example,

```
MINLVL=minlevel
```

---

### Note –

- Unless otherwise specified, a list of user-supplied values must be enclosed in parentheses. See [“Lists” on page 44](#) for more information about specifying lists.
  - Except as noted, parameters can be separated by a comma or a blank. Consecutive blanks following either of these delimiters are ignored.
  - Commands and parameters can be entered in any combination of uppercase and lowercase letters.
  - Command replies are always sent to the issuing console and, in some cases such as mounts and dismounts, are routed to other consoles such as the tape library console and tape pool console.
-

## Specifying SMC Commands in the SMCCMDS or SMCPARMS Data Sets

SMC operator commands specified in the SMCPARMS or SMCCMDS data set are automatically processed at startup.

- The **SMCCMDS** data set specifies user-configured settings that can be changed while the SMC is active. Issue the READ command from the console to reprocess the SMCCMDS data set at any time.

The following is a sample SMCCMDS member entry:

```
MSGDEF CASE(MIXED) LVL(4)
TAPEPLEX NAME(HSCPLEX) LOCSUB(HSC0)
READ DSN('MY.PARMLIB(POL)')
TREQDEF DSN('MY.PARMLIB(TREQ)')
RESYNCHRONIZE
```

- The **SMCPARMS** data set specifies user-configured items that **cannot** be changed while the SMC is active. SMCPARMS **cannot** be reprocessed using the READ command.

The following is a sample SMCPARMS member entry:

```
CMDDEF PREFIX(B@F$)
```

---

### Note –

- It is recommended that you include only the CMDDef PREFIX and USERMsg ID parameter settings in the SMCPARMS data set. Specify all other commands in the SMCCMDS data set.
  - See [“Control Statements” on page 44](#) for syntax conventions used when specifying commands in the SMCPARMS or SMCCMDS data set.
-

## SMC Commands that Specify JOBname, STEPname, and PROCstep

SMC ALLOCJOB, MSGJOB, and TRACE commands allow specification of JOBname, STEPname, or PROCstep. These commands are evaluated by the SMC in order of most specific to least specific job name specification. Therefore, commands can be entered in any order. Consider the following example:

Two ALLOCJOB commands are entered:

```
ALLOCJOB JOBNAME=NOALLOC* MINLVL=4
ALLOCJOB JOBNAME=NOALLOC1 MINLVL=3
```

Regardless of the order in which these commands are entered, job name NOALLOC1 is processed with MINLVL 3 because this command's job name is more specific than job name NOALLOC\*.

---

### Note –

- If an SMC ALLOCJOB or MSGJOB command is entered specifying only JOBname, STEPname, or PROCstep, the command is interpreted as if LIST had also been specified.
  - The above behavior does not apply to TAPERREQ statements, which are always evaluated in the order in which they appear in the TREQDEF DD.
- 

## Issuing SMC Commands from a Utility

Use the SMCUUUI utility to issue UI-supported SMC, HSC, and VTCS commands in a batch job. These commands can be routed to a local or remote HSC TapePlex.

The SMCUUUI utility can generate several types of output, including plain text, structured XML, and Comma Separated Values (CSV).

See [“Unified User Interface Utility \(SMCUUUI\)” on page 649](#) for more information about the SMCUUUI utility.

---

**Note –** SMC commands **cannot** be issued from the utility administrator (SLUADMIN).

---

---

## HSC and VTCS Command Interfaces

This section includes the following topics:

- Issuing HSC and VTCS Commands from the Console
- Issuing HSC and VTCS Commands from a Utility
- Issuing HSC and VTCS Commands from PARMLIB
- HSC Service Levels

### Issuing HSC and VTCS Commands from the Console

Use any of the following methods to issue HSC and VTCS operator commands:

- Issue commands using the MVS Modify command
- Issue commands using a command prefix

### Issuing HSC and VTCS Commands Using a Command Prefix

Use a command prefix to issue a HSC or VTCS command from the console. This prefix is assigned during the LIBGEN process. Examples include ".", and "#".

Use the SET COMPRFX command to define a new prefix. This command specifies the 2-character hexadecimal code of the command prefix.

- The command prefix is not valid until the HSC or VTCS system is recycled.
- See [TABLE 3-16 on page 555](#) for a list of characters associated with each code.
- See [“SET COMPRFX” on page 554](#) for more information about the SET COMPRFX command and prefix restrictions.

Use the following format to issue a command using a command prefix:

```
PREFIXcommand-name [parameter]
```

- PREFIX is the command prefix.
- *command-name* indicates a HSC or VTCS operator command.
- *parameter* indicates an optional or required command parameter.

The command must appear immediately following (concatenated to) the prefix character.

A null character can be specified as the command prefix character. In this case, you must use the MVS Modify command to issue commands.

---

**Note** – The VT command prefix is no longer required for VTCS commands. If entered, it is ignored.

---



## Issuing HSC and VTCS Commands Using the MVS Modify Command

Use the following format to issue a command from the console using the MVS Modify (F) command:

```
F started-task-name,command-name [parameter]
```

- F indicates the MVS Modify command
- *started-task-name* indicates the entry in the subsystem name table for the HSC.  
A system programmer specifies this one- to four-character HSC subsystem name by adding an element to the IEFSSNxx entry in the SYS1.PARMLIB (e.g., SLS0).
- *command-name* indicates a HSC or VTCS operator command.
- *parameter* indicates an optional or required command parameter.

## Keyword Parameters

Keyword parameters that require or allow a user-supplied value can be specified in either of following formats:

- Enclosing the user-supplied value(s) in parentheses and concatenating it to the keyword. For example,  
HOSTID(host-id)
- Concatenating the user-supplied value(s) to the keyword with an equal sign. For example,  
HOSTID=host-id

---

### Note –

- Unless otherwise specified, a list of user-supplied values must be enclosed in parentheses. See [“Lists” on page 44](#) for more information about specifying lists.
  - Except as noted, parameters can be separated by a comma or a blank. Consecutive blanks following either of these delimiters are ignored.
  - Commands and parameters can be entered in any combination of uppercase and lowercase letters.
  - Command replies are always sent to the issuing console and, in some cases such as mounts and dismounts, are routed to other consoles such as the tape library console and tape pool console.
-

## Issuing HSC and VTCS Commands from a Utility

HSC and VTCS contain utility functions designed to help you manage library resources. Certain HSC and VTCS commands are used to initiate these utilities. These commands are specified using the utility administrator (SLUADMIN).

Additionally, you can use the SMCUUUI utility to issue UUI-supported SMC, HSC, and VTCS commands in a batch job. These commands can be routed to a local or remote HSC TapePlex.

Both SLUADMIN and SMCUUUI can generate several types of output, including plain text, structured XML, and Comma Separated Values (CSV).

---

**Note –**

- SWSADMIN and SWUADMIN are alias names for SLUADMIN, and are still honored.
  - See [“Utility Administrator \(SLUADMIN\)” on page 684](#) for more information about the SLUADMIN utility.
  - See [“Unified User Interface Utility \(SMCUUUI\)” on page 649](#) for more information about the SMCUUUI utility.
-

## Issuing HSC and VTCS Commands from PARMLIB

Certain HSC/VTCS commands can be defined in a user-defined sequential data set or single partitioned data set (PDS) member that is processed when HSC is initialized. These commands enable you to tailor HSC startup options to meet your requirements.

Unless otherwise specified, options defined in this user-defined PARMLIB data set can be dynamically changed during normal operations by issuing the corresponding operator command from the console.

PARMLIB commands are invoked by specifying MEMBER(xx) or M(xx) on the input parameter in the startup procedure. The suffix “xx” is concatenated with SLSSYS to form a name. The name is used as the ddname in the startup procedure.

- If the data set named in the SLSSYSxx DD is a partitioned data set (PDS), you **MUST** specify the member name containing the commands.
- If the SLSSYSxx DD is a sequential data set, only the data set name (DSN) needs to be specified.
- If the ddname is not specified in the startup procedure, then the SYS1.PARMLIB data set is dynamically allocated and a search for the member name is made in that data set.

When HSC is initialized, it reads the PARMLIB data set to obtain its operating parameters.

---

**Note** – Although you can define PARMLIB commands in SYS1.PARMLIB, it is recommended that a user-defined data set, other than SYS1.PARMLIB, be used.

---

The following JCL examples for HSC execution contain DD statements defining data sets and members that contain PARMLIB command definitions:

```
//IEFPROC      EXEC PGM=SLSBINIT,
//              TIME=1440,
//              REGION=2000K,
//              DPRTY=(7,5),
//              PARM='E(E086) F(23) M(00)'
// *
//STEPLIB       DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.sea.SEALINK
// *
//SLSSYS00      DD DISP=SHR,DSN=parmlib0data set
//SLSSYS01      DD DISP=SHR,DSN=parmlib1data set
//SLSSYS02      DD DISP=SHR,DSN=parmlib2data set
```

**FIGURE 1-1** Example JCL Defining Sequential PARMLIB Data Sets

```

//IEFPROC      EXEC PGM=SLSBINIT,
//              TIME=1440,
//              REGION=2000K,
//              DPRTY=(7,5),
//              PARM='E(E086) F(23) M(00)'
//*
//STEPLIB      DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.sea.SEALINK
//*
//SLSSYS00     DD DISP=SHR,DSN=parmlib0data set(member)
//SLSSYS01     DD DISP=SHR,DSN=parmlib1data set(member)
//SLSSYS02     DD DISP=SHR,DSN=parmlib2data set(member)

```

**FIGURE 1-2** Example JCL Defining Partitioned PARMLIB Data Sets

---

**Note –**

- At HSC startup, a specific parmlib member can be specified at your discretion by specifying the 'M(nn)' startup parameter.
  - Sample SLSSYSxx command streams and PARMLIB commands are contained in member SLSSYS00 of the ELS SAMPLIB.
-

## HSC Service Levels

The HSC subsystem can operate at either base or full service level.

### Base Service Level Functions

The base service level is the nucleus of the HSC subsystem. It provides the functions necessary to execute as an extension of the operating system, and satisfies the requirements defined by the operating environment in place at the time of execution.

All HSC commands can be issued with the HSC executing at the base service level. However, commands that involve library hardware cannot perform their function completely.

VTCS commands **cannot** be issued with the HSC executing at the base service level.

### *Mount Requests Intercepted During Base Service Level Operations*

Mount messages intercepted by the SMC while the HSC is operating at the base service level are not sent to the HSC, but are left pending until the HSC reaches the full service level.

When the SMC recognizes that the HSC has reached the full service level, the mounts are redriven. These mount messages that occur with SMC intervention, and that are subsequently redriven when the HSC reaches the full service level, have their subpool specification honored.

### Full Service Level Functions

The full service level of operation for the HSC provides all of the functions available and necessary to invoke and sustain complete library operations. These functions include:

- mount/dismount processing
- CAP processing
- cartridge and cell inventory management
- LMU access
- library resource recovery
- support for all library utilities
- support for all HSC and VTCS commands

---

**Note** – All VTCS commands require a HSC executing at **FULL** service level.

---



## SMC Commands and Control Statements

---

This chapter contains reference information about SMC commands and control statements.

See [Chapter 4, “SMC Utilities”](#) for information about SMC utilities.

---

# ALLOCDef

## **Interfaces:**

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
UII: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

## **Subsystem Requirements:**

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The ALLOCDef command is used to specify default allocation settings for the SMC subsystem.



## Syntax

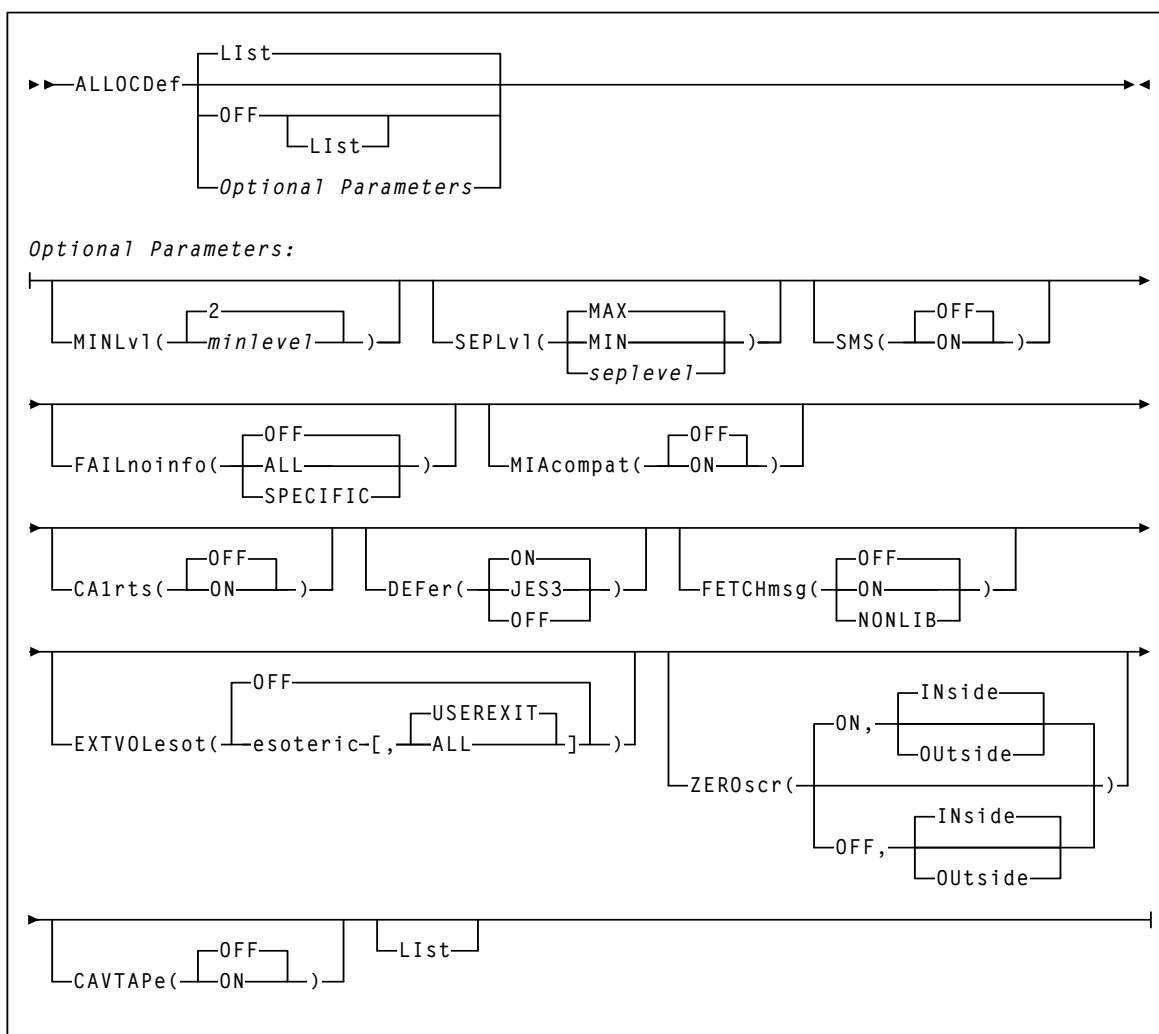


FIGURE 2-1 ALLOCDDef syntax

## Parameters

### Llst

optionally, lists current default allocation settings.

- Llst is the default when no parameters are specified on the ALLOCDf command.
- Llst may be specified with other parameters. In this case, the Llst is generated after the other parameters are processed.

### OFF

optionally, resets all default allocation values to original SMC default settings. Specify Llst with this parameter to list these settings.

### MINLvl

optionally, specifies the minimum level of drive exclusion. If a job is not allocatable at the minimum exclusion level, the SMC still excludes drives to the minimum level and allows the job to fail.

#### *minlevel*

the minimum allocation exclusion level. Valid values are 0-8. 2 is the default value.

---

### Note –

- Setting MINLVL=0 indicates that the job will not be failed by the SMC even if the device and specific volume are incompatible. MINLVL=0 may be used to force SMC to allow allocation to succeed when a “foreign” tape cartridge has the same volume serial number as an existing library or virtual volume.
  - Increasing *minlevel* has no effect unless message SMC0045 or SMC0091 has been issued for a specific job step.
  - Refer to the publication *Configuring and Managing SMC* for more information about SMC exclusion levels.
- 

### SEPLvl

optionally, specifies the exclusion level at which affinity and GDG chains are separated.

#### *seplevel*

an exclusion level between the minimum and maximum levels. When sufficient drives exist, the SMC attempts to separate chains at this level. This value **cannot** be less than the *minlevel* value.

### MAX

Affinity and GDG chains for conflicting exclusion criteria are separated whenever sufficient drives are available. This is the default.

### MIN

Affinity and GDG chains are not separated beyond the minimum level.

---

**Note –**

- If HSC or MVS/CSC allocation previously specified UNITAFF(NOSEP) and GDGALL(NOSEP), the default SMC exclusion tables can specify SEPLvl=3 in order to preserve existing behavior for scratch affinity chains with different media types.
  - Refer to the publication *Configuring and Managing SMC* for more information about SMC exclusion levels.
- 

**SMS**

optionally, enables or disables the DFSMS interface. When the DFSMS interface is enabled, the SMC invokes the DFSMS ACS routines. The returned constructs are used to influence device allocation of data sets. See [“SMSDef” on page 142](#) for information about using specific SMS features.

**OFF**

disables the DFSMS interface. This is the default.

**ON**

enables the DFSMS interface.

**FAILnoinfo**

optionally, specifies whether the SMC fails a job step during allocation when a communication failure prevents the retrieval of volume information from a TapePlex, or when no TapePlexes are available.

**OFF**

SMC does not fail the job step.

**ALL**

SMC marks all devices ineligible and fails the job step.

**SPECIFIC**

If a communication failure occurs during the volume lookup process for a specific volume, or if no TapePlexes are available and the step contains allocations for specific volumes, the SMC marks all devices ineligible and fails the job step.

If the job step contains only scratch allocations, then the job step is allowed to proceed and allocation is based solely on SMC tape policy specifications.

**MICompat**

optionally, specifies whether the EDL is updated at SSI24 time for compatibility with Computer Associates Unicenter CA-MIA Tape Sharing for z/OS and OS/390 product. This parameter is not valid in JES3 environments with TAPE SETUP processing.

**OFF**

The EDL is not updated at SSI24 time. This is the default.

**ON**

The EDL is modified at SSI24 time. Specify this value if you use Unicenter CA-MIA.

**CA1rts**

optionally, specifies whether the DEFER processing is performed at SSI24 time for compatibility with Computer Associates Real Time Stacking feature of its CA-1 tape management system. This parameter is **not** valid in JES3 environments with TAPE SETUP processing.

**OFF**

DEFER status is not updated at SSI24 time. This is the default.

**ON**

DEFER status is updated at SSI24 time. Specify this value if you use the Real Time Stacking feature of CA-1.

**DEFer**

optionally, enables or disables deferred mount processing for library mounts. With deferred mounting enabled, a library resident volume is mounted when the data set is opened. If the data set is not opened, the cartridge is not mounted, freeing the robot to perform other work. If the data set is opened, however, the job waits until the cartridge is mounted.

**ON**

enables deferred mount processing. This parameter overrides the user's JCL and defers all ACS mounts until the data set is opened. This is the default.

**JES3**

In a JES3 (with SETUP) environment, all mounts are JES3 deferred until a step begins execution.

**OFF**

disables deferred mount processing and honors user JCL specifications.

---

**Note –**

- On the JES3 SETPARAM initialization statement, set the DEFERCT parameter to YES to ensure that jobs requiring deferred mounts are included in SDEPTH job counts.
  - Refer to IBM JES3 publications for detailed information about SETPARAM:
    - *JES3 Initialization and Tuning Reference*
    - *JES3 Command Reference Summary*
    - *JES3 Commands*
    - *JES3 Messages*
-

**FETCHmsg**

optionally, for JES3 with SETUP environments that use volume fetch, specifies whether fetch messages are issued for tape volumes that are allocated to a library drive.

**OFF**

Fetch messages are not issued for volumes allocated to library drives. Fetch messages are still issued for volumes allocated to nonlibrary drives. This is the default.

**ON**

Fetch messages are issued for all volumes, regardless of whether they are allocated to library or nonlibrary drives.

**NONLIB**

Fetch messages are issued for nonlibrary volumes allocated to a library transport.

If the drive and volume both reside inside the library (i.e., the volume can be automatically mounted) then the fetch message is suppressed. Queries to the library subsystem(s) are required to determine volume location, and may have a negative impact on performance.

**EXTVOLesot**

optionally, directs the SMC to use a specified esoteric to allocate a specific external volume (i.e., a volume that is not in a TapePlex). When this esoteric is used depends upon the setting of the modifier value specified after the esoteric, as well as whether the specified esoteric is valid (intersects with the original esoteric specification).

**OFF**

EXTVOLesot processing is disabled. Nonlibrary drives are selected, if possible, when a specific external volume is allocated. This is the default.

**esoteric,USEREXIT**

specifies an esoteric to be used to allocate a specific external volume when the “use specvol” (UX08) or “use library drives” (UX13) return code is specified. If the specific volume user exit returns the “use specvol” (UX08) or “use library drives” (UX13) return code for this DD, then any drives in the specified esoteric that intersect with the original esoteric will be selected for allocation. This is the default if esoteric is specified.

**esoteric,ALL**

Whenever an external volume is allocated, drives in the specified esoteric are selected.

**ZEROscr**

optionally, specifies the exclusion action when there are no scratch volumes in any TapePlex (ON or OFF), or in one or more ACSs within a TapePlex in a multiple ACS environment (INside or OUtside).

**ON**

This is the default. ON indicates one of the following:

- If scratch subpools are not being used, and one or more ACSs contain zero scratch volumes, then drives in those ACSs are excluded from the list of eligible devices.
- If a scratch subpool is being requested (either through TAPEREQ or User Exit 02/04), and one or more ACSs contain zero scratch volumes in the requested subpool, then drives in those ACSs are excluded from the list of eligible devices.
- In JES3 with SETUP environments only, drives in the ACS with the largest number of available scratch volumes remain eligible. All other drives are excluded from selection.

**INside**

All nonlibrary drives are excluded when there are no scratch volumes in any ACS, and there are library drives eligible for allocation. This is the default.

**OUtside**

All library drives are excluded when there are no scratch volumes in any ACS, and there are nonlibrary drives eligible for allocation.

**OFF**

All drives in all ACSs are to remain eligible for selection.

**INside**

All nonlibrary drives are excluded when there are no scratch volumes in any ACS, and there are library drives eligible for allocation. This is the default.

**OUtside**

All library drives are excluded when there are no scratch volumes in any ACS, and there are nonlibrary drives eligible for allocation.

**CAVTAPe**

optionally, specifies whether scratch user exit 02 or specific user exit 08 are called when an SMC POLICY object is found that applies to the allocation event.

**OFF**

If an SMC POLICY object applies to an allocation event, then user exit 02 and user exit 08 are not called, even if active. The SMC POLICY object supplies all of the SMC tape policy is such instances. This is the default.

**ON**

If an SMC POLICY object applies to an allocation event, then the scratch user exit 02 or specific user exit 08 are called and any non-conflicting user exit policy is applied to the same allocation event.

---

**Note –**

- This setting is recommended only for those customers with CA-Vtape installed who are using a default SMC POLICY object but where CA-Vtape supplied user exits are required.
  - Only non-conflicting policies from the user exit are applied. Thus, if the SMC POLICY specifies an ESOTERIC, or a TAPEPLEX name, and user exit 02 or user exit 08 also specifies an ESOTERIC or TAPEPLEX name, the SMC POLICY specifications will apply. Refer to the publication *Configuring and Managing SMC* for more information about SMC interaction with CA-Vtape.
-

# ALLOCJob

## Interfaces:

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
 UII: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The ALLOCJob command is used to override SMC default allocation parameters by job name, step name, and PROC step.

**Note** – The SMS parameter is no longer supported for this command. If necessary, code your SMS ACS routines to select jobnames.

## Syntax

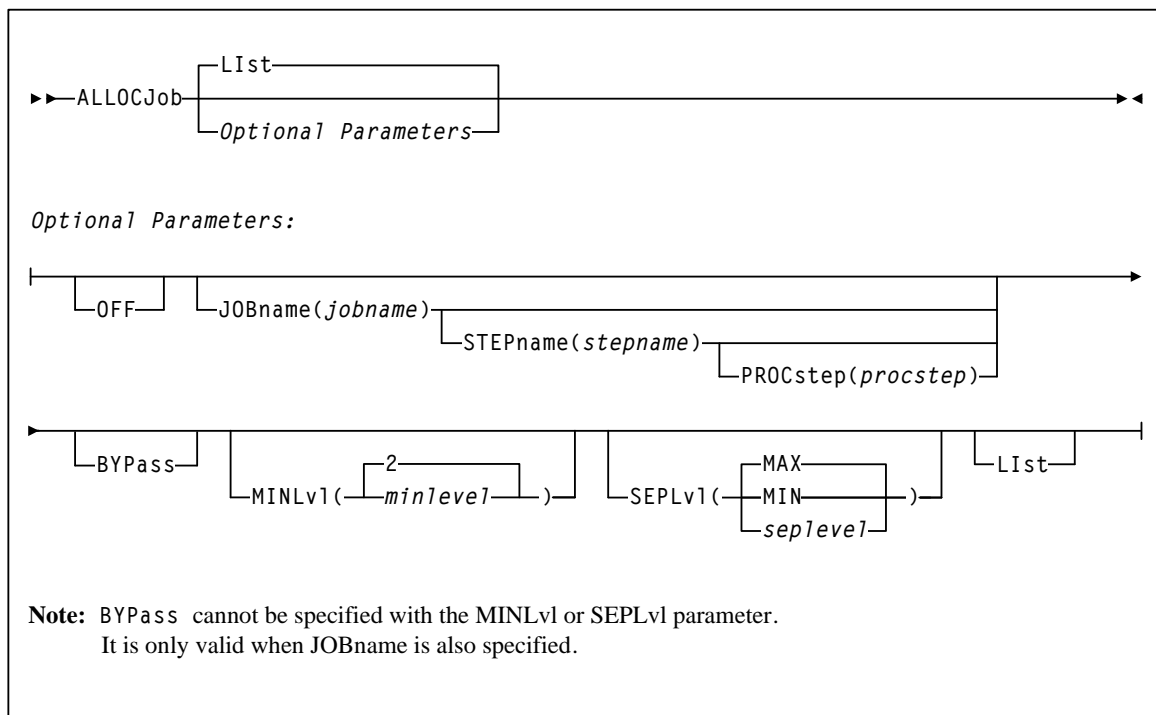


FIGURE 2-2 ALLOCJob syntax



## Parameters

### Llist

optionally, lists current default allocation settings and override settings (in the order they are processed) by job name, step name, and PROC step.

- Llist is the default when no parameters are specified on the ALLOCJob command.
- Llist may be specified with other parameters. In this case, the Llist is generated after the other parameters are processed.

### OFF

optionally, removes all job name, step name, and PROC step overrides for allocation

- If no other parameters are specified, allocation overrides are removed for all jobs.
- If only JOBname is specified, allocation overrides are removed for ALL ALLOCJob entries for that job name.
- If JOBname, STEPname and PROCstep are specified, allocation overrides are removed only for the specified entry.

Global allocation settings are not affected by this parameter.

### JOBname

optionally, specifies a job name.

This parameter is required unless Llist or OFF is specified.

#### *jobname*

the job name. The value entered must be one to eight characters in length. An asterisk (\*) can be used as a wildcard when included as the last character. ALLOCJob is set for all jobs whose job names match the characters preceding the asterisk.

### STEPname

optionally, specifies a step name. This parameter is only valid when JOBname is also specified. It is not valid in JES3 environments with TAPE SETUP processing.

#### *stepname*

the step name. The value entered must be one to eight characters in length. An asterisk (\*) can be used as a wildcard when included as the last character.

### PROCstep

optionally, specifies a PROC step. This parameter is only valid when JOBname and STEPname are also specified. It is not valid in JES3 environments with TAPE SETUP processing.

#### *procstep*

the PROC step.

The value entered must be one to eight characters in length. An asterisk (\*) can be used as a wildcard when included as the last character.

**BYPass**

optionally, specifies that SMC allocation influencing is not performed for the indicated job (job step, step name, PROC step).

This parameter **cannot** be specified with the MINLV1, SEPLV1, or SMS parameter. It is only valid when JOBname is also specified.

---

**Note** – It is recommended that you use MINLV=0 instead of BYPASS, except when no mounts will be performed (i.e., IEFBR14 jobs).

---

**MINLV1**

optionally, specifies the desired minimum level of drive exclusion. If a job is not allocatable at the minimum exclusion level, the SMC still excludes drives to the minimum level and allows the job to fail.

This parameter **cannot** be specified with the BYPASS parameter. It is only valid when JOBname is also specified.

*minlevel*

the desired minimum allocation exclusion level. Valid values are 0-8. 0 indicates that the SMC will not exclude any drives, even if all drives would be excluded during level 1 exclusion processing. The default is the current value of the ALLOCDEF MINLVL setting. Refer to the publication *Configuring and Managing SMC* for more information about SMC exclusion levels.

**Note –**

- Setting MINLVL=0 indicates that the job will not be failed by the SMC even if the device and specific volume are incompatible. MINLVL=0 may be used to force SMC to allow allocation to succeed when a “foreign” tape cartridge has the same volume serial number as an existing library or virtual volume.
  - Increasing *minlevel* has no effect unless message SMC0045 or SMC0091 has been issued for a specific job step.
- 

**SEPLV1**

optionally, specifies the exclusion level at which affinity and GDG chains are separated. This parameter **cannot** be specified with the BYPASS parameter. It is only valid when JOBname is also specified.

**MIN**

Affinity and GDG chains are not separated beyond the minimum level.

**MAX**

Affinity and GDG chains are separated for conflicting exclusion criteria whenever sufficient drives are available. This is the default.

*seplevel*

an exclusion level between the minimum and maximum levels. When sufficient drives exist, the SMC attempts to separate chains at this level. Refer to the publication *Configuring and Managing SMC* for more information about SMC exclusion levels.

---

**Note** – The *seplevel* value **cannot** be less than the *minlevel* value.

---

### Interfaces:

### Subsystem Requirements:

## Description

## Syntax



## List

This is the default if no parameters are specified. It **cannot** be specified with any other parameter.

**Note** – This parameter may **only** be specified in the SMCPARMS data set.

the command prefix. The value entered must be one to eight characters in length and meet the following requirements:

- Chapter 2 SMC Commands and Control Statements 75

- The command prefix **cannot** include a command string, a command abbreviation, or any string that invokes a command.
- The command prefix **cannot** include a string that is a subset or superset of an existing prefix beginning with the same character.

---

**Note** – The MVS command, DISPLAY OPDATA, displays all active command prefixes and their corresponding subsystem name.

---

# COMMtest

**Interfaces:**

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
 UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The COMMtest command is used to perform an end-to-end communication test between SMC and defined TapePlexes or VLEs. This command can generate a request for all paths to all TapePlexes, regardless of their status. The COMMtest command does not update any error statistics or path status, but does display messages indicating the communication result.

**Note – Only** HSC TapePlexes or VLEs are eligible for the COMMtest command.

## Syntax

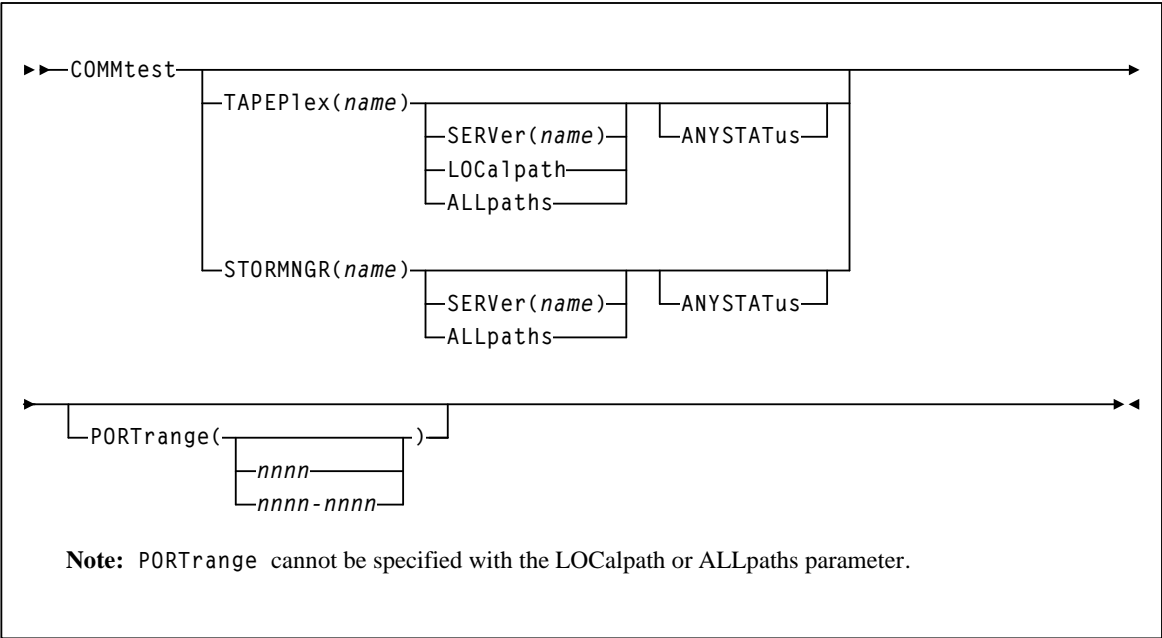


FIGURE 2-4 COMMtest syntax

## Parameters

### TAPEPlex

optionally, restricts communication to the specified TapePlex. By default, communication with all defined TapePlexes is attempted.

*name*

the TapePlex name as defined by the SMC TAPEPlex command. The following rules apply:

- The value must be between 1 and 8 characters in length.
- The first character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- The last character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- Any character between the first and last must be either an alpha character, digit, or hyphen.

### STORMNGR

optionally, restricts communication to the specified VLE. By default, communication with all defined VLEs is attempted.

*name*

a VLE name as defined by the SMC STORMNGR command.

---

**Note** – TAPEPlex and STORMNGR are mutually exclusive.

---

### SERVer

optionally, restricts communication to the specified server path. When specifying this parameter, TAPEPlex or STORMNGR must also be specified. By default, communication with all server paths is attempted.

*name*

the server path name as defined by the SMC SERVer command. The following rules apply:

- The value must be between 1 and 8 characters in length.
- The first character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- The last character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- Any character between the first and last must be either an alpha character, digit, or hyphen.

### LOCalpath

The local server path, if any, is tested. By default, only defined remote server paths are tested.

### ALLpaths

All server paths, both local and remote, are tested.

### ANYSTATus

Communication is attempted on all communication paths, including paths that were disabled by an operator command or by the SMC. By default, the communications test is performed on any communication path that is active, inactive, or never active. Specification of ANYSTATus also includes disabled communication paths.

**PORTrange**

optionally, specifies that communication for a remote server path be tested from the specified port or range. The specified PORTrange may be different from the TCPip PORTrange specification to allow testing of a firewall setup.

---

**Note** – PORTrange is mutually exclusive with LOCalpath and ALLpaths.

---

*nnnnnn or nnnnn-nnnn*

the port number or port number range to be used for communication.

If omitted, a port in the defined TCPip PORTrange is used. If no such port is defined, any ephemeral port is used. If a port range is specified, then communication is attempted on each port number.

# Display DRIve

**Interfaces:**

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
 UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The Display DRIve command is used to request SMC drive attribute and TapePlex ownership information.

**Note** – TapePlex drive information can also be obtained by issuing the HSC Display DRIves command via the SMC Route command.

## Syntax

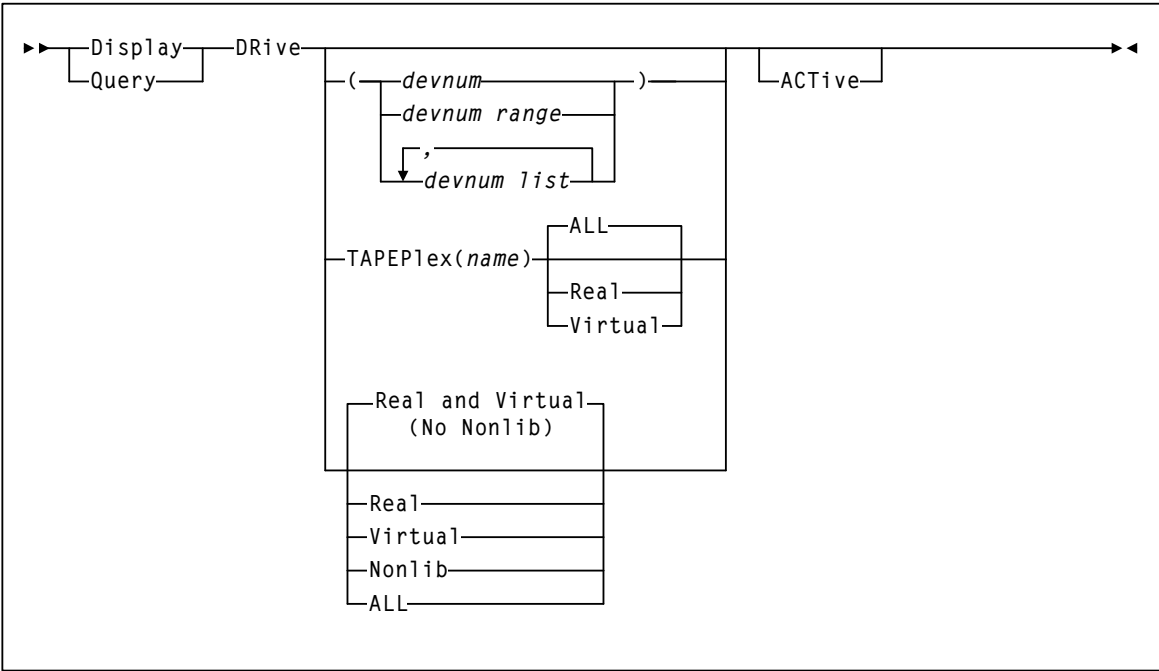


FIGURE 2-5 Display DRIve syntax



## Parameters

### *devnum, devnum-range, devnum-list*

indicates the device number(s) to be processed. If specified, all device addresses specified are displayed. The *devnum* form of the Display DRIve command is the only way that defined devices that are not TapePlex owned, or not defined by an SMC UNITAttr command, can be displayed.

### **TAPEPlex**

optionally, lists only devices owned by the specified TapePlex.

#### *name*

the TapePlex name. The following rules apply:

- The value must be between 1 and 8 characters in length.
- The first character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- The last character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- Any character between the first and last must be either an alpha character, digit, or hyphen.

#### **Real**

optionally, lists only “real” (i.e. nonvirtual) devices owned by the specified TapePlex.

#### **Virtual**

optionally, lists only virtual devices owned by the specified TapePlex.

#### **ALL**

optionally, lists all devices owned by the specified TapePlex.  
This is the default if no parameters are specified.

### **Real**

optionally, lists only “real” (i.e. nonvirtual) devices owned by SMC-defined TapePlexes.

### **Virtual**

optionally, lists only virtual devices owned by SMC-defined TapePlexes.

### **Nonlib**

optionally, lists only “real” devices that are not owned by any SMC-defined TapePlex, but have UNITATTR statements defined.

### **ALL**

optionally, lists all devices owned by SMC-defined TapePlexes.

### **ACTive**

optionally, lists only drives currently mounted or awaiting mounts according to SMC internal data.

---

**Note** – If a Display DRIve command is issued without any parameters, by default, the SMC lists all real and virtual devices owned by SMC-defined TapePlexes.

---

# Display RC

**Interfaces:**

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
UUI: Yes (supports XML and CSV)

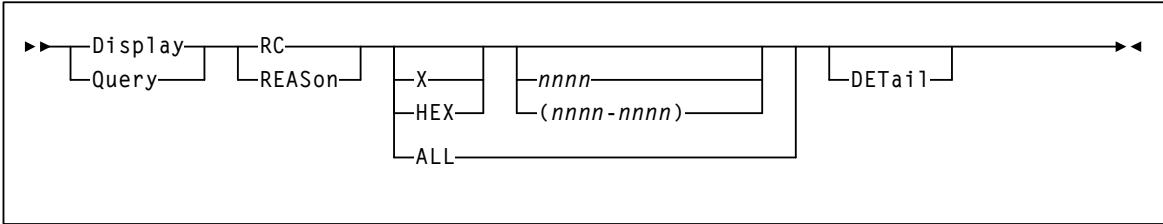
**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The Display RC command is used to display information about the meaning of an SMC return or reason code, or an HSC/VTCS UUI reason code.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 2-6** Display RC syntax

## Parameters

### X or HEX

optionally, specifies that the reason/return code value or range is specified as a hexadecimal number.

### *nnnn, nnnn-nnnn*

optionally, lists the return codes for which the explanation is to be displayed.

- If X or HEX is specified, the value may contain hexadecimal characters 0-9 and A-F.
- If X or HEX is not specified, the value may contain only numeric characters.

A range specified from the console may contain a maximum of 16 values.

### ALL

optionally, indicates that all defined return or reason codes are to be listed.  
ALL is permitted **only** from a utility.

---

**Note** – ALL and H/HEX are mutually exclusive.

---

### DETail

optionally, indicates that detailed information about the requested codes is to be listed.

# Display Volume

## Interfaces:

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
 UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The Display Volume command is used to request volume attribute and TapePlex ownership information.

### Note –

- TapePlex volume information is also available by issuing the HSC Display Volume command via the SMC Route command.
- When the server is ACSLS, this command displays NONE for MEDIA and RECTECH.

## Syntax

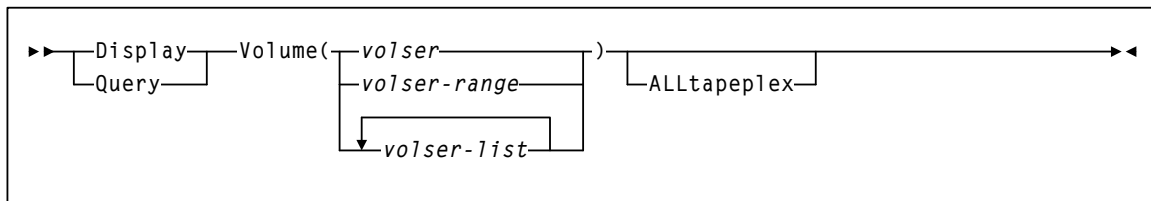


FIGURE 2-7 Display Volume syntax

## Parameters

### *volser, volser-range, volser-list*

indicates the volser, volser range, or volser list to be processed. If multiple volumes are specified, only the first 100 are queried.

### **ALLtapeplex**

optionally, specifies that all active TapePlexes are queried for the specified volser(s). If specified, multiple display lines may be listed for the same volser if it is defined in multiple TapePlexes.

If this parameter is not specified, the Display Volume command queries TapePlexes in the order they are defined and lists only the first occurrence of the volume.

# DRIVemap

## Interfaces:

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
 UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The DRIVemap command is used to map client drive addresses to server drive addresses. This command allows users to specify different MVS device addresses on different hosts for the same TapePlex or virtual drives in client-server mode.

---

**Note** – Refer to the publication *Configuring and Managing SMC* for more information about drive mapping and for information about using DRIVemap commands and the HSC DRVHOST parameter when client and server addresses differ.

---

## Syntax

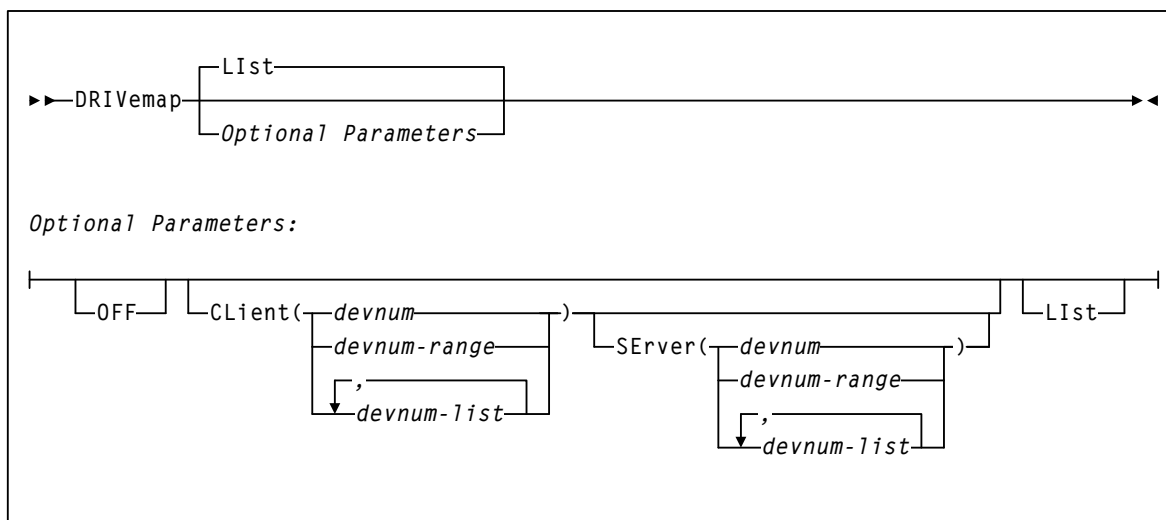


FIGURE 2-8 DRIVemap syntax

## Parameters

### List

optionally, lists all current DRIVemap mappings.

- List is the default when no parameters are specified on the DRIVemap command. In this case, all DRIVemap entries are listed.
- List may be specified with other parameters. In this case, the List is applied **after** the other parameters are processed.

### OFF

optionally, removes all current DRIVemap mappings. When specified with CLient, this parameter removes DRIVemap ranges specified in the CLient parameter.

### CLient

optionally, specifies the device numbers mapped by the DRIVemap command.

*devnum, devnum-range, devnum-list*

the device number, device number range, or device number list.

### SERver

optionally, specifies the device numbers that are defined on the HSC server.

*devnum, devnum-range, devnum-list*

the device number, device number range, or device number list.

The ranges and lists must match those in the CLient parameter. For example:

CL(AA0-AA2) SE(BA0-BA2) is valid;

CL(AA0-AA2) SE(BA0, BA1, BA2) is invalid.

# Help

## Interfaces:

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
 UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The Help command is used to display SMC command and message information.

## Syntax

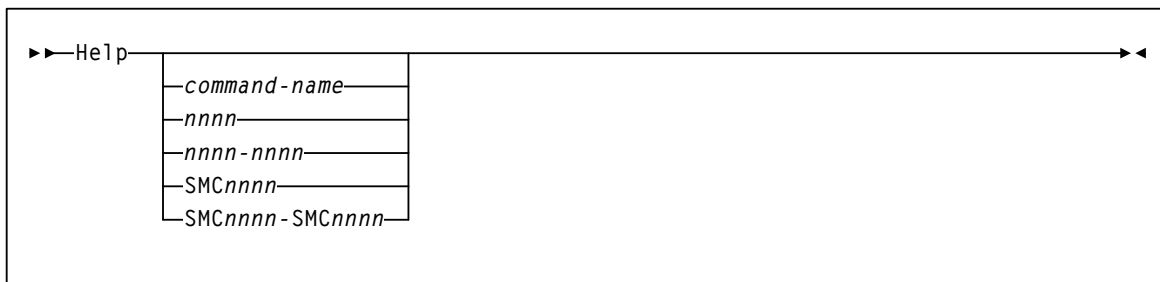


FIGURE 2-9 Help syntax

## Parameters

**Note** – If you enter the Help command without any parameters, information is displayed for all available SMC commands.

### *command-name*

optionally, an SMC command name.

### *nnnn*

optionally, the four-digit numerical portion of an SMC message identifier. Leading zeros are not required.

### *nnnn-nnnn*

optionally, a range of SMC messages specified using the four-digit numerical portion of the message identifier.

**SMCnnnn**

optionally, a full SMC message identifier.

**SMCnnnn-SMCnnnn**

optionally, a range of SMC messages specified using full message identifiers.



# HTTP

## Interfaces:

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
 UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active SMC required

## Description

The HTTP command is used to specify an SMC as an HTTP server for other SMC systems operating on other hosts. The SMC HTTP command must **only** be executed on hosts where there is an active TapePlex, otherwise, this command has no effect.

## Syntax

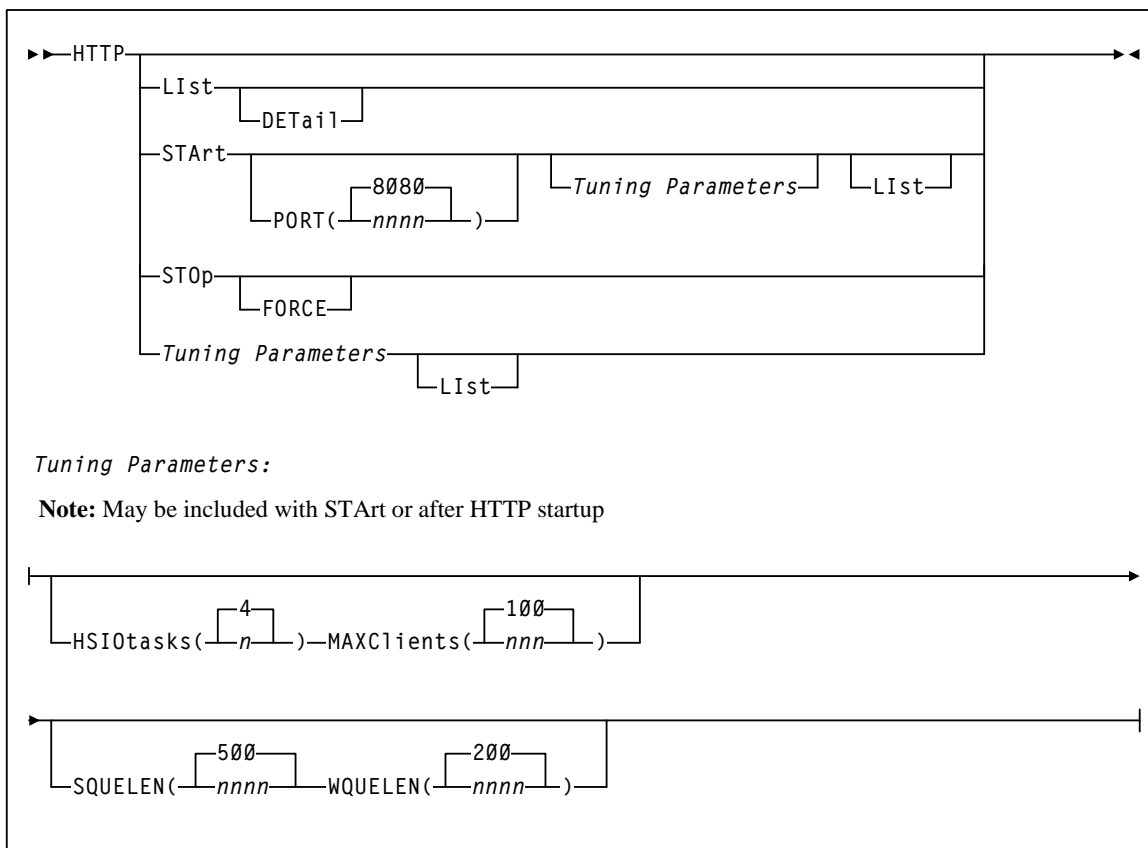


FIGURE 2-10 HTTP syntax

## Parameters

### **LlSt**

optionally, displays HTTP Server status information and interval statistics.

### **DETail**

optionally, lists I/O, error, accept and reject counts, and CGI module use count information in addition to information displayed in the LlSt command.

### **STArt**

optionally, starts the SMC HTTP server.

### **PORT**

optionally, specifies the port number to be listened to for incoming requests.

*nnnnn*

the TCP/IP port number. It is recommended that you do not specify well known TCP/IP port numbers. If not specified, The default is 8080.

### **STOp**

optionally stops the SMC HTTP server.

### **FORCE**

optionally, directs SMC to process the HTTP STOp command even if the status of the SMC HTTP Server is not active. Use this parameter only if there has been an unrecoverable HTTP service task termination and the normal SMC HTTP STOp command has been rejected.

## Optional Tuning Parameters

---

**Note** – It is **strongly recommended** that you do not change the default values for these parameters unless directed by Oracle StorageTek Software Support.

---

### **HSIOtasks**

optionally, specifies the maximum number of SMC HTTP socket I/O tasks to start.

*n*

the number of I/O tasks.

---

**Note** – The HSIOtasks parameter CANNOT be specified after HTTP server startup, it must be specified as part of the HTTP START command. However the remaining tuning parameters, MAXClients, SQUELEN, and WQUELEN may be changed after HTTP server startup has completed.

---

### **MAXClients**

optionally, specifies the maximum number of connected requests that will be allowed at one time.

*nnnnn*

the number of requests. This value must be between 1 and 300. The default value is 100.

**SQUELEN(*nnn*)**

Optionally, specifies the maximum HTTP server I/O queue length before task balancing forces tasks into synchronous I/O mode.

*nnnn*

the queue length. The default value is 500.

---

**Note –** The current and highest I/O queue length can be determined by issuing an SMC HTTP LIST DETAIL command and looking to the line beginning with "Socket I/O reqs"; "quecurr" lists the current I/O queue length, and "high" lists the high I/O queue length.

---

**WQUELEN(*nnn*)**

Optionally, specifies the maximum HTTP server I/O queue length before task balancing is attempted by forcing selected tasks to wait after queueing an I/O request.

*nnnn*

the queue length. The default value is 200.

The current and highest I/O queue length can be determined by issuing an SMC HTTP LIST DETAIL command and looking to the line beginning with "Socket I/O reqs"; "quecurr" lists the current I/O queue length, and "high" lists the high I/O queue length.

# IDAX

## Interfaces:

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
 UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The IDAX command is used to control SMC behavior during IDAX (MVS Interpreter/Dynamic Allocation Exit) processing.

## Syntax

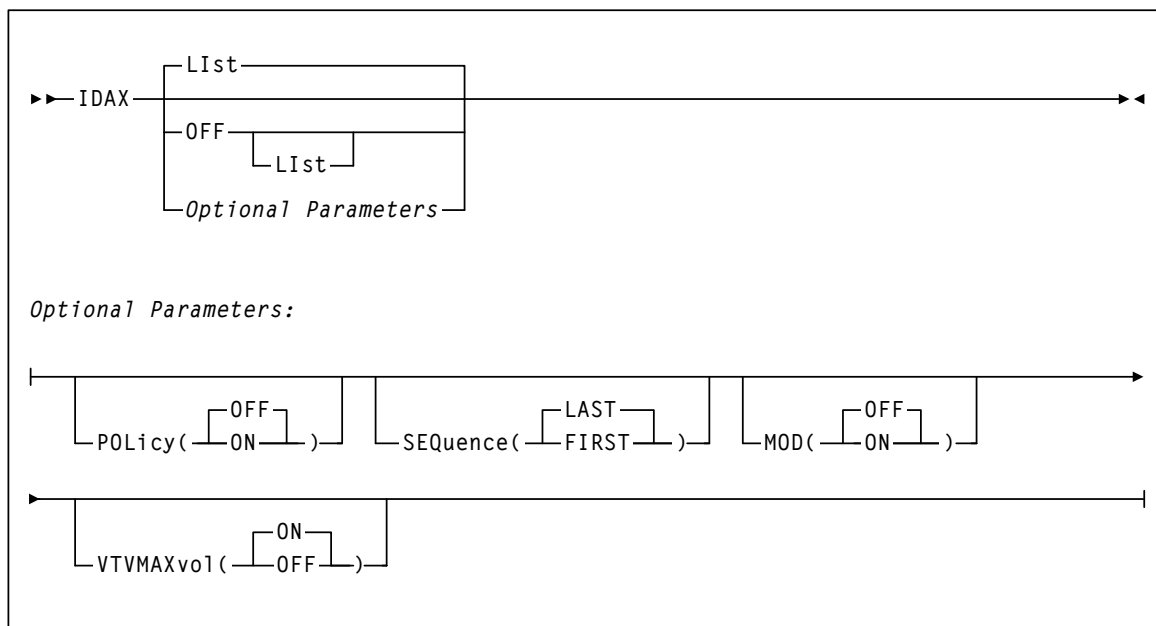


FIGURE 2-11 IDAX syntax

## Parameters

### List

optionally, lists current SMC IDAX settings.

- List is the default when no parameters are specified on the IDAX command.
- List may be specified with other parameters. In this case, the List is applied **after** the other parameters are processed.

### OFF

optionally, resets all IDAX settings to original SMC default settings. Specify List with this parameter to list these settings.

OFF **cannot** be specified with any other parameter.

### POLicy

optionally, specifies whether SMC TAPEREQ/POLicy command processing is performed during IDAX.

#### OFF

TAPEREQ/POLicy command processing is not performed during IDAX. This is the default.

#### ON

TAPEREQ/POLicy command processing is performed during IDAX.

---

**Note** – SMC policy processing at IDAX using a DFSMS ACS routine MGMTCLAS as a policy name is controlled by the MGMTPol parameter of the SMSDef command.

---

### SEQuence

optionally, specifies the relative sequence of SMC and IBM DFSMS ACS routine invocation during IDAX (Interpreter/Dynamic Allocation Exit) processing.

#### LAST

SMC invokes the DFSMS ACS routines after IBM. This is the default.

#### FIRST

SMC invokes the DFSMS routines before IBM. This parameter allows your SMC DFSMS routines to assign tape esoterics to data sets with no specified esoteric, or to data sets that would otherwise be SMS-managed if IBM invoked the DFSMS routines before the SMC.

### MOD

optionally, specifies whether the POLicy IDAXESOT parameters or SMC DFSMS esoteric substitution applies to DISP=MOD data sets as well as DISP=NEW data sets.

#### OFF

SMC POLicy IDAXESOT parameters or SMC DFSMS esoteric substitution do not apply to DISP=MOD data sets. This is the default.

#### ON

SMC IDAX parameters and SMC DFSMS esoteric substitution (if specified) apply to all DISP=MOD data sets when the first reference to the data set in the job's JCL specifies either DISP=MOD or DISP=NEW.

---

**Note** – During SMS IDAX substitution, the SMC cannot determine whether a MOD data set exists.

---

**VTVMAXvol**

optionally, specifies whether the volume count for a new allocation is set to 255 if the derived esoteric contains at least one virtual device. The derived esoteric is obtained from the JCL specification, the POLICY command IDAXESOTERIC value, or the SMC DFSMS ACS routine value.

**OFF**

Volume count is not adjusted for virtual allocations. This is the default.

**ON**

Volume count is set to 255 if the JCL (or IDAX-substituted) esoteric contains virtual devices for a scratch allocation.

# List

## Interfaces:

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
 UII: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The SMC List command is used to display storage accessible from the SMC started task address space.

## Syntax

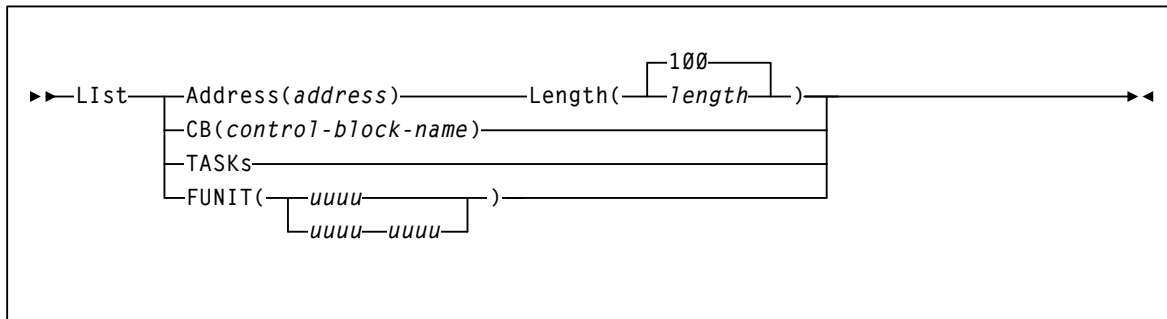


FIGURE 2-12 List syntax

## Parameters

### Address

optionally, specifies the address at which to begin listing SMC memory contents.

*address*

the address. The value entered must be a valid hexadecimal address.

### Length

optionally, specifies the length of SMC memory (bytes) to be listed. Length is required if Address is specified.

*length*

the length. The value entered must be a valid hexadecimal value between 1 and FFFF. Memory is listed beginning at the location specified in the Address parameter. The default value is 100 (decimal 256).

### CB

optionally, specifies the internal SMC control block to be listed.

*control-block-name*

the control block name.

SMC control blocks are listed for diagnostic purposes. Specify *control-block-name* only as directed by Oracle StorageTek Software Support.

### TASKs

optionally, lists the tasks in the SMC subsystem address space.

### FUNIT

optionally, lists SMC control blocks associated with the specified unit address(es).

*uuuu or uuuu-uuuu*

the unit address(es).



---

# LOG

**Interfaces:**

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active SMC required

## Description

The SMC LOG command logs data communications from either or all of the following:

- SMC Library Interface Component
- SMC Client Configuration Component
- SMC HTTP Server Component
- SMC Operator Command Component

These communication transactions are logged to the SMC log file.

This command is intended to be used primarily as directed by Oracle StorageTek Software Support.

## Syntax

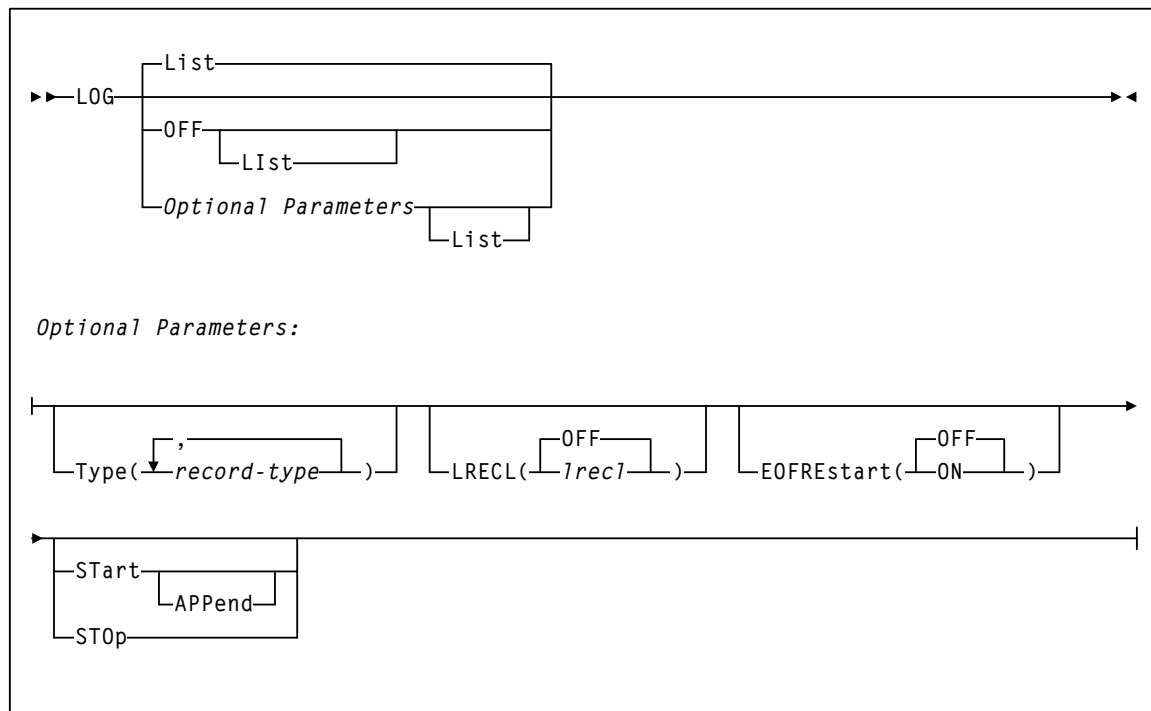


FIGURE 2-13 LOG syntax

## Parameters

### List

optionally, displays HTTP Server status information and interval statistics.

- List is the default when no parameters are specified on the LOG command.
- List may be specified with other parameters. In this case, the List is applied **after** the other parameters are processed.

### OFF

optionally, resets all LOG settings to original SMC default settings. OFF closes the LOG, turns off all record TYPES, and sets the LRECL to 0. If a subsequent LOG START command is issued after the OFF command, no records are logged until specific LOG TYPES are specified.

**TYPE**

Optionally, specifies what record types are to be logged. Valid values are:

LLS	For local LIBTRANS XML transactions sent from the SMC Library Interface Component
LLR	For local LIBTRANS XML responses received by the SMC Library Interface Component
CLS	For remote LIBTRANS XML transactions sent from the SMC Client Communication Component
CLR	For remote LIBTRANS XML responses received by the SMC Client Communication Component
CUS	For remote UII transactions sent from the SMC Client Communication Component
CUR	For remote UII responses received by the SMC Client Communication Component
CER	For all errors detected by the SMC Client Communications Component
SAS	For all data sent outbound by the SMC HTTP Server Component
SAR	For all data received inbound by the SMC HTTP Server Component
SER	For all errors detected by the SMC HTTP Server Component
CMD	For all operator commands received by the SMC Operator-Command Component
ALL	Turns on all types
OFF	Turns off all types

---

**Note** – LOG TYPE commands are cumulative. For example, if you specify LOG TYPE(CMD,UUI) followed by LOGTYPE(CLS,CLR), the resulting LOG TYPE setting is LOG TYPE(CLS,CLR,CMD,UUI). To unselect record types from logging, you must enter LOG TYPE(OFF) to unselect all record types, and enter one additional LOG TYPE command to re-specify the log type records to log.

---

**LRECL**

optionally, specifies the line length written to the LOG file.

**OFF**

The maximum line length is controlled by the DCB LRECL. The LOG record is appended to the log date and time stamp. This is the default.

**nnnnn**

a value from 80 to 32767, used to limit the logical line length.

If the data sent or received exceeds the specified LRECL, then multiple lines are written. If LRECL is specified, then the log date and time stamp are written as separate LOG records. If this value exceeds the DCB LRECL, then the DCB LRECL is used.

**EOFREstart**

optionally, specifies the response when the LOG file reaches End of File (EOF).

**OFF**

Logging stops at EOF.

**ON**

The LOG file closes and re-opens at EOF, and logging continues.

**STArt**

optionally, starts logging.

**APPend**

optionally, specifies that data is appended to the current LOG file when logging is started. If not specified, then data is added to the LOG file from the beginning of the log file, and any data currently in the log file is lost. APPend can only be specified when STArt is also specified.

**STOp**

optionally, stops logging. Current LOG settings are preserved.



The following tags are produced by the METAdata command:

**<command\_name>**

The full name of the command.

**<security\_level>**

Required security level if command authorization is in effect. Values are QUERY, SET, and ADMIN.

**<command\_tags>**

Header tag for all XML tags.

The following tags are produced for each XML tag in the requested command:

**<tag\_data>**

Header tag for each XML tag.

**<tag\_name>**

The XML tag name, for example, volser.

**<tag\_type>**

Values are header (header XML tag), data (XML data tag, normally associated with a value), and trailer (indicates the position of the trailer tag associated with a header tag).

**<occurrences>**

The maximum number of expected occurrences, for tags that may occur multiple times. This may be either a numeric value or "unlimited."

The following tags are produced only for data-type tags.

**<data\_type>**

Indicates the type of data expected in the tag value. Produced only for data tags. Values include: char, numeric, flag, hex, date, time.

**<maximum\_size>**

Indicates the maximum output data size.

## Interfaces:

### Subsystem Requirements:

- ## Description

## Syntax



## Parameters

### List

Optionally, lists the current MONitor command settings.

### OFF

Optionally, resets all MONitor parameters to their default values.

### INTERval

Optionally, specifies the base SMC monitor scan interval in seconds.  
The default value is 60.

At each monitor interval, SMC performs the following actions:

1. SMC attempts to find an active communication path for any inactive TapePlex or STORMNGR.
2. If PREFprimary(ON) is set, SMC attempts to change the communication path from a non-primary path to the primary server.
3. SMC checks to ensure that the SMC IEFJFRQ exit is active, so that SMC is influencing tape allocation.
4. SMC clears orphaned task tokens.
5. SMC attempts to redrive pending mounts.

---

**Note** – It is **strongly** recommended that you **do not** set the MONitor INTERval to 0 or OFF. With these values set, SMC is not able to re-drive pending mounts, honor the PREFprimary setting automatically, or verify that the IEFJFRQ exit is active.

---

### ACTivecheck

Optionally, specifies the interval in seconds after which SMC should verify that communication is still accessible on an active communication path that has had no activity since the prior active check. The default value is 180, or 3 times the INTERval value.

If ACTivecheck is set to 0 or OFF, SMC does not monitor active communication paths. If the ACTivecheck interval is not a multiple of the base INTERval, it is rounded up to a number of seconds that is a multiple of the INTERval value.

### MISSedmnt

Optionally, specifies the interval in seconds after which SMC should issue a message indicating that an outstanding mount is pending. The message is repeated after each interval as long as the mount remains unsatisfied. The default value is 0, meaning that the message does not appear.

If the MISSedmnt interval is not a multiple of the base INTERval, it is rounded up to a number of seconds that is a multiple of the INTERval value. It is recommended that the value of this parameter should be set to at least 600 (10 minutes) to allow the SMC mount monitor processing to attempt to redrive missing mounts before producing the periodic missed mount message.



**VTVtimeout**

Optionally, specifies the time in seconds after which SMC will issue the SMC0231 message and attempt to re-drive a mount request for a VTV. The default value is 300 seconds (5 minutes).

If the VTVtimeout is not a multiple of the base INTerval, it is rounded up a number of seconds that is a multiple of the interval value.

The minimum value of VTVtimeout is 300 seconds; the maximum is 1800 seconds.

**LOWscratch**

Optionally, specifies the interval in seconds after which SMC should report on server scratch subpools that are below their threshold value. The default value is 60.

LOWscratch does not report on scratch shortages that are not associated with a subpool name, except for scratch subpool zero.

If LOWscratch is set to 0 or OFF, SMC does not perform scratch threshold checking. If the LOWscratch interval is not a multiple of the base INTerval, it is rounded up to a number of seconds that is a multiple of the INTerval value.

**PREFprimary**

Optionally, indicates whether SMC attempts to establish communication on a higher priority server path when communication is currently active on a server that is not the first defined server for a TapePlex. The default value of ON indicates that at each MONitor INTerval, SMC attempts to communicate on the first defined server path if that is not the current active path.

If PREFprimary is set to OFF, then SMC continues to communicate on an active path even if one defined earlier becomes available.

The PREFprimary setting also controls the behavior of the RESYNChronize command. When PREFprimary(ON) is set, a RESYNChronize attempts to communicate to the first defined server. When PREFprimary(OFF) is set, a RESYNChronize does not change the current active communication path, if one exists.

# MOUNTDef

**Interfaces:**

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The SMC MOUNTDef command is used to control message processing (i.e., mount/dismount) options previously controlled by the HSC MNTD command, HSC input parameters and LIBGEN options, and the MVS/CSC ALTER command and input parameters. The MOUNTDef command also applies to VTVs.

These options control the following:

- automation of pending mounts
- delete disposition at dismount time
- whether mount and dismount messages are issued
- when mount messages are rolled off of the console
- swap processing behavior

## Syntax

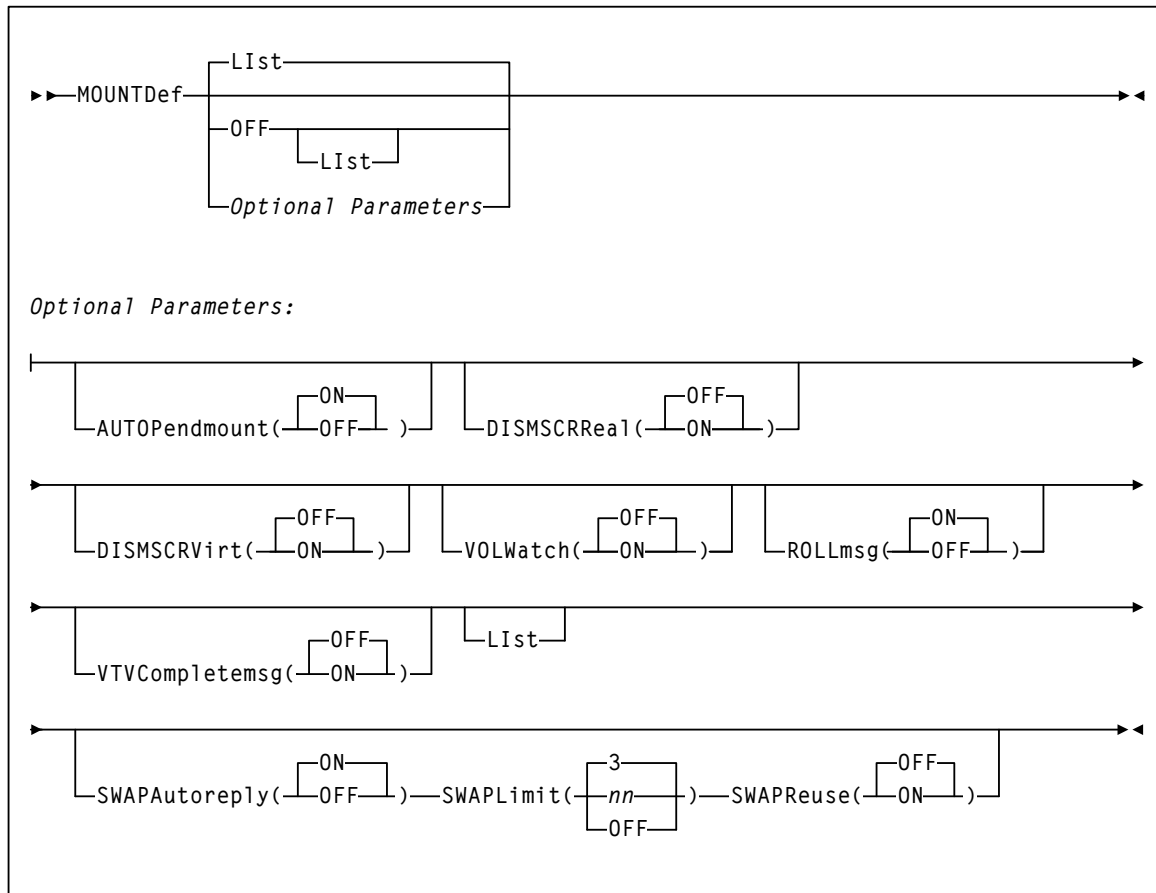


FIGURE 2-16 MOUNTDef syntax

## Parameters

### Llist

optionally, lists current SMC MOUNTDef settings.

- Llist is the default when no parameters are specified on the MOUNTDef command.
- Llist may be specified with other parameters. In this case, the Llist is generated **after** the other parameters are processed.

### OFF

optionally, resets all MOUNTDef settings to original SMC default settings. Specify Llist with this parameter to list these settings.

### AUTOPendmount

optionally, specifies whether the pending mounts are automated for library or virtual drives found when SMC is first initialized and the owning TapePlex is first activated.

#### ON

Pending mounts are automated. This is the default.

#### OFF

Pending mounts are not automated.

---

**Note** – If AUTOPendmount is OFF, you must issue an HSC MOUNT command to complete any pending mounts found when a TapePlex is first activated.

---

### DISMSCRReal

optionally, specifies how the SMC interprets the delete disposition on a dismount message for real (nonvirtual) volumes.

---

**Note** – The DISMSCRReal and DISMSCRVirt parameters replace the DELDISP= parameter of the HSC LIBGEN SLILIBRY macro.

---

#### OFF

The real cartridge is retained as nonscratch when MVS indicates delete disposition in the dismount message. This is the default, and is recommended for CA-1 or CA-TLMS users to leave volumes in a consistent nonscratch status during the CA-1 and CA-TLMS grace period.

#### ON

The real cartridge is scratched when MVS indicates delete disposition in the dismount message.

**DISMSCRVirt**

optionally, specifies how the SMC interprets the delete disposition on a dismount message for VTVs.

---

**Note** – The DISMSCRReal and DISMSCRVirt parameters replace the DELDISP= parameter of the HSC LIBGEN SLILIBRY macro.

---

**OFF**

The VTV is retained as nonscratch when MVS indicates delete disposition in the dismount message. This is the default.

**ON**

The VTV is scratched when MVS indicates delete disposition in the dismount message.

**VOLWatch**

optionally, specifies whether an SMC message is issued when a library volume is to be mounted on a nonlibrary drive.

**OFF**

No message is issued when a library volume is to be mounted on a nonlibrary drive.

**ON**

A console message is issued when a library volume is to be mounted on a nonlibrary drive.

**ROLLmsg**

optionally, specifies whether mount messages handled by the SMC are allowed to roll off the operator console before mount requests are satisfied.

**ON**

Mount messages are allowed to roll off the console screen before mounts are satisfied. This is the default.

---

**Note** – You can limit the rolling of specific mount messages (e.g., TMS007) by presetting the messages xxxxRCDC (Request to Change Descriptor Codes) flag word xxxxRFBF1. The SAMPLIB includes a sample MPF USEREXIT to preset the xxxxRCDC flag.

---

**OFF**

Mount messages remain on the console screen until mount requests are satisfied.

**VTVCompletemsg**

optionally, specifies whether VTV mount and dismount messages are issued.

**OFF**

VTV mount (SLS5075I) and VTV dismount (SLS5076I) messages are not issued on the host where the server is running. This is the default.

**ON**

The VTV mount (SLS5075I) and VTV dismount (SLS5076I) messages are issued on the host where the server is running.

**SWAPAutoreply**

optionally, specifies whether the SMC enhanced swap process automatically responds "NO" to the IBM "IGF500D - REPLY 'YES' DEVICE OR 'NO' message when no compatible swap-to device is found.

**ON**

SMC automatically replies "NO" to the IBM "IGF500D - REPLY 'YES' DEVICE OR 'NO' message after the SMC fails to find compatible devices and issues its own "SMC0108 No compatible drive found for SWAP processing" message. This is the default.

**OFF**

SMC does **not** automatically reply to the IBM "IGF500D - REPLY 'YES' DEVICE OR 'NO' message after the SMC fails to find compatible devices.

**SWAPLimit**

optionally, specifies the maximum number of system initiated swaps before the SMC gives up on the current jobstep + volser swap series and returns to MVS.

*nn*

a swap value of 0-99. If a non-zero value is specified then only that number of system initiated swaps are allowed before SMC gives up and returns to MVS.

Any operator initiated swaps do **not** count towards the specified number, however, their swap-to devices are recorded. Specifying a value of 0 is the equivalent to specifying "OFF" (see below). The default value is 3.

**OFF**

specifies that an unlimited number of system initiated swaps are possible, however, only the last 16 devices used are recorded to track possible swap-to device exclusion.

**SWAPReuse**

optionally, specifies whether previously used swap-to devices are to be excluded as possible swap-to devices for the current jobstep + volser swap series.

**OFF**

Previously used swap-to devices are excluded as possible swap-to devices for the current jobstep + volser swap series. If no eligible device is found then SMC issues its own "SMC0108 No compatible drive found for SWAP processing" message and return to MVS. This is the default.

**ON**

Previously used swap-to devices are eligible to be used for the current jobstep + volser swap series.

# MSGDef

## Interfaces:

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
 UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The SMC MSGDef command defines the appearance of SMC system messages, and controls which messages are displayed and suppressed.

## Syntax

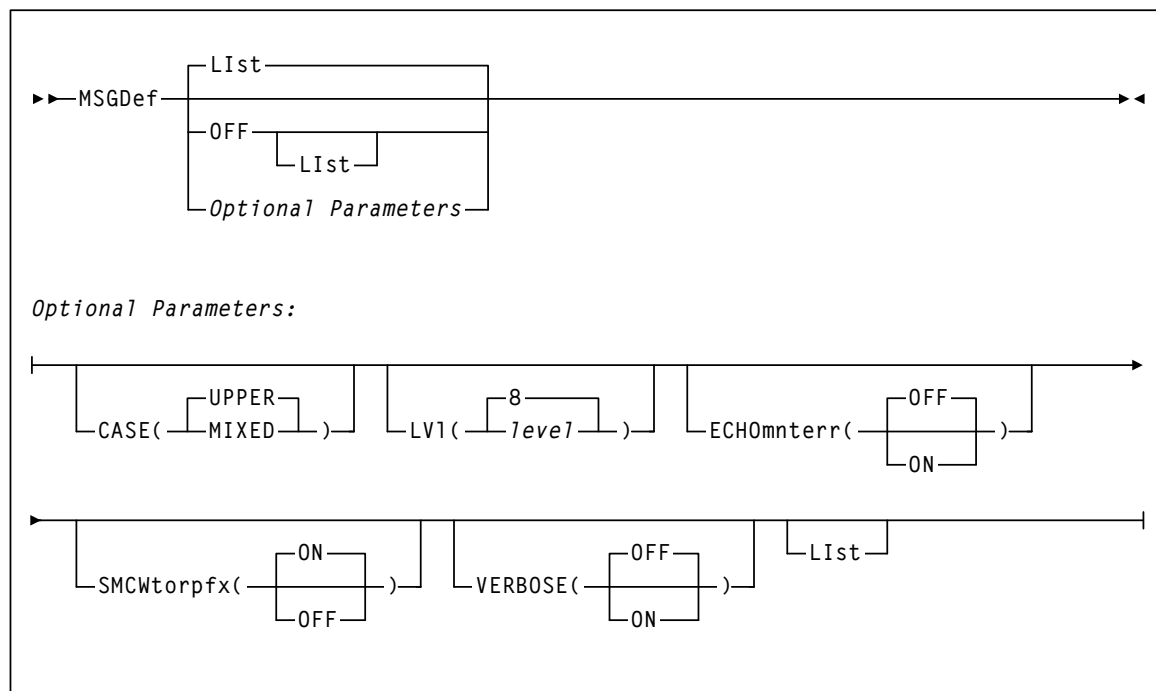


FIGURE 2-17 MSGDef syntax

## Parameters

### Llist

optionally, lists current default SMC message settings.

- Llist is the default when no parameters are specified on the MSGDef command.
- Llist may be specified with other parameters. In this case, the Llist is generated **after** the other parameters are processed.

### OFF

optionally, resets all MSGDef values to original SMC default settings. Specify Llist with this parameter to list these settings. MSGDef **cannot** be specified with any other parameter.

### CASE

optionally, specifies the message case. Valid values are UPPER or MIXED.

#### UPPER

specifies upper case. This is the default.

#### MIXED

specifies mixed case.

### LVI

optionally, specifies the default level used to control which SMC messages are displayed and suppressed.

#### *level*

the default level. Valid values include the following:

0	Display error messages <b>only</b> .
4	Display error and warning messages from the SMC subsystem.
8	Display all SMC subsystem messages and allocation job log warning messages. This is the default if the MSGDef parameter is not specified.

If no value is specified, the default value of 8 is used.

---

**Note** – Levels higher than 8 are used for diagnostic purposes and should **only** be specified as directed by Oracle StorageTek Software Support.

---



**ECHOmnterr**

optionally, specifies whether mount errors generated by the HSC are echoed directly to the console for the SMC client.

**ON**

Mount errors generated by the HSC are echoed to the console for the SMC client.

---

**Note** – This parameter is valid for both local and remote servers.

---

**OFF**

Mount errors generated by the HSC are not to the console for the SMC client. This is the default.

**SMCWtorpfx**

optionally, specifies whether the SMC0137 prefix is displayed for HSC WTOR messages generated by WTORDEST(CLIENT) on the TAPEplex command.

**ON**

The SMC0137 prefix is displayed. This is the default.

**OFF**

The SMC0137 prefix is not displayed.

**VERBOSE**

optionally, specifies whether SMC0190 and SMC0191 messages are displayed whenever any SMC settings are altered.

**ON**

SMC0190 and SMC0191 messages are displayed.

**OFF**

SMC0190 and SMC0191 messages are not displayed.

# MSGJob

## Interfaces:

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
 UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The SMC MSGJob command allows an override of the default message level by job name, step name, and PROC step.

## Syntax

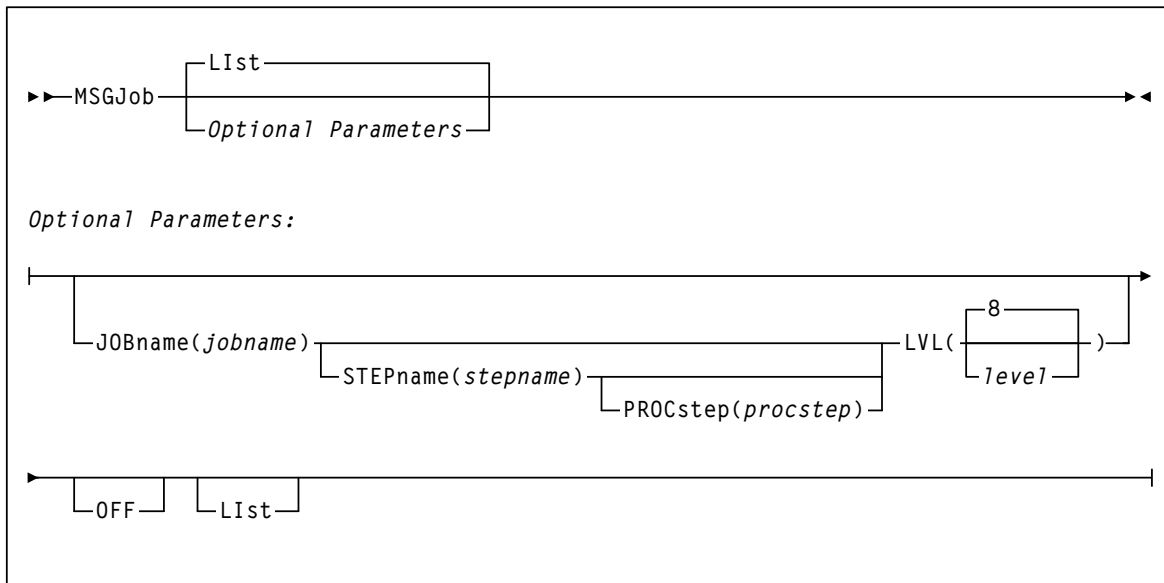


FIGURE 2-18 MSGJob syntax

## Parameters

### Llist

optionally, lists current default SMC message settings and job name, step name, and PROC step exceptions (in the order of evaluation).

- Llist is the default when no parameters are specified on the MSGJob command.
- Llist may be specified with other parameters. In this case, the Llist is generated **after** the other parameters are processed.

### OFF

optionally, removes MSGJob overrides.

- If no other parameters are specified, MSGJob overrides are removed for all jobs.
- If only JOBname is specified, MSGJob overrides are removed for ALL MSGJob entries for that job name.
- If JOBname, STEPname and PROCstep are specified, MSGJob overrides are removed **only** for the specified entry.

The global MSGDef is **not** affected by this parameter.

### JOBname

optionally, specifies a job name.

*jobname*

the job name.

The value entered must be one to eight characters in length. An asterisk (\*) can be used as a wildcard when included as the last character. In this case, the message level is set for all jobs whose job names match the characters preceding the asterisk.

### STEPname

optionally, specifies a step name. It is **only** valid when JOBname is also specified (may be "JOB=\*").

*stepname*

the step name.

The value entered must be one to eight characters in length. This parameter is **only** valid if JOBname is also specified.

### PROCstep

optionally, specifies a PROC step. It is **only** valid when JOBname and STEPname are also specified. It is **not** valid in JES3 environments with TAPE SETUP processing.

*procstep*

the PROC step.

The value entered must be one to eight characters in length. This parameter is **only** valid if JOBname and STEPname are also specified.

**LVL**

optionally, specifies the default level used to control which SMC messages are displayed. This parameter is required when JOBname is specified.

*level*

the default level. Valid values include the following:

0	Display error messages <b>only</b> .
4	Display error and warning messages from the SMC subsystem.
8	Display all SMC subsystem messages and allocation job log warning messages.

If no value is specified, the default value of 8 is used.

---

**Note** – Levels higher than 8 are used for diagnostic purposes and should **only** be specified as directed by Oracle StorageTek Software Support.

---

# POLicy

## Interfaces:

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
 UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The SMC POLicy command is used to specify all tape policy specifications in a single named policy object. It can be used with SMC TAPERREQ statements or SMC DFSMS routines to associate a named policy with an allocation or mount event. Additionally, the POLicy VALidate option can be used to validate policy objects.

---

### Note –

- Refer to the publication *Configuring and Managing SMC* for more information about the use of SMC policies.
- Policies defined using the SMC POLicy command create SMC policy objects that can be referenced by name from either SMC TAPERREQ control statements using the TAPERREQ POLicy parameter, or from IBM DFSMS ACS routines using the management class. A policy name may be associated with two policy objects: a scratch policy with the specified name, and a specific policy with the specified name.
- Policies referenced from SMC TAPERREQ control statements must be defined prior to executing the TREQDEF command that processes the TAPERREQ control statements.
- When a policy to be added to the SMC contains a policy specification error, for example, specifying a scratch subpool name with VOLTYPE(SPECIFIC), the SMC still creates the policy object. However, the SMC marks the policy object in error, allowing any reference to the named policy object to find it. However, the returned policy will be empty, indicating that the default tape policy attributes will be applied to the event.
- To update an SMC policy, enter a new SMC POLicy command for the given policy NAME and VOLType. Be aware that the new POLicy command **replaces** the existing scratch or specific policy object. Therefore, when updating a policy, you must enter all values you wish to preserve.

For example, if the original scratch policy object is defined as:

```
POLICY NAME (POL1) VOLTYPE (SCRATCH) MEDIA (VIRTUAL) MGMTCLAS (MGMT1)
```

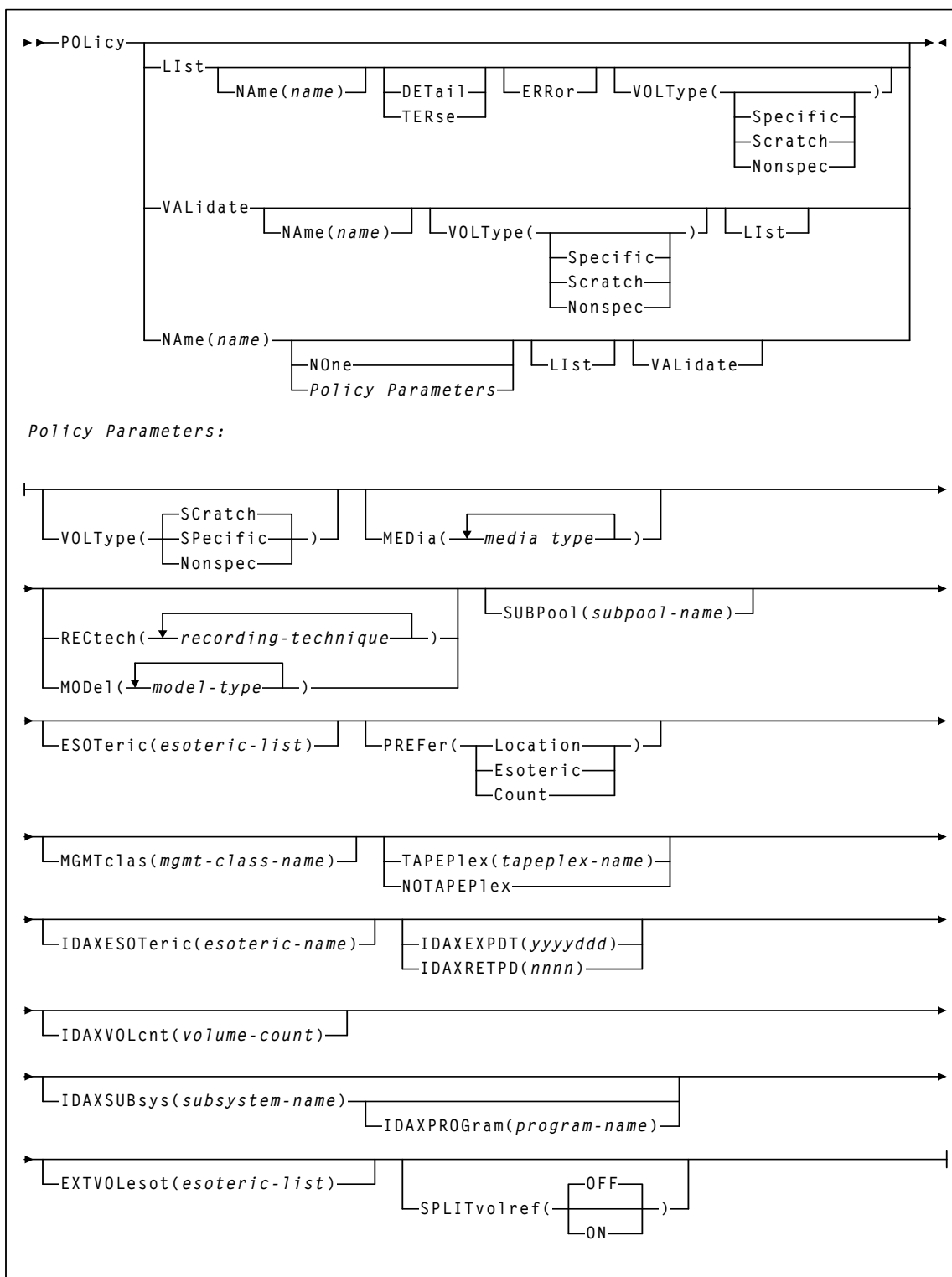
and you wish to add a subpool to the policy, you must enter:

```
POLICY NAME (POL1) VOLTYPE (SCRATCH) MEDIA (VIRTUAL) MGMTCLAS (MGMT1)
SUBPOOL (SUBP1)
```

This behavior allows you to modify one or more POLicy commands in a file and reload all policies using the SMC READ command.

- When an SMC policy object to be updated contains a policy specification error, for example, specifying a scratch subpool name with VOLTYPE(SPECIFIC), the SMC will not update any part of the existing policy object. The policy object is not marked in error, and the complete update is discarded.
  - DEVTPREF is **not** supported on this command. However, you can use an esoteric list to specify preferencing for different device types.
-

# Syntax



**FIGURE 2-19** POLicy syntax

## Parameters

### List

optionally, displays all policy information. Additional parameters allow you to limit which policies are listed, and how much detail is displayed.

### NAme

optionally, specifies the name of the policy to be displayed. If the last character is an asterisk (\*), all policies that begin with the prefix are displayed. For example, POL LI NA V\*.

### DETail

optionally, displays audit detail information about the policy, including last update date, time, and source.

### TERse

optionally, lists only policy names and whether each policy name applies to scratch, specific, or all allocations.

### ERRor

optionally, displays each policy in error status.

When a policy to be added to the SMC contains a policy specification error, for example, specifying a scratch subpool name with VOLTYPE(SPECIFIC), the SMC still creates the policy object. However, the SMC marks the policy object in error, allowing any reference to the named policy object to find it. However, the returned policy will be empty, indicating that the default tape policy attributes will be applied to the event. ERRor lists **only** those policies that contain an error.

### VOLType

optionally, specifies whether the list applies to scratch or specific policy types.

### SCRatch or Nonspec

List only scratch (nonspecific) policies.

### SPecific

List only specific policies.

---

### Note –

- Matching policies are listed in alphabetic order, regardless of the order in which they were defined to the SMC. When specified with other parameters, the List is performed **after** the other parameters have been processed.
  - DETail and TERse are mutually exclusive.
-



**VALidate**

optionally, validates and lists POLICY information against the current TAPEPLEX environment. Additional parameters allow you to limit which policies are validated, and whether all results or just warnings and errors are displayed.

**NAme**

optionally, specifies the name of the policy to be validated. If the last character is an asterisk (\*), all policies that begin with the prefix are displayed. For example, POL VAL NA V\*.

**VOLType**

optionally, specifies whether the list applies to scratch or specific policy types.

**SCratch or Nonspec**

List only scratch (nonspecific) policies.

**SPecific**

List only specific policies.

**Llist**

optionally, specifies whether only warnings and errors are listed, or all tested policies are listed. If not specified, then only a single line for each POLICY that generates a warning or error message is listed.

---

**Note –**

- VALidate produces a return code for each tested POLICY VOLTYPE.
    - 0 indicates the POLICY is correct, could not be validated due to certain environmental conditions, or was assumed correct.
    - 4 is a warning, and includes conditions such as a lack of scratch volumes to satisfy the request.
    - 8 indicates an error, and includes conditions such as undefined SUBPOOL or MGMTCLAS name.
  - If POLicy VALidate is entered without the Llist keyword, then only policies that result in a return code of 4 or 8 are listed. If POLicy VALidate is entered with the Llist keyword, then all policies are listed along with their policy validation results.
  - When multiple policies are validated, the final SMC0224 message indicates the highest return code for all policies validated.
  - If no TAPEPLEX(es) are active when the VALidate command is issued, then the policy validate return code will be 0, indicating that the policy could not be validated.
  - Validated policies are listed in alphabetic order, regardless of the order in which they were defined to the SMC. When specified with other parameters, the VALidate is performed after the other parameters have been processed.
-

**NAme**

specifies the name of a policy that matches the name specified in a TAPEREQ or DFSMS ACS routine management class.

*name*

the policy name.

**NOne**

optionally, removes all policy parameters associated with the named policy. Specifying NOne for a policy implies that the default behavior is applied, e.g. any media/rectech, subpool 0, etc.

**VOLType**

optionally, specifies whether the policy applies to scratch or specific allocation.

**SCratch or Nonspec**

The policy applies only to scratch (nonspecific) allocations. This is the default.

**SPecific**

The policy applies only to specific allocations.

---

**Note –**

When VOLType(SPecific) is specified:

- The SUBPool parameter is **not** permitted.
  - The MEDia parameter is **only** permitted if the NOTAPEPlex parameter is specified.
  - The SPLITvolref parameter is **not** permitted.
- 

**MEDia**

optionally, specifies the desired media type for a data set being created. You can enter a list of media types, separated by commas. A list specifies a generic pool from which a selection is made. There is no implied priority.

*media-type*

the media type.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for a list of valid *media-type* values.

---

**Note –**

- MEDia and VOLType(SPecific) are mutually exclusive unless the NOTAPEPlex parameter is specified.
  - If this parameter is not specified, a default is chosen based on the value of the RECtech parameter. See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for default values used if the MEDia parameter is omitted.
  - If both media type and recording technique are omitted, all available device types are eligible for allocation.
-

**RECtech**

optionally, specifies the method used to record data tracks on the tape surface for the desired data set. You can enter a list of recording techniques, but they must be separated by commas. A list specifies a generic pool from which a selection is made. There is no implied priority.

*recording-technique*

the recording technique.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for a list of valid *recording-technique* values.

---

**Note –**

- RECtech and MODel are mutually exclusive.
  - If this parameter is not specified, a default is chosen based on the value of the MEDia parameter. See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for default values used if the MEDia parameter is omitted.
  - If both media type and recording technique are omitted, all available device types are eligible for allocation.
- 

**MODel**

optionally, specifies the model number of a transport. You can enter a list of models, separated by commas. A list specifies a generic pool from which a selection is made. There is no implied priority.

MODel provides the same type of information as RECtech, but a user may find it more convenient to specify a transport model rather than a recording technique.

*model-type*

the model type.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for a list of valid *model-type* values.

---

**Note –** MODel and RECtech are mutually exclusive.

---

**SUBPool**

optionally, specifies the subpool used to satisfy a scratch request.

*subpool-name*

the subpool name.

---

**Note –** SUBPool and VOLType(Specific) are mutually exclusive.

---

**ESOTeric**

optionally, specifies the name of a device esoteric group, or list of device groups defining the list of eligible transports to be used to satisfy a tape request.

*esoteric-group-name*

the esoteric group name.

The name specified can consist of one to eight alphanumeric or national (#, @, \$) characters. A slash (/) or hyphen (-) is also valid.

---

**Note** – If the esoteric list contains devices not currently in the Eligible Device List, SMC allocation **cannot** add devices to the list, but can exclude devices not in the specified esoteric. During drive exclusion, devices in any of the listed esoterics are included. During drive prioritization, devices are ordered according to their position in the esoteric list.

---

**PREFer**

optionally, specifies the relative value of the esoteric list and additional preferencing information. PREFer is **only** valid when a list of esoterics is specified.

**Location**

Drives are preferred based on LSM location of a specific volume. This is the default for specific volumes. Location is **only** valid for VOLType (SP).

**Esoteric**

Drives are preferred based on the order specified in the esoteric list. This is the default for scratch allocations.

**Count**

Drives are preferred based on scratch counts in the LSM. Count is **only** valid for VOLType (N).

**MGMTclas**

optionally, specifies a Management Class defined on the VTCS MGMTclas control statement. See [“MGMTclas Control Statement” on page 440](#) for more information.

*mgmt-class-name*

the Management Class name.

**TAPEPlex**

optionally, specifies the name of a TapePlex defined to SMC. SMC uses the specified TapePlex name to determine the “owner” of an allocation request. Only the specified TapePlex name is queried to determine specific volume information or scratch availability.

*tapeplex-name*

the TapePlex name. The following rules apply:

- The value must be between 1 and 8 characters in length.
- The first character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- The last character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- Any character between the first and last must be either an alpha character, digit, or hyphen.

---

**Note –**

- The named TapePlex must be defined using a TAPEPlex command before the POLicy command is processed.
  - TAPEPlex and NOTAPEPlex are mutually exclusive.
- 

**NOTAPEPlex**

optionally, specifies that SMC will not perform a TapePlex lookup to obtain volume information.

---

**Note –** NOTAPEPlex and TAPEPlex are mutually exclusive.

---

**IDAXESOTeric**

optionally, specifies the esoteric name to be substituted during IDAX (MVS Interpreter/Dynamic Allocation Exit) processing.

Specification of IDAXESOTeric is similar to changing the JCL unit name, and completely replaces the original esoteric.

Unlike the ESOTeric parameter, the IDAXESOTeric *esoteric-name* does not need to include any devices in the original JCL esoteric.

*esoteric-name*

a valid esoteric name to be used for the allocation.

**IDAXEXPDT**

optionally, specifies the expiration date to be applied to the allocation during IDAX.

---

**Note –** IDAXEXPDT and IDAXRETPD are mutually exclusive.

---

*yyyymmdd*

the desired expiration date (4-digit year and Julian day).

**IDAXRETPD**

optionally, specifies the retention period to be applied to the allocation during IDAX.

---

**Note –** IDAXRETPD and IDAXEXPDT are mutually exclusive.

---

*nnnn*

the retention period in number of days.

**IDAXVOLcnt**

optionally, specifies the maximum number of volumes to be applied to the allocation during IDAX. This value overrides the volume count parameter specified in the JCL.

*volume-count*

the maximum volume count. Valid values are 1-255.

**IDAXSUBsys**

optionally, specifies that SMC direct an allocation job to another subsystem or program.

For example, SMC can direct any FDR/DFDSS job to Oracle's StorageTek ExHPDM backup and restore software. The IDAXSUBsys policy directs the output tape data set allocation to ExHPDM, effectively placing the DD SUBSYS JCL specification in the job.

*subsystem-name*

the subsystem name.

**IDAXPROGram**

optionally, alters the program name in the allocation job.

For example, this parameter can alter the program name for DFDSS (ADRDSSU) to the ExHPDM User Interface Module (SOVDSSU), and in conjunction with the IDAXSUBsys parameter, direct the backup DFDSS job to ExHPDM.

*program-name*

the program name.

---

**Note** – Refer to the *ExHPDM Operator and System Programmer's Guide* for more information about the ExHPDM backup and restore software.

---

**EXTVOLesot**

optionally, specifies the name of a device esoteric group, or list of device groups defining the list of eligible transports to be used to satisfy a tape request when the specific volume is found to be outside of the library.

*esoteric-list*

the esoteric list.

Each esoteric group name in the list can consist of one to eight alphanumeric or national (#, @, \$) characters. A slash (/) or hyphen (-) is also valid.

---

**Note** – EXTVOLesot can only be specified if VOLTYPE=SPECIFIC is also specified.

---

**SPLITvolref**

optionally, specifies whether VOL=REF chains are to be broken. This parameter is **only** valid when VOLType(SCratch) or VOLType(Nonspec) is also specified.

**OFF**

VOL=REF chains are not broken. This is the default.

**ON**

VOL=REF chains are broken and the LABEL data set sequence number is set to 1.

# READ

## Interfaces:

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
 UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The SMC READ command is used to enter a series of commands using an input data set instead of console commands.

## Syntax

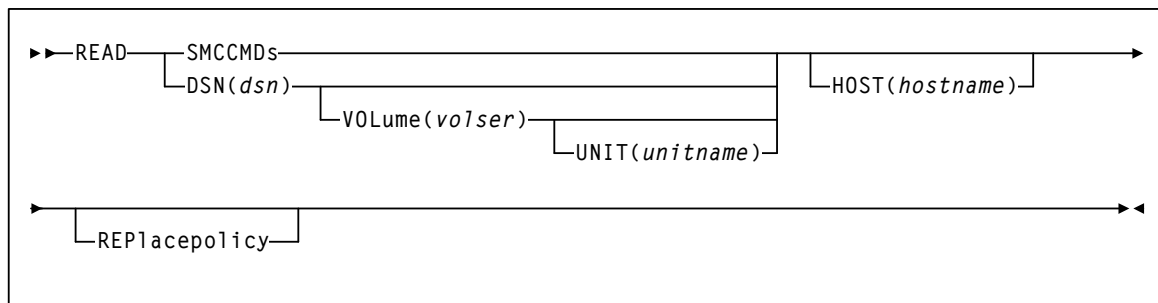


FIGURE 2-20 READ syntax

## Parameters

### SMCCMDS

optionally, re-processes commands contained in the data set specified in the SMCCMDS DD statement of the SMC START procedure.

### DSN

optionally, processes commands contained in the specified data set.

*dsn*

the data set name.

---

**Note** – If the DSN parameter specifies a member name, the full data set **must** be enclosed in single quotes.

---

**VOLume**

optionally, specifies the volume serial number of the DASD volume on which the data set resides. Specify this parameter if the data set is not cataloged.

*volser*

the volume serial number on which the data set resides.

**UNIT**

optionally, specifies the unit name of the specified VOLume for uncataloged data sets. Requires that VOLume also be specified.

*unitname*

the unit name.

If not specified, then a unit name of SYSALLDA is the default.

**HOST**

optionally, specifies a host name for which this READ command is valid. If this parameter is specified, the READ command is only processed when the specified hostname matches the MVS host. If this parameter is not specified, the READ command is processed regardless of the MVS host.

*hostname*

the hostname.

---

**Note –**

- HOST is **not** valid when the READ command is entered from an MVS console.
- In a JES3 environment, the host name is the SMF host, **not** the JES3 MAIN name.
- Specification of the HOST parameter allows you to share a single SMC parameter file set across multiple MVS hosts as shown in the following example:

**your.parmlib(COMMCMDs)**

```
MSGDEF CASE(MIXED)
...other common SMC parameter settings...
READ DSN('your.parmlib(MVS1CMDs)') HOST(MVS1)
READ DSN('your.parmlib(MVS2CMDs)') HOST(MVS2)
```

**your.parmlib(MVS1CMDs)**

```
DRIVEMAP CL(AB0-AB7) SE(BB0-BB7)
```

**your.parmlib(MVS2CMDs)**

```
DRIVEMAP CL(CB0-CB7) SE(BB0-BB7)
```

The file COMMCMDs contains SMC parameter settings applicable to all hosts, and the READ commands with HOST specifications for your MVS hosts. The file MVS1CMDs contains SMC specifications applicable only to MVS host MVS1, while the file MVS2CMDs contains SMC specifications applicable only to MVS host MVS2.

---



**REPlacepolicy**

optionally, specifies that all SMC POLICY objects are to be replaced by any POLICY statements found in the specified dataset (or in any dataset subsequently read by the specified READ dataset).

If REPlacepolicy is not specified, individual POLICY statements within a READ command update or add only the referenced POLICY statements and do not affect unreferenced POLICY statements.

---

**Note –**

- After the READ REPlacepolicy command is executed, any TAPEREQ POLICY references are re-validated. If any TAPEREQ POLICY references are subsequently found to be in error, the invalid TAPEREQ statements are left active, but reference a "null" POLICY (i.e. the equivalent of specifying POLICY NAME(*name*) NONE).
  - It is recommended that any TAPEREQ statement(s) be reloaded by inclusion of the TREQDEF command whenever a READ REPlacepolicy command is executed, in order to re-validate all SMC tape policies at the same time.
-

# RESYNChronize

## Interfaces:

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
 UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The SMC RESYNChronize command is used to re-establish connections to all defined TapePlexes for the purpose of acquiring drive configuration information from all TapePlexes.

This action is automatically performed when the SMC first activates a new path to a TapePlex, when an HSC subsystem (local or remote) reports a configuration change, or when an active local path to a TapePlex is accessed during an MVS allocation or mount event. However, the operator **must** issue the RESYNChronize command in the following instances:

- When the MVS/CSC RESYNC command is issued and the MVS/CSC is active
- When the user wants to automate pending mounts for a newly activated TapePlex, and does not want to wait for an MVS allocation or mount event to trigger the reconnection.
- To attempt to redrive outstanding mounts that may have been lost due to hardware or communication errors.

---

**Note** – It is recommended that you include a RESYNChronize command at the end of your SMCCMDS file (after all TAPEPlex and SERVer commands) to initialize communication with TapePlexes prior to the first intercepted allocation or mount.

---

## Syntax

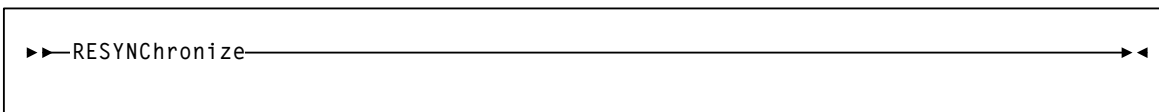


FIGURE 2-21 RESYNChronize syntax

## Parameters

None.

---

# Route

## Interfaces:

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active SMC required

## Description

The SMC Route command is used to request routing of transactions from SMC to a defined TapePlex or VLE. **Only** the following are supported:

- VTCS commands
- HSC commands with UUI support, with the exception of VOLRPT.

---

**Note** – The HSC MOUNT, DISMOUNT, ENTER and MOVE commands can now be issued from SMC via the ROUTE command.

---

## Syntax

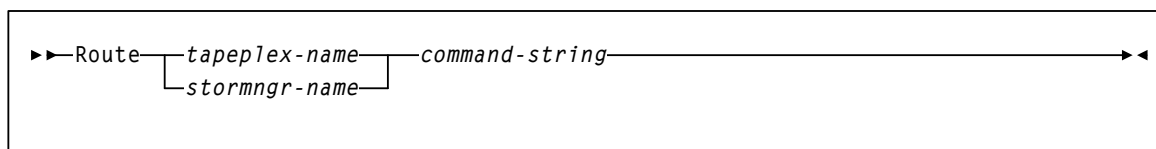


FIGURE 2-22 Route syntax

## Parameters

### *tapeplex-name*

specifies a TapePlex name as defined on an SMC TAPEPlex command. SMC routes the request to the specified TapePlex using the currently active TapePlex path. Commands may be sent to either a local or remote HSC TapePlex. This command is **not** supported for MVS/CSC TapePlexes.

### *stormngr-name*

specifies a VLE name as defined on an SMC STORMNGR command. SMC routes the request to the specified VLE using the currently active VLE path. Commands may be sent to either a local or remote HSC TapePlex or VLE. This command is not supported for MVS/CSC TapePlexes.

### *command-string*

specifies the command string to be routed to the requested TapePlex. Note that VTCS commands should not be prefixed with VT; the HSC UUI interface routes VTCS commands to the correct functional processor without the VT prefix. The command string must be a command supported by the HSC UUI or any VTCS command (except DISPLAY MSG and DISPLAY CMD).

---

# SERVer

**Interfaces:**

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The SMC SERVer command defines a named path to a remote library server; an HSC subsystem executing on another host. The SERVer command describes the communication path to the HTTP server.

---

**Note –**

- Before a SERVer is defined, the TapePlex that it references must be defined using a TAPEPlex command. The TapePlex name associated with a SERVer **cannot** be changed. See [“TAPEPlex” on page 148](#) for more information.
- Similarly, before a SERVer is defined, the VLE that it references must be defined using a STORMNGR command. The VLE name associated with a SERVer cannot be changed. See for more information.
- You **cannot** define a server if the corresponding TAPEPlex defines a LOCSUBsys for an MVS/CSC subsystem. For example, the following is **not** valid (assuming the subsystem CSC1 is an MVS/CSC system).

```
TAPEPLEX NAME (LIB1) LOCSUBSYS (CSC1)
SERVER NAME (REM1) TAPEPLEX (LIB1)
```

---

## Syntax

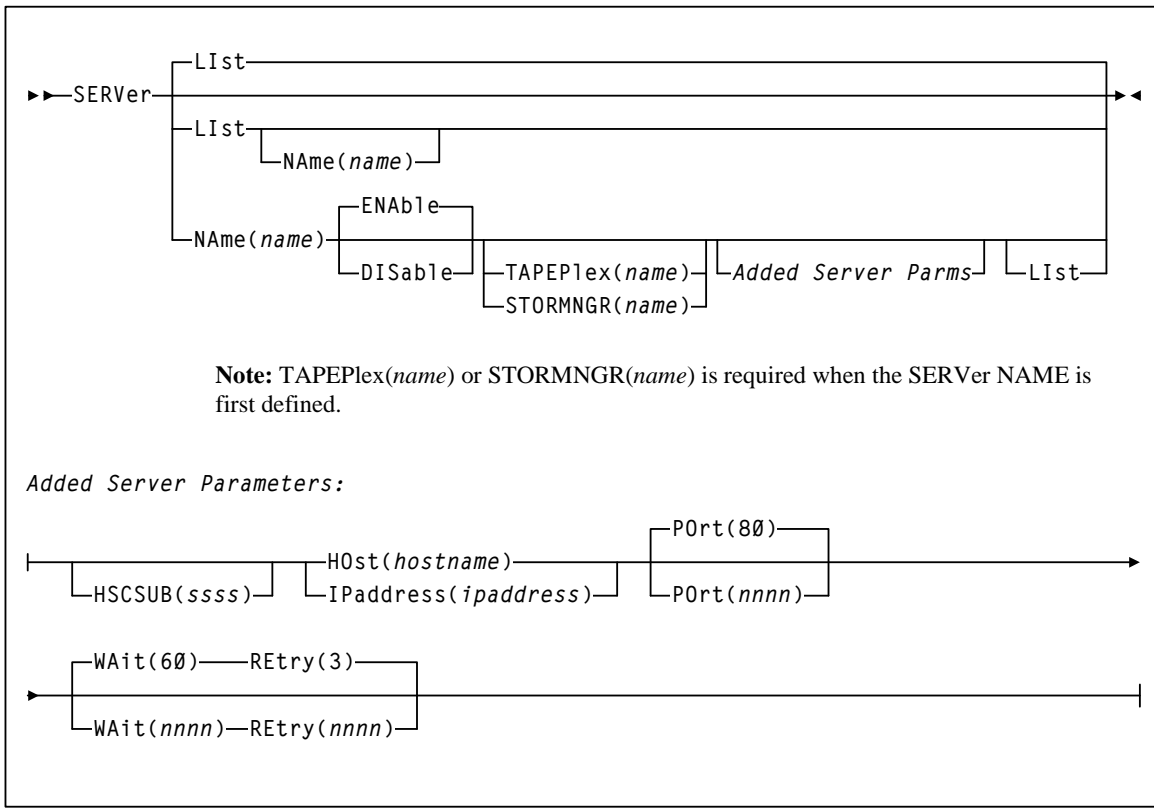


FIGURE 2-23 SERVer syntax

## Parameters

### List

optionally, displays status information for TapePlex server paths

- List is the default when no parameters are specified on the SERVer command. In this case, all library server paths are listed.
- List may be specified with other parameters. When specified with parameters other than NAME, the List is generated **after** the other parameters are processed.

### NAME

optionally, specifies a server path for which status is displayed.

*name*

the server path name.

**Name**

optionally, specifies the server name to be defined or modified.

*name*

the server path name. This name is reported in any communications error message when the error did not occur while communicating with an HSC on the same host. The following rules apply:

- The value must be between 1 and 8 characters in length.
- The first character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- The last character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- Any character between the first and last must be either an alpha character, digit, or hyphen.

---

**Note** – If you are using the SMC HTTP server component, there can be multiple NAMED server paths for a single TapePlex configuration. Refer to the publication *Configuring and Managing SMC* for more information.

---

**ENable**

optionally, enables the specified server path to be selected for allocation or mount requests.

**DISable**

optionally, disables the specified server path. If this is the only path to the TapePlex, the TapePlex is unavailable for allocation or mount requests.

**TAPEPlex**

optionally, specifies the TapePlex name associated with an actual ACS hardware configuration as defined on an SMC TAPEPlex command. The TAPEPlex parameter **must** be specified when a new server is first defined.

*name*

the TapePlex name. This name is reported in any TapePlex error message. The following rules apply:

- The value must be between 1 and 8 characters in length.
- The first character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- The last character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- Any character between the first and last must be either an alpha character, digit, or hyphen.

**STORMNGR**

optionally, specifies a VLE name as defined on an SMC STORMNGR command. The STORMNGR parameter **must** be specified when a new server is first defined.

*name*

a VLE name as defined on an SMC STORMNGR command. This name is reported in any VLE error message.

---

**Note** – TAPEPlex and STORMNGR are mutually exclusive.

---

**HSCSUB**

optionally, specifies the name of the HSC subsystem that represents the Tapeplex associated with the server. This parameter is required only when there is more than one HSC subsystem executing on the server host (HSC running in MULT mode).

*ssss*

the HSC subsystem name.

**HOst**

optionally, specifies the IP resolver host name on which the remote HSC subsystem resides.

*hostname*

the name of the remote host. The following rules apply:

- The value must be between 1 and 8 characters in length.
- The first character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- The last character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- Any character between the first and last must be either an alpha character, digit, hyphen, or dot.

---

**Note** – HOst and IPaddress are mutually exclusive.

---

**IPaddress**

optionally, specifies the subsystem IP address for the remote HSC subsystem.

*ipaddress*

the IP address.

---

**Note** – IPaddress and HOst are mutually exclusive.

---

**POrt**

optionally, specifies the server port.

*nnnn*

the server port. The default is 80.

**WAIt**

optionally, specifies the maximum wait time for any single request made over the network before the SMC assumes that a communication or server problem exists.

*nnnn*

the wait time in seconds. The default is 60.

**Note –**

- The default for a mount or dismount request is 10 minutes (600 seconds) or more if the specified WAIT time is greater than 600 seconds.
  - If your HSC CDS backup job runs longer than the specified wait time, set your wait time to match the normal execution time of your CDS backup job.
-



**REtry**

optionally, specifies the number of retry attempts for any single request before the task is allowed to resume, and a failure recorded.

*nnnn*

the number of retries. The default is 3.

# SIMulate

**Interfaces:**

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The SMC SIMulate command simulates how SMC would process a single DD job step with a given set of jobstep characteristics. The SIMulate command simulates the IDAX and allocation influence (SSI24) portion of SMC processing, but **not** mount processing.

You provide the keyword jobstep parameters to simulate, and the command invokes SMC allocation, policy lookup, and volume lookup. The SIMulate output displays the simulation results.

While SIMulate does not simulate certain jobstep characteristics (such as multiple units, affinity separation, or volref attributes), it does provide a powerful tool to test how changes in SMC policies, including TAPEREQ and POLICY commands, user exits, and TAPEREQ and SERVER changes will affect your production jobs.

You can issue SIMulate command to an active SMC subsystem or via the SMCUSIM utility. The SMCUSIM utility, working with the SIMulate command, produces XML output that can be manipulated as CSV to produce before and after reports to compare how jobs would be processed. See [“SMC UUI Simulation Utility \(SMCUSIM\)” on page 675](#) for more information about the SMCUSIM utility.

## Syntax

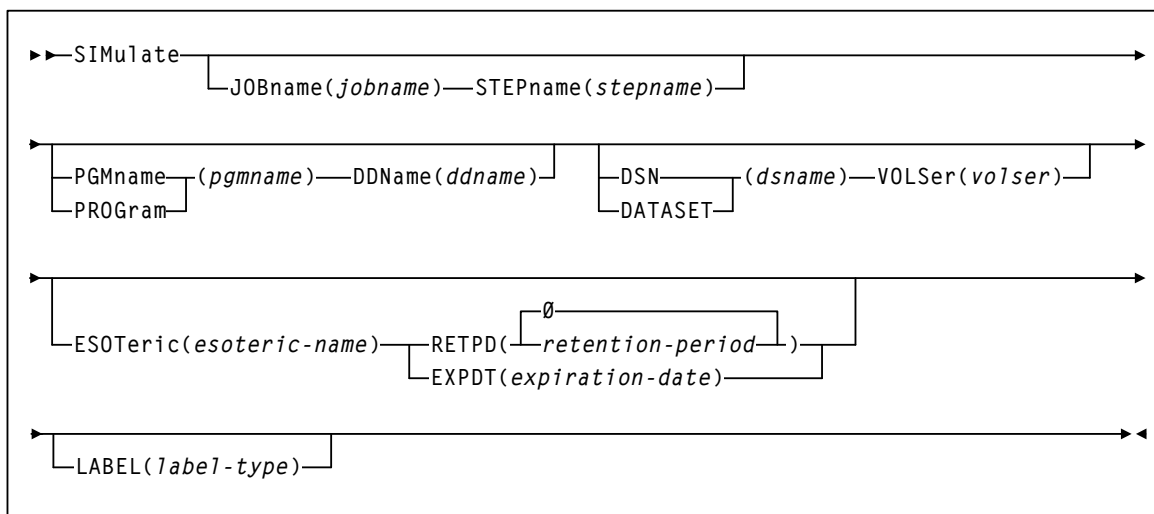


FIGURE 2-24 SIMulate syntax

## Parameters

### JOBName

optionally, specifies the job name of the simulated job step to test. The format must conform to MVS standards. If not specified, "(any)" is used, which prevents a match to non-generic job names specified in SMS ACS routines or TAPEREQ control statements.

### STEPName

optionally, specifies the step name of the simulated job step to test. The format must conform to MVS standards. If not specified, "(any)" is used, which prevents a match to non-generic step names specified in SMS ACS routines or TAPEREQ control statements.

### PGMname or PROGRAM

optionally, specifies the program name of the simulated job step to test. The format must conform to MVS standards. If not specified, "(any)" is used, which prevents a match to non-generic program names specified in TAPEREQ control statements.

### DDName

optionally, specifies the DD name of the simulated data set to test. The format must conform to MVS standards. If not specified, "(any)" is used, which prevents a match to non-generic DD names specified in TAPEREQ control statements.

### DSN or DATASET

optionally, specifies the data set name of the simulated data set to test. The format must conform to non-PDS member MVS standards. If not specified, "(any)" is used, which prevents a match to non-generic program names specified in TAPEREQ control statements.

**VOLSer**

optionally, specifies the volume serial number of the simulated data set to test. The format must conform to MVS standards. If not specified, "SCRATCH" is used, which simulates a scratch mount.

**ESOTeric**

optionally, specifies the name of a device esoteric group defining the list of eligible transports used to satisfy the tape request. The specified esoteric must be a defined MVS esoteric. If not specified, the SIMulate command simulates an original esoteric consisting of all known library, non-library, and virtual devices for all TapePlex(es). If the default esoteric is used, it may not correspond to a defined MVS esoteric.

---

**Note** – A specified esoteric of "ALL" does not specify the default simulated esoteric consisting of all known library, non-library, and virtual devices. If "ALL" is specified, it must be a defined MVS esoteric.

---

**RETPD**

optionally, specifies the retention period of the simulated data set to test. The format must conform to MVS standards. If not specified, 0 is used.

**EXPDT**

optionally, specifies the expiration date of the simulated data set to test. The format must conform to MVS standards. If not specified, the current date is used.

**LABEL**

optionally, specifies the label type to be used to select the policy.  
Valid values are SL, NL, AL and NSL.

## Output

SMC SIMulate command output displays the simulated job characteristics and policy sections displaying the SMS, TAPEREQ and SMC policy applied.

The following figure shows the "minimum" output, where no SMC tape policies were applied.

```
SMC0222 SIMULATE command results:
---- Jobstep characteristics ----
JOBNAME=(any), STEPNAME=(any), PROGRAM=(any), DDNAME=(any)
DSN-SMCINT.BT1.TEST, RETPD=0
VOLSER=SCRATCH, ESOTERIC=(any)
---- Volume lookup results ----
Owning TAPEPLEX=HSCQ
MEDIA=STANDARD, ECART, STK2P
RECTECH=LONGITUD, STK2P
---- List of eligible drives ----
0AA0 TAPEPLEX=HSCQ, ACS=00, LSM=00, 18TRACK, pref=1
0AA1 TAPEPLEX=HSCQ, ACS=00, LSM=00, 18TRACK, pref=1
remainder of drives
```

**FIGURE 2-25** SIMulate output - No Tape Policies Applied

The following figure shows output when tape policies are applied at IDAX time from a matched SMC policy.

```
SMC0222 SIMULATE command results:
----- Jobstep characteristics -----
JOBNAME=(any), STEPNAME=(any), PROGRAM=(any), DDNAME=(any)
DSN=SMCINT.MGMTCLAS.TEST, RETPD=0
VOLSER=SCRTCH, ESOTERIC=(any)
----- SMC SMS policy results -----
*SMC POLICY applied at IDAX
  ESOTERIC=CART from POLICY IDAXESOTERIC
*RETPD updated at IDAX
*VOLCNT updated at IDAX
  MGMTCLAS=TEST matches an SMC POLICY name
----- POLICY lookup results -----
  POLICY=TEST
  ESOTERIC=(SVTSS1,SVTSS2)
  MEDIA=VIRTUAL
  RECTECH=VIRTUAL
  IDAXESOTERIC=CART
  IDAXRETPD=120
  IDAXVOLCNT=25
----- Volume lookup results -----
  Owning TAPEPLEX=HSCQ
*No scratch volume for request
  MEDIA=STANDARD,ECART,STK2P,VIRTUAL
  RECTECH=LONGITUD,STK2P,VIRTUAL
----- List of eligible drives -----
  9000 TAPEPLEX=HSCQ, VTSS=SVTSS1, VIRTUAL, pref=1
  9001 TAPEPLEX=HSCQ, VTSS=SVTSS1, VIRTUAL, pref=1
  remainder of drives
```

**FIGURE 2-26** SIMulate output - Tape Policies Applied at IDAX

# SMSDef

## Interfaces:

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
 UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The SMC SMSDef command is used to tailor default SMC DFSMS support. This command takes effect when SMC DFSMS support is activated by setting the ALLOCDef SMS parameter value to ON.

During an allocation resulting in a tape mount, the SMC makes up to four calls to the DFSMS ACS routines. The SMSDef command allows you to bypass certain routine calls.

- The MGMTPol parameter specifies whether the management class returned from a DFSMS ACS routine may represent an SMC policy. MGMTPol allows the user's SMC DFSMS routines to point to an SMC POLICY with a scratch allocation, and apply **all** policy values, including media, subpool, and VTCS management class esoteric.

Using MGMTPol(ALL) (or MGMTPol(IDAX)) allows POLICY parameter names that start with IDAX\* (including IDAXESOT) to be applied during JCL interpretation, allowing override of JCL values by SMC DFSMS routines.

Oracle recommends that you specify SMSDef MGMTPol (ALL) to direct SMC to process all DFSMS returned management class names as policy names.

- If MGMTPol is OFF, or if MGMTPol is ON but no matching SMC policy name is found, the MGMTCLAS name returned by the DFSMS routine is passed as the VTCS MGMTCLAS name during volume lookup and volume mount processing.
- If VTCS is installed in your environment, Oracle recommends ensuring that all MGMTCLAS names returned by your DFSMS routines match a defined SMC POLICY name. If that is the case, specify VTVmgmt(OFF) to avoid inadvertently passing an invalid MGMTCLAS name to VTCS.

---

**Note** – VTVmgmt(ON) lets you use a MGMTCLAS from a DFSMS routine directly as a VTCS MGMTCLAS if MGMTPol is OFF, or if MGMTPol is ON but no matching SMC policy name is found. This setting applies to the old DFSMS interface format.

---

- If your environment does not support DFSMS functions, set the ALLOCDef SMS parameter to OFF (the default). The SMC bypasses all DFSMS ACS routine calls.

## Syntax

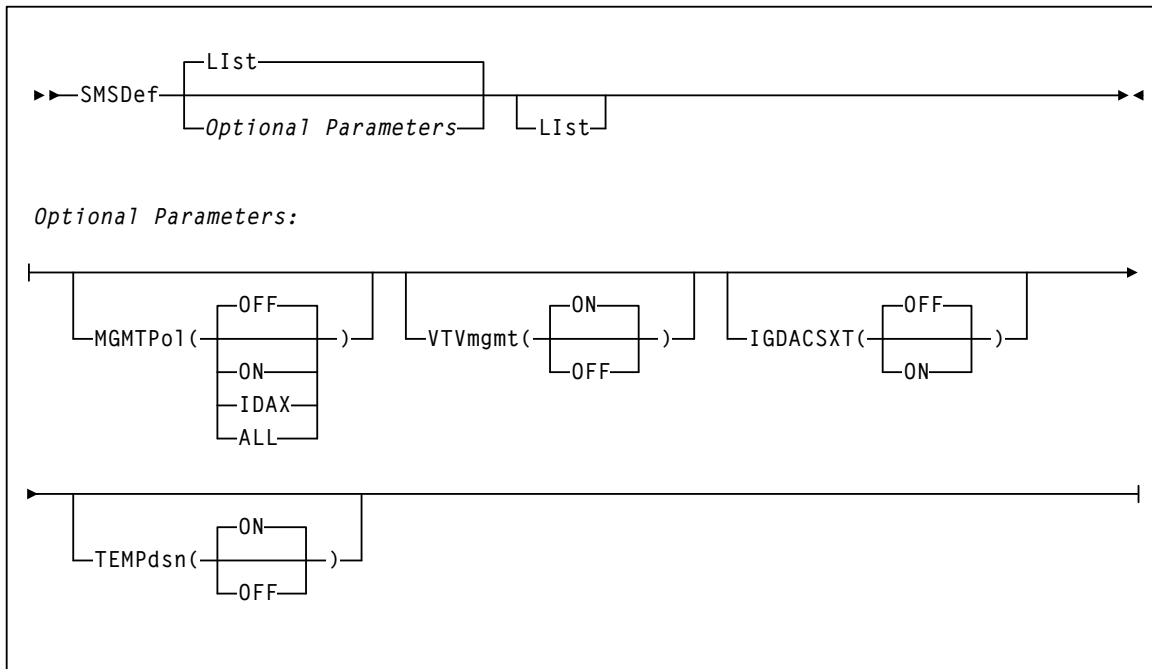


FIGURE 2-27 SMSDef syntax

## Parameters

**Note** – This command includes additional parameters that apply to the previous DFSMS interface format, which has been superseded by the SMC POLICY command. Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for information about these legacy parameters.

### List

optionally, lists the current DFSMS settings.

- List is the default when no parameters are specified on the SMSDef command.
- List may be specified with other parameters. In this case, the List is generated **after** the other parameters are processed.

### MGMPol

optionally, specifies whether the management class returned from a DFSMS ACS routine may represent an SMC policy.

#### OFF

A management class name returned from a DFSMS ACS routine is either ignored (if VTVgmt is OFF), or is interpreted as a VTCS management class name (if VTVgmt is ON). This is the default value.

**ON**

A management class name returned from an SMC DFSMS ACS routine is interpreted as an SMC policy name during allocation and mount message processing, but **not** during IDAX processing. If a matching SMC policy name is found, all policy information applies to the request. If the policy name is not found, other SMC DFSMS processing is applied as specified.

**IDAX**

A management class name returned from an SMC DFSMS ACS routine is interpreted as an SMC policy name during IDAX processing, but **not** during allocation or mount processing. If the policy name is not found, other SMC DFSMS processing is applied as specified. For example, if ESOT(ON) is specified, the returned storage group is used as a substitution esoteric.

**ALL**

A management class name returned from an SMC DFSMS ACS routine is **always** interpreted as a policy name. This is the recommended setting.

- If a matching SMC policy name is found, all policy information applies to the request.
- If the policy name is not found, other SMC DFSMS processing is applied as specified. For example, if VTVMGMT is ON, the DFSMS management class name is interpreted as a VTV management class.

---

**Note** – If MGMTPol is on, and the matching policy name contains an esoteric, the esoteric name in the policy is used during common allocation to exclude devices not contained in the specified esoteric. It is not used as a “true” esoteric substitution parameter.

---

**VTVmgmt**

optionally, specifies whether the SMC invokes the storage class and management class DFSMS ACS routines during virtual volume allocation and virtual volume mount message processing.

**ON**

If MGMTPol is OFF, or if MGMTPol is ON but no matching SMC policy name is found, the management class name is provided to VTCS during volume lookup and volume mount processing.

**OFF**

If MGMTPol is ON, the management class name returned by the DFSMS ACS routine is used to look up policy values from the named SMC policy. If no matching SMC policy name is found, no policy is applied to the request.

If MGMTPol is OFF, SMC does not invoke the DFSMS ACS storage class or management class routines during allocation or mount processing.



**IGDACSXT**

optionally, specifies whether the SMC invokes the Pre-ACS Installation Exit, IGDACSXT, before invoking the DFSMS ACS routines during SMC DFSMS processing. Refer to the IBM publication *DFSMS Installation Exits* for more information about this exit.

**ON**

The IGDACSXT exit is invoked before the SMC calls the DFSMS ACS routines. The exit receives the ACERO control block that contains the read only variable settings. The exit has the opportunity to change these settings before SMC invokes the DFSMS ACS routines.

**OFF**

The IGDACSXT exit is not invoked before the SMC calls the DFSMS ACS routines.

**TEMPdsn**

optionally, specifies whether temporary data sets are presented to the DFSMS ACS routines as permanent data sets so that a MGMTCLAS may be returned.

**ON**

The &DSTYPE read only variable is set to "2" (indicating a permanent data set) if the original data set is a temporary data set.

The &LIBNAME read only variable will contain the character "3" if the &DSTYPE read only variable is changed.

ON is the default setting.

**OFF**

The &DSTYPE read only variable is set to the actual disposition of the data set.

# STORMNGR

**Interfaces:**

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
 UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The SMC STORMNGR command defines a VLE appliance to SMC.

**Note** – STORMNGR and SERVER commands are required to access a VLE. The STORMNGR command can also list VLEs that the SMC tries to communicate with and report their status.

## Syntax

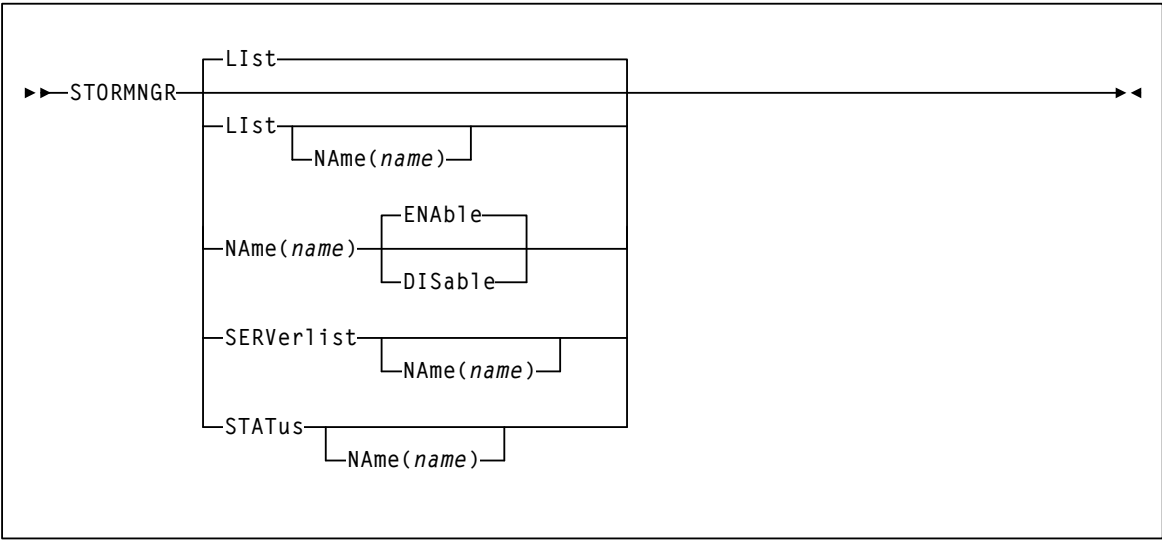


FIGURE 2-28 STORMNGR syntax

# Parameters

## List

optionally, lists all or a specific VLE.

### NAME

If specified, lists the VLE with the specified name.

## NAME

Specifies VLE to be added, modified or listed. If NAME is not specified, then all VLEs are listed.

### *name*

the VLE name, which is also defined to VTCS, and is initially defined by the VLE GUI. The following rules apply:

- The value must be between 1 and 8 characters in length.
- The first character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- The last character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- Any character between the first and last must be either an alpha character, digit or hyphen.

### ENABle

enables the specified VLE. This is the default when new VLE is added.

### DISABle

disables the specified VLE.

## SERVerlist

optionally, lists defined VLEs, their attributes and associated servers. The SERVerlist parameter can also be specified with the NAME parameter to limit the display to a single VLE.

### NAME

specifies the VLE name for which servers are to be listed.

### *name*

the VLE name.

## STATus

optionally, lists current status of all VLEs or a single named VLE.

# TAPEPlex

**Interfaces:**

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The SMC TAPEPlex command defines a TapePlex; a specific Oracle StorageTek tape hardware configuration normally represented by a single CDS. The TAPEPlex command can also list TapePlexes that the SMC tries to communicate with, and report their status.

---

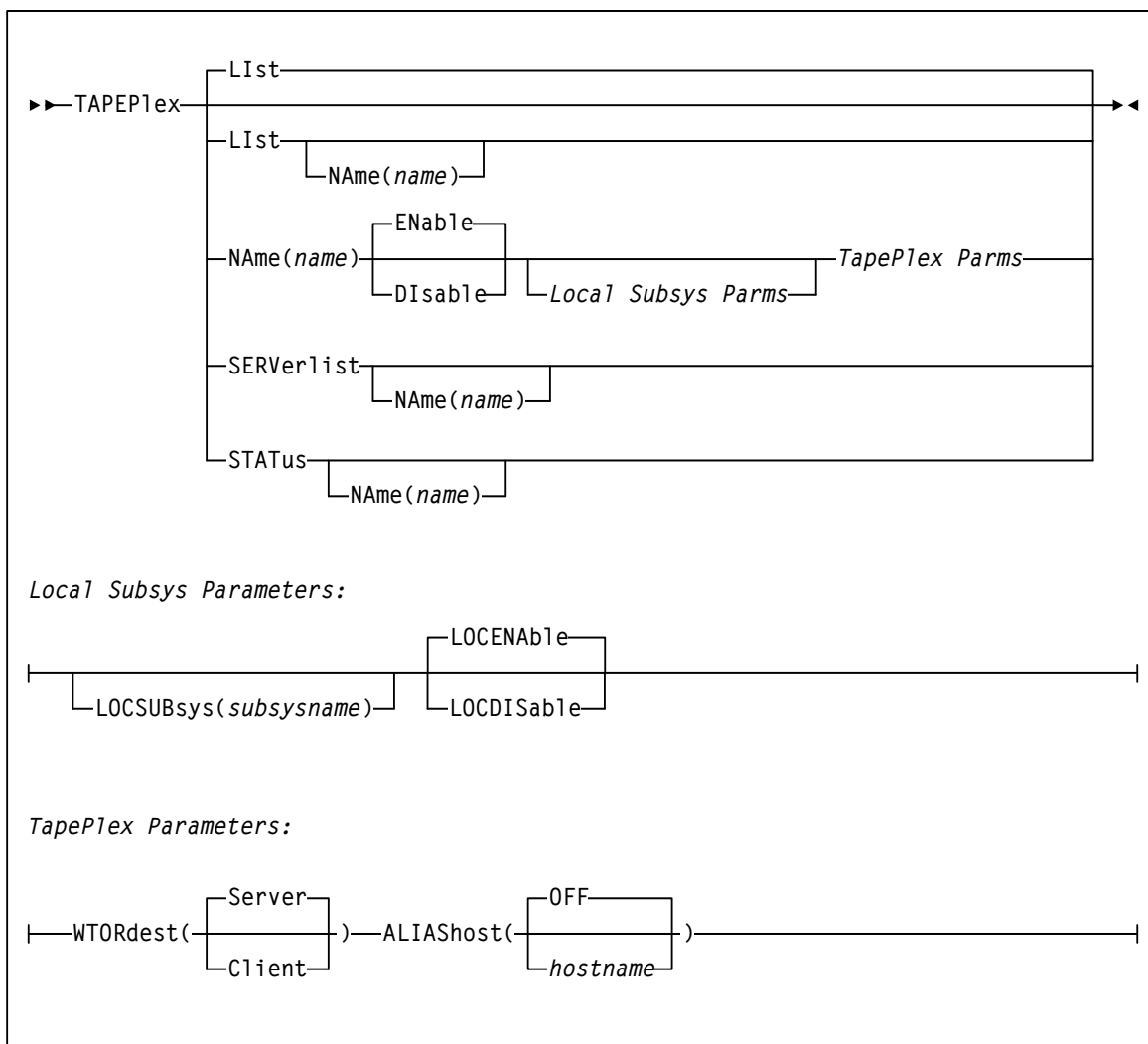
**Note –**

- You **must** include SMC TAPEPlex commands in either the SMCCMDS or SMCPARMS data set to define your TapePlexes. If no TAPEPLEX commands are found at SMC startup, then the SMC subsystem terminates and an error message is produced.

When SMC first communicates with an HSC host, this host adopts the TapePlex name specified in the SMCCMDS or SMCPARMS data set and stores it in the CDS. The CDS retains this name unless it is later changed by an SMC Set TapePlex utility command.

- TAPEPlex and SERVER commands are required to access remote HSC TapePlexes.
  - If a TAPEPlex command is specified, then all TapePlexes must be explicitly defined.
-

## Syntax



**FIGURE 2-29** TAPEPlex syntax

## Parameters

### List

optionally, lists the specified TapePlex.

#### NAME

specifies the TapePlex name to be listed.

*name*

the TapePlex name.

---

### Note –

- List is the default when no parameters are specified on the TAPEPlex command. In this case, all TapePlexes are listed.
  - List may be specified with other parameters. In this case, the named TapePlex is Listed after the other parameters are processed.
- 

### NAME

specifies the TapePlex name to be added, modified, or listed.

*name*

the TapePlex name. This name is reported in any TapePlex error message. The following rules apply:

- The value must be between 1 and 8 characters in length.
- The first character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- The last character must be either an alpha character or digit.
- Any character between the first and last must be either an alpha character, digit or hyphen.

### ENable

enables the specified TapePlex to be selected for allocation or mount requests.

### DISable

disables the specified TapePlex. The TapePlex is not used for any allocation or mount requests.

### LOCSUBsys

specifies a local HSC and/or MVS/CSC subsystem.

*subsysname*

the subsystem name.

### LOCENable

enables the specified HSC or MVS/CSC subsystem to be used as a local path to the TapePlex.

### LOCDISable

disables the specified HSC or MVS/CSC subsystem. LOCDISable can be used to force the SMC to ignore the local subsystem and access the TapePlex via a remote server

**WTORdest**

optionally, specifies the console to which HSC WTOR messages are directed. Refer to the publication *Configuring and Managing SMC* for messages that apply.

**Client**

The remote HSC returns selected WTORs to the SMC client without issuing the WTOR message. The SMC client then issues the WTOR to the operator of the system that the SMC executes on. The SMC redrives the mount or dismount request to the server supplying the WTOR response.

**Server**

WTOR messages are issued on the HSC server console. This is the default.

**ALIAShost**

optionally, specifies a host alias to be used in communications with the HSC TapePlex.

***hostname***

a 1-8 character host name.

**OFF**

The native SMF host name is used in communications with the HSC LIBRARY. This is the default.

**SERVerlist**

optionally, lists defined TapePlexes, their attributes and associated servers. The SERVerlist parameter may also be specified with the NAME parameter to limit the display to a single TapePlex.

**NAME**

specifies the TapePlex name for which servers are to be listed.

***name***

the TapePlex name.

**STATus**

optionally, lists current status of all TapePlexes, or a single named TapePlex. The TapePlex status indicates whether a TapePlex is active, inactive, or disabled. For an active TapePlex, the status lists the name of the current server or local subsystem. STATus does not perform a RESYNChronize.

**NAME**

specifies the TapePlex name for which status information is to be listed.

***name***

the TapePlex name.

# TCPip

**Interfaces:**

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The SMC TCPip command alters and/or lists current TCPNAME and ADSNAME defaults for your TCP/IP communications environment. It allows you to direct TCP/IP requests to a specific TCP/IP stack on an MVS host.

## Syntax

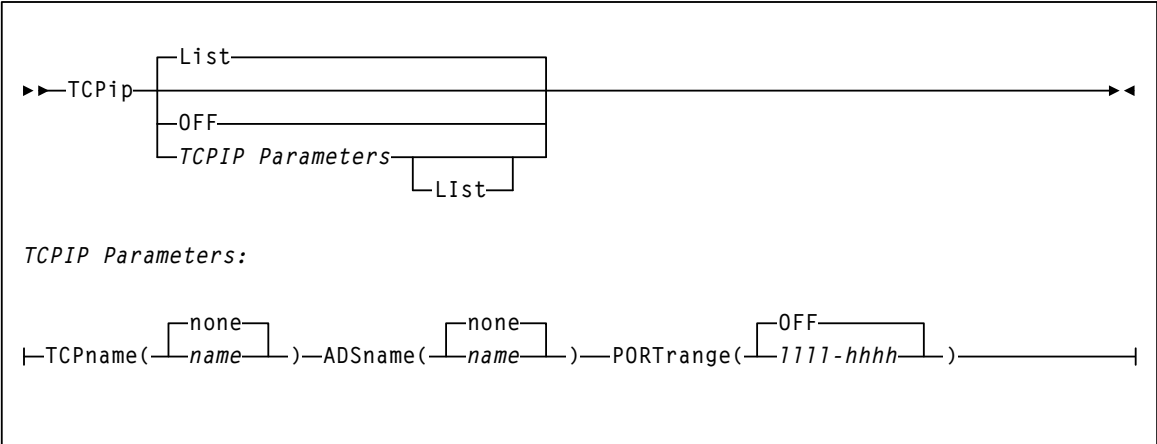


FIGURE 2-30 TCPip syntax



## Parameters

### Llist

optionally, lists current TCPNAME and ADSNAME settings. If a PORTrange is specified, Llist also displays currently bound port numbers and the high-water bound port number indicating the largest number of concurrent communication subtasks executing at one time.

- Llist is the default when no parameters are specified on the TCPip command.
- Llist may be specified with other parameters. In this case, the Llist is generated **after** the other parameters are processed.

### OFF

optionally, specifies that system defaults are used for client TCP/IP communication.

### TCPname

optionally, specifies the TCPNAME value for a specific TCP/IP stack on an MVS host. TCPNAME is the name of the MVS TCP/IP stack. Refer to the IBM publication *TCP/IP for MVS Application Programming Interface Reference* for more information about TCPNAME. The default is none.

*name*

the TCPNAME value

- If a subsystem name is specified, it must consist of one to four alphanumeric or national (#,@,\$) characters, the first character being alphabetic or national.
- If an address name is specified, it must consist of one to eight alphanumeric or national characters.

### ADSname

optionally, specifies the ADSNAME value for a specific TCP/IP stack on an MVS host. ADSNAME is the jobname of the TCP/IP startup job. Refer to the IBM publication *TCP/IP for MVS Application Programming Interface Reference* for more information about ADSNAME.

*name*

the ADSNAME value.

**PORTrange**

optionally, specifies a range of ports to be used by the SMC to bind() sockets on the client when communicating on remote server paths.

When PORTrange is defined, the SMC binds() client sockets to one of the ports within the specified PORTrange and will **not** use client ports outside the PORTrange. This allows the SMC to operate behind a firewall that restricts communication to known ports. A unique port is required for each concurrent subtask requiring communication services for a volume lookup, mount, etc. If a PORTrange is not defined, then any ephemeral port is used by the SMC.

Only one PORTrange can be active at a time, but you can dynamically re-define the PORTrange even if the new PORTrange overlaps with the old PORTrange.

*nnnnn-nnnnn*

the port number range.

Each port number can have a value of 1-65535. However:

- The **minimum** port number range that can be specified is **10** (e.g., 6400-6410).
- The **maximum** port number range that can be specified is **1000** (e.g., 6400-6500).

**OFF**

PORTrange logic is disabled. As a result, any ephemeral port is used.

---

**Note –**

- It is recommended that you specify a PORTrange that does not conflict with TCP/IP well-known ports.
  - It is recommended that you specify a PORTrange greater than the anticipated number of concurrent subtasks requesting remote communication services. For most installations, a PORTrange of 40 ports is sufficient. However, if SMC0128 messages are produced with a return code indicating “no free port” then a larger PORTrange is required.
  - When an SMC mount request to the HSC server results in an outstanding WTOR on the HSC, the used port number is unavailable until a reply is supplied for the outstanding WTOR. WTOR messages for mount requests are produced on the HSC when TAPEPlex WTORdest(SERVER) is specified, or when TAPEPlex WTORdest(CLIENT) is specified and the HSC mount message is not one returned to the SMC for processing. Refer to the publication *Configuring and Managing SMC* for messages that apply.
  - The TCPip LIST command may be used to display the high-water port number, indicating the largest number of concurrent communication subtasks executing at one time.
-

---

# TRace

**Interfaces:**

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

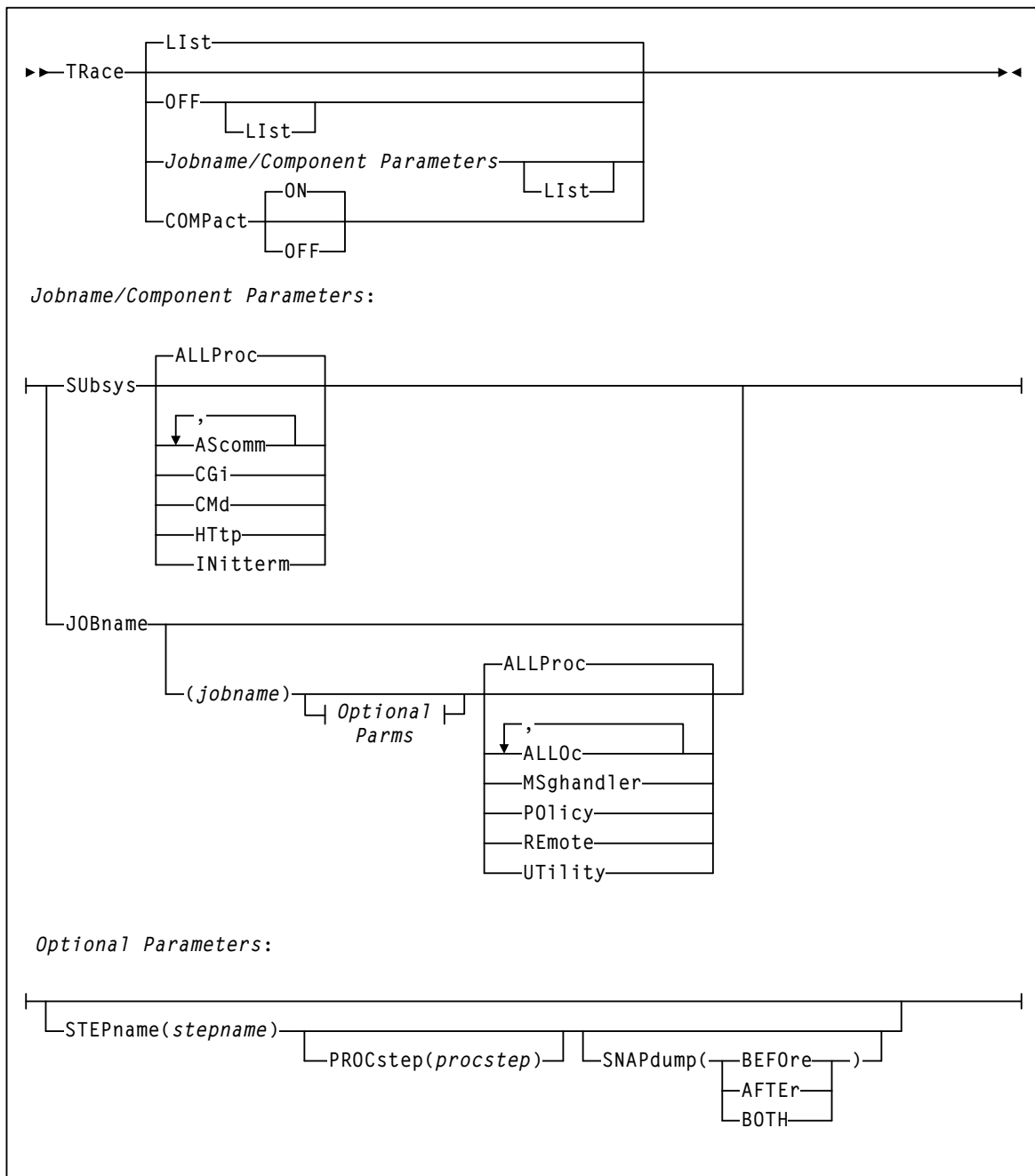
The SMC TRace command enables SMC tracing using the GTF trace facility and optionally provides a snap dump of the address space before and after control block modification.

---

**Note –**

- SMC TRace processing may impact system performance and should be used **only** as directed by Oracle StorageTek Software Support.
  - TRace JOBname(*jobname*) causes SMC traces to be produced for UUI commands issued by the HSC or VTCS subsystem address space when *jobname* matches the HSC subsystem name. UUI tracing is extremely CPU intensive and should only be used as directed by Oracle StorageTek Software Support.
-

# Syntax



**FIGURE 2-31** TRace syntax

## Parameters

### Llist

optionally, lists current SMC trace settings for both the SMC subsystems and SMC components by job name, step name, and PROC step.

- Llist is the default when no parameters are specified on the TRace command.
- Llist may be specified with other parameters. In this case, the Llist is generated **after** the other parameters are processed.
- If no JOBname is specified, all jobs with SMC components being traced are listed.
- If JOBname is specified, **only** those jobs with SMC components being traced whose job name matches the specified job JOBname are listed.

### OFF

optionally, disables SMC tracing.

- If no other parameters are specified, tracing is disabled for all jobs.
- If only JOBname is specified, tracing is disabled for all entries for that job name.
- If JOBname, STEPname and PROCstep are specified, tracing is disabled **only** for the specified entry.

### COMPact

Optionally, indicates whether SMC trace output should be produced in "compact" format.

---

**Note** – When GTF trace output is produced in this format, you can use the SMC utility program SMCUGTF to reformat the trace to the original SMC trace format. See [“Trace Format Utility \(SMCUGTF\)” on page 682](#).

---

### ON

SMC trace output is produced in a format that conserves GTF dataset space. This is the default.

### OFF

SMC trace output is produced in human readable format.

## Jobname/Component Parameters

### SUbsys

optionally, enables or disables SMC tracing for one or more SMC subsystem components or subtasks.

### ALLProc

optionally, enables tracing for all SMC subsystem components and tasks. This is the default if no parameters are specified.

### AScomm

optionally, enables tracing for all SMC subsystem ASCOMM Component tasks.

**CGi**

optionally, enables tracing for all SMC subsystem CGI module processing for all connected client requests. To trace CGI module execution for individual client requests, issue a TRace JOBname REMOTE command on the appropriate SMC client.

**CMd**

optionally, enables tracing for all SMC subsystem Operator Command Component tasks.

**HTtp**

Optionally, enables tracing for all SMC subsystem HTTP Server Component tasks.

**INit**

Optionally, enables tracing for all SMC subsystem Initiation/Termination Component tasks.

**JOBname**

optionally, enables or disables SMC tracing for one or more initiator components in initiators that match the specified jobname, stepname, and procstep name specified. If not specified, tracing information for all jobs is displayed.

***jobname***

a specific job name

The value entered must be one to eight characters in length. An asterisk (\*) can be used as a wildcard when included as the last character. In this case, all jobs whose job names match the characters preceding the asterisk are traced or listed. To trace all jobs, specify TRACE JOB(\*).

**ALLProc**

optionally, enables tracing for all SMC initiator components executing in initiators that match the specified jobname, stepname, and procstep name specified. This is the default if no parameters are specified.

**ALLOc**

optionally, enables tracing for all SMC Allocation and JES3 Component tasks executing in initiators that match the specified jobname, stepname, and procstep name specified.

**MSghandler**

optionally, enables tracing for all SMC Message Handler Component tasks executing in initiators that match the specified jobname, stepname, and procstep name specified.

**POLicy**

optionally, enables tracing for SMC POLicy name and selection criteria to the job log of the jobname specified in the TRace command for allocation and mount policies.

---

**Note** – NOTE: POLicy tracing does not rely on the GTF trace being active.

---

**REmote**

optionally, enables tracing in the remote SMC HTTP Server for requests originating from the jobname, stepname, and procstep name specified.

---

**Note** – NOTE: REmote tracing does not rely on the GTF trace being active on the SMC client, but GTF tracing must be active on the corresponding SMC HTTP Server.

---

**UTility**

optionally, enables tracing for all SMC Utility Component tasks executing in initiators that match the specified jobname, stepname, and procstep name specified.

## Optional Parameters

**STEPname**

optionally, specifies a step name.

*stepname*

the step name.

The value entered must be one to eight characters in length. This parameter is **only** valid if JOBname is also specified. It is **not** valid in JES3 environments with TAPE SETUP processing.

**PROCstep**

optionally, specifies a PROC step.

*procstep*

the PROC step.

The value entered must be one to eight characters in length. This parameter is **only** valid if JOBname and STEPname are also specified. It is **not** valid in JES3 environments with TAPE SETUP processing.

**SNAPdump**

optionally, requests a snap dump. This parameter is **not** valid in JES3 environments with TAPE SETUP processing.

---

**Note** – A snap dump may impact system performance, and should be used **only** as directed by Oracle StorageTek Software Support.

---

**BEFORe**

requests a snap dump before allocation influencing.

**AFTEr**

requests a snap dump after allocation influencing.

**BOTH**

requests a snap dump both before and after allocation influencing.

# TREQDef

## Interfaces:

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
 UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The SMC TREQDef command specifies and loads the definition data set containing your tape request (TAPEREQ) parameter statements.

---

**Note** – Existing HSC TREQDEF control statements are **not** disabled, but are only processed for remote SMC 6.0 client systems.

---

## Syntax

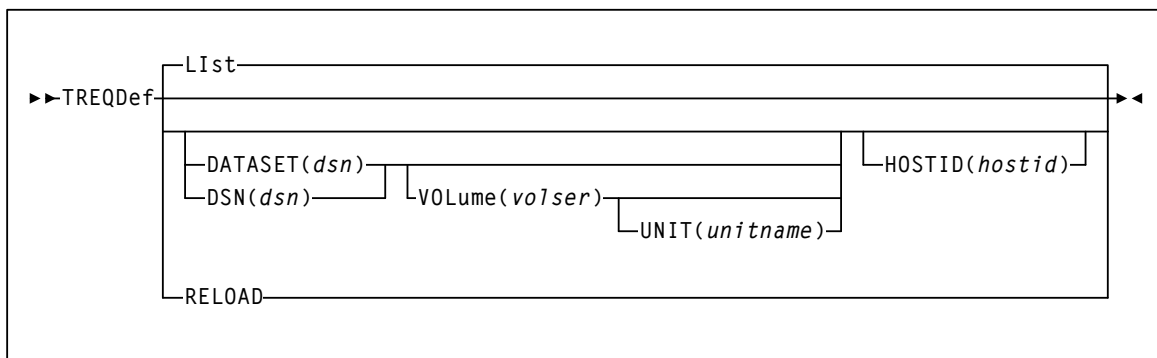


FIGURE 2-32 TREQDef syntax



## Parameters

### List

lists information about the definition data set containing TAPEREQ control statements that are currently loaded. Information includes:

- Data set name
- Member name
- Identifying string (if the data set contains an OPTION TITLE statement)
- Date and time parameters were loaded

List is the default when no parameters are specified on the TREQDef command.

### DATASET or DSN

optionally, specifies the name of the data set containing the TAPEREQ control statements to be processed and, optionally, an OPTION TITLE control statement.

---

**Note** – See [“OPTION TITLE Control Statement” on page 519](#) for more information about the OPTION TITLE control statement.

---

#### *dsn*

the data set name.

This data set can be a fixed length 80-byte sequential data set, or a fixed length 80-byte member of a PDS. If the data set name includes a member name, you must enclose the *dsn* in quotes. For example:

```
DATASET ( ' YOUR . PDS . DSN (MEMBER) ' )
```

### VOLume

optionally, specifies the volume serial number of the DASD volume on which the data set resides. Specify this parameter if the data set is not cataloged.

#### *volser*

the volume serial number.

### UNIT

optionally, specifies the unit name of the specified VOLume for uncataloged data sets. Requires that VOLume also be specified.

#### *unitname*

the unit name.

If not specified, then a unit name of SYSALLDA is the default.

### HOSTID

optionally, specifies the hostid from which to execute this control statement. This parameter is valid only for use in PARMLIB, to allow multiple systems to share a parmlib member containing multiple TAPEREQ control statement members.

#### *hostid*

the host name(s) from which to execute this control statement. Multiple host names must be separated by commas.

**RELOAD**

optionally, reloads the currently loaded TAPEREQ control statements from the same data set. This parameter can be used after a TREQDEF DSN(*dsn*) command is issued, and changes may then be made to the contents of that data set.

## TAPEREQ Control Statement

The SMC TAPEREQ control statement specifies a named POLicy to be applied to a particular jobname, stepname, program name, data set or group of data sets.

TAPEREQ statements are placed in the definition data set (DDname) specified by the SMC TREQDEF command. SMC allocation calls on these TAPEREQ statements to help ensure that the correct media type is used to satisfy a request, and that the cartridge is mounted on the appropriate device. TAPEREQ statements must be placed in the definition data set; they **cannot** be issued as operator commands.

The SMC POLicy command allows you to specify all tape policy specifications in a single named object. It is used with TAPEREQ statements or SMS to associate a named policy with an allocation or mount event.

The TAPEREQ POLicy parameter directs the SMC to reference an associated SMC policy defined by an SMC POLicy command. Refer to the publication *Configuring and Managing SMC* for more information.

---

### Note –

- In previous software releases, TAPEREQ parameters were used to define tape attributes. Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for information about these legacy parameters.
  - See [“TREQDef” on page 160](#) for information about the TREQDEF Command.
-

## Syntax

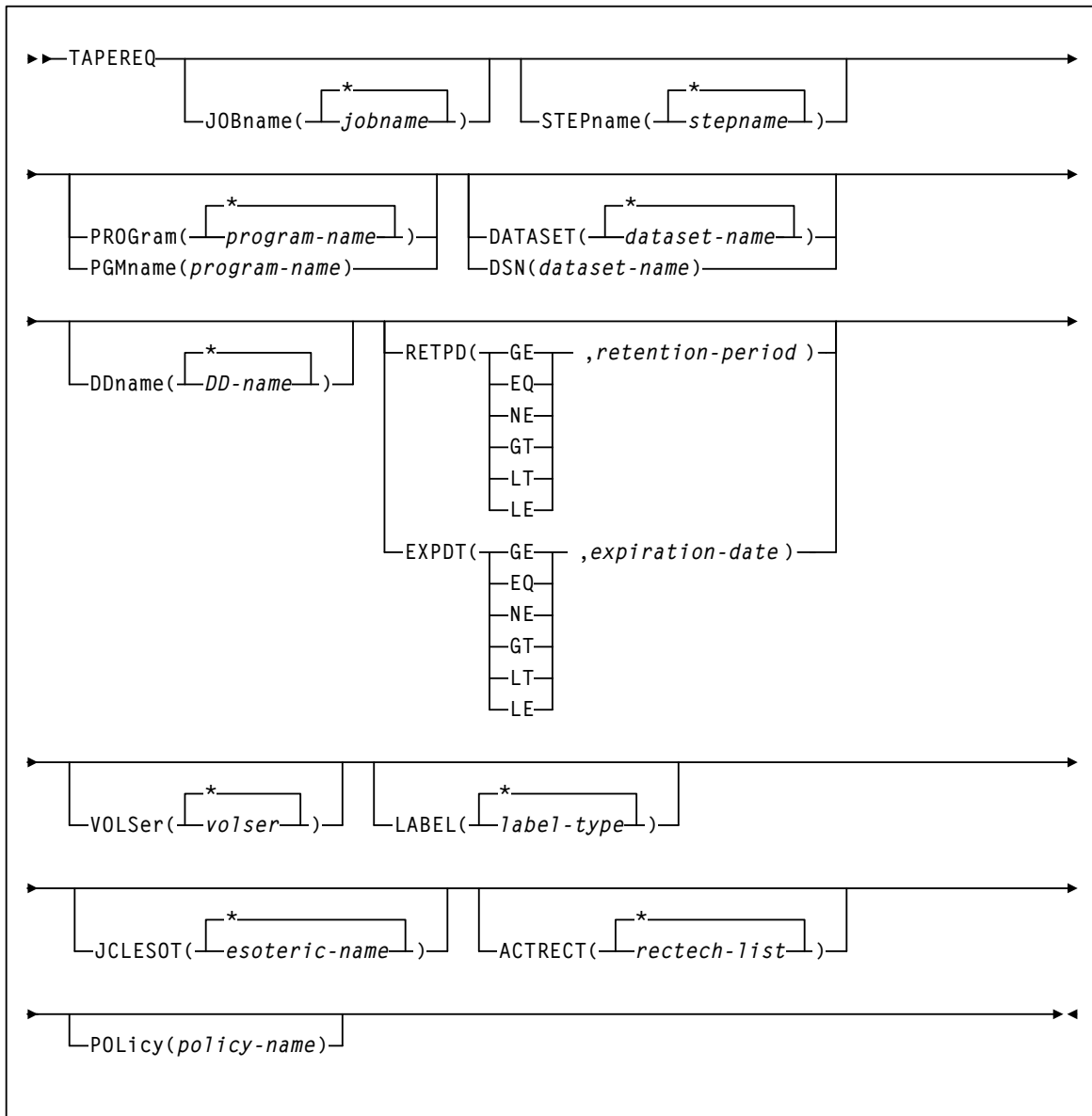


FIGURE 2-33 TAPEREQ control statement syntax

## Control Statement Name

### TAPEREQ

initiates the TAPEREQ control statement.

If any of the following conditions exist:

- There is no TAPEREQ control statement specified in the definition data set to match a request.
- There is no matching Policy command specifying the MEDia, RECtech, or MODel parameters.
- There is no definition data loaded.

then the MEDia and RECtech or MODel parameters are set to undefined, which matches all requests. Any available device is eligible for allocation.

## Parameters

---

**Note** – The JOBname, STEPname, PROGram, and DATASET parameter values can include the following wild card characters:

% or ?	any single nonblank character
*	any character string (length zero to 8) not to exceed one qualification level. For example, A.B.* matches A.B and A.B.C, but does not match A.B.C.D.
**	used only in DATASET. Indicates any number of qualifiers (zero or more). Cannot be used with any other characters within a qualifier. For example, A.B.** matches A.B, A.B.C, A.B.C.D, A.B.C.D.E, and so forth.

---

### JOBname

optionally, identifies the job name. If JOBname is not specified, the default value is \*.

---

**Note** – If you are coding a TAPEREQ statement for DFHSM, you must specify JOBname as a selection criteria. Using DATASET (DSN) can cause unpredictable results.

---

#### *jobname*

the name of the job for which the TAPEREQ control statement is processed.

The TAPEREQ control statement is used only when the specified *jobname* matches the job name in the request.

### STEPname

optionally, specifies the step name. If the STEPname parameter is not specified, the default value is \*.

#### *stepname*

the name of the step for which the TAPEREQ control statement is processed. The TAPEREQ control statement is used only when the specified *stepname* matches the step name in the request.

**PROG**ram or **PGM**name

optionally, specifies the program name.

The program name used is the job step program name. The default value is \*.

*program-name*

the program name for which the TAPEREQ control statement is processed.

The TAPEREQ control statement is used only when the specified *program-name* matches the program name in the request.

---

**Note** – This parameter is **not** supported in JES3 environments.

---

**DATASET** or **DSN**

optionally, specifies the data set name. The default value is \*\*.

*dataset.name*

the data set name for which the TAPEREQ control statement is processed.

The TAPEREQ control statement is used only when the specified *dataset.name* matches the data set name in the request. Rules for RACF and SMS enhanced generic naming apply.

**Note** –

- If you are coding a TAPEREQ statement for DFHSM, you must specify JOBname as a selection criterion. Using DATASET (DSN) can cause unpredictable results.
- The name you specify on this parameter might be different from the value coded in the DSN parameter on a DD statement. For example,

DSN=&&ABC

may be coded on a DD statement if a data set is temporary. However, the actual data set name is not &&ABC. Similarly, if the DSN parameter refers back to a previous DD statement, the data set name is resolved to the referred-to data set. Thus, the data set name referred to must be coded on the DATASET parameter in order for the TAPEREQ control statement to be processed.

---

**DD**name

optionally, specifies the DD name of the data set.

*DD-name*

the DD name.

**RETPD**

optionally, specifies the retention period and the relationship that must exist. If you do not specify either RETPD or EXPDT, the default value is RETPD(GE,0) (any expiration date will match this criterion).

EQ	equal to
NE	not equal to
GT	greater than
GE	greater than or equal to
LT	less than
LE	less than or equal to

***retention-period***

the retention period in days for the data set.

Specify the number of days as a 1- to 4-digit decimal number.

---

**Note** – This parameter is **not** supported in JES3 environments.

---

**EXPDT**

optionally, specifies the expiration date and the relationship that must exist.

EQ	equal to
NE	not equal to
GT	greater than
GE	greater than or equal to
LT	less than
LE	less than or equal to

***expiration-date***

the expiration date of the data set in YYDDD or YYYY/DDD format.

---

**Note** – This parameter is **not** supported in JES3 environments.

---

**VOLSer**

optionally, identifies a specific volume id. If VOLSer is omitted, the default value is \* (any volume). A range of volsers can also be specified.

Using a combination of TAPEREQ statements and POLicy commands, SMC allows you to specify allocation policy based on specific volume serial numbers. Refer to the publication *Configuring and Managing SMC* for more information.

***volsr***

the volume id.

---

**Note** – VOLSer requires that the POLicy parameter is also specified.

---

**LABEL**

optionally, specifies the label type to be used to select the policy.  
Valid values are SL, NL, AL and NSL.

---

**Note** – LABEL is valid only if POLICY is also specified.

---

**JCLESOT**

optionally, specifies the name of a device esoteric group to be matched with the esoteric supplied in the JCL (or via IDAXESOT).

*esoteric-name*

the esoteric group name.

This can consist of one to eight alphanumeric or national (#, @, \$) characters. A slash (/) or hyphen (-) is also valid.

**Note –**

- JCLESOT is valid only if POLICY is also specified.
  - JCLESOT only matches at SSI55 (IDAX) or SSI24 (allocation) time, such that a POLICY containing SUBPOOL and MGMTCLAS will not be selected by this parameter.
- 

The following example illustrates the use of the JCLESOT and ACTRECT parameters:

```
TAPEREQ DSN(V047970.JCLESOT.*) JCLESOT(HVTSS11) POLICY(POL1)
TAPEREQ DSN(V047970.JCLESOT.*) ACTRECT(V) POLICY(POL1)
TAPEREQ DSN(**) POLICY(POL2)

POLICY NAME(POL1) MED(V) REC(V) MGMT(HSCX400) SUBP(SUBP1)
POLICY NAME(POL2) MED(ECART)
```

In this example, jobs that specify UNIT=HVTSS11 (with the matching DSN) will be assigned a VIRTUAL media and rectech at SSI55/SSI24 time. All other data sets will be assigned a media of ECART. At mount message time, if the rectech of the allocated drive is virtual for the matching DSN, then the mgmtclas and subpool from POL1 are assigned. Otherwise, no subpool or mgmtclas is assigned.

**ACTRECT**

optionally, specifies the recording technique to be used to determine the policy at mount time if the drive where the mount is requested conflicts with the previously selected policy.

For example, if the JCL esoteric prevents selection of a policy recording technique or esoteric substitution, the selected policy might have a scratch subpool inconsistent with the drive where the mount is requested. Specifying ACTRECT allows a default override.

*rectech-list*

the recording technique list.



**POLicy**

optionally, specifies the name of a policy (defined by an SMC POLicy command) to be associated with the allocation or mount request.

***policy-name***

the policy name.

The SMC uses this policy name to determine all policy information associated with an allocation or mount request.

---

**Note –**

- The named policy must be defined using a POLicy command before the TREQDEF command is processed.
  - See [“POLicy” on page 117](#) for more information about the SMC POLicy command.
  - Refer to the publication *Configuring and Managing SMC* for information about creating new POLicy definitions based on existing TAPEREQ statements.
- 

**Disabling a TAPEREQ Definition**

Use the following procedure to disable a TAPEREQ definition.

1. Edit the definition data set containing the current TAPEREQ control statements.
2. Delete the parameters of the TAPEREQ control statement you want to disable, or delete the TAPEREQ control statement.
3. Issue the TREQDEF operator command to reload the definition data set.

To disable all TAPEREQ definitions, load a definition data set that contains only one TAPEREQ control statement with no parameters.

---

**Note –** If any individual TAPEREQ control statement is in error, the entire set is discarded.

---

---

# UEXit

**Interfaces:**

Console, utility, or SMCCMDS/SMCPARMS data set  
UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

User exits 1, 2, 4, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, and 13 are invoked and managed by the SMC. The UEXit command defines which load module is invoked for a specific user exit, and whether the user exit is enabled or disabled. Both HSC and MVS/CSC user exit formats are supported. The UEXit command specifies the user exit format.

---

**Note –**

- Use this command to load each user exit you wish to use. If a user exit is not loaded, it will **not** be called.
  - All user exits are executed on the host where the SMC resides, regardless of where the library server resides.
  - Only one format of a given user exit can be invoked, regardless of the number of TapePlexes the SMC interacts with. The desired format (HSC or MVS/CSC) is specified using the FORMat parameter.
  - HSC User exit 7 (SLSUX07) is no longer supported.
  - These user exits must reside in a library accessible to the subsystem.
  - User exit information is **not** honored when an SMC POLicy applies to an allocation, or a mount.
  - Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for information about each user exit.
-

## Syntax

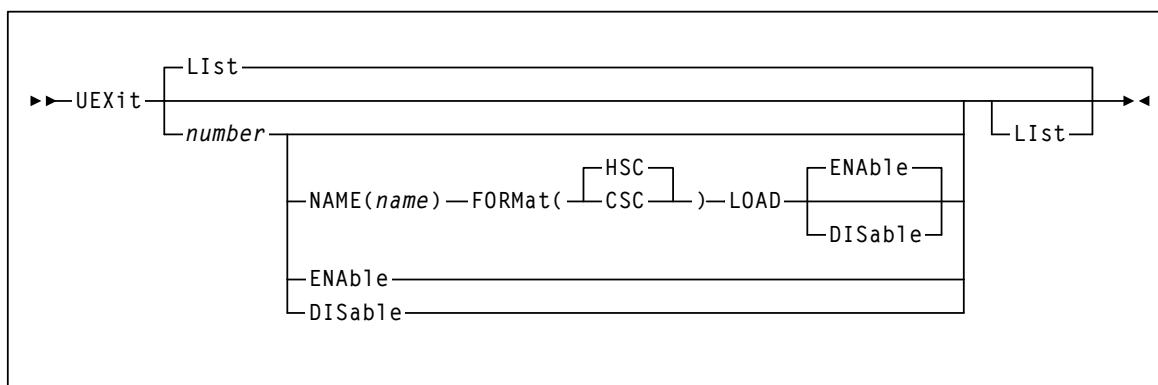


FIGURE 2-34 UExIt syntax

## Parameters

### Lst

optionally, displays status information for all user exits.

- Lst is the default when no parameters are specified on the UExIt command.
- Lst may be specified with other parameters. In this case, the Lst is generated **after** the other parameters are processed.

### *number*

optionally, specifies the user exit number. Valid values are 1, 2, 4, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, and 13.

### NAME

optionally, specifies the user exit's load module name.

#### *name*

the load module name (e.g., SLSUX01).

### FORMat

optionally, specifies the format of user exit to be enabled or disabled.

#### HSC

the HSC user exit format.

#### CSC

the MVS/CSC user exit format.

## **LOAD**

optionally, loads the specified user exit, making it available for use.

---

### **Note –**

- If a user exit is not loaded, it will **not** be called.
  - A subsequent load of a module for the same user exit causes the currently active copy of the load module to be deleted when its use count reaches zero.
- 

## **ENable**

optionally, enables a user exit that was previously disabled due to a problem.

## **DISable**

optionally, disables a user exit to allow for problem resolution.

---

# UNITAttr

**Interfaces:**

Console or SMCCMDS data set  
UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The SMC acquires drive type information from both the z/OS operating system and the ELS library control systems (TapePlexes). For the ELS library control systems, HSC and MVS/CSC, data returned from configuration queries is used to augment information returned from the operating system for library-controlled devices.

The SMC UNITAttr command allows you to specify device addresses and attributes to augment operating system information for nonlibrary controlled devices, and effectively ignore configuration information from TapePlexes for specified devices when multiple TapePlexes define the same device address. The SMC UNITAttr command allows you to do the following:

- Set MODEL=IGNORE for device addresses not available for this host.
- Specify model types for nonlibrary devices on this host.
- Specify NOTAPEPlex for a nonlibrary device address or range that is defined to multiple TapePlexes, but for this host the attached devices belong to the specified TapePlex.
- Specify TapePlex ownership and model for devices that may be referenced by a mount after the SMC is started but before the TapePlex is initialized.

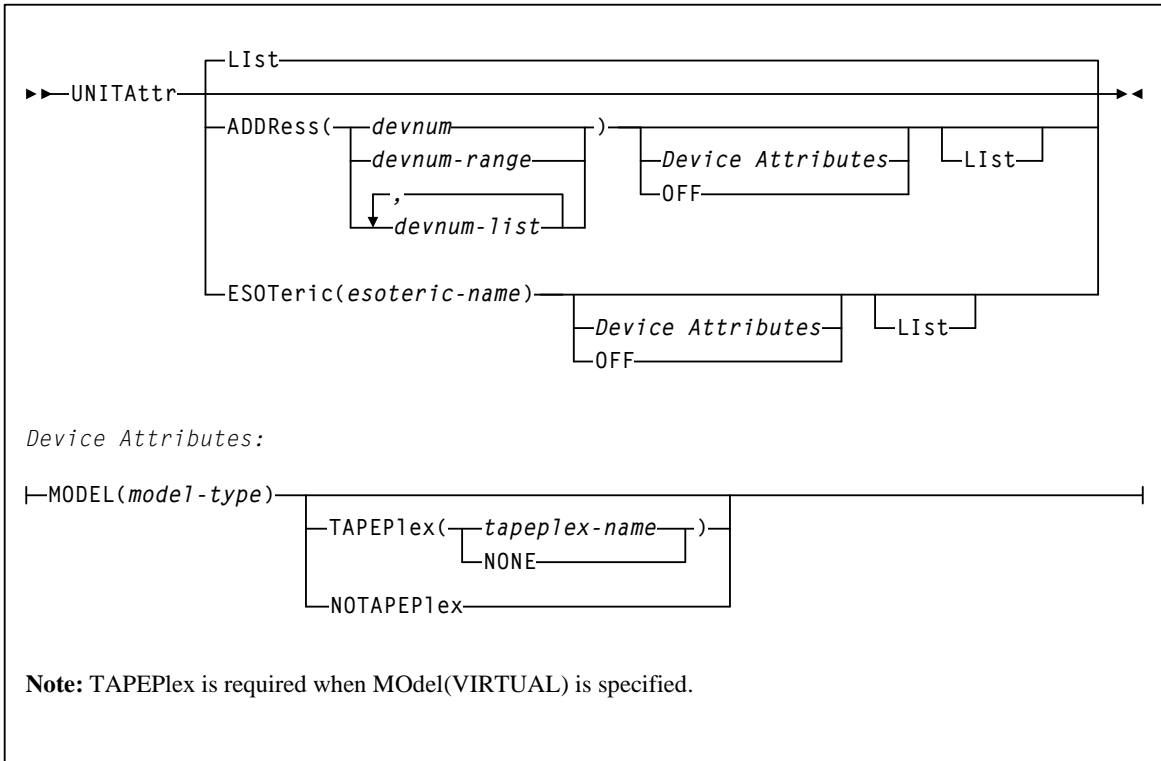
Refer to the publication *Configuring and Managing SMC* for information about configurations that may require or benefit from the use of UNITAttr commands.

---

**Note –**

- Existing HSC UNITATTR control statements are not disabled. However, UNITATTR statements for nonlibrary and MODEL(IGNORE) devices are only processed for remote SMC 6.0 client systems. HSC UNITATTR statements for library and virtual drives are not used in any HSC processing after release 6.0.
  - SMC does not support a UNITDEF command. Each UNITATTR command is parsed and processed independently.
  - HSC nonlibrary and MODEL=IGNORE UNITATTR statements are no longer returned to SMC on a configuration query. Therefore, if you use UNITAttr to bypass devices for allocation or to define the device type of nonlibrary drives, you must define these UNITATTR commands to the SMC subsystem.
-

# Syntax



**FIGURE 2-35** UNITAttr syntax

## Parameters

## ADDResS

optionally, specifies device numbers for which UNITAttr device attributes are assigned.

*devnum, devnum-range, devnum-list*

the device number, device number range, or device number list.

ESOTeric

optionally, specifies an esoteric for which UNITAttr device attributes are assigned. When device characteristics are modified, all of the devices in the specified esoteric are modified.

*esoteric-name*

the MVS esoteric name. This name must be defined to MVS, and must contain **only** tape devices known to SMC.

OFF

optionally, specifies that the model type for the device numbers specified by the ADDRESS parameter or ESOTeric parameter should be determined from the device UCB, or, for a device which was previously set to MODEL=IGNORE, that the MODEL information from the library server should be restored.

**List**

lists the UNITAttr model information for the device numbers specified by the ADDRESS or ESOTeric parameter.

*device attributes:***Model**

optionally, specifies the model type of the transport to be assigned the device numbers specified by the ADDRESS parameter.

*model-type*

the model type.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODEL Values”](#) for a list of valid *model-type* values.

**TAPEPlex**

optionally, specifies the name of a TapePlex to be associated with the drive before communication is established.

---

**Note –** TAPEPlex is **required** when Model(VIRTUAL) is specified. Model(VIRTUAL) drives cannot exist as "non-library" devices.

---

*TapePlex-name*

the TapePlex name.

If specified, this name must match a TapePlex name defined in a TAPEPlex command.

**NONE**

optionally, removes the TapePlex association from the specified device addresses.

**NOTAPEPlex**

optionally, specifies that the specified address or address range are nonlibrary devices, even when configuration queries from ELS library control systems indicate that the device is library controlled. Use this parameter when a local nonlibrary device address overlaps a TapePlex owned device that is not accessible from his host.

**Note –**

- When a Model is specified with TAPEPlex, the configuration query model information returned from the TapePlex is assumed to be the “real” or “correct” model, and it overrides any Model specified in the UNITAttr command.
  - If TAPEPlex is specified for an address, but that address is not returned from the configuration query for that TapePlex, an error message is issued, but the erroneous TapePlex ownership remains with the specified device address. As a result, any mounts destined for the specified device address are not automated and are rejected by the specified TapePlex.
-

# USERMsg

### Interfaces:

Console or SMCPARMS data set

UUI: Yes (No XML/CSV output)

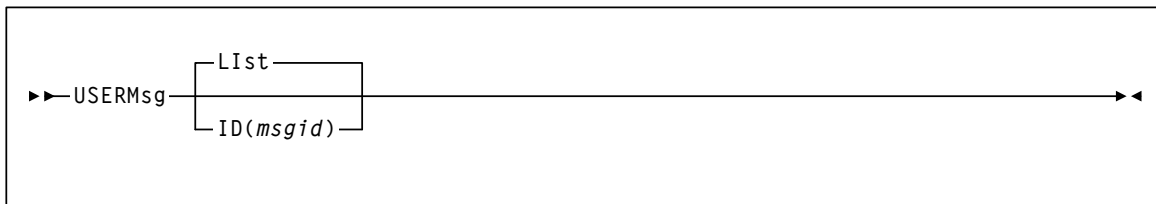
### Subsystem Requirements:

Active SMC required, or may be input to the SMCUSIM utility

## Description

The SMC USERMsg command allows you to specify additional message identifiers for messages to be intercepted and passed to the library subsystem's user exit 01. This command can also be used to list the message identifiers of those messages that have been defined using the USERMsg command.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 2-36** USERMsg syntax

## Parameters

## List

optionally, lists the message identifiers in the customer-defined message table. This is the default if no parameters are specified.

## ID

optionally, specifies a message to be added to the customer-defined message table. This message is passed to user exit 01.

*msgid*

the message identifier for the message to be added.

**Note** – This parameter may **only** be specified in the SMCPARMS data set.



## HSC and VTCS Commands and Control Statements

---

This chapter contains reference information about HSC and VTCS commands and control statements.

---

**Note –**

- Control statements that are loaded by an operator command are described along with that command. Other control statements, including those specified in the PARMLIB data set, are described independently.
  - Certain HSC and VTCS commands are described in the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference*. These commands were introduced in a pre-ELS software release and their functionality has been replaced in ELS. These commands are supported by ELS, however, this support will end in a future release.
-

# ACTivities

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UUI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

The ACTivities command generates a statistical report of library resource loading by volume groups (for example, scratch compared to nonscratch, pass-thru activity, mounts, dismounts, entered, and ejected). This report provides information to help you monitor library resources and usage.

The utility also requires the SMF data for the time period requested (see [“SET SMF” on page 577](#)). It is assumed that you elect to have cartridge movement SMF records recorded in the time period specified. It is also assumed that the SMF records are in sequence by:

- SMF ID
- date
- time, from earliest to latest.

Duplicate or out of sequence records cause the utility to terminate and to display a message indicating that the SMF records are not sorted. See [“Additional Sort Control Cards” on page 180](#) for sort statements you can specify to avoid this situation.

---

**Note** – Periodic performance statistics are not available for the SL8500 library. Volume movement statistics, including enter, eject, mount, dismount, and move, are produced for all library types.

---

## Syntax

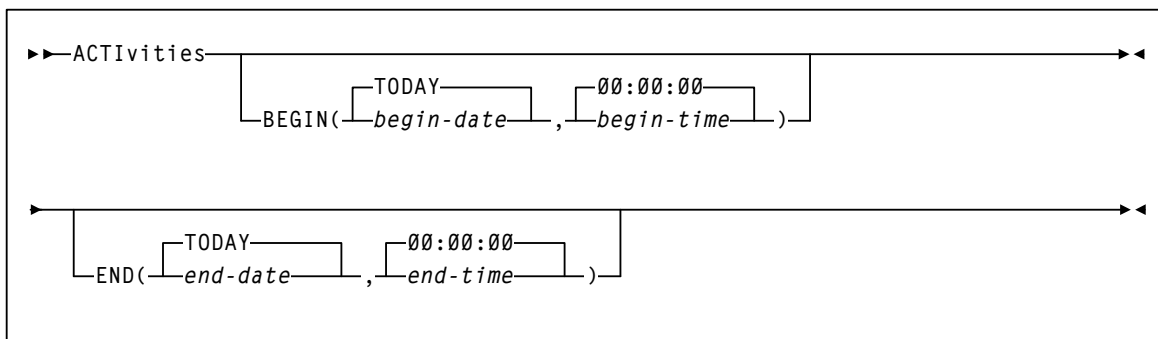


FIGURE 3-1 ACTivities syntax

## Parameters

### BEGIN

optionally, specifies the beginning of the period for the activities analysis.

#### *begin-date*

the starting date of the analysis, expressed in *mm/dd/yy* or *yyyymmdd* format.

---

**Note** – When using the *mm/dd/yy* format, specify a *yy* value of 71 or greater to indicate a 20th century (19xx) date. Specify a *yy* value of 70 or less to indicate a 21st century (20xx) date. To avoid confusion, you are encouraged to use the *yyyymmdd* date format.

---

### TODAY

the default date.

#### *begin-time*

the beginning time-of-day (24-hour value), expressed in *hh:mm:ss* format.

The allowable range for the begin-time and end-time parameters is 00:00:00 to 24:00:00. The default value is **00:00:00**.

Examples:

In each of the following examples, activity reporting begins on October 27, 2008 at midnight.

```
BEGIN (10/27/08, 00:00:00)
```

```
BEGIN (20081027, 00:00:00)
```

```
BEGIN (TODAY, 00:00:00)
```

```
BEGIN (, 00:00:00)
```

### END

optionally, specifies the end of the period for the activities analysis.

#### *end-date*

the ending date of the analysis, expressed in *mm/dd/yy* or *yyyymmdd* format. If *begin-date* is specified, *end-date* must be in the same format.

---

**Note** – When using the *mm/dd/yy* format, specify a *yy* value of 71 or greater to indicate a 20th century (19xx) date. Specify a *yy* value of 70 or less to indicate a 21st century (20xx) date. To avoid confusion, you are encouraged to use the *yyyymmdd* date format.

---

### TODAY

is the default date.

***end-time***

the ending time-of-day (24-hour value), expressed in *hh:mm:ss* format.

The allowable range for the begin-time and end-time parameters is 00:00:00 to 24:00:00. The default value is **23:59:59**.

Examples:

```
END (10/27/08,18:00:00)
```

```
END (2008501,11:30:00)
```

```
END (TODAY,23:29:00)
```

```
END (,23:59:59)
```

## Additional JCL Requirements

In addition to the required JCL definition statements described in [“Invoking SLUADMIN” on page 684](#), the following definition statements apply to the ACTivities JCL:

**SLSSMF**

SMF data which the utility reports against. This may be a number of data sets concatenated from oldest to newest. This is an off-loaded copy of the active SMF data sets, created by the SMF dump utility IFASMFDP.

## Additional Sort Control Cards

You must specify several additional control cards in the SYSIN portion of the SYELSORT JCL to make sure SMF records are sorted.

```
//SYSIN DD*
  INCLUDE COND=(6,1,BI,EQ,X'xx')
  SORT FIELDS=(15,4,CH,A,11,4,PD,A,7,4,BI,A)
  SUM FIELDS=NONE
```

---

**Note** – In the “INCLUDE COND” statement, the SMF type setting, shown as “X'xx'” above, is supplied by the user. The default setting is “FF” (SMF type 255).

---

# ACTMVCgn

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UI: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC required only when specifying the MVCPOOL parameter

## Description

The ACTMVCgn command is an optional command used in a VSM environment with the CDRT facility. ACTMVCgn produces two sets of MVCMAINT statements which are output to two files specified by the SLUSMVON and SLUSMVOF DD statements.

After ACTMVCgn executes:

- SLUSMVON contains a set of MVCMAINT statements with the READONLY(ON) keyword.
- SLUSMVOF contains a set of MVCMAINT statements with the READONLY(OFF) keyword.

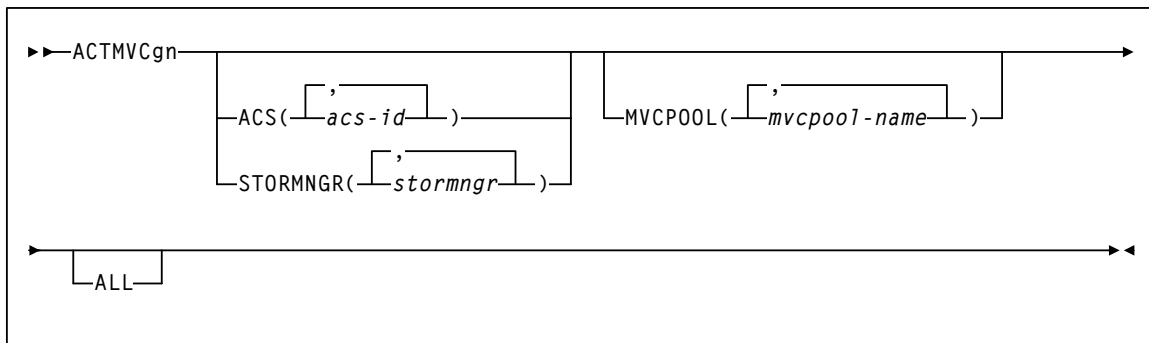
Successful execution of ACTMVCgn results in an equal number of MVCMAINT statements in both SLUSMVON and SLUSMVOF data sets.

---

**Note** – Refer to the *ELS Disaster Recovery and Offsite Data Management Guide* for examples of use of this utility function.

---

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-2** ACTMVCgn syntax

## Parameters

### ACS

optionally, specifies an ACS that the CSV-based output is filtered against.

*acs-id*

the two-character ACS id. Blanks are not valid. To specify multiple ACSs, separate each ACS id with a comma. If ACS is not specified, the default is all ACSs.

### STORMNGR

optionally, specifies a STORMNGR that the CSV-based output is filtered against.

*stormngr*

the STORMNGR name. This name can include a maximum of 8 characters. Blanks are not valid. To specify multiple STORMNGR names, separate each name with a comma.

### MVCPOOL

optionally, specifies an MVCPOOL that the CSV-based output is filtered against.

*mvcpool-name*

the MVCPOOL name. This name can include a maximum of 13 characters. Blanks are not valid. To specify multiple MVCPOOLS, separate each MVCPOOL name with a comma.

---

**Note** – If you specify the MVCPOOL parameter and the HSC subsystem is not active, the utility cannot complete and a return code of 8 is issued

---

### ALL

optionally, requests that READONLY(ON) and READONLY(OFF) control statements be generated for all non-empty MVCs. If ALL is not specified, READONLY control statements are not generated for full MVCs.

## Additional JCL Requirements

In addition to the required JCL definition statements described in [“Invoking SLUADMIN” on page 684](#), the following definition statements apply to the ACTMVCN JCL:

### SLUSMAUD

Output in the form of SLUADMIN utility control statements to audit selected MVCs.

This statement is optional; if it is present, then AUDIT utility control statements are generated for all non-empty MVCs, except for those in EXPORT status.

### SLUSMVON

ACTMVCN output in the form of MVCMAINT utility control statements with the READONLY(ON) keyword.

### SLUSMVOF

ACTMVCN output in the form of MVCMAINT utility control statements with the READONLY(OFF) keyword.

# ARCHive

**Interfaces:**

Utility only  
 UI: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC not required

## Description

The ARCHive command archives VTVs, moving them to MVCs in a different Storage Class.

## Syntax

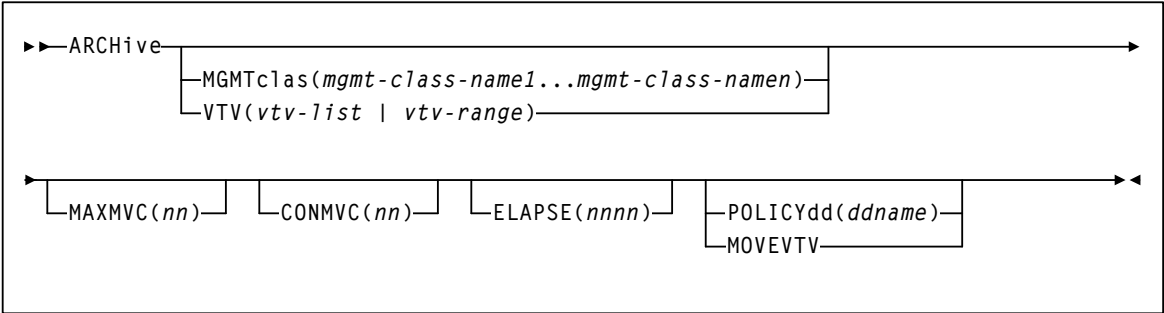


FIGURE 3-3 ARCHive syntax

## Parameters

### MGMTclas

optionally, specifies one or more Management Classes that define Archive Management Policies.

*mgmt-class-name1...mgmt-class-namen*

one or more Management Classes.

### VTV

optionally, specifies a list or range of VTVs.

*vto-list* | *vto-range*

A list or range of VTVs.

---

**Note** – If you do not specify a value for MGMTclas or VTV, VTCS scans (or processes) all VTVs.

---

### MAXMVC(*nn*)

optionally, specifies the maximum number of MVCs that will be processed by a single archive task.

Valid values are 1 to 98. If not specified the CONFIG RECLAIM value (or default) is used. This parameter is ignored if MOVEVTV is not specified.

### CONMVC(*nn*)

optionally, specifies the maximum number of MVCs that VTCS concurrently processes during subsequent recall and migrate operations.

Valid values are 1 to 99. If not specified the CONFIG RECLAIM value (or default) is used. This parameter is ignored if MOVEVTV is not specified.

### ELAPSE(*nnnn*)

optionally, specifies the maximum time for the archive in minutes. If the maximum time expires, VTCS issues message SLS6682I. If there are no MVCs currently mounted, archive stops when the ELAPSE value is reached. If any MVCs are currently mounted when the ELAPSE value is reached, archive processes the mounted MVCs and then stops.

Valid values are 1 to 1440. If not specified, there is no time limit on the archive process. This parameter is ignored if MOVEVTV is not specified.

### POLICYdd(*ddname*)

optionally, specifies the *ddname* of a file containing an alternate MGMTclas statement.

---

**Note** – POLICYdd and MOVEVTV are mutually exclusive.

---

### MOVEVTV

optionally, archive VTVs per the currently active Management Policies as specified by the MGMTclas statements that apply to the VTVs specified by MGMTclas or VTV. If you do not specify MOVEVTV, only a report is generated.



## ARCHive Reports

FIGURE 3-4 shows an example of an ARCHive report (MOVEVTV not specified).

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)			StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility					PAGE 0001	
TIME 06:32:03			ARCHIVE VTV REPORT					DATE 2010-03-31	
VTV	SIZE	% COMP	<-----CREATION----->			MGMT			
VOLSER	(MB)		DATE	TIME	CLASS	MVC1	MVC2	MVC3	MVC4
Y00001	1.62	39	2008JAN15	04:11:18	MJ4	02250	02251	02252	02253
Y00002	1.62	39	2008JAN15	04:03:57	MJ4	02250	02251	02252	02253
Y00003	1.62	39	2008JAN15	03:50:59	MJ3	02254	02255		
Y00004	1.62	39	2008JAN15	03:45:04	MJ2	02256	02257	022568	
Y00005	0.01	0	2007DEC17	23:56:00	MJ1	02259			
Y00006	0.01	0	2007DEC17	23:41:37	MJ1	02259			
Y00007	1.62	39	2008JAN06	06:15:46	MJ4	02250	02251	02252	02253
TOTAL VTVS=23			TOTAL SIZE=29.32MB						
TIME 10:07:10			ARCHIVE MVC REPORT					DATE 2008-11-20	
MVC	MEDIA	MEDIA	STORAGE	LOCATION		CANDIDATE		TOTAL VTV	
VOLSER	TYPE	SIZE (MB)	CLASS	(ACS ID)		VTVS		SIZE (MB)	
022550	9840	20000	SC1	00		3		4.86	
Y00001	Y00002	Y00007							
022551	9840C	40000	SC3			3		4.86	
Y00001	Y00002	Y00007							
022559	9940A	60000	SC4			17		18.50	
Y00005	Y00006	Y00015	Y00027	Y00042		Y00048		Y00053	
Y00059	Y00061	Y00067	Y00073	Y00078		Y00084	Y00088	Y00101	Y00123
TOTAL MVCS=8			TOTAL SIZE=29.32MB						

**FIGURE 3-4** Example output from ARCHive

## ARCHIVE Report Fields

The following list describes the ARCHive VTV report fields. This section of the report is followed by a total line showing the number of candidate VTVs and the size in MB to be recalled and re-migrated.

### **VTV Volser**

the VTV volser.

### **Size (MB)**

the uncompressed size of the VTV (MB). <**MOUNT**> indicates that the VTV was mounted when the report ran. <**FENCED**> indicates that the VTV's state is unknown. If <**FENCED**> appears, contact Oracle StorageTek Software Support.

### **Comp %**

the VTV compression percentage achieved. This is the difference between the uncompressed and compressed VTV size expressed as a percentage of the uncompressed VTV size. For example if a 100MB VTV compresses to 40MB then the compression% will be given as 60%. A compression of 0% indicates that no compression was possible on the VTV.

### **Creation Date and Time**

the date and time that the VTV was created.

### **MGMT Class**

the name of the Management Class for the VTV specified.

### **MVC1, MVC2, MVC3, MVC4**

the MVC(s) that contain the VTV. If all of these fields are empty, the VTV has not been migrated or consolidated. If 1 or more of these fields list an MVC volser, the VTV was migrated to each of these MVCs.

## MVC Report Fields

The following list describes the ARCHive MVC report fields. The data for each MVC is followed by one or more VTV volser with copies on the MVC. This section of the report is followed by a total line showing the number of candidate MVCs and the size in MB to be recalled and re-migrated.

**MVC Volser**

the MVC volser.

**MVC Media Type**

the MVC type.

**Media Size (MB)**

the size of the MVC (MB). This will only be determined after VTCS has used an MVC. "UNKNOWN" appears in this field until VTCS migrates a VTV to the MVC.

**Storage Class**

the MVC's Storage Class.

**Candidate VTVs**

the number of candidate VTVs on the MVC.

**Total VTV Size (MB)**

the size of all candidate VTVs on the MVC in MBs.

**Location (ACS ID)**

the ACS where the MVC resides. If blank, the MVC is not currently in an ACS.

# MOVEVTV Report

FIGURE 3-5 shows an example of an ARCHive MOVEVTV report.

```

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)      StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility    PAGE 0001
TIME 10:07:10          ARCHIVE MOVEVTV REPORT                        DATE 2010-03-31

Move VTV - MVC 022705 ignored, MAXMVC reached
Move VTV - VTV X04898 ignored, all MVC copies rejected
Move VTV - 4 MVCs selected for processing
Move VTV - 5 VTVs selected for processing
Move VTV - 5 VTV copies to be processed
Move VTV - 0 VTV copies not matched to request
Move VTV - 1 VTV copies rejected by MAXMVC limit
Move VTVs - MVC 023484 selected and contains 1 VTVs
Move VTVs - MVC 022628 selected and contains 1 VTVs
Move VTVs - MVC 022631 selected and contains 2 VTVs
Move VTVs - MVC 022608 selected and contains 1 VTVs

Recall from MVC 022628 to VTSS HBTSS17
SLS6683I Bulk recall of 1 VTVs issued to MVC 022628
SLS6644I VTV X99909 recalled from MVC:022628 Block:25401431
SLS6637I Recall from MVC 022628 completed

Recall from MVC 023484 to VTSS HBTSS17
SLS6683I Bulk recall of 1 VTVs issued to MVC 023484
SLS6644I VTV X04897 recalled from MVC:023484 Block:02402581
SLS6637I Recall from MVC 023484 completed

Recall from MVC 022608 to VTSS HBTSS16
SLS6683I Bulk recall of 1 VTVs issued to MVC 022608
SLS6637I Recall from MVC 022608 completed

Migrate to storage class HBTSS16 from VTSS HBTSS17
SLS6681I VTV X99909 migrated to MVC:022589 Block:01400025 StorCl:HBTSS17
MgmtCl:SIMPLEX
SLS6636I Demand migration to MVC 022589 completed

Recall from MVC 022631 to VTSS HBTSS16
SLS6683I Bulk recall of 2 VTVs issued to MVC 022631
SLS6644I VTV X99910 recalled from MVC:022631 Block:03400141
SLS6644I VTV X99908 recalled from MVC:022631 Block:05400281

```

**FIGURE 3-5** Example output from ARCHive MOVEVTV

---

# AUDit

**Interfaces:**

Utility only

UUI: Yes, when MVC or VTSS is specified

**Subsystem Requirements:**

- Active HSC/VTCS (AUDit MVC, VTSS, or INVLDMIR)
- Active HSC at FULL service level (all others)

## Description

The AUDit command performs a volume inventory audit for the following:

- ACS or LSM
- One or more specified LSMs within an ACS
- One or more panels within an LSM
- One or more rows within a panel
- One or more columns (cells) within a row
- One or more VTSSs
- One or more MVCs

Optional parameters allow you to do the following:

- Update the library control data set to reflect cartridges observed.
- Produce a discrepancy list and do not update the control data set.

## Syntax

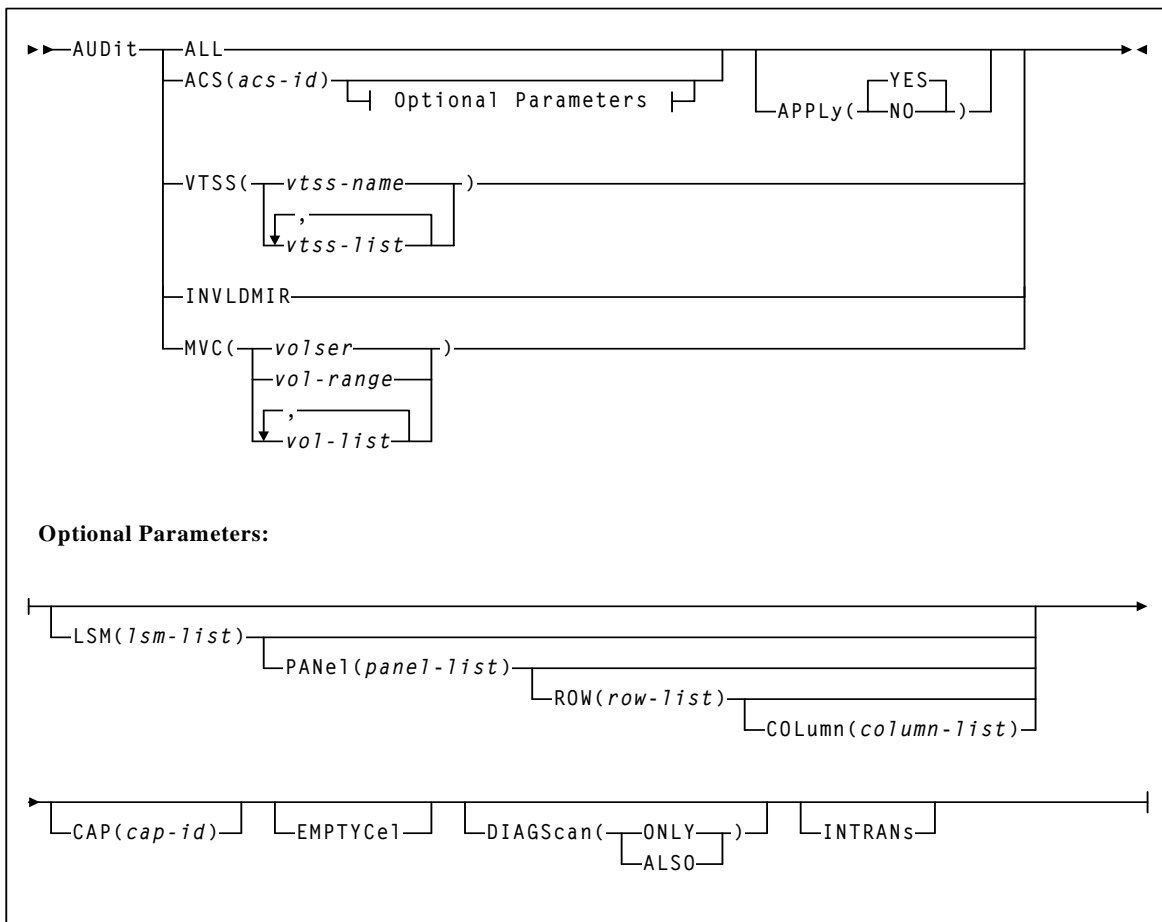


FIGURE 3-6 AUDit syntax

## Parameters (Real Volume Audit)

### ALL

optionally, specifies that the total library is to be audited.

### ACS

optionally, specifies that only a particular ACS in the library is to be audited.

#### *acs-id*

a two digit decimal ACS identifier from 00-99.

---

**Note** – If the ACS parameter is specified with no LSM parameters, the audit is performed on all LSMs in the ACS at the same time (multitasking). To audit only certain LSMs within an ACS, you must code the LSM parameter with the LSM or list of LSMs.

---

### APPLY

optionally, specifies whether the control data set is updated.

#### YES

specifies that the Audit operation ejects cartridges with duplicate VOLSERS, unreadable or illegal external media labels, and/or new cartridges unreadable external labels, and performs corrective actions to the control data set to reflect the physical contents of storage cells. **YES is the default.**

#### NO

specifies that a discrepancy listing is produced, and the control data set is not updated.

## ACS Optional Parameters

The following parameters may **only** be specified with ACS:

### LSM

optionally, specifies that only certain LSMs within the specified ACS are to be audited.

#### *lsm-list*

a single LSM number or a list of LSM numbers. An LSM number is a hexadecimal value (00-17).

An LSM range is not allowed. If a list is specified, the elements must be separated by blanks or commas, and the entire list enclosed in parentheses.

### PANel

optionally, specifies that only certain panels within an LSM are to be audited.

#### *panel-list*

*panel-list* may be a single panel or a list of panels. Panel ranges are not allowed. If a list is specified, the elements must be separated by blanks or commas, and the entire list enclosed in parentheses.

---

**Note –** If this parameter is specified, the LSM parameter may contain only one LSM number.

---

A *panel-list* element is a one or two digit decimal number, specific to the LSM type. See [“Panels” on page 731](#) for a list of valid values.

---

**Note –**

- The SL3000 library has static panels numbers starting with the left-most back panel (panel 0) and ending with the right-most front panel (panel 23) on a fully-configured library. The panel numbering starts with the BDM, the only required module (panels 12 and 13), and works outward to the left and to the right.
  - Panels 0 (CAP panel) and 1 (drive panel) are allowable entries for an SL8500 audit, however, in this case the HSC displays a condition code 0 because it does not find any storage cells on these panels.
- 

**ROW**

optionally, specifies that only certain rows within the specified LSM panel are to be audited.

*row-list*

*row-list* may be a single row or a list of rows. Ranges are not allowed. If a list is specified, the elements must be separated by blanks or commas, and the entire list enclosed in parentheses.

If this parameter is specified, the LSM and PANel parameters may contain only one element.

A *row-list* element is a one or two digit decimal number, and is specific to the LSM type. See [“Rows” on page 732](#) for a list of valid values.

**COLUMN**

optionally, specifies that only certain columns (cells) within an LSM panel row are to be audited.

*column-list*

*column-list* may be a single column, or a list of columns. Ranges are not allowed. If a list is specified, the elements must be separated by blanks or commas, and the entire list enclosed in parentheses.

If this parameter is specified, the LSM, PANel, and ROW parameters may contain only one element.

A *column-list* element is a one or two digit decimal number and is specific to the LSM type. See [“Columns” on page 733](#) for a list of valid values.

---

**Note –**

- A list of rows cannot be specified if a list of columns is specified.
  - A list of columns cannot be specified if a list of rows is specified.
  - All SL3000 columns are numbered 0-5 (left to right).
-



**CAP**

optionally, specifies a particular Cartridge Access Port to be used for any required cartridge ejections during the Audit operation.

***cap-id***

identifies one or more CAPs. The format of a cap-id is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid, and *CC* is the CAP. See “CAPid” on page 730 for a list of valid values.

**Note –**

- If a CAP is not specified, a CAP in the identified ACS is selected based on the CAPPref operator command. See “CAPPref” on page 202 for more information.
- Multi-ACS audits cannot specify the CAP parameter. A CAP is chosen for each ACS based upon CAP preference values.

**EMPTYCel**

optionally, specifies that only empty cells are to be audited. **This parameter can be used in combination with all other AUDIt parameters except DIAGScan(ONLY).**

The main benefit provided by auditing only empty cells is reducing the time required to run an audit.

---

**Note –** Oracle does **not** recommend running an empty cell audit on an SL8500 library because the time to run the audit will not be substantially reduced.

---

Typically, users will want to specify this parameter when:

- they have entered an LSM and placed new cartridges in empty cells, or
- they need to correct cartridge location information for library volumes that have been manually moved to empty cells.

In either case, if APPLY(YES) is specified, the CDS is updated to reflect that these cells are no longer empty.

---

**Caution –** In some cases, running an empty cell only audit may compromise the accuracy of the audit.

---

**DIAGScan**

optionally, specifies that diagnostic cells are to be scanned. The HSC scans these cells one at a time and displays the contents of each cell in the AUDIt utility report.

**ONLY**

specifies that only diagnostic cells should be scanned. **This parameter cannot be specified in combination with the EMPTYCel parameter.**

**ALSO**

specifies that diagnostic cells should also be scanned along with the normal AUDIt utility operations.

---

**Note –**

- DIAGScan is mutually exclusive with ROW and COLUMN. It can be used in combination with all other AUDIt parameters.
  - Cartridge movement between diagnostic cells and regular storage or CAP cells is not supported by the LMU, so diagnostic cell contents can only be reported.
- 

**INTRANs**

optionally, specifies that in-transit cartridges in an LSM are to be processed. All in-transit cartridges, except those identified in the note below, are read and ejected as part of an AUDIt utility operation.

---

**Note –**

- INTRANs is mutually exclusive with APPLY(NO). It can be used in combination with all other AUDIt parameters.
  - Only the first two cells (columns 0 and 1) in a 9310 playground are accessible to an in-transit audit. Cartridges in other cell positions in a 9310 playground (columns 2 through 5) cannot be ejected by an in-transit operation.
  - 9740 diagnostic cells cannot be scanned by an audit.
- 

## Parameters (Virtual Volume Audit)

**VTSS**

optionally, specifies an audit of one or more VTSSs.

*vtss-name* or *vtss-list*

the names of one or more VTSSs.

**INVLDMIR**

optionally, specifies an audit of MVCs with invalid MIRs.

**MVC**

optionally, specifies an audit of one or more MVCs.

*volser*, *vol-range* or *vol-list*

the volser, volser range, or volser list of MVC(s) to be processed.

## Audit Report

An audit report lists the VTVs and MVCs that are different from those listed in the CDS as shown in [FIGURE 3-7](#). In this figure, the report shows all MVCs or VTVs as new entries in the CDS, which is typical of the output of a VTCS audit run after you lost all copies of the CDS, then ran recovery procedures.

```

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)      StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility      PAGE 00001
TIME 03:15:42                VTCS AUDIT                                DATE 2010-03-31

AUDIT REPORT FOR MVC EVT500
X28955 VTV ADDED AS PRIMARY COPY (BLOCK:00000000)
X20000 VTV ADDED AS PRIMARY COPY (BLOCK:0940044D)
===== AUDIT OF MVC EVT500 COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY =====

AUDIT REPORT FOR MVC EVT501
X28956 VTV ADDED AS PRIMARY COPY (BLOCK:00000000)
X20007 VTV ADDED AS PRIMARY COPY (BLOCK:0940044D)
X20010 VTV ADDED AS SECONDARY COPY (BLOCK:11400899)
X20069 VTV NOT CURRENT (BLOCK:1A400CE5)
X20067 VTV NOT CURRENT (BLOCK:334016AB)
===== AUDIT OF MVC EVT501 COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY =====

AUDIT REPORT FOR VTSS HBVTSS17
X20000 VTV VALID
X20002 VTV VALID
X20005 VTV VALID
X20006 VTV VALID
X20007 VTV VALID
X30052 VTV VALID
X30053 VTV VALID
X30054 VTV VALID
===== AUDIT OF VTSS HBVTSS17 COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY =====

AUDIT REPORT FOR VTSS HBVTSS16
X20183 VTV VALID
X20185 VTV VALID
X20188 VTV VALID
X20190 VTV VALID
X20191 VTV VALID
X20194 VTV VALID
X41091 VTV VALID
X41093 VTV VALID
===== AUDIT OF VTSS HBVTSS16 COMPLETED WITH 1 WARNING =====
AUDIT EXCEPTION REPORT
  VTSS HBVTSS16: 1 WARNINGS REPORTED
  SLS1315I SWS500.V5.CDS WAS SELECTED AS THE PRIMARY CONTROL DATA SET

```

**FIGURE 3-7** Example AUDIT utility report

---

**Note** – An audit also generates:

- MVC summary and detail reports.
  - Display VTSS summary and detail output.
  - For every VTV resident on the VTSS, the VTV volser, size in MB, and Management Class.
- 

## Audit Report Messages

For every VTV found on an MVC or VTSS, the audit report lists one of following:

*vvvvvv VTV possibly corrupt (Block:bbbbbb)*

**Explanation:** During the audit, an I/O error occurred for VTV *vvvvvv* at block *bbbbbb* on the MVC being audited.

*vvvvvv VTV not found [ , no MVC copies left ]*

**Explanation:** The audit did not find VTV *vvvvvv* on the MVC or VTSS being audited. If no MVC copies left appears, no MVCs contain copies of the VTV.

*vvvvvv VTV not found on CDS (Block:bbbbbb)*

**Explanation:** The audit expected but did not find VTV *vvvvvv* at block *bbbbbb* on the MVC being audited.

*vvvvvv VTV not current (Block:bbbbbb)*

**Explanation:** The audit found a non-current copy of VTV *vvvvvv* at block *bbbbbb* on the MVC being audited.

*vvvvvv VTV copy valid (Block:bbbbbb)*

**Explanation:** The audit found a valid copy VTV *vvvvvv* at block *bbbbbb* of the MVC being audited; its location matches the CDS entry for the VTV.

*vvvvvv VTV Added as primary copy (Block:bbbbbb)*

**Explanation:** The audit found the most current copy of VTV *vvvvvv* at block *bbbbbb* of the MVC being audited; the audit added this location to the CDS as the primary MVC copy of the VTV.

*vvvvvv VTV Added as secondary copy (Block:bbbbbb)*

**Explanation:** The audit found the second most current copy of VTV *vvvvvv* at block *bbbbbb* of the MVC being audited; the audit added this location to the CDS as the secondary MVC copy of the VTV.

*vvvvvv Duplicate copy ignored (Block:bbbbbb)*

**Explanation:** The audit found a duplicate copy of VTV *vvvvvv* at block *bbbbbb* and ignored this copy.

*vvvvvv* Link to old version on MVC *mmmmmm* removed

**Explanation:** The audit found a newer version of the VTV and removed the link to the old version from the CDS.

*vvvvvv* Old VTV version deleted from VTSS *sssssss*

**Explanation:** The audit found an old version of the VTV and deleted it from the VTSS.

*vvvvvv* Old version of VTV retained [ VTSS *sssssss* ]

**Explanation:** The audit found an old version of the VTV, which is the only copy, and retained this version. If VTSS *sssssss* appears, the audit found the VTV on a different VTSS than the one that was audited.

*vvvvvv* Version older than MVC copies [ VTSS *sssssss* ]

**Explanation:** The audit found a version of the VTV that is older than copies on the MVC. If VTSS *sssssss* appears, the audit found the VTV on a different VTSS than the one that was audited.

*vvvvvv* Newer version of VTV found [ on VTSS *sssssss* ]

**Explanation:** The audit found a newer version of the VTV and updated the CDS with this location. If on VTSS *sssssss* appears, the audit found the VTV on a different VTSS than the one that was audited.

*vvvvvv* VTV discovered [ VTSS *sssssss* ]

**Explanation:** The audit found a current version of the VTV on a VTSS whose location was unexpected and updated the CDS with this location. If on VTSS *sssssss* appears, the audit found the VTV on a different VTSS than the one that was audited.

*vvvvvv* VTV valid [ VTSS *sssssss* ]

**Explanation:** The audit found a valid version of the VTV and updated the CDS with this location. If VTSS *sssssss* appears, the audit found the VTV on a different VTSS than the one that was audited.

**\*\*\*** *vvvvvv* no access to VTSS *sssssss* **\*\*\***

**Explanation:** The audit found a valid version of the VTV which is on a VTSS that the host cannot access.

MVC *mmmmmm* STATUS CHANGED FROM EXPORT TO CONSOLIDATE VOLUME

**Explanation:** The audit discovered current VTVs on an export MVC that was created by export by VTV or Management Class. The audit changed the MVC status from export to consolidate and updated the CDS to add the MVC and its VTVs.

EXPORT MVC *mmmmmm* IS NOW MADE EMPTY IN THE CDS

**Explanation:** The audit discovered no current VTVs on an export MVC that was created by export by VTV or Management Class. The audit marked the MVC as empty.

WARNING MVC *mmmmmm* IS AN OUTPUT MVC FROM AN EXPORT OPERATION  
- FORCING READONLY

**Explanation:** The audit forced read-only status on export MVC *mmmmmm*.

Audit terminated. Unable to determine the position of the end of VTV *vvvvvv* on MVC *mmmmmm*

**Explanation:** VTCS issued an Inventory MVC ECAM request to determine the position and volser of a VTV on the MVC being audited. VTSS indicated, in the ECAM response, that it was unable to determine the position of the end of the VTV. Because VTCS needs that information to determine the position of the next VTV on the MVC (assuming end of tape has not been reached), VTCS had to terminate the audit with RC=8. The MVC is left in Audit status. To resolve the condition, drain the MVC. If you cannot drain the MVC, contact Oracle StorageTek Software Support.

---

# BACKup

**Interfaces:**

SLUADMIN utility only  
UII: No

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC not required

## Description

The BACKup command produces a backup of the library control data set (CDS).

The utility automatically selects the primary CDS copy based on the specified CDS DD statements or the CDS order used by the active HSC on the system.

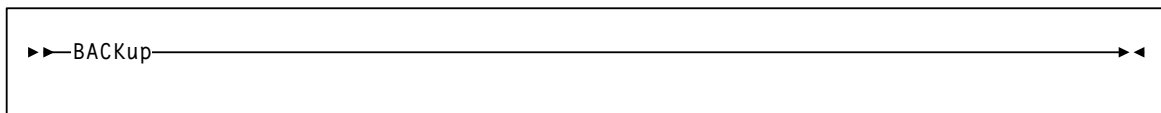
If you want to back up a single, specific copy of the CDS, you can specify a single DD statement, SLSCNTL, to point to the file you want to back up. In general, however, you should only back up the primary CDS; the HSC RESTORE utility automatically creates the correct number of CDS copies when it executes.

---

**Note –**

- Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for information about using BACKup when journaling is enabled, or when copies of the CDS are in different locations.
  - See [“PITCOPY” on page 526](#) for information about the PITCOPY command as an alternative to backup.
- 

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-8** BACKup syntax

## Parameters

None required. Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for information about using BACKup when journaling is enabled, or when copies of the CDS are in different locations.

## Additional JCL Requirements

In addition to the required JCL definition statements described in [“Invoking SLUADMIN” on page 684](#), the following definition statements apply to the BACKup JCL:

### **SLSBKUP**

specifies the created backup data set. The LRECL and BLKSIZE of this data set default to 4096.



# CANcel

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UI: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

The CANcel command stops active and queued processes that use an RTD.

## Syntax

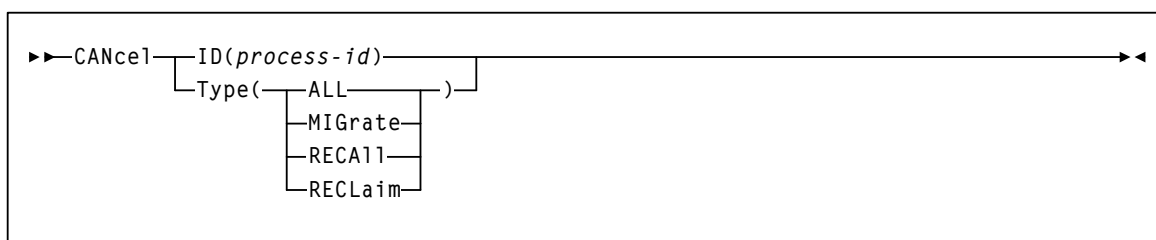


FIGURE 3-9 CANcel syntax

## Parameters

### ID

specifies a process to cancel.

*process-id*

the process ID.

### Type

optionally, specifies the type of process to cancel.

#### ALL

Cancel all processes.

#### MIGrate

Cancel all migration processes.

#### RECA11

Cancel all recall processes.

#### RECLaim

Cancel all reclaim processes.

## CAPPref

### Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB

UUI: No

### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

The CAPPref command assigns a preference value to one or more designated CAPs, and places a CAP into automatic or manual mode.

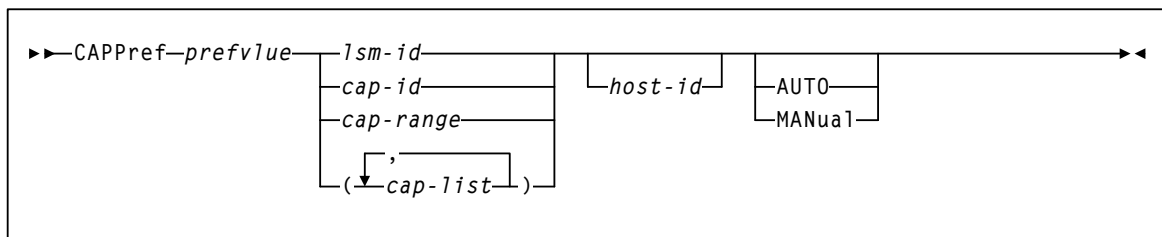
Several HSC commands and utilities require the use of a CAP and give you the option to either specify the CAP to use, or allow the HSC to automatically select a CAP. When you allow the HSC to make the selection, the CAP is chosen based on availability and the CAP preference value.

Assigning CAP preference values establishes an ordered list of CAPs from which the HSC selects an available CAP with the highest nonzero preference value. A CAP's preference value is zero until it is changed by a CAPPref command. Zero preference CAPs are never automatically selected by the HSC; however, they can be explicitly requested by the user

**Note –**

- A CAP preference value is only in effect on the host that executes the command.
- CAP mode (automatic or manual) is in effect on all hosts system-wide for each CAP; it cannot be set discretely for each host.

# Syntax



**FIGURE 3-10** CAPPref syntax

## Parameters

### *prefvlue*

specifies a preference value which is assigned to all listed CAPs. Preference values are decimal in the range from 0-9.

A CAP with a preference value of 9 has the highest priority and is always selected first when it is available. If two or more available CAPs in an ACS have the highest preference value, the one with the lowest CAPid is selected.

---

#### **Note –**

- The preference value for a PCAP must be zero. A PCAP is only used when explicitly requested by the user; the HSC does not automatically select a PCAP.
  - To use the CAPPref command to place a PCAP into AUTO or MANual mode, specify a *prefvlue* of 0.
- 

### *lsm-id*

identifies an LSM. The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (decimal 00-99) and *LL* is the LSM number (decimal 00-99).

---

**Note –** If you enter this parameter when there is more than one CAP in the specified LSM, an error message is generated.

---

### *cap-id* or *cap-range* or *cap-list*

identifies one or more CAPs. The format of a *cap-id* is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid, and *CC* is the CAP. See [“CAPid” on page 730](#) for a list of valid values.

---

#### **Note –**

- If SL3000 library CAPs are not present, the HSC reports them as “not installed.” This keeps CAP addresses from changing as new CAPs are added.
  - SL3000 and SL8500 libraries do not contain a PCAP.
- 

A *cap-range* identifies an inclusive range of multi-cell CAPs; PCAPs are excluded from the range. The beginning and ending values in a range must be valid CAPids and neither CAPid can specify a PCAP. The rules for specifying ranges apply.

PCAPs must be explicitly specified in the CAPPref command.

#### **Example 1:**

```
00:00:00-00:03:00
```

In this example, all CAPs in LSMs 00:00, 00:01, 00:02, and 00:03, except PCAPs, are included in this range.

#### **Example 2:**

```
00:00:00-00:03:01
```

In this example, CAPid 00:00:00 is either a standard CAP or a magazine-style CAP. CAPid 00:03:01 is a magazine-style CAP. All CAPs in LSMs 00:01 and 00:02, except PCAPs, are included in this range.

Each *cap-list* element can be either a single CAPid or a CAPid range. The elements in a list must be separated by a comma or a blank, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

#### *host-id*

optionally, specifies that the CAPPref command is to be performed only if the host-id parameter matches the identifier of the issuing host (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).

- If CAPPref is issued from PARMLIB and a host-id is specified, the command is executed only by the host with the matching ID.
- If CAPPref is issued from PARMLIB and a host ID is not specified, the command is executed by each host that accesses PARMLIB.

Refer to the publication *Managing HSC and VTCS* for more information about PARMLIB.

#### **AUTO**

optionally, indicates that the specified CAPs are to be placed in automatic mode (referred to as *auto-mode*). Auto-mode CAPs remain unlocked when not in use. AUTO is the initial setting for a PCAP.

When a CAP is in auto-mode, you can initiate an enter operation without issuing an ENTER command. You do this by opening the CAP door, placing one or more cartridges inside, and closing the CAP. The CAP is locked while the enter is being processed; then it is unlocked again.

Auto-mode CAPs can be used for eject processing by either:

- specifying the CAPid on an EJECT command or EJECT utility, or
- assigning a preference value and allowing the HSC to automatically select the CAP.

A CAP in auto-mode is locked whenever it is selected for an eject operation, to prevent an enter operation on this CAP until the eject completes.

---

**Note –** HSC termination will be slower with CAPs in auto-mode; especially in a multiple-host environment.

---

#### **MANual**

optionally, indicates that the specified CAP is to be locked when not in use. MANual is the initial setting for all multi-cartridge CAPs.

---

#### **Note –**

- AUTO/MANual settings are sent host-to-host using LMU broadcast and the status is preserved in the control data set. For this reason, it is recommended that you **not** make frequent changes to the CAP mode.
  - A preflue of 0 must be specified when using the CAPPref command to set a PCAP to AUTO or MANual mode.
-

# CDs

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB

UII: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

The CDs command enables, disables, relocates, or expands a control data set on an active HSC (or, in a multiple-host environment, on all active hosts) without requiring you to stop or substantially disrupt normal tape processes.

## Syntax

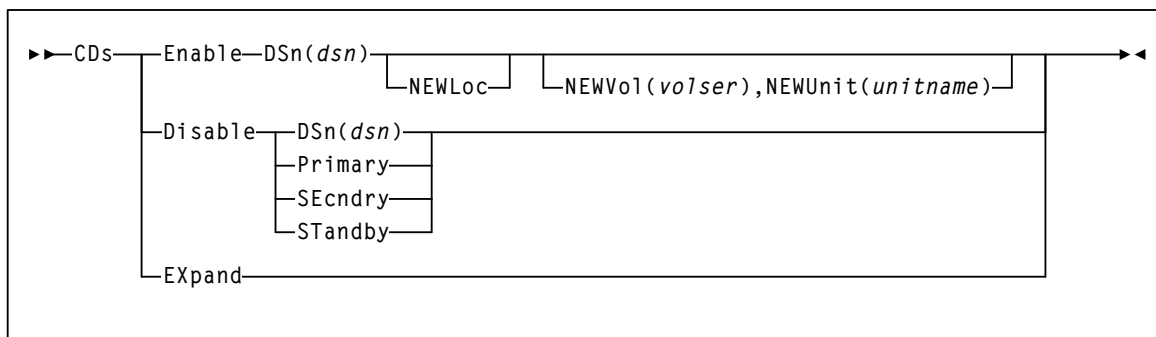


FIGURE 3-11 CDs syntax

## Parameters

### Enable

allocates and activates any preexisting, renamed, or new CDS specified by the **DSN** parameter. The CDS Enable command can allocate and activate a CDS residing in a new location, either with a preexisting or a new data set name, when the **NEWLoc** parameter is specified. MVS catalog services are used to resolve the volume and unit definitions, if the **NEWVol** or **NEWUnit** parameters are not specified.

The specified control data set must be named in the CDSDEF control statement in PARMLIB.

### DSn

specifies the control data set name to allocate for all hosts.

*dsn*

the data set name.

### NEWLoc

optionally, indicates that a relocation activity has occurred for the CDS named by the **DSN** parameter. MVS uses the catalog facility to determine the volume location of the relocated CDS.

### NEWVol

optionally, specifies the volume for a relocated CDS copy. In MVS, if the new CDS copy is not cataloged, this parameter is required. If **NEWVol** is specified, but **NEWUnit** is not, **NEWUnit** defaults to SYSALLDA.

**NEWVol** is required if the user is executing the command in the HSC VM environment.

*volser*

the volume.

### NEWUnit

optionally, specifies the unit name for a relocated CDS copy. This parameter defaults to SYSALLDA if it is omitted and **NEWVol** is specified.

**NEWUnit** is required if the user is executing the command in the HSC VM environment.

*unitname*

the unit name.

### EXpand

expands all enabled CDSs to the maximum number of 4096 blocks that can fit in the physical space allocated for the CDS. The maximum number of 4096 blocks is determined by the smallest CDS copy.

**Disable**

unallocates (makes inactive) the specified CDS. The CDs Disable command does **not** disable the last active copy of the control data set.

**DSn**

specifies the control data set name to unallocate for all hosts.

*dsn*

the data set name.

**Primary**

indicates that the current primary control data set is to be disabled.

**SEcndry**

indicates that the current secondary control data set is to be disabled.

**STandby**

indicates that the current standby control data set is to be disabled.

# CDSDAta

**Interfaces:**

Utility only  
UUI: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC not required

## Description

The CDSDAta command produces XML (and/or CSV) output data for library configuration and volume and pool definitions from VOLPARM control statements.

**Note** – No text output is produced by this command, so either the SLSXML or SLSCSV DD statement must be included in the SLUADMIN execution to create output from this command. See [“UUI Output Definition Statements” on page 688](#) for more information.

## Syntax

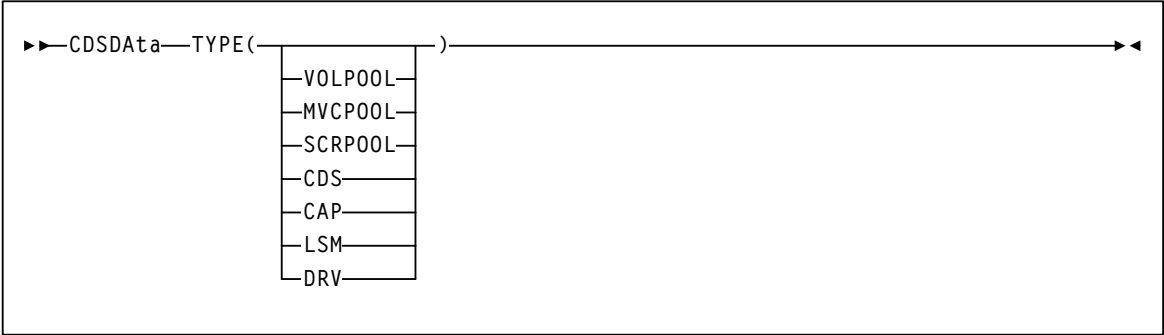


FIGURE 3-12 CDSDAta syntax



# Parameters

## TYPE

specifies the type of CDS data for which output is produced. The TYPE Keyword is positional and therefore optional. One of the listed types must be specified.

### **VOLPOOL**

produces XML data for VOLPARM VOLUME pool definitions.

### **MVCPOOL**

produces XML data for VOLPARM MVC pool definitions.

### **SCRPOOL**

produces XML data for VOLPARM SCRATCH pool definitions.

### **CDS**

produces XML CDS data.

### **CAP**

produces XML CAP data.

### **LSM**

produces XML LSM data.

### **DRV**

produces XML drive data.

# CDSDEF

## Interfaces:

PARMLIB only  
 UUI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

None

## Description

The CDSDEF command specifies control data set names, locations, and number of control data sets that you want running. This information is used by HSC during initialization.

CDSDEF is a **required** command.

## Syntax

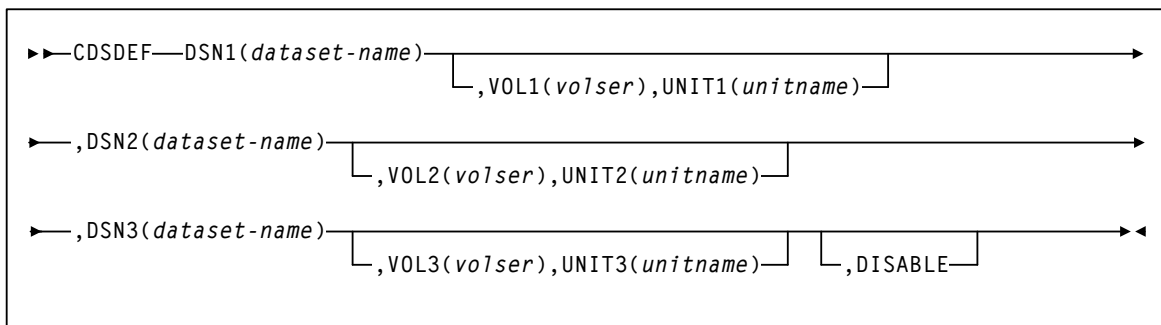


FIGURE 3-13 CDSDEF syntax

## Parameters

### DSNx

*dataset.name* is the name of an HSC control data set. At least one DSN parameter must be specified, as many as three can be specified. If two data sets are specified, then the volume inventory information on both copies is kept current, and these two data sets are referred to as the primary and the secondary CDS.

If all three are specified, then two copies are kept current and the third data set is a standby CDS which is enabled as the default condition. This standby CDS can be disabled with the **DISABLE** parameter. In the case where a standby copy of the CDS is being used, you do not need to specify which two of the three CDSs are the primary and secondary copies. The HSC determines, based on last use, which two are the correct copies to use during the initialization of the Control Data Set Services.

### VOLx

optionally, *volser* is the volume serial number of the DASD volume where the specified CDS resides. If the data set is not cataloged, this must be specified.

If omitted, volume and unit information is determined from the MVS catalog, and the **UNITx** parameter is ignored.

### UNITx

optionally, *unitname* is used to specify the unit parameter in the SVC99 dynamic allocation parameter list. If omitted, SYSALLDA is used.

*unitname* can be an IBM-defined generic (e.g., 3390), a system-built esoteric (e.g., SYSALLDA), a user-defined esoteric, or a specific device number. It is recommended that a general value of SYSALLDA be specified (or defaulted) to allow maximum flexibility and to reduce the need for CDSDEF updates to keep them consistent with the active CDS.

### DISABLE

optionally, disables the standby CDS. If this parameter is not specified, the default is to enable the standby CDS at HSC initialization.

If **DISABLE** is specified, initialization verifies the standby CDS by allocating, opening, and reading the data set. The standby CDS is then closed and deallocated. This process allows manual control over the use of the standby CDS during a control data set switch situation.

If the standby CDS is enabled, the HSC automatically uses it for switching. If it is disabled, it is not used. There is no enable parameter for CDSDEF, as the enable condition is the default.

# CLean

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB  
 UUI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

The CLean command schedules a cleaning cartridge to be mounted on a library-controlled transport. The specified transport is flagged by the control data set and a cleaning cartridge is mounted prior to the next volume mount.

## Syntax

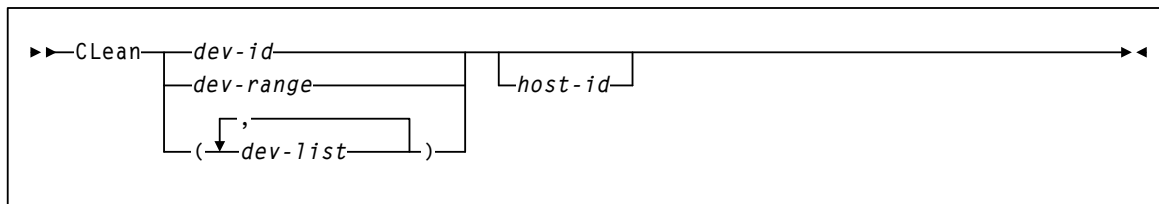


FIGURE 3-14 CLean syntax

## Parameters

### *dev-id* or *dev-range* or *dev-list*

specifies a list of one or more device addresses for which cleaning is to be scheduled. Each *dev-list* element can be either a single device address or a range. The elements in a list must be separated by a comma or a blank, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

### *host-id*

optionally, indicates that cleaning is to be performed for the device address of the specified host (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).

---

# COMMPath

**Interfaces:**

Console or PARMLIB only  
UII: No

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

The COMMPath command is used in a multiple-host environment to do the following:

- Set up a tiered communication service between HSC hosts which can be modified at any time without bringing down the HSC
- Define the hierarchy of methods available to each host for communication with other hosts
- Establish the current method of communication for a host (or switch from one method to another).

It is recommended that host-to-host communication be defined in PARMLIB at startup. Issue the COMMPath command from the console to switch or delete communication paths.

---

**Note** – Oracle strongly recommends the use of VTAM host-to-host communications, because a VTAM network does not place a performance burden on HSC components or the library. Refer to “Adding Definitions for ACF/VTAM Communications” in the publication *Managing HSC and VTCS* for more information.

---

## Syntax

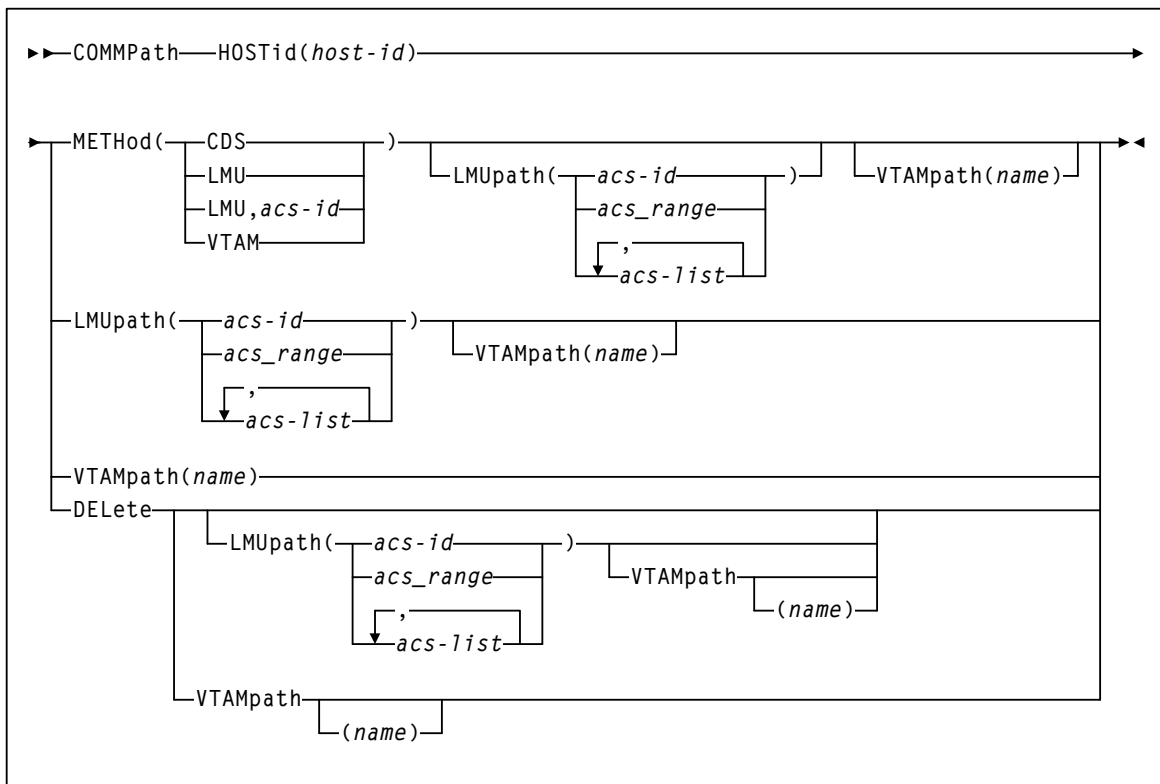


FIGURE 3-15 COMMPath syntax

## Parameters

### HOSTid

specifies the host for which the command sets or modifies the parameters.

#### *host-id*

the host identifier (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).

### METHod

specifies the current method of communications to be used for the specified host. This parameter allows switching to a higher, lower, or equivalent (for LMUpath only) level method of communications.

#### CDS

indicates that communication is to be through the control data set.

---

**Note** – CDS is the initial setting for HSC host-to-host communications.

---

**LMU**

indicates that communication is to be through an LMU.

***acs-id***

the LMUpath definition that is to be the active (or current) LMUpath. If you do not supply an *acs-id*, the first LMUpath specified in the list of LMUpath definitions is made active.

**Note –**

- If LMU is specified, the LMUpath parameter must have been specified in a previous command, or it must be included in the same command.
- If the LMU method is specified in PARMLIB, the switch from CDS to LMU is delayed until the HSC initializes to the full service level.
- If the HSC service level drops to base, LMU communications are switched to CDS. When the full service level is restored, an upward switch to the LMU method can only be accomplished by issuing the COMMPath command.

**VTAM**

specifies that communication is to be through a VTAM network.

**Note –**

- If VTAM is specified, the VTAMpath parameter must have been specified in a previous command, or it must be included in the same command.
- A downward switch from the VTAM method is performed when the VTAM APPLID of the HSC is varied inactive, or VTAM is shut down.

**LMUpath**

specifies one or more LMUpaths that can be used for host-to-host communications. An LMU is eligible to be used for host-to-host communications if it is connected to other HSCs sharing a library.

If more than one eligible LMU is specified, the HSC begins searching for an available communications path beginning with the first *acs-id* in the list. The search continues until a path can be established or the end of the list is reached.

The LMUpath definitions are cumulative; that is, the definitions specified in a command are appended to the current list of definitions. You can insert an LMUpath into the current list by specifying the LMUpath that you wish to insert, followed by the LMUpaths that are to come after it. If a COMMPath command specifies an LMUpath that is already defined in the list, the path is removed from its current position and appended to the end of the list as specified in the command.

For example, the current definition is (02,03,04). You can insert LMUpath 01 after 02 by specifying LMU(01,03,04). Now the current list appears as (02,01,03,04). Also, if the current definition is (02,01,03,04) and the command specifies LMU(01,02), the list becomes (03,04,01,02).

**Note –** For a temporary outage of an LMU, it is not necessary but may be desirable to delete the LMUpath definition for that LMU. When the LMU is available again, define it to the communications service again by adding it to the current definitions.

*acs-id* or *acs-range* or *acs-list*

one or more specific LMUs. Each *acs-list* element can be either a single ACSid or an ACSid range. The elements in a list must be separated by a comma or a blank, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

### **VTAMpath**

defines the VTAM name to be associated with an HSC host. The VTAM name is used in the process of establishing a VTAM connection with other HSCs. It is the VTAM APPLID defined by the VTAM APPL statement.

This parameter can also be used to change or delete a previously defined name, but only when the current method for this host is not VTAM.

*name*

the VTAM name.

### **DELeTe**

specifies to delete the definitions specified by the LMUpath parameter and/or the VTAMpath parameter.

If LMU is not the current method, all LMUpath definitions can be deleted by specifying DELeTe LMUpath (without supplying an *acs-id*). If the current method is LMU, the active LMUpath cannot be deleted.

If the current method is VTAM, the VTAMpath definition cannot be deleted.



# CONFIg

## Interfaces:

Utility only  
 UUI: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required, and must be down on all hosts when running CONFIg RESET.

## Description

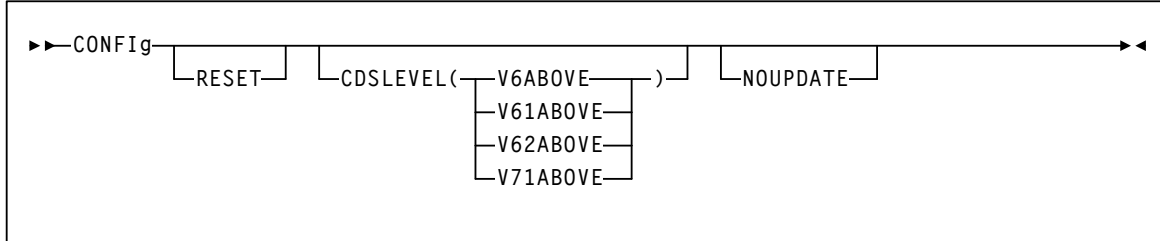
The CONFIg command defines or modifies the VSM configuration stored in the HSC CDS. You create a single file that contains the CONFIg command and its input statements.

---

**Note** – Dynamic reclaim requires an H level CDS.

---

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-16** CONFIg syntax

## Parameters

### RESET

resets the VSM configuration in the CDS. It is required as described in the following table:

CDS is at "F" Level or Above	CDS is below "F"
<p>Required <b>only</b> when changing the CDS to a lower level.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ RESET is not required when going from F to G, or G to H level.</li> <li>■ All hosts accessing the CDS must be running VTCS/ELS 7.0 when you convert from F to G level.</li> <li>■ All hosts accessing the CDS must be running VTCS/ELS 7.1 when you convert from G to H level.</li> </ul>	<p>You <b>must</b> specify RESET when you make hardware changes such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Adding a VTSS to your configuration.</li> <li>■ Adding RTDs, removing RTDs, or reordering their sequence in your configuration.</li> <li>■ Physically removing a VTSS from your configuration.</li> <li>■ Changing the CDS level.</li> </ul> <p>You <b>do not</b> need to specify RESET if you:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Change VSM volumes (such as adding VTVs and MVCs). Note that VTV and MVC volumes cannot be removed by RESET or any other VTCS utility. Removal of VTV and MVC volumes requires the definition of a new CDS and the use of MERGEcds.</li> <li>■ Change VSM policies (such as changing AMT values).</li> </ul>

---

#### Note –

- HSC must be down on all hosts when you run CONFIG RESET. The changes you made to RTD definitions will take effect when you restart HSC.
  - Although some changes can be done dynamically by running CONFIG and not restarting HSC/VTCS, there may be some additional parameter changes required to use any additional resources.
  - If you run a CONFIG with RESET, then the status flags are reset (and message SLS6746E disappears). If a VTSS was offline when you ran the config (with RESET), please remember to audit the VTSS.
-

**CDSLEVEL**

One of the following CDS levels:

**V6ABOVE**

creates an “E” level CDS, which provides the following enhancements:

- Full VSM4 Support
- 4 MVC copies
- 800Mb VTVs

**V61ABOVE**

creates an “F” level CDS, which provides the following enhancements:

- Near Continuous Operations (NCO)
- Bi-directional clustering
- Improved CDS I/O performance - reduces I/O required to manage virtual scratch subpools

**V62ABOVE**

creates a “G” level CDS, which provides the following enhancements:

- 400Mb/800Mb/2Gb/4gb VTVs
- Standard/Large VTV Pages
- 65000 VTVs per MVC

**V71ABOVE**

creates an “H” level CDS, which provides the following enhancements:

- Dynamic reclaim
- Autonomous device support

**NOUPDATE**

specifies that the configuration is checked and any appropriate messages output, but no updates are made to the CDS.

## CONFIg GLOBAL Statement

The CONFIg GLOBAL statement specifies VTCS global values. This statement is required.

### Syntax

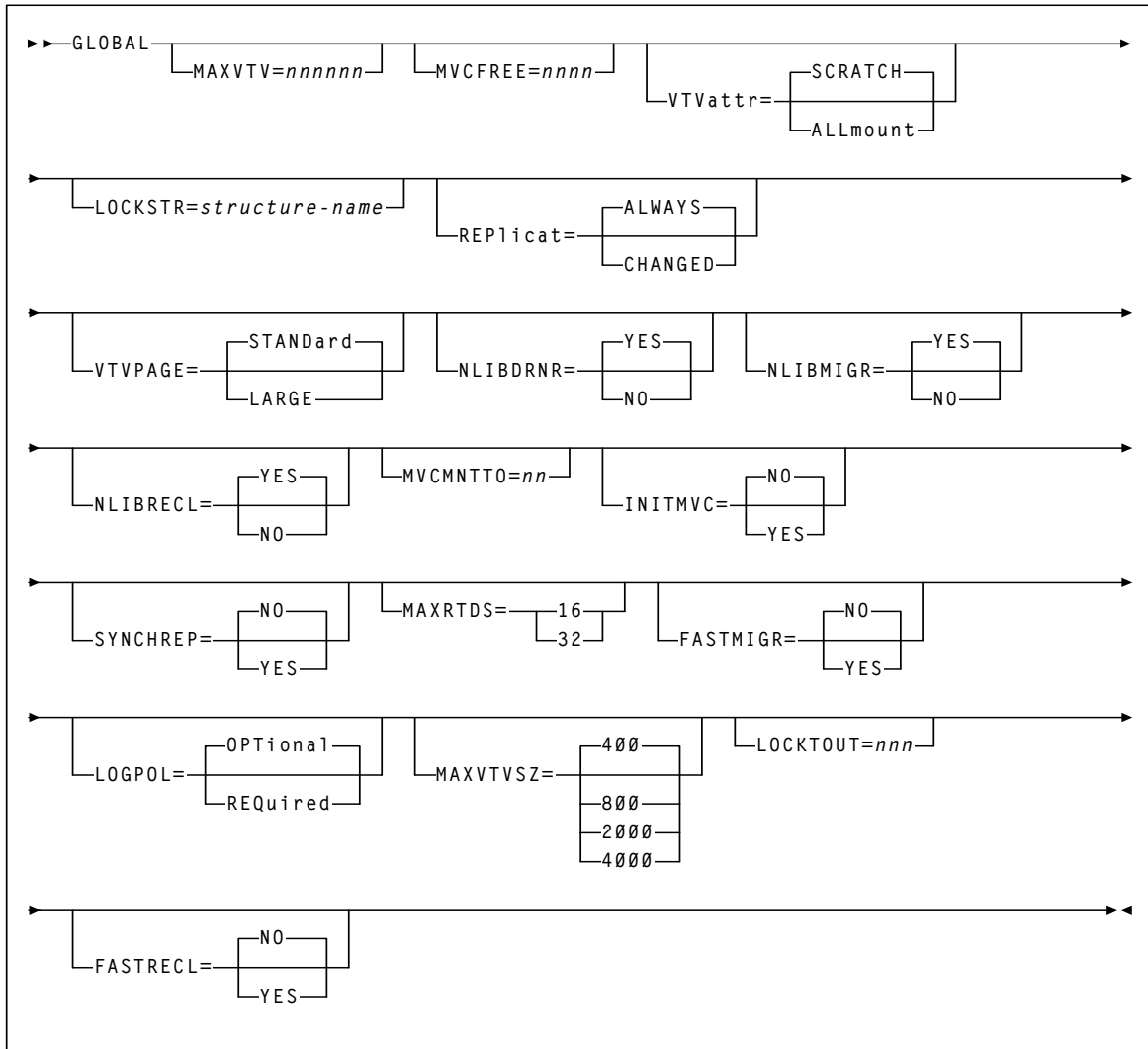


FIGURE 3-17 CONFIg GLOBAL statement syntax

## Parameters

### MAXVTV=*nnn*

optionally, specifies the maximum number of VTVs that can be migrated to a single MVC. The default is 32000 for a D, E, or F level CDS and 65000 for a G level CDS.

Valid values are:

- 4 to 32000 for a D, E or F level CDS.
- 4 to 65000 for a G level CDS.

For more information about CDS levels, see [“CONFIg” on page 217](#).

### MVCFREE=*nnn*

optionally, specifies the minimum number of free MVCs in the MVC pool. A free MVC has 100% usable space and does not contain any migrated VTVs. Valid values are 0 to 255. The default is 40.

If free MVCs is equal or less than this value, VTCS issues message SLS6616I and starts an automatic space reclamation.

---

**Note** – If you set MVCFREE=0, VTCS actually uses the default value (40).

---

### VTVattr=SCRATCH | ALLmount

optionally, specifies when VTCS assigns a Management Class to a VTV.

#### SCRATCH

Assign a Management Class only when VTCS does a scratch mount of the VTV (the default).

#### ALLmount

Assign a Management Class whenever VTCS mounts the VTV.

---

**Caution** – If you specify that VTCS assigns a Management Class whenever VTCS mounts a VTV, these attributes can change, which can cause undesirable or unpredictable results.

---

For example, if an application writes data set PROD.DATA to VTV100 with a Management Class of PROD, then writes data set TEST.DATA to VTV100 with a Management Class of TEST, then the VTV (and both data sets) has a Management Class of TEST. Similarly, it is possible to write TAPEREQ statements or SMS routines that assign different Management Classes to the same data set (for example, based on jobname), which can also cause a VTV's Management Class to change.

---

### RECALWER

optionally, specifies whether VTCS recalls VTVs with read data checks (applies to recall and drain operations).

#### YES

recall VTVs with read data checks (the default).

#### NO

Do not recall VTVs with read data checks.

**LOCKSTR=structure-name**

optionally, specifies the Coupling Facility Structure that holds VTCS Lock Data. The Structure Name must be 16 characters or less and conform to IBM's standard for naming Coupling Facility Structures. Refer to the publication *Installing ELS* for more information.

---

**Caution –** CONFIG RESET is **required** to add LOCKSTR=structure-name to a CDS that did not previously use LOCKSTR=structure-name and to remove LOCKSTR=structure-name from a CDS. CONFIG RESET is not required to change lock structure names (for example, going from LOCKSTR=VTCSL1 to LOCKSTR=VTCSL2).

---

**REPlicat**

optionally, specifies when VSM replicates the VTV.

**ALWAYS**

The replicate request is added to the VTCS replication queue every time the VTV is dismounted, regardless of whether the VTV was changed while it was mounted (the default).

**CHANGED**

The replicate request is added to the VTCS replication queue if:

- The VTV was changed while it was mounted.
- The VTV was only read while mounted but less than the expected number of MVC copies of the VTV exist.

**Caution –**


---

Regardless of the CONFIG GLOBAL REPlicat setting, replication also requires that:

- The VTV must be dismounted in a VTSS that supports replication and there cannot be an identical copy of the VTV in the other VTSS in the Cluster.
  - In addition to the CONFIG GLOBAL REPlicat value, you must specify REPlicat(YES) on a VTV's Management Class for replication to occur.
-

**VTVPAGE**

optionally, specifies the page size used to store VTV data in the VTSS and on the MVCs. This setting only applies to 400 and 800 MB VTVs. If VTVPAGE is not specified on either the MGMTclas statement or the CONFIG GLOBAL statement, the default is STANDard.

**STANDard**

standard page size, which is compatible with all VSM3/VSM4 models and microcode levels.

**LARGE**

large page size, which can provide improved performance within the VTSS and for migrates and recalls. Large page size requires a G level CDS. For more information on CDS levels, see [“CONFIg” on page 217](#). For 2 and 4 GB VTVs (MAXVtvsz 2000 or 4000) a VTVPAGE setting of LARGE is always used.

---

**Note –**

- VTVPAGE **does not** apply to VSM2s. VTVPAGE(LARGE) requires VSM4/VSM5 microcode D02.02.00.00 or VSM3 microcode N01.00.77.00. No installed option is required.
  - MGMTCLAS VTVPAGE, if specified, overrides the CONFIG GLOBAL VTVPAGE value. If VTVPAGE is not specified on either the MGMTclas statement or the CONFIG GLOBAL statement, the default is STANDard.
- 

---

**Caution –**

- The page size of a VTV can only be changed by a VTV scratch mount. Additional restrictions may also apply for scratch VTVs that were previously resident in a VTSS.
  - If you specify LARGE and the CDS level and/or VTSS microcode **do not** support LARGE, VTCS issues warning messages and VTVPAGE defaults to STANDard.
  - If you specify STANDard for 2 or 4 GB VTVs VTCS issues warning messages and defaults to LARGE.
  - Creating VTVs with large pages makes these VTVs **unreadable** in configurations that do not support large VTV pages.
- 

**NLIBDRNR**

optionally, specifies whether non-library resident MVCs are selected for Drain/Reclaim processing.

**YES**

Allow non-library resident MVCs to be selected (default).

**NO**

Do not allow non-library resident MVCs to be selected.

**NLIBMIGR**

optionally, specifies whether non-library resident MVCs will be selected for Migration processing.

**YES**

Allow non-library resident MVCs to be selected (default).

**NO**

Do not allow non-library resident MVCs to be selected.

**NLIBRECL**

optionally, specifies whether non-library resident MVCs will be selected for Recall processing.

**YES**

Allow non-library resident MVCs to be selected (default).

**NO**

Do not allow non-library resident MVCs to be selected.

**MVCMNTTO=*nn***

optionally, specifies the value in minutes when a mount of an MVC will timeout. Valid values are 5 to 30 minutes. The default is 15.

**INITMVC**

optionally, specifies whether un-initialized MVCs are to be initialized when they are first mounted.

**NO**

Un-initialized MVCs should not be initialized. This is the default.

**YES**

Un-initialized MVCs should be initialized.

**SYNCHREP**

optionally, specifies whether VTV synchronous replication feature is enabled.

**NO**

Synchronous replication is not enabled (the default).

**YES**

Synchronous replication is enabled.

---

**Note** – SYNCHREP=YES merely enables synchronous replication. To actually implement synchronous replication, you must create a Management Class that specifies REPLICat=YES\_SYNC For more information, see [“MGMTclas Control Statement” on page 440](#).

---

**MAXRTDS**

optionally, specifies the maximum number of RTDs supported.

**16**

up to 16 RTDs supported.

**32**

up to 32 RTDs supported.



**FASTMIGR**

optionally, specifies whether the stacked migrates feature is enabled for all VTSSs that support this feature.

**YES**

Enable stacked migrates.

**No**

Disable stacked migrates (the default).

---

**Note** – FASTMIGR=YES has the following prerequisites:

- VSM4/VSM5 microcode D02.05.00.00 or higher. If this level of microcode is not installed on all VTSSs in the configuration, Stacked Migration will be limited to the VTSSs that have it installed.
- VTCS/NCS 6.2 PTFs L1H13ZF (SOS6200) and L1H13ZG (SWS6200), ELS 7.0 or higher.
- CDS level “F” or higher
- FICON ports for FICON RTDs and CLINKs

For the Stacked Migration feature to be enabled, all hosts must be running the prerequisites, otherwise:

- If a host is active that does not support or tolerate stacked migrates, this will cause the CONFIG utility to return an error.
  - If a host is started and does not tolerate or support this feature, the host will shut down.
- 

**LOGPOL**

optionally, specifies whether VTCS CDS logging is optional or required.

**OPTIONal**

Logging is optional. This is the default.

This mode is required for configurations that include both 7.0/7.1 and lower level hosts.

**REQuired**

Logging is enabled for all events on all hosts that share the CDS. This requires all hosts to be at level 7.0 or higher.

The following events are logged:

- new version of VTV
- imported VTV
- first use or re-use of an MVC
- imported MVC
- add VTV to MVC
- VTV on an imported MVC
- unlink VTV from MVC
- reclaim VTV from MVC
- reset MVC EOT backwards
- electronic export of VTV

**MAXVTVSZ**

optionally, specifies a default maximum VTV size that may be used during the creation of VTVs. Valid values for this parameter depend on both the CDS level and the microcode levels of the applicable VTSSs.

**400**

400MB. This is the default.

**800**

800MB. The CDS must be at E level or above.

**2000**

2GB. The CDS must be at G level or above.

**4000**

4GB. The CDS must be at G level or above.

---

**Note –**

- The size of a VTV changes only after it goes through a scratch cycle. Therefore, if you change the Management Class and DISP=MOD, then it will still retain the original size.
  - If you specify a VTV size that is not supported by the configuration, VTCS issues warning messages and MAXVtvsz defaults to the largest VTV size supported by the configuration.
  - MAXVtvsz **does not** apply to VSM2s.
  - MAXVTVSZ(2000 | 4000) requires VSM4/VSM5 microcode D02.02.00.00 or VSM3 microcode N01.00.77.00. No installed option is required.
  - The CONFIG GLOBAL and MGMTCLAS MAXVTVSZ parameters interact as follows:
    - If MAXVTVSZ is specified on MGMTCLAS, this value overrides the CONFIG GLOBAL MAXVTVSZ value.
    - If MAXVTVSZ is **not** specified on MGMTCLAS, the CONFIG GLOBAL MAXVTVSZ value, if specified, is used. Otherwise, MAXVTVSZ defaults to 400MB.
    - If MAXVTVSZ is **not** specified on MGMTCLAS or on CONFIG GLOBAL, MAXVTVSZ defaults to 400MB.
- 

**LOCKTOUT=nnn**

optionally, specifies the minimum number of minutes that a resource is locked before message SLS6946E is issued.

Valid values are 0, or any value between 5 and 240. If 0 is specified, message SLS6946E will not be issued when a required resource is locked.

If this parameter is not specified, the current default of 10 minutes is retained.

---

**Note –** LOCKTOUT is **only** supported at 'F' level CDS (V61ABOVE) and above.

---

**FASTRECL**

Optionally specifies whether VTCS should perform concurrent tape recall/mount for all VTSSs that support the feature.

**NO**

Disable the concurrent tape recall/mount feature. This is the default.

**YES**

Enable the concurrent tape recall/mount feature.

## CONFIg RECLAIM Statement

The CONFIg RECLAIM statement controls demand and automatic MVC and VMVC space reclamation.

### Syntax

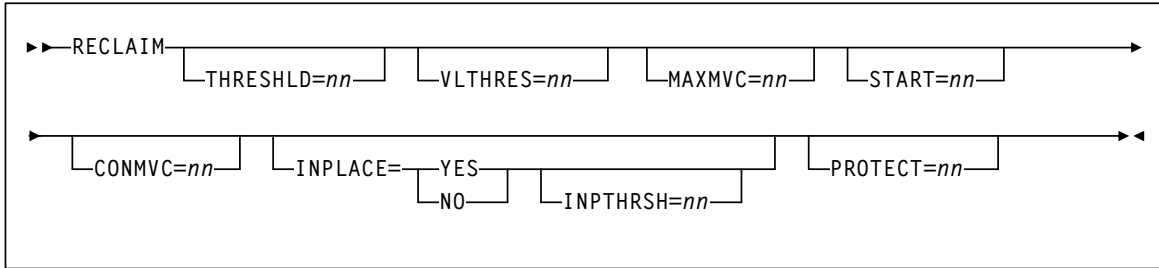


FIGURE 3-18 CONFIg RECLAIM statement syntax

### Parameters

#### THRESHLD=*nn*

optionally, specifies the percentage of fragmented space that makes an MVC eligible for demand or automatic reclamation. Valid values are 4 to 98. The default is 75.

#### VLTHRES=*nn*

optionally, specifies the percentage of fragmented space that makes a Virtual MVC (VMVC) eligible for demand or automatic reclamation. Valid values are 4 to 98. The default is 30.

---

**Note** – Reclaim on a VMVC consists of simply deleting the expired VTV images from the VMVC. That is, no recall and re-migrate of the VTV is required. VMVC reclaim is therefore much faster than MVC reclaim, and you can set VLTHRES lower (more aggressive) than THRESHLD.

---

#### MAXMVC=*nn*

optionally, specifies the maximum number of MVCs that will be processed by a single space reclamation task. Valid values are 1 to 98. The default is 40.

For automatic space reclamation to start, the number of eligible MVCs (determined by the THRESHLD parameter) must also exceed the MAXMVC value.

#### START=*nn*

optionally, specifies the level at which automatic space reclamation starts for each ACS (not globally for all ACSs). Specify a percentage value, which is equal to:

$$(\text{Reclaim Candidates} / \text{Reclaim Candidates} + \text{Free MVCs}) * 100$$

Where:

#### *Reclaim Candidates*

is the number of Reclaim Candidates determined by the CONFIG RECLAIM THRESHLD parameter.

**Reclaim Candidates + Free MVCs**

equals the number of Reclaim Candidates plus the number of free MVCs. Valid values are 1 to 98. The default is 35.

**CONMVC=*nn***

optionally, specifies the maximum number of MVCs that VTCS concurrently processes for both drain and reclaim.

Valid values are 1 to 99. The default is 1.

**INPLACE**

optionally, specifies the global default for the usage of dynamic reclaim support within VTCS at the storage class level. The default is INPLACE=NO. This value can be explicitly overridden at the storage class level.

**YES**

When available and possible, new media selected for this storage class will be formatted in partitioned mode.

**NO**

When available, new media selected for this storage class will be formatted in standard mode. This option will likely be accompanied by STORCLAS level overrides.

---

**Note –**

- The CDS must be at H level before INPLACE is accepted, enabling dynamic reclaim support. If INPLACE is specified and the CDS is not at H level, the configuration fails and error messages are displayed.
  - **Only** T10000B media (and above) is supported for dynamic reclaim. Sport volumes are not supported in partitioned format.
- 

**INPTHRSH**

optionally, specifies the percentage of fragmented space that makes an MVC in partitioned format first eligible for space reclamation processing.

***nn***

a percentage between 3 and 97. This value must be less than the THRESHLD value. The default is half the THRESHLD value (rounded up).

---

**Note –**

- INPTHRSH cannot be specified without INPLACE.
  - If INPTHRSH is specified, THRESHLD must also be specified. Both INPTHRSH and THRESHLD play roles when space reclamation processes MVCs in partitioned format. Refer to the publication *Configuring HSC and VTCS* for more information.
- 

**PROTECT=*nn***

optionally, specifies the time, in hours, to prevent (or protect) an MVC from being reused after it is drained or reclaimed. Valid values are 1 to 99.

## CONFIg VTVVOL Statement

The CONFIg VTVVOL statement defines a range of VTVs.

---

**Note** – Oracle recommends using SET VOLPARM to define VTV and MVC ranges in the VTCS CONFIG.

- See [“SET VOLPARM” on page 584](#) for more information about the SET VOLPARM statement.
  - Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for information about the use of the VTVVOL and MVCVOL statements in CONFIG to define volumes.
-

## CONFIg MVCVOL Statement

The CONFIg MVCVOL statement defines a range of MVCs available to VTCS.

---

**Note** – Oracle recommends using SET VOLPARM to define VTV and MVC ranges in the VTCS CONFIG.

- See [“SET VOLPARM” on page 584](#) for more information about the SET VOLPARM statement.
  - Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for information about the use of the VTVOL and MVCVOL statements in CONFIG to define volumes.
-

## CONFIg VTSS Statement

The CONFIg VTSS statement defines a VTSS and sets its operating values. This statement is required.

When you define a new VTSS, place its definition after any existing VTSS definitions, which must remain in their original order.

### Syntax

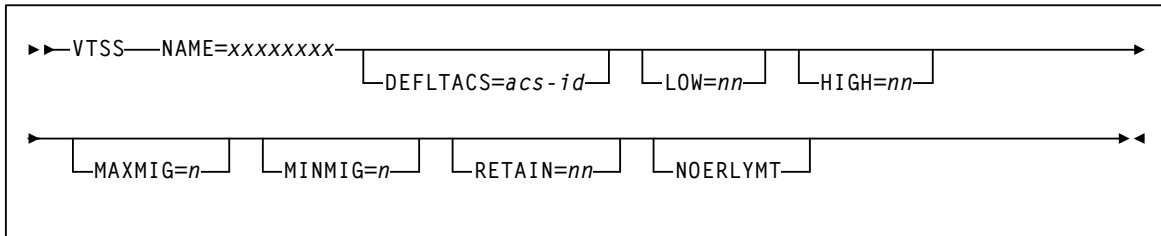


FIGURE 3-19 CONFIg VTSS statement syntax

### Parameters

---

**Note** – If you physically remove a VTSS from your configuration, reconfigure the VTSS with a VTSS statement only (no parameters).

---

#### NAME=xxxxxxx

specifies the VTSS name. This parameter is required; there is no default value.

The VTSS name can consist of the characters "A-Z", "0-9", "@", "\$", and "#".

You specify the VTSS name only via the NAME parameter, which sets the VTSS name in both the VTSS microcode (as displayed in the Subsystem Name field in the LOP or VOP) and in the configuration area of the HSC CDS. After VSM is put into operation, the VTSS name is also stored in each VTV record in the CDS. Each VTV record contains the VTSS name on which that VTV is resident. If the VTV is migrated, the VTV record contains the VTSS name from which the VTV was migrated.

Once you set the VTSS name via the NAME parameter, you **cannot** change this identifier in the HSC CDS. That is, the CONFIG utility does not allow you to change the NAME parameter after an initial setting and changing the VTSS name using the Subsystem Name field of the LOP or VOP cannot change the VTSS name in the HSC CDS.

---

**Warning** – Do not attempt to rename a VTSS that contains data on VTVs, which includes VTSS-resident VTVs and migrated VTVs.

---



For an initial setting only (not a change), you can set the VTSS name in the NAME parameter only if the VTSS name value in the VTSS microcode is one of the following:

- The factory setting (all blanks).
- A value of 99999999 (eight 9s).

Therefore, for an initial setting only, if the name in the VTSS microcode is not all blanks or 99999999, your Oracle StorageTek hardware representative must use the VTSS LOP or VOP to set the VTSS name to 99999999. This allows you to set the VTSS name to the value you want via the NAME parameter.

#### **DEFLTACS=*acs-id***

optionally, VTCS supports multi-VTSS confirmations, and supports connecting multiple ACSs to each VTSS. In configurations where a VTSS is connected to multiple ACSs, use the DEFLTACS parameter to specify the default ACS from which MVCs will be selected for migration, consolidation, and reclaim processing.

You can migrate up to 4 VTV copies to separate ACSs (per MGMTclas statement) via the MGMTclas MIGpol parameter (and ignores the DEFLTACS parameter, as described below).

If you do not specify DEFLTACS, the default value is x'FF', which allows VTCS to select MVCs from any ACS.

---

#### **Note –**

VTCS ignores the DEFLTACS value if you specify the DEFLTACS parameter and do either of the following:

- Specify the ACSlist parameter of the MGMTclas statement.
  - Use a Storage Class.
- 

#### **LOW=*nn***

optionally, specifies the low automatic migration threshold (LAMT) for this VTSS. Valid values are 5 to 95 and must be less than the HIGH default threshold. The default is 70.

#### **HIGH=*nn***

optionally, specifies the high automatic migration threshold (HAMT) for this VTSS. Valid values are 6 to 95 and must be greater than the LOW default threshold. The default is 80.

#### **MAXMIG=*n***

optionally, specifies the maximum number of concurrent automatic migration, immediate migration, and migrate-to-threshold tasks for this VTSS.

Valid values are 1 to the number of RTDs attached to the VTSS. The default is half the number of RTDs attached to the VTSS.

#### **MINMIG=*n***

optionally, specifies the minimum number of concurrent automatic migration, immediate migration, and migrate-to-threshold tasks for this VTSS.

Valid values are 1 to the MAXMIG setting. The default is 1 task.

**RETAIN=*nn***

optionally, specifies the number of minutes that VTCS will retain an MVC on an RTD in idle mode after a migration or recall. Retaining the MVC can reduce MVC mounts.

Valid values are 1 to 60. The default is 10.

The Concurrent Tape Recall/Mount feature is designed to improve mount time for a VTV that is not resident in the VTSS.

**NOERLYMT**

optionally, specifies that the Concurrent Tape Recall/Mount feature is to be disabled for this VTSS.

---

**Note** – This setting overrides the CONFIG GLOBAL FASTRECL=YES setting.

---

## CONFIg RTD Statement

The VTCS CONFIg RTD statement defines the RTDs or VLE appliances connected to the VTSS. This statement is required and must follow the VTSS statement that defines the VTSS to which the devices are connected.

The maximum number of each device type you can connect are as follows:

- For a VSM2 or VSM3, 8 RTDs.
- For a VSM4, 16 RTDs.
- For a VSM5, 32 RTDs.
- For a VSM5, 4 VLE appliances.

---

**Note** – You must specify the RESET parameter to change RTD definitions if VTCS is running with a CDS level lower than V61ABOVE. See [“RESET” on page 218](#) for more information. For an initial RTD definition, if the RTD name displayed at the VTSS LOP is anything other than all blanks, you must also specify RESET.

---

### Syntax

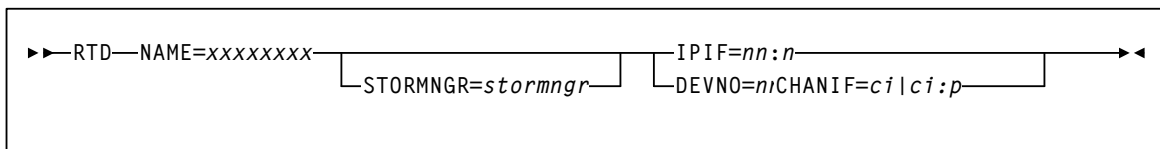


FIGURE 3-20 CONFIg RTD statement syntax

### Parameters

#### NAME=xxxxxxx

specifies the 1 to 8 character identifier of the RTD or VLE appliance.

- For RTDs, you set or change the RTD identifier only via the RTD NAME parameter; to do so, the RTD identifier must be all blanks as displayed at the VTSS LOP or DOP.
- For VLE appliances, use any meaningful 1 to 8 character identifier.

This parameter is required; there is no default value.

#### STORMNGR

specifies the Subsystem Name of a VLE appliance.

##### *stormngr*

a VLE subsystem name. For more information, refer to the publication *Configuring the Host Software for VLE*.

This parameter does not apply to connections to RTDs (that is, when the DEVNO and CHANIF parameters are specified). This parameter **only** applies to connections to a VLE appliance (that is, when the IPIF parameter is specified).

**IPIF=*nn:n***

specifies the IP interface on the VTSS IFF3 card that communicates with the VLE appliance. This value must match the value shown on the VTSS DOP IFF IP Configuration Status screen. For example, Target 0 on card IFF 0 has an interface value of 0A:0.

---

**Note** – The IPIF parameter is only valid for specifying a connection to a VLE appliance, it is not valid for RTD connections.

---

**DEVNO=*nnnn***

specifies the unit address of the RTD.

This parameter is required with CHANIF; there is no default value.

**CHANIF=*ci* or *ci:p***

specifies the channel interface on the VTSS that communicates with the RTD where:

- *c* is the VTSS Storage Cluster number (0 or 1).
- *i* is the interface number (A, C, E, G, I, K, M, or O)
- *p* is the device number on the interface (0, 1, 2, or 3).

This value must match the Nearlink channel interface defined at the VTSS by your Oracle StorageTek hardware representative at VTSS installation and configuration. This parameter is required with DEVNO; there is no default value.

- Regardless of whether the Maximum 32 RTDs feature is enabled, if you do not have greater than 16 RTDs attached to a VTSS, you can use the “old” addressing scheme (CHANIF=*ci*).
- If, however, the Maximum 32 RTDs feature is enabled and you have greater than 16 RTDs attached to a VTSS, you must use the “new” addressing scheme (CHANIF=*ci:p*).

Refer to the publication *Configuring HSC and VTCS* for more information.

---

**Note** – The DEVNO and CHANIF parameters are only valid for specifying RTD connections, they are **not** valid for a connection to a VLE appliance.

---



---

**Caution** – For RTDs, driving mount and dismount commands to the device is version dependant. If the remote HSC server is running V6.2, then it is dependant upon the local SMC trapping the MVS message and forwarding the mount/dismount across to the HSC server as if it was a job. If the remote HSC server is running V7 or above, then this is automatically detected and VTCS directs a mount/dismount request directly to the remote HSC server. It is important that the SMC parameters only direct commands to servers of one of these types.

---



When NOVERIFY is specified for a device or range of devices, the following occurs:

- The device is reported to SMC so that VTVs can be mounted from MVS.
- VTCS does not use that device for ECAM I/O. At least one device must be left without NOVERIFY so that it can be used for ECAM I/O.

## Specifying VTD Unit Addresses

You can specify VTD addresses by doing one of the following:

- Specify the VTD unit addresses on a VTD statement following a VTSS statement and **do not** specify any HOST statements following the VTSS statement. All hosts physically connected to the VTSS have access to its VTDs by the default addresses specified on the VTD statement.
- **Do not** specify the VTD unit addresses on the VTD statement following a VTSS statement. Instead, place a VTD statement after a HOST statement for only those hosts for which you want to define connections to the previously defined VTSS. You must specify a placeholder (HOST NAME with no VTD parameter) for any hosts that you do not want connected to this VTSS.

---

**Note** – The VTVs created and MVCs initially written to from a VTSS are considered to be resources of that VTSS. Therefore, only hosts with access to a VTSS have access to its VTVs and MVCs. In this type of “restricted” access configuration, each host should have a separate VTV scratch pool to ensure that each host has accurate scratch counts. Similarly, free MVCs and MVC reclaim counts are reported on each host for the MVCs associated with the VTSS to which the host is connected.

---

You can specify different address ranges for each host, although Oracle recommends that you specify the same address ranges for all hosts for consistency of operations. If you specify different address ranges for different hosts, use the HSC SET DRVHOST and SMC DRIVEMAP statements if you have a client/server configuration. You **must** include UNITATTR MODEL(IGNORE) commands for **all** overgenned devices (including VTDs) on all MVS hosts.

---

**Caution** – In a multi-host, multi-VTSS configuration, you can use this VTD addressing method to deny access to VTSSs to which hosts are physically connected. You **must**, however, use this method to deny access from hosts that are **not** physically connected to a VTSS. If you do not deny access, VTCS on a host that does not have physical connections to a VTSS may wait, trying to communicate with the VTSS while VSM operations may be stalled on all other hosts.

---

## CONFIg CLUSTER Statement

The CONFIg CLUSTER statement defines two VTSSs in a Cluster.

### Syntax

```
►►CLUSTER—NAME=nnnnnnnn—VTSSs(vtss-list)—————►◄
```

FIGURE 3-22 CONFIg CLUSTER statement syntax

### Parameters

**NAME=nnnnnnnn**

specifies the 1 to 8 character identifier of the Cluster.

This parameter is required; there is no default value.

**VTSSs(*vtss-list*)**

Specifies the names of the VTSSs in a cluster. At least two VTSSs must be specified. If more than two VTSSs are specified, then down level hosts will not function.

The relationship between each of the VTSSs is defined by the CONFIG CLINK statement. See [“CONFIG CLINK Statement” on page 240](#) for more information.

This parameter is required. There is no default value.

---

#### Note –

- VTSS names that you specify on a CLUSTER statement must be known to VTCS. That is, the VTSS names must be already defined in the CDS or must be specified in VTSS statements that already exist in the current set of CONFIG statements. For, example, the following is valid:

```
VTSSNAME=VTSS1  LOW=70 HIGH=80  MAXMIG=3  RETAIN=5
VTSSNAME=VTSS2  LOW=70 HIGH=80  MAXMIG=3  RETAIN=5
CLUSTER NAME=CLUSTER1 VTSSs= (VTSS1, VTSS2)
```

The following is **not** valid unless VTSS1 and VTSS2 are already defined in the CDS:

```
CLUSTER NAME=CLUSTER1 VTSSs= (VTSS1, VTSS2)
VTSSNAME=VTSS1  LOW=70 HIGH=80  MAXMIG=3  RETAIN=5
VTSSNAME=VTSS2  LOW=70 HIGH=80  MAXMIG=3  RETAIN=5
```

- The DECOM utility outputs CLUSTER statements with blanks instead of commas as separators, which is also valid input to CONFIG. For example, DECOM outputs the following, which is valid input to CONFIG:

```
CLUSTER NAME=CLUSTER1 VTSSs= (VTSS1 VTSS2)
```

---

## CONFIg CLINK Statement

The CONFIg CLINK statement defines the channel interface between two VTSSs in a Cluster and allows for the definition of CLINKs on IP interfaces to support replication of VTVs over IP CLINKs.

The VTSSs can be in one of three modes:

- Primary-Secondary, in which there are two VTSSs and you write CLINK statements for *only* the Primary.
- Peer-to-Peer, in which case there are two VTSSs and you write CLINK statements for both VTSSs to enable bi-directional VTV replication.
- Any-to-Any, in which there are more than two VTSSs in the cluster and the individual relationships are defined through CLINK statements.

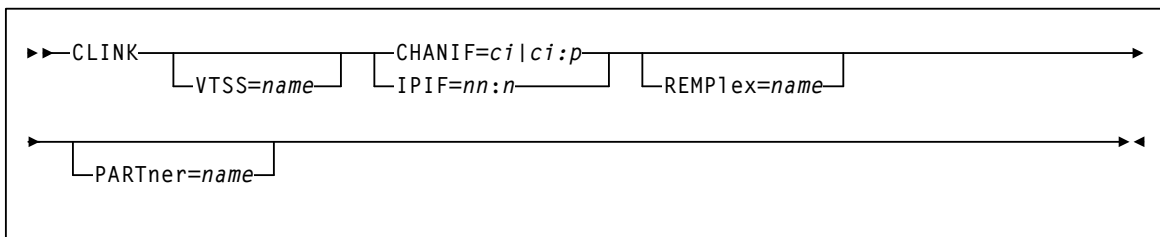
In addition, CLINKs can be defined from the VTSS to perform electronic export to another TapePlex. These links need not be to the same VTSS within the remote TapePlex.

Each VTSS can either be connected to a maximum of two different TapePlexes, or one TapePlex and a partner VTSS in a cluster.

An electronic export connection can always be to multiple VTSSs. A cluster connection can be to multiple VTSSs only if the CONFIg CLUSTER statement specifies more than two VTSS members.

Refer to the publication *ELS Disaster Recovery and Offsite Data Management Guide* for examples.

### Syntax



**FIGURE 3-23** CONFIg CLINK statement syntax



## Parameters

### VTSS=*name*

optionally, specifies the name of the VTCS that owns the CLINK. This is the VTSS from which the VTVs are replicated or exported.

If this parameter is omitted, by default, the CLINK is attached to the current VTSS being defined.

---

**Note** – The VTSS name that you specify on a CLINK statement must be known to VTCS. That is, the VTSS name must be already defined in the CDS or it must be specified in a VTSS statement that already exists in the current set of CONFIG statements. For example, the following is valid:

```
VTSSNAME=VTSS1 LOW=70 HIGH=80 MAXMIG=3 RETAIN=5
CLINK VTSS=VTSS1 CHANIF=0A
```

The following is not valid unless VTSS1 is already defined in the CDS:

```
CLINK VTSS=VTSS1 CHANIF=0A
VTSSNAME=VTSS1 LOW=70 HIGH=80 MAXMIG=3 RETAIN=5
```

---

### CHANIF=*ci* or *ci:p*

specifies the channel interface on the VTSS that communicates with the RTD where:

- *c* is the VTSS Storage Cluster number (0 or 1).
- *i* is the interface number (A, C, E, G, I, K, M, or O)
- *p* is the device number on the interface (0, 1, 2, or 3).

This value must match the Nearlink channel interface defined at the VTSS by your Oracle StorageTek hardware representative at VTSS installation and configuration.

---

### Note –

- Regardless of whether the Maximum 32 RTDs feature is enabled, if you do not have greater than 16 RTDs attached to a VTSS, you can use the “old” addressing scheme (CHANIF=*ci*).
- If, however, the Maximum 32 RTDs feature is enabled and you have greater than 16 RTDs attached to a VTSS, you must use the “new” addressing scheme (CHANIF=*ci:p*).

Refer to the publication *Configuring HSC and VTCS* for more information.

---

### IPIF=*nn:n*

optionally, allows Ethernet connection of two Native IP (IFF3 card) ports, where the *nn:n* values are shown in parentheses before each Target IP Address on the IFF IP Configuration Status screen for each IFF ethernet port.

Refer to the publication *Configuring HSC and VTCS* for more information.

---

**Note** – The CLINK statement must contain **either** the CHANIF or the IPIF parameter, but **not both**.

---

**REMPlex=*name***

optionally, specifies the name of the TapePlex at the receiving end of the CLINK that receives the copies of the VTVs. During validation of the link, this name is compared with the THISPLEX definition in the remote system configuration.

The REMPLEX parameter indicates that the CLINK is to be used for electronic export. Absence of this parameter indicates that the CLINK is to be used for a cluster connection.

**PARTner=*name***

optionally, specifies the name of the VTSS at the receiving end of the CLINK that receives copies of the VTVs.

This parameter is required for CLINKs used for electronic export, or where the cluster consists of more than two VTSSs.

During validation of the link, this name is compared with the VTSS name at the other end of the CLINK.

**VTD=*n***

optionally, specifies as a single hexadecimal digit, the ordinal number of the VTD in the partner VTSS that forms the inbound part of the connection.

---

**Note** – When the VTD parameter is specified, the PARTner parameter must also be specified.

---

Within a combination of REMPLEX, PARTner, and VTD, every CLINK to be used for electronic export must be unique. For a cluster connection, the combination of PARTner and VTD within the configuration deck must be unique.

---

**Caution** – Although the uniqueness of the PARTner/VTD parameter values can be validated within a single configuration, it cannot be validated across different TapePlex configurations. If multiple TapePlexes (configurations) are exporting to a single TapePlex, it is essential that each VTD is only defined to one unique CLINK. This also means that each VTSS can only be referenced by a maximum of 14 CLINKs (8 for VSM3).

---



## CONFIg STORMNGR Statement

The CONFIg STORMNGR statement defines a VLE to VTCS.

---

### Note –

- Do not specify this statement when down-level hosts are active. Once CONFIg STORMNGR is specified, down-level hosts no longer function.
- This statement requires CDS level V62ABOVE or higher.
- This statement is an alternative to [“CONFIg TAPEPLEX Statement” on page 245](#). That is, you can either specify a list of VLEs on CONFIG TAPEPLEX or each VLE individually via CONFIG STORMNGR. If you code CONFIG STORMNGR statements, they must immediately follow the CONFIG TAPEPLEX statement to which the CONFIG STORMNGR statements apply.

**Note, however,** that if you want to define a VLE multi-node system, you must use the CONFIG STORMNGR statement to do so.

---

### Syntax

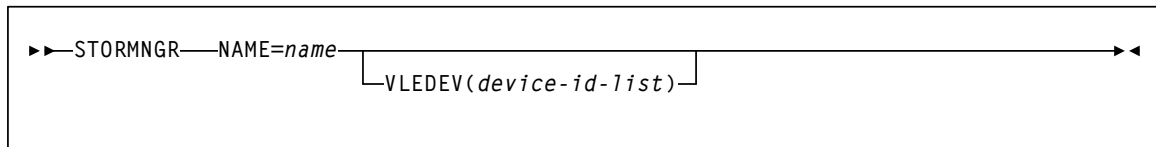


FIGURE 3-25 CONFIg STORMNGR statement syntax

### Parameters

#### STORMNGR

specifies Subsystem Name of the VLE attached to the preceding TAPEPLEX statement.

#### NAME=*name*

the Subsystem name.

#### VLEDEV

allows you to specify the logical device IDs of a VLE. This parameter is optional and requires CONFIG CDSLEVEL=V71ABOVE (CDS Level H).

#### *device-id-list*

specifies a list or range of device IDs whose format is an 'S' prefix followed by three hexadecimal characters. These IDs are similar to MVS device addresses but do not overlap with the MVS name space. You can specify up to 96 device IDs per VLE, which defines each VLE with 96 emulated devices, which allows VTCS to schedule up to 96 processes on each VLE.

## CONFIg TAPEPLEX Statement

The CONFIg TAPEPLEX statement defines values to VTCS for Cross-TapePlex Replication (CTR) or for replication to a VLE.

---

### Note –

- Do not specify this statement when down-level hosts are active. Once CONFIg TAPEPLEX is specified, down-level hosts no longer function.
  - This statement requires CDS level V61ABOVE or higher.
  - Refer to the publications *Managing HSC and VTCS* and *ELS Disaster Recovery and Offsite Data Management Guide* for more information about Cross-Tape Replication.
- 

### Syntax

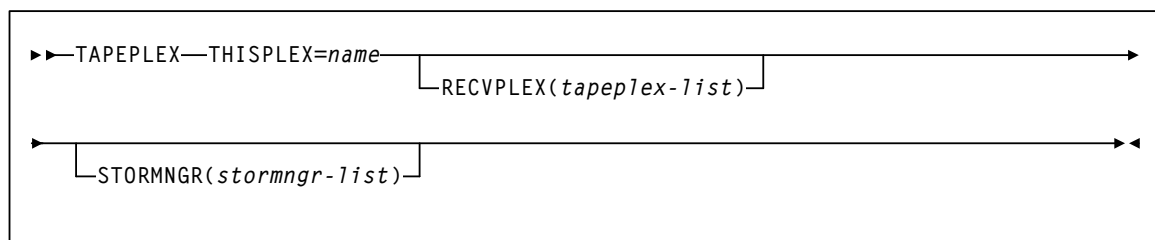


FIGURE 3-26 CONFIg TAPEPLEX statement syntax

### Parameters

#### THISPLEX

specifies the TapePlex name for this configuration. This name is associated with any VTV copies that are exported to other TapePlexes via Cross-TapePlex Replication.

*name*

the TapePlex name. This name must match the name specified on an SMC LIBrary or TAPEPlex command defined in the local SMC.

#### RECVPLEX

optionally, specifies the list of TapePlexes **from which** VTV copies can be received (via Cross-TapePlex Replication). Attempts by hosts to send or scratch VTV copies from TapePlexes that are not included on the list are rejected.

*tapeplex-list*

the list of TapePlex names.

---

**Note –** Specify RECVPLEX on the **receiving** TapePlex. You can also specify RECVPLEX on the sending TapePlex to allow this TapePlex to recall a VTV from the receiving TapePlex.

---

## **STORMNGR**

optionally, specifies Subsystem Names of the VLE appliances attached to this TapePlex.

### ***stormngr-list***

the list of VLE subsystem names. For more information, refer to the publication *Configuring the Host Software for VLE*.

# CONSolid

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

The CONSolid command consolidates VTVs on MVCs.

## Syntax

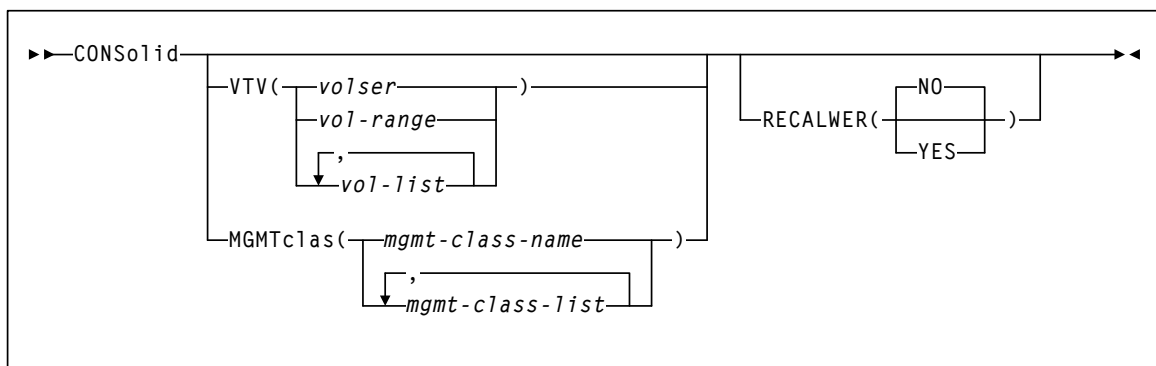


FIGURE 3-27 CONSolid syntax

## Parameters

### VTV

optionally, specifies one or more VTVs to consolidate.

*volser*, *vol-range* or *vol-list*

the volser, volser range, or volser list of VTVs. You can specify a maximum of 2,000 VTVs.

### MGMTclas

optionally, specifies the names of one or more Management Classes that determine the VTVs to consolidate.

*mgmt-class-name* | *mgmt-class-list*

the names of one or more Management Classes that you defined on the MGMTclas control statement; for more information, see [“MGMTclas Control Statement” on page 440](#). You can consolidate a maximum of 2,000 VTVs by specifying a Management Class.

### RECALWER

optionally, specifies whether VTCS recalls VTVs with read data checks.

#### NO

Do not recall VTVs with read data checks. This is the default.

#### YES

Recall VTVs with read data checks.



# Consolidation Report

The consolidation report displays the following messages:

MIGRATE ONLY FROM VTSS *vtssname*

**Explanation:** The VTV is resident on VTSS *vtssname*.

REMIGRATE FROM MVC *mvcname* VIA VTSS *vtssname*

**Explanation:** VTCS is recalling a VTV from MVC *mvcname* to consolidate the VTV.

VTV *vtvname* NOT SELECTED; VTV IS SCRATCH

**Explanation:** VTCS will not consolidate the specified VTV, which is either scratch or not initialized.

VTV *vtvname* NOT SELECTED; VTV ALREADY CONSOLIDATED

**Explanation:** The specified VTV is already consolidated.

VTV *vtvname* NOT SELECTED; VTV RECORD NOT FOUND

**Explanation:** VTCS will not consolidate the specified VTV, which has no record in the CDS.

VTV *vtvname* NOT SELECTED; VTV STILL MOUNTED ON DRIVE

**Explanation:** VTCS cannot consolidate the specified VTV, which is mounted or in recovery.

REDRIVING REQUEST BECAUSE OF ERROR

**Explanation:** VTCS is retrying an unsuccessful consolidation request.

CONSOLID CMD PROBLEM DECODING VCI REQUEST FROM HSC

**Explanation:** The consolidation failed.

VTV *vtvnumber* NOT SELECTED: LIMITED ACCESS TO VTSS

**Explanation:** The consolidation request failed because a host not enabled for consolidation (via the NOMIGRAT parameter) issued the request.

MIGRATE NO MVCS AVAILABLE

**Explanation:** Sufficient free MVCs are not available to complete the request.

---

# DEComp

**Interfaces:**

Utility only  
UUI: Yes

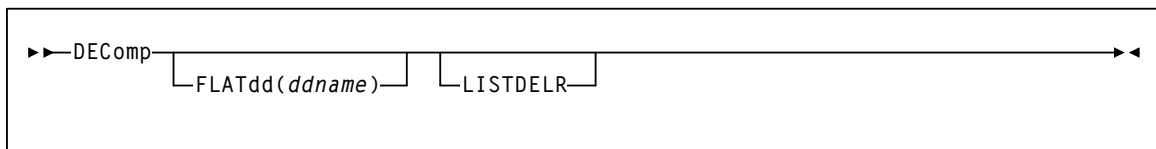
**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC not required

## Description

The DEComp command lists the VSM configuration information in the HSC CDS.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-28** DEComp syntax

## Parameters

**FLATdd**

optionally, specifies the output destination ddname if a flat file is required.

*ddname*

the ddname of the flat file included in the JCL.

**LISTDELR**

optionally, list volser ranges of “logically deleted” MVCs and VTVs.

---

**Note** – LISTDELR is **only** valid for a CDS at level G or above.

---

# Output

## FLATDD Parameter Output

FIGURE 3-29 shows an example of DEComp output with the FLATDD parameter.

```

CONFIG CDSLEVEL(V62ABOVE)
GLOBALMAXVTV=32000 MVCFREE=40 VTVattr=ALLmount RECALWER=YES
REPLIcat=ALWAYS LOCKSTR=STK_VTCS_LOCKS
RECLAIMTHRESHLD=70 MAXMVC=40 START=35 CONMVC=1 VLTHRES=1 +
INPLACE=Yes INPTHRSH=15
VTVVOL LOW=905000 HIGH=999999 SCRATCH
VTVVOL LOW=C00000 HIGH=C25000 SCRATCH
VTVVOL LOW=RMM000 HIGH=RMM020 SCRATCH
MVCVOL LOW=N25980 HIGH=N25989
MVCVOL LOW=N35000 HIGH=N35999
VTSSNAME=VTSS1 LOW=70 HIGH=80 MAXMIG=3 RETAIN=5
    RTDNAME=VTS18800 DEVNO=8800 CHANIF=0A
    RTDNAME=VTS18801 DEVNO=8801 CHANIF=0I
    RTDNAME=VTS18802 DEVNO=8802 CHANIF=1A
    RTDNAME=VTS18803 DEVNO=8803 CHANIF=1I
    VTDLOW=8900 HIGH=893F
VTSSNAME=VTSS2 LOW=70 HIGH=80 MAXMIG=3 RETAIN=5
    RTDNAME=VTS28804 DEVNO=8804 CHANIF=0A
    RTDNAME=VTS28805 DEVNO=8805 CHANIF=0I
    RTDNAME=VTS28806 DEVNO=8806 CHANIF=1A
    RTDNAME=VTS28807 DEVNO=8807 CHANIF=1I
    VTDLOW=9900 HIGH=993F

```

**FIGURE 3-29** Example DEComp FLATDD output

## SLSPRINT Output

FIGURE 3-30 shows an example of DEComp output to SLSPRINT.

```

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)      StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility      PAGE 0001
TIME 09:07:06          Control Card Image Listing                      DATE 2010-03-31

  DECOM
  SLS1315I SSRDMP.P775644.TESTCDS WAS SELECTED AS THE PRIMARY CONTROL DATA SET
  TIME 09:07:06 VTCS DECOMPILE
  CONFIG CDSLEVEL(V62ABOVE)
  GLOBALMAXVTV=32000 MVCFREE=40 VTVattr=ALLmount RECALWER=YES
  REPLICAT=ALWAYS LOCKSTR=STK_VTCS_LOCKS
  RECLAIMTHRESHLD=70 MAXMVC=40 START=35 CONMVC=1 VLTHRES=1 +
  INPLACE=Yes INPTHRSH=15
  VTVVOL LOW=905000 HIGH=999999 SCRATCH
  VTVVOL LOW=C00000 HIGH=C25000 SCRATCH
  VTVVOL LOW=RMM000 HIGH=RMM020 SCRATCH
  MVCVOL LOW=N25980 HIGH=N25989
  MVCVOL LOW=N35000 HIGH=N35999
  VTSSNAME=VTSS1 LOW=70 HIGH=80 MAXMIG=3 RETAIN=5
    RTDNAME=VTS18800 DEVNO=8800 CHANIF=0A
    RTDNAME=VTS18801 DEVNO=8801 CHANIF=0I
    RTDNAME=VTS18802 DEVNO=8802 CHANIF=1A
    RTDNAME=VTS18803 DEVNO=8803 CHANIF=1I
    VTDLOW=8900 HIGH=893F
  VTSSNAME=VTSS2 LOW=70 HIGH=80 MAXMIG=3 RETAIN=5
    RTDNAME=VTS28804 DEVNO=8804 CHANIF=0A
    RTDNAME=VTS28805 DEVNO=8805 CHANIF=0I
    RTDNAME=VTS28806 DEVNO=8806 CHANIF=1A
    RTDNAME=VTS28807 DEVNO=8807 CHANIF=1I
    VTDLOW=9900 HIGH=993F

```

FIGURE 3-30 Example DEComp SLSPRINT output

# DELETSCR

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

The DELETSCR command deletes scratch VTVs from VTSSs and unlinks any migrated VTVs from MVCs.

## Syntax

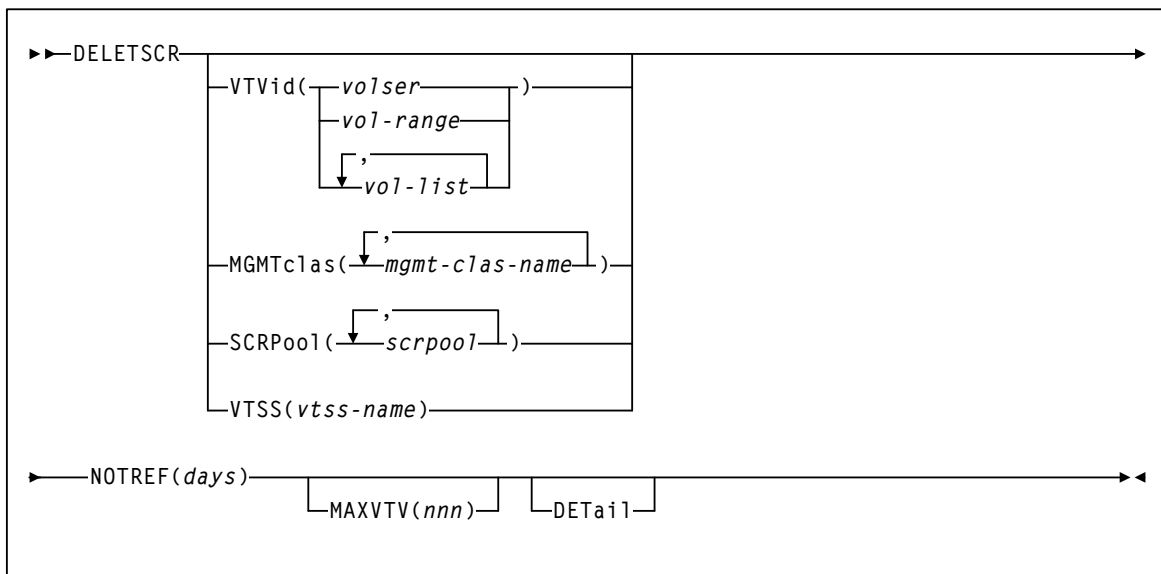


FIGURE 3-31 DELETSCR syntax

## Parameters

### VTVid

optionally, specifies one or more VTVs to be deleted.

*volser*, *vol-range* or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more VTVs.

### MGMTclas

optionally, specifies the Management Class(es) of the VTVs.

*mgmt-class-name*

the Management Class name that you specified on the MGMTclas control statement.

### SCRPool

optionally, specifies the scratch pool(s) to be deleted. If the pool contains VTVs and real volumes, DELETSCR deletes only VTVs.

*scrpool*

an existing HSC scratch pool.

### VTSS

optionally, causes scratch VTVs within the specified VTSS to be deleted.

*vtss-name*

the VTSS name.

---

**Note** – VTVid, MGMTclas, SCRPool, and VTSS are mutually exclusive. If you do not specify one of these parameters, VTCS processes **all** scratch VTVs.

---

### NOTREF

specifies the number of days since a VTV was last referenced for it to be deleted by DELETSCR.

*days*

the number of days (1-999).

### MAXVTV

optionally, specifies the maximum number of VTVs that DELETSCR deletes. Note that this is a maximum, not a target.

*nnn*

the maximum number of VTVs (0-999). If not specified, DELETSCR deletes all scratch VTVs. If you specify 0, DELETSCR does not delete any VTVs, but the **summary** report shows **how many** VTVs would have been deleted...at the point at which you ran DELETSCR (that is, the report is just a snapshot).

### DETail

optionally, produce a detailed report that also shows detail and summary of VTVs that fall within the NOTREF period.

## DELETSCR Report

FIGURE 3-32 shows an example of a DELETSCR report for the following batch invocation:

DELETSCR MGMTCLAS(MC1) NOTREF(60) MAXVTV(10) DET

```

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)  StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility          PAGE 0001
TIME 06:32:03                SCRATCH VTV DELETE                        DATE 2010-03-31

SLS6833I VTV VTV100 deleted from MVC M00001
SLS6835I VTV VTV101 excluded - referenced within 60 days
SLS6833I VTV VTV102 deleted from MVC M00003
SLS6835I VTV VTV103 excluded - referenced within 60 days
SLS6835I VTV VTV104 excluded - referenced within 60 days
SLS6833I VTV VTV105 deleted from MVC M00007
SLS6833I  VTV VTV106 deleted from MVC M00157
SLS6834I VTV VTV107 deleted
SLS6833I VTV VTV108 deleted from MVC M00072
SLS6833I VTV VTV110 deleted from MVC M00757
SLS6833I VTV VTV111 deleted from MVC M00767
SLS6833I VTV VTV112 deleted from MVC M01057
SLS6834I VTV VTV113 deleted

SUMMARY:
10 scratch VTVs deleted
1 VTV EXCLUDED - NOT SCRATCH VOLUME
0 VTVS EXCLUDED - NOT INITIALIZED
3 SCRATCH VTVS EXCLUDED - REFERENCED WITHIN 60 DAYS
6 scratch VTV delete candidates bypassed after MAXVTV limit 10 reached

```

FIGURE 3-32 DELETSCR report

## DELETSCR Report Contents

A DELETSCR report shows:

- A line for each deleted VTV.
- If DETail is specified, a line for each VTV excluded (did not fall within the NOTREF period).
- A summary showing:
  - Total VTVs deleted.
  - Total VTVs excluded - not scratch.
  - Total VTVs excluded - not initialized.
  - Total VTVs excluded - not resident or migrated.
  - Total VTVs excluded - referenced within the NOTREF period.
  - Total VTVs excluded - MAXVTV limit has been reached.
  - Total VTVs excluded - not in the specified Management Class.

## DIRBLD

### Interfaces:

Utility only  
UUI: No

### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

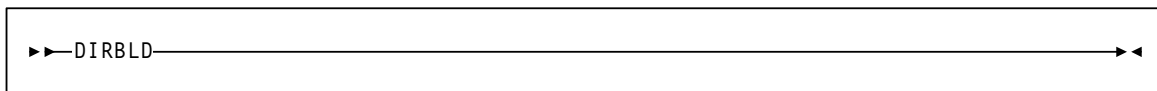
## Description

The DIRBLD command rebuilds the database directory for all defined CDS copies.

The control data set contains a directory of pointers to various important locations and if damaged, can cause operational problems. Normally, HSC corrects such errors automatically. The DIRBLD utility repairs a corrupted CDS database directory. This utility can be run while the HSC is stopped or running to repair damage to the directory and maintain continuous operation. It must be run using all CDS copies as input.

**Caution** – Contact Oracle StorageTek Support before running the DIRBLD utility to insure that the CDS is not further damaged by inappropriate use or inappropriate operational conditions.

# Syntax



**FIGURE 3-33** DIRBLD syntax

## Parameters

None.



# DISMount

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UUI: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

The DISMount command dismounts a cartridge or VTV.

Although the volume may be rewound and unloaded by the operating system, it may not be dismounted from the real drive or VTD. This command is provided for instances where hosts are not communicating with a specific ACS (disconnected mode).

Hosts that are still communicating (connected mode) may be able to semi-automate tape handling for hosts that cannot communicate with a specific ACS. When HSC or VTCS does not dismount a volume, you must ensure that the volume is unloaded before you issue the DISMount command.

## Syntax

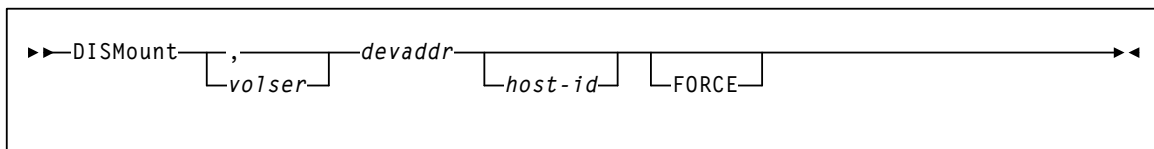


FIGURE 3-34 DISMount syntax

## Parameters

### *volser*

optionally, specifies which volume to dismount. The *volser* operand is optional. If it is not specified, the robot dismounts whatever volume is mounted on the device.

If *volser* is not specified, a comma must be entered immediately before the device address to indicate the missing operand. For example:

```
DISMOUNT ,B00
```

### *devaddr*

specifies the device address of the transport from which the volume is to be dismounted.

### *host-id*

optionally, indicates that the DISMount command is to be performed for the device address of the specified host (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).

### **FORCE**

optionally, specifies that the drive will be unloaded before the volume is dismounted. This parameter is not valid for virtual drives.

# Display

The Display command displays status and current settings for various ELS components.

Issue this command with any of the options listed in the following table. Each option is described individually, and in more detail, on the pages to follow.

---

**Note** – When issuing a Display command, the Query keyword may be substituted for the Display keyword. Command processing is unchanged.

---

**TABLE 3-1** Display options

This option:	Displays the following output:
Acs	status for one or more ACSs.
ACTive	active VTCS processes
ALI	CDS and ACS status
ALLOC	HSC allocation settings
Cap	CAP settings and status
CDS	status of all copies of the CDS, journals (if active), some operational settings (e.g., the cleaning cartridge prefix, SMF record type, etc.), and the status of all HSC-defined hosts
CLink	cluster link status
CLUster	cluster status
CMD	detailed information for an ELS command
COMMPath	current settings for HSC host-to-host communications
CONFIG	CONFIG parameter settings
DRives	current and queued mount activity for each transport address
DRIVE_INFO	status information for real and/or virtual drives
EXceptns	hardware status
LMUPDEF	information about the definition data set, containing LMUPATH statements, that is currently loaded
LOCKs	VTCS lock status
Lsm	LSM status
Message	detailed information for an ELS message
MGMTDEF	information about active MGMTclas statements
MIGrate	migration status
MNTD	current settings for HSC mount options set by the MNTD command
MONitor	list of monitoring consoles. <b>Note:</b> Refer to the <i>ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference</i> for more information about this option.
MVC	information about a specific MVC

**TABLE 3-1** Display options (Continued)

<b>This option:</b>	<b>Displays the following output:</b>
MVCDEF	information about active MVCPool statements <b>Note:</b> Refer to the <i>ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference</i> for more information about this option.
MVCPool	information about a specific MVC pool
OPTion	current settings for general HSC options set by the OPTion command
PATH	status of paths from VTSSs to either RTDs or Virtual Libraries.
Queue	status of queued VTCS processes
REPlicat	VTV replication status
Requests	all pending LMU requests
RTD	usage information for the one or more RTDs
SCRatch	scratch counts by subpool name, ACS id, LSM id, media type, recording technique, or owning host name
SCRPDEF	information about the definition data set, containing SCRPOol statements, that is currently loaded <b>Note:</b> Refer to the <i>ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference</i> for more information about this option.
SEN	SEN LISTEN requests and their status.
SERVER	Server (HSC) status, including service level and features
SRVlev	current service level of the HSC on the system from which you issue the command
Status	status of pending requests currently active on the host issuing the command
STORCLas	information about a Storage Class
STORMNgr	status of an external storage manager and the paths defined to it from the VTSSs.
TASKs	task status
THReshld	scratch count and scratch threshold information by subpool name, ACS id, LSM id, media name, and recording technique name
VOLDEF	information about the definition data set, containing VOLATTR statements, that is currently loaded <b>Note:</b> Refer to the <i>ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference</i> for more information about this option.
Volser	volume information
VOLume_Info	status information for real and/or virtual volumes
VSCRatch	diagnostic information for virtual scratch counts
VTD	VTD status
VTSS	VTSS status
VTV	VTV status

# Display Acs

## Interfaces:

Console or utility

UII: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

Display Acs displays the status of one or more ACSs. Information may include the following:

- partition ID
- LMU and HSC compatibility levels
- redundant electronics connections (summary of all Library Controllers)
- available scratch volumes and free cells

## Syntax

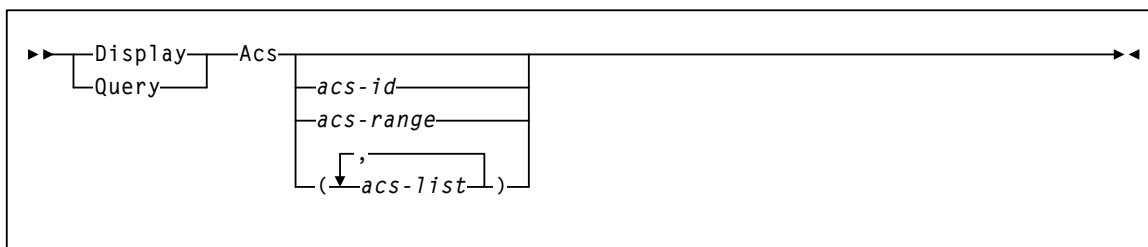


FIGURE 3-35 Display Acs syntax

## Parameters

### *acs-id* or *acs-range* or *acs-list*

one or more ACSs for which the system is to display status. Each *acs-list* element can be either a single ACSid or an ACSid range. The elements in a list must be separated by commas or blanks, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

If you do not supply an *acs-id*, the status of all defined ACSs in the library is displayed.

## Output

```
SLS1000I ACS 00 status: Connected   658
Partition ID=000
Compatibility levels: HSC=23, LMU=23
Redundant Electronics Configured
Scratch Volumes available.....      0
Free Cells available.....          2583
RE Library Summary:
LIB LC Mode      Status              IP Addr/Host Name
1   A  standby              10.80.46.170
1   B  active   Online          10.80.46.171
2   A  active              not assigned
2   B  standby              not assigned
3   A  active              not assigned
3   B  standby              not assigned
4   A  active              not assigned
4   B  standby              not assigned
```

# Display ACTive

### Interfaces:

Console or utility

UUI: Yes

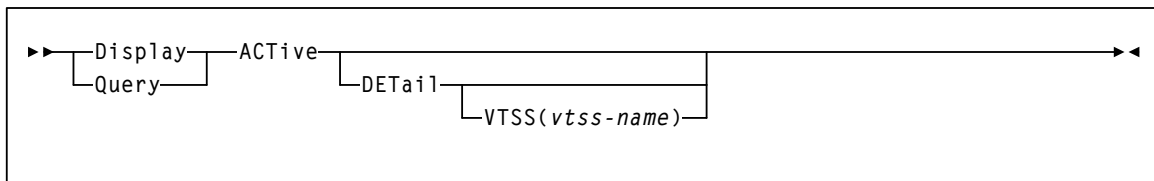
### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display ACTive displays active VTCS processes.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-36** Display ACTive syntax

## Parameters

**Active**

## DETail

optionally, display detailed status.

## VTSS

optionally, display processes for the specified VTSS.

*vtss-name*

the VTSS name.

## Output

FIGURE 3-37 shows an example of Display Active output.

MIGRATES=3RECALLS=2RECLAIMS=0

**FIGURE 3-37** Example Display Active and Display Queue output (no detail)

FIGURE 3-38 shows example of Display Active DETail output.

Function	ID	VTV	MVC	RTD	VTSS	Task	Reason
Reclaim@	01509	-	-	-	-	RCM	Child Finish
.ReclmMVC	01516	*ABORT 021688	-	-	-	RCM	Active
.ReclmMVC	01517	-	021591	-	-	RCM	Child Finish
. VtvMover	01532	-	021591	-	-	RCM	Child Finish
.	Recall	01533	Y00388	-	!ALLVTSS	Drv	RTD allocation
			021591				
.ReclmMVC	01518	-	021752	-	-	RCM	Child Finish
. VtvMover	01582	-	021752	-	-	RCM	Child Finish
.	Recall	01583	-	021752	-	!ALLVTSS	DrvRTD allocation
.ReclmMVC	01519	-	022527	-	-	RCM	Queued
.ReclmMVC	01520	-	021650	-	-	RCM	Queued
.ReclmMVC	01521	-	022535	-	-	RCM	Queued
.ReclmMVC	01522	-	021620	-	-	RCM	Queued
.ReclmMVC	01523	-	021545	-	-	RCM	Queued
.ReclmMVC	01524	-	021668	-	-	RCM	Queued
Migrate@	01563	Demand <=10	-	-	Cmd	Child Finish	
.Migrate	01564	-	-	-	HBVTSS19	Cmd	Active
Migrate	01568	X00560 021763	2A0A	RTD	VTV lock		
			HBVTSS18				
Migrate	01569	X00560 021766	2A0B	RTD	VTV lock		
			HBVTSS18				
Migrate	01570	X00560 022534	2A01	RTD	VTV lock		
			HBVTSS18				
Migrate	01571	X00560 022525	2A06	RTD	MVC mount		
			HBVTSS18				
Reclaim@	01580	-	-	-	-	RCM	Queued
Display@	01590	-	-	-	-	DSP	Active
*SLS5013I Command completed (0)							

FIGURE 3-38 Example Display Active DETail output

**Note** – \*ABORT appears in the display of reclaim requests if the request has cancelled or abended.



## Output Fields

The Function column shows the hierarchy of requests by indenting. The VTSS column shows either a VTSS name or a VTSS list. The Task column shows which task is currently servicing the request (same information as reported in Display Tasks).

Depending upon the parameters supplied, the output may contain only requests for a specific VTSS, be just the requests in a queued state, be just requests in an active state or be all requests. As can be seen above, the VTV and MVC columns are also used to expose additional information about the nature and status of the request.

### Function

The type of request. The hierarchy of the requests and their relationship is implied by the indentation of the values in this column. It can take on one of the following values:

#### **AllocSCR**

Job allocation request for a scratch VTV.

#### **AllocVTV**

Job allocation request for a specific VTV.

#### **Audit#**

Audit utility request.

#### **Cancel@**

Cancel command.

#### **Consold#**

Consolidate or export utility task.

#### **Consolid**

Recall VTVs for remigration to a consolidation MVC. This will appear as a child request to an Int\_cons or Consold# request.

#### **Dismount**

Dismount a VTV from a VTD.

#### **Display@**

Display or query command.

#### **Drain**

Recall VTVs from MVC for remigration during drain or reclaim processing. This is a child of a VtvMover request.

#### **Drain@**

Drain command or utility.

#### **DrainMVC**

There is one DrainMVC request per MVC being drained. DrainMVC, which is a child request of a Drain@ request, is responsible for managing the entire drain process for a single MVC. The VTV column is used to indicate the status of the processing against the MVC.

#### **DELETSCR**

Delete scratch utility.

#### **Getmgpol**

Obtain current management and storage class definitions.

**Getconfig**

Get configuration information.

**HSCChnge**

Notification of parameter files being changed.

**Import#**

Importing of VTV or MVC by a utility.

**Int\_cons**

PGMI initiated consolidate request

**Migrate**

General request to perform the migrations of VTVs to a MVC. This may appear as a child to a number of other request types.

**Migrate@**

Migrate command or utility. This includes migrates to threshold and auto migrates. The latter two are signified further details in the VTV and MVC columns as to the source of the command and the target threshold.

**Mount**

Mount a VTV upon a VTD. Depending upon circumstances, this may be subsequently seen as a VTV transfer or recall request.

**Move MVC**

There is one Move MVC request per MVC being processed by reconcile or archive. Move MVC, which is a child request of a MoveVTV# request, is responsible for managing the entire VTV movement process for a single MVC. The VTV column is used to indicate the status of the processing against the MVC.

**MoveVTV#**

This is a request from the ARCHIVE or RECONCILE utility commands to move copies of VTVs between MVCs. The value -TIME- in the VTV column indicates that the ELAPSED parameter was specified.

**MvcMaint**

MVCMaint utility request.

**MVC\_chek**

Check status of MVC.

**MVC\_eot**

Reset the end of tape position of a MVC after completing a drain or reclaim. This is a child of either a DrainMVC, ReclmMVC or Move MVC request.

**MVC\_upd**

Reset or update MVC status.

**MVC\_inv**

Audit of an MVC. This will appear as a child request to an Audit# request.

**MVCpool#**

Obtain details and status of MVC pools for a utility.

**PGMI\_req**

A request received through the PGMI interface that has yet to be decoded.

**Query@l**

Query or Display command.

**Recall**

General request to perform the recall of VTVs from a MVC. This may include a Cross TapePlex Autorecall (CTA) request from the mounting system.

Recall may appear as a child to a number of other request types.

**Recall@**

Recall command or utility.

**Reclaim@**

Auto reclaim request or a Reclaim command or utility. The value -TIME- in the VTV column indicates that the ELAPSED parameter was specified.

**ReclmMVC**

There is one ReclmMVC request per MVC being reclaimed. ReclmMVC, which is a child request of a Reclaim@ request, is responsible for managing the entire reclaim process for a single MVC. The VTV column is used to indicate the status of the processing against the MVC.

**Reconcil**

Perform a crosscheck between the contents of the two VTSSs in a cluster.

**Replicat**

Perform the replication of VTVs between VTSSs in a cluster.

**Scratch**

Scratch a VTV request from HSC.

**Sel\_scr**

PGMI select scratch.

**Set@**

Set command.

**Transfer**

Mount a VTV upon a VTD by transferring the VTV between two VTSSs.

**Unload**

Unload MVC from RTD.

**Unscratch**

Unscratch a VTV request from HSC.

**Vary\_dev**

Perform vary processing against an individual RTD or CLINK. This will appear as a child request to an VARY@ request.

**Vary@**

Vary command.

**VtvMaint**

VTVMaint utility request.

**VTVMover**

There is one VTVMover request per MVC being drained or reclaimed. This is a child of either a DrainMVC, ReclmMVC or Move MVC request. This request is responsible for the movement of VTVs from one MVC to another.

**VTSS\_inv**

Audit of a VTSS. This will appear as a child request to an Audit# request.

**VTSS\_list**

Obtain a list of VTV resident within a VTSS. This will appear as a child request to a Reconcil or auto migration request.

**VTV\_upd**

Resynchronize VTV status in the VTSS with the CDS.

**ID**

The process ID, which is a unique number in the range 0 - 65536. When the process ID reaches 65536 it wraps back to zero.

**VTV**

the volser of the VTV currently being used in the process. For some types of request, this will contain additional information as to the nature and status of the request.

**MVC**

the volser of the MVC currently used in the process. For some types of request, this will contain additional information as to the nature and status of the request.

**VTSS**

the VTSS or the VTSS list name associated with the request. The special value !ALLVTSS indicates that any VTSS with suitable requirements will be used.

**RTD**

the unit address of the RTD currently being used in the process.

**TASK**

the task that is processing the queue or the task to which the requests is queued (same information as reported in Display Tasks).

**REASON**

why the request is queued (queued processes only):

**ACTIVE**

The request is currently being processed.

**CANCELLED**

The request is terminating after being cancelled

**CHILD FINISH**

The request has child requests and is waiting for them to finish.

**DEVICE LOCK**

The RTD or CLINK device that the request requires is currently locked. This generally indicates contention with another host.

**TASK LOCK**

The request is waiting for a general task lock to free. This generally indicates contention with another host.

**MVC LOCK**

The request is waiting for a lock on an MVC to free.

**VTV LOCK**

The request is waiting for a lock on a VTV to free.

**VTD LOCK**

The request is waiting for a lock on a VTD to free.

**RTD LOCK**

The request is waiting for a lock on an RTD to free.

**QUEUED**

The request is sitting in the input queue of the task and is waiting for another request to complete or be rescheduled.

**WAIT RESOURCE**

The request is held awaiting a (non-specific) resource becoming available.

**RTD ONLINE**

The request requires an RTD to be brought online to continue.

**RTD ALLOCATION**

The request is queued awaiting a RTD to become idle or free.

**MVC SELECTION**

The request is queued awaiting a MVC or migration slot becoming available.

**STEAL A RTD**

The request is waiting to steal an RTD allocation from another request.

**DBU DROP**

The request is currently held because the DBU is high.

**MVC MOUNT**

The request is waiting for a MVC to be mounted.

## Display ALI

### Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB only  
UII: No

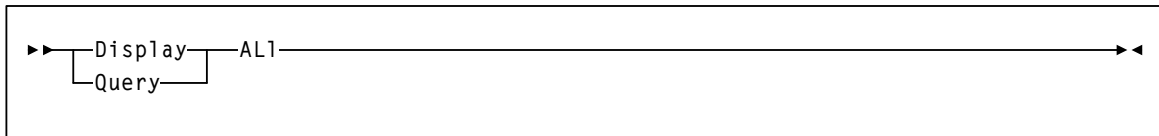
### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

Display ALI displays CDS and ACS status.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-39** Display ALI syntax

## Parameters

None.

# Display Cap

## Interfaces:

Console or utility

UII: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

Display CAP displays CAP settings and status.

## Syntax

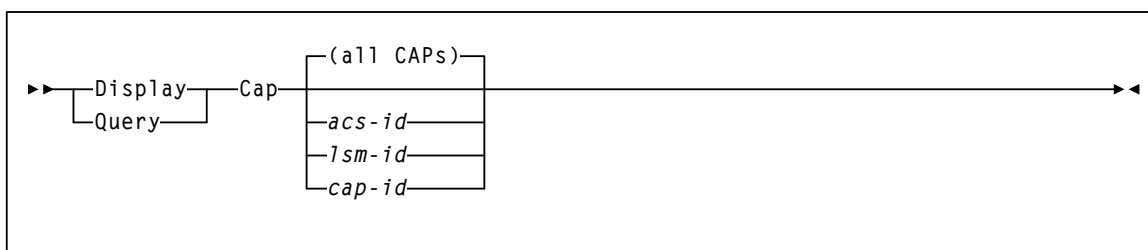


FIGURE 3-40 Display Cap syntax

## Parameters

---

**Note** – If the CAP status indicates RECOVERY, refer to the publication *Managing HSC and VTCS* for information about how to clear this condition.

---

### all CAPs

displays all CAP activity for all ACSs online to this host.

### acs-id

optionally, displays all CAP activity for a specified ACS.

### lsm-id

optionally, displays all CAP activity for a specified LSM.

### cap-id

optionally, displays all CAP activity for a specified CAP.

---

**Note –**

- The *acsid*, *lsmid*, and *capid* parameters are positional operands. If no positional operand is specified, the default operation is to display the status of all CAP activity for all ACSs.
  - The *acsid*, *lsmid*, and *capid* may be expressed as a list.
- 

## Output

The output display contains the following information:

- CAPid
- CAP size: PCAP (priority CAP); 21-cell or 14-cell 9740 (standard CAP); 40-cell (enhanced CAP); 20-cell (9360 CAP); 30-cell (9360 optional CAP); 26-cell (SL3000 CAP); 234-cell (SL3000 AEM CAP); or 39-cell (SL8500 CAP)
- Partition ID
- Host ID of the host owning the CAP
- Priority: CAP preference value
- CAP mode: cleaning, draining, ejecting, entering, or idle
- CAP status: active, automatic mode, manual mode, offline, online, and/or recovery needed.



# Display CDS

**Interfaces:**

Console or utility

UII: Yes

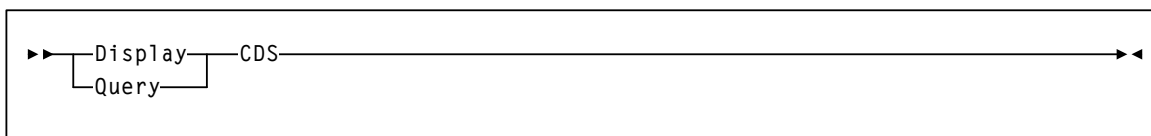
**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

Display CDS displays the status of all copies of the CDS, the journals (if active), primary and secondary log files, operational settings (e.g., the cleaning cartridge prefix, SMF record type, etc.), and the status of all HSC-defined hosts.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-41** Display CDS Syntax

## Parameters

None.

# Display CLInk

**Interfaces:**

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display CLInk displays Cluster link status.

## Syntax

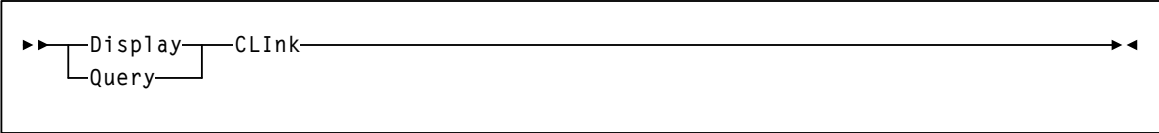


FIGURE 3-42 Display CLInk syntax

## Parameters

None.

## Output

FIGURE 3-43 shows an example of Display CLInk output.

VTSS	Clink	Name	Status	Usage	Host	Partner	VTD
HBVTSS16	07 1A:0	PLEXNAME	Online	Free		REMOTEAA	7
	06 1E:0	PLEXNAME	Online	Free		REMOTEBB	6
HBVTSS18	07 1A:0	-Cluster	Online	Free		HBVTSS19	AB07
	06 1E:0	-Cluster	Online	Free		HBVTSS19	AB06
*SLS5013I Command completed (0)							

FIGURE 3-43 Example Display CLInk output

**VTSS**

the Primary or Sending VTSS name.

**CLINK**

a composite of the device Id that has been assigned to the CLINK within the VTSS and the back end channel interface to which it is connected.

**NAME**

one of the following values:

***name***

the name of the TapePlex to which the CLINK is connected. This also indicates that the CLINK will be used for electronic exporting of VTVs. The VTSS name in the partner column indicates the VTSS that will receive VTV copies over this CLINK.

**-Cluster**

indicates that the CLINK is used for replication of VTVs within the TapePlex and is part of a cluster. The VTSS name in the partner column indicates the other VTSS that operates in the cluster.

**STATUS**

one of the following link statuses:

**Maint**

The link has failed or it has been varied into maintenance mode.

**Offline**

The link is offline and unavailable to all hosts and VTSSs.

**Online**

The link is available for replication.

**P\_offline**

The link is pending offline.

**P\_online**

The link is pending online.

**On-Sync**

Available for synchronous replication.

**On-Async**

Available for asynchronous replication.

**Recovery**

The link is being reset following an error or a vary online operation.

**Unusable**

Not available for replication due to hardware errors or assigned-elsewhere conditions.

**UUI err**

This is a CLINK defined for electronic export and it has been unable to contact the remote VTCS. There should be messages in the HSC JOBLOG that indicate the reason for the problem. This could include problems with the definitions, the local SMC, or the remote HTTP server on the remote VTCS.

## **USAGE**

one of the following link usages:

### **Assigned**

Link is assigned to the host in the HOST field but is not currently replicating. This usage occurs when VTCS is starting or terminating link use or is attempting error recovery on the link after a replication failure.

### **Free**

Link is idle (not doing replications).

### **Replicating**

Link is actively doing replications.

## **HOST**

the host that the link is assigned to.

## **PARTNER**

the secondary or receiving VTSS.

## **VTD**

the address of the VTD on the partner VTSS that forms the other end point to the connection. For a cluster link, the MVS address of the VTD is reported. For an electronic export link, this is not possible as there is no access to the other TapePlex configuration. In this case, only the ordinal number of the VTV is reported.

# Display CLUster

**Interfaces:**

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display CLUster displays Cluster status.

## Syntax

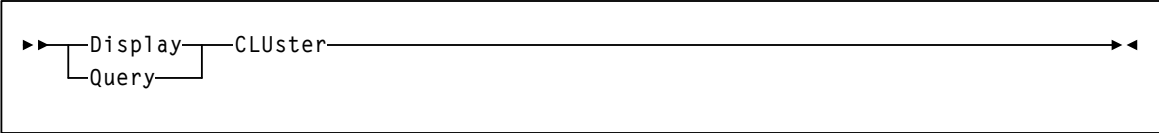


FIGURE 3-44 Display CLUster syntax

## Parameters

None.

## Output

FIGURE 3-45 shows an example of Display CLUster output.

NAME	VTSS	STATE	DIRECTION	VTSS	STATE	MODE
CLUSTER1	HBVTSS16	ONLINE	----->	HBVTSS17	ONLINE	Sync-replicate
CLUSTER2	HBVTSS18	ONLINE	<-----	HBVTSS19	QUIESCED	DEGRADED
CLUSTER3	HBVTSS20	ONLINE	<-----	HBVTSS21	ONLINE	Async-replicate
CLUSTER4	HBVTSS22	QUIESCED	<----->	HBVTSS23	ONLINE	DEGRADED

FIGURE 3-45 Example Display CLUster output

**NAME**

the Cluster name.

**VTSS**

one of the VTSS in a Cluster.

**DIRECTION**

One of the following:

----->

OR

<-----

Indicates the direction of VTV replication in Uni-Directional Cluster. VTVs can only be replicated from the Sending to the Receiving VTSS.

<----->

Indicates that the VTSSs are configured as a Bi-Directional (Peer-to-Peer) Cluster. VTVs can be replicated from either VTSS to the other.

**STATE**

one of the following VTSS states:

**QUIESCING**

Quiescing state.

**QUIESCED**

Quiesced state.

**OFFLINE**

Offline state.

**OFFLINE-P**

Offline pending state.

**ONLINE**

Online state.

**ONLINE-P**

Online pending state.

**STARTED**

The VTSS is initialized and in process of going to the requested state (online, offline, or quiesced).

**MODE**

one of the following Cluster operating modes:

**Async-replicate**

Both VTSSs in the Cluster are online to VTCS. Production workload can go to either VTSS, but in the case of a Uni-Directional (Primary/Secondary) Cluster, VTVs can only be replicated from the Sending VTSS. Synchronous replication is **not** enabled across the cluster.

**Sync-replicate**

Both VTSSs in the Cluster are online to VTCS. Production workload can go to either VTSS, but in the case of a Uni-Directional (Primary/Secondary) Cluster, VTVs can only be replicated from the Sending VTSS. Synchronous replication is enabled across the cluster.

**Degraded**

One of the two VTSSs in a Bi-Directional (Peer-to-Peer) Cluster is either offline or quiesced. Production workload can go the remaining online VTSS. VTVs requiring replication, however, are allocated to the remaining VTSS only if no other Full-Function clusters are available and suitable. In this case, replicate VTVs are migrated immediately with keep and queued for replication when the other VTSS comes online.

When the other VTSS comes online, VTCS reconciles the contents of both VTSSs.

**Degraded-2ndary**

The Primary is online to VTCS and the Secondary is either offline or quiesced. Workload can run on the Primary. VTVs requiring replication, however, are allocated to the Primary only if no other Full Function Clusters are available. In this case, Replicate VTVs are migrated immediately with keep and are queued for replication, which occurs when the Secondary comes online.

**Degraded primary**

The Secondary is online to VTCS and the Primary is either offline or quiesced. Workload can run on the Secondary. VTVs requiring replication, however, are allocated to the Secondary only if no other Full Function Clusters are available. When the Primary comes back ONline, VTCS reconciles the contents of the Primary and Secondary.

**Non-operational**

No workload is possible on this Cluster.

**CLINKs offline**

All defined CLINKs are offline. No workload is possible on this Cluster.

**Only 2ndary**

The Secondary is online to VTCS and the Primary has no CLINKs online. Workload can run on the Secondary. VTVs requiring replication, however, are allocated to the Secondary only if no other Full Function Clusters are available.

**Only primary**

The Primary is online to VTCS and the Secondary has no CLINKs online. Workload can run on the Primary. VTVs requiring replication, however, are allocated to the Primary only if no other Full Function Clusters are available. In this case, Replicate VTVs are migrated immediately with keep and are queued for replication.

# Display CMD

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

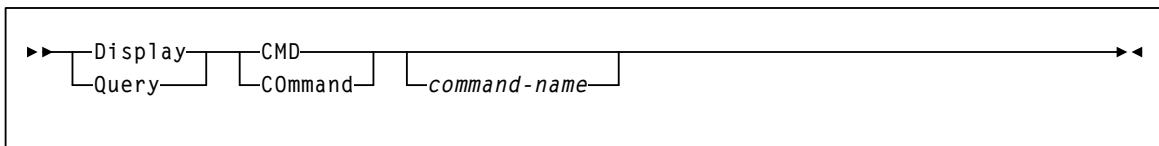
## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

Display CMD displays syntax and usage information for a VTCS or HSC command.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-46** Display CMD syntax

## Parameters

### CMD or Command

#### *cmd-name*

the command name. If a command-name is not specified, a list of all HSC/VTCS commands is produced.

For certain commands that accept multiple options, including Display, a two-part command may be entered. For example:

```
D CMD D VTV
```

This command displays help information only for the Display VTV command.



# Display COMMPath

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB only

UII: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

Display COMMPath displays current settings for HSC host-to-host communications.

## Syntax

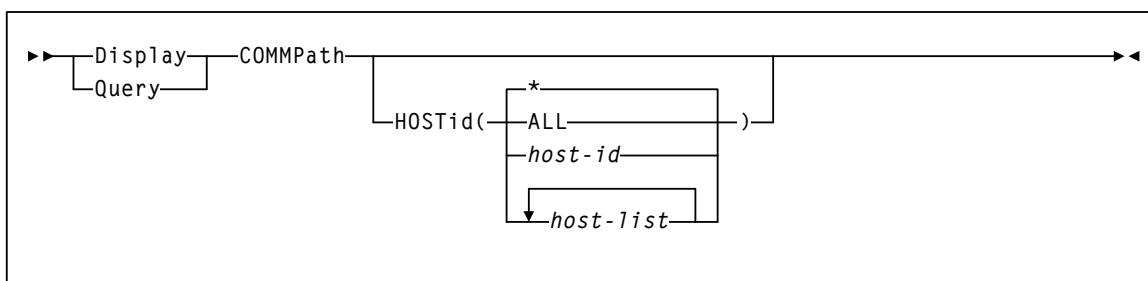


FIGURE 3-47 Display COMMPath syntax

## Parameters

### HOSTid

optionally, indicates that you want to obtain information about specific hosts.

#### ALL

displays the settings for all defined hosts. Depending on the number of hosts in your environment, the display can be extremely long.

#### *host-id* or *host-list*

the host or hosts about which you want information. The HSC issues console messages that display the current settings for each specified host.

The elements in a *host-list* must be separated by commas or blanks, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses. Ranges are not valid.

#### \*

displays the settings for the host on which you enter the command. This is the default if HOSTid is specified without a value.

## Display CONFIG

### Interfaces:

Console or utility

UII: Yes

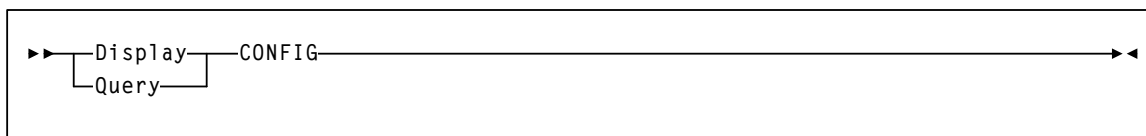
### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

Display CONFIG displays CONFIG parameter settings.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-48** Display CONFIG syntax

## Parameters

None.

## Output

The following figure shows an example of Display CONFIG output:

```

SLS6603I Configuration information
MaxVTV  MVCFree  VTVAttr  RECALWER  REPlicat  VTVPAGE  SYNCHREP
 4000      2    Scratch  Yes          Always    Standard No

MAXRTDS  FASTMIGR  INITMVC  MAXVTVSZ  FASTRECL  LOCKTOUT
 32       No       No         400       No         123

NLIBDRNR  NLIBMIGR  NLIBRECL  MVCMTTO  LOGPOL
Yes        Yes        Yes         15      Optional

CDS level support:  V5/5.1  V6  V6.1 V6.2  V7  V7.1
                      *    *    *

Reclaim : Threshold  Max MVC  Start  Conmvc
          30          4      10      1

Reclaim: MaxMVC Start Conmvc Inplace  Threshold: Tape  VL  Inpthrsh
          4      10      1      No          45      30  15

          Auto Migr Thr  Migr Tasks  Default  VSM  2GB/  Page  RTDs
VTSSNAME Low  High   Min  Max     ACS   Model 4GB  Size Yes
DVTSS16   65   70     2    3      FF    5    Yes Large

Devno  RTD Type  Inplace  ACS  Retain  VTSSNAME  RTD NAME  CHANIF
2A00   36CTRAK  No        00   10     DVTSS16   SS162A00  00  0A:1
2A01   36CTRAK  No        00   10     DVTSS16   SS162A01  01  0A:0
2A02   36CTRAK  No        00   10     DVTSS16   SS162A02  02  0E:0

```

**FIGURE 3-49** Example Display CONFIG output

### Fields

---

**Note** – See [“CONFIG GLOBAL Statement” on page 220](#) for more information about CONFIG GLOBAL statement parameters.

---

#### MaxVTV

the CONFIG GLOBAL MAXVTV setting.

#### MVCFree

the CONFIG GLOBAL MVCFREE setting.

#### VTVAttr

the CONFIG GLOBAL VTVattr setting (SCRATCH or ALLmount).

#### RECALWER

the CONFIG GLOBAL RECALWER setting (YES or NO).

**REPLICAT**

the CONFIG GLOBAL REPLICAT setting (ALWAYS or CHANGED).

**VTVPAGE**

the CONFIG GLOBAL VTVPAGE setting The VTV page size (STANDARD or LARGE).

**SYNCHREP**

the CONFIG GLOBAL SYNCHREP setting (YES or NO).

**MAXRTDS**

the CONFIG GLOBAL MAXRTDS setting (16 or 32).

**FASTMIGR**

the CONFIG GLOBAL FASTMIGR setting (YES or NO).

**INITMVC**

the CONFIG GLOBAL INITMVC setting (YES or NO).

**MAXVTVSZ**

the CONFIG GLOBAL MAXVTVSZ setting (400, 800, 2000 or 4000).

**FASTRECL**

the CONFIG GLOBAL FASTRECL setting (YES or NO).

**LOCKTOUT**

the CONFIG GLOBAL LOCKTOUT setting (0 or 5-240).

**NLIBDRNR**

the CONFIG GLOBAL NLIBDRNR setting (YES or NO).

**NLIBMIGR**

the CONFIG GLOBAL NLIBMIGR setting (YES or NO).

**NLIBRECL**

the CONFIG GLOBAL NLIBRECL setting (YES or NO).

**MVCMNTTO**

the CONFIG GLOBAL MVCMNTTO setting (5-30 minutes).

**LOGPOL**

the CONFIG GLOBAL LOGPOL setting (OPTIONAL or REQUIRED).

**CDSLEVEL SUPPORT**

the VTCS level(s) that can access the active CDS.

**THRESHOLD**

the RECLAIM THRESHLD setting.

**MAX MVC**

the RECLAIM MAXMVC setting.

**START**

the RECLAIM START setting.

**CONMVC**

the RECLAIM CONMVC setting.

**VTSSNAME**

the VTSS identifiers (VTSS NAME settings).

**AUTO MIGR THR, LOW**

The low automatic migration threshold setting (LAMT) for the VTSS.

**AUTO MIGR THR, HIGH**

The high automatic migration threshold setting (HAMT) for the VTSS.

**MIGR TASKS, MIN**

The minimum number of concurrent automatic migration tasks setting (MINMIG) for the VTSS.

**MIGR TASKS, MAX**

The maximum number of concurrent automatic migration tasks setting (MAXMIG) for the VTSS.

**DEFAULT ACS**

The default ACS setting (DEFLTACS) for the VTSS.

**VSM MODEL**

2, 3, or 4.

**2GB / 4GB**

VTSS configured for 2 GB / 4GB VTV sizes (Y or N).

**PAGE SIZE**

VTV page size (STANDARD or LARGE).

**RTDs**

indicates whether the VTSS has RTDs.

**DEVNO**

the RTD MVS device numbers for the VTSS (RTD DEVNO settings).

**RTD TYPE**

the RTD type.

**ACS**

the ACS that contains the RTD.

**RETAIN**

the VTSS RETAIN setting.

**VTSSNAME**

the VTSS identifiers (VTSS NAME settings) of the VTSSs connected to the RTD.

**RTD NAME**

the RTD names for the VTSS (RTD NAME settings).

**CHANIF**

the RTD channel interface (RTD CHANIF settings).

# Display DRives

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UUI: Yes

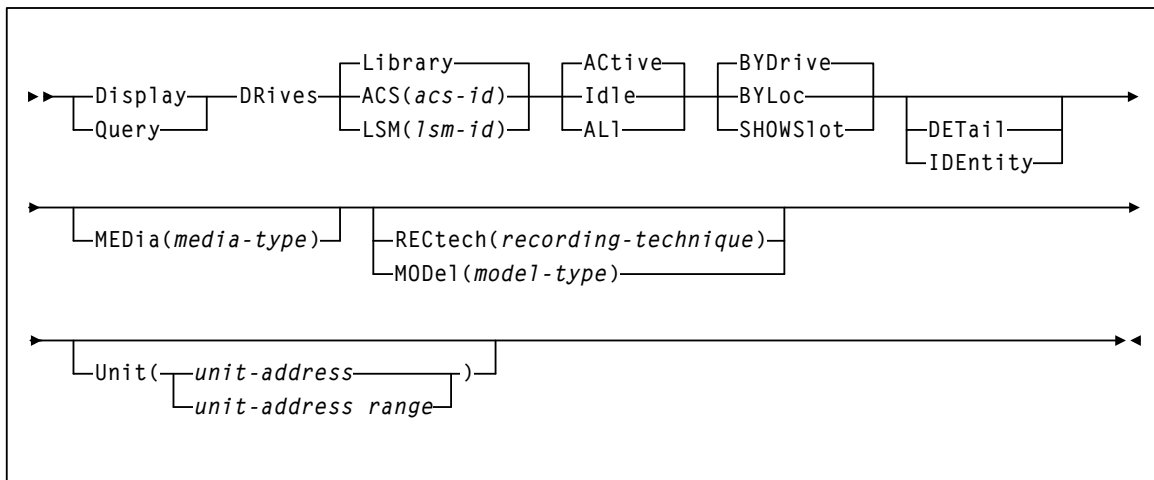
## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

Display DRives displays current and queued mount activity for each transport address.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-50** Display DRives syntax

## Parameters

### Library

only library-controlled drives are processed. This is the default.

### ACS

only drives in a specified ACS are processed.

*acs-id*

the ACS for which the system is to display drive information.

### LSM

only drives in a specified LSM are processed.

*lsm-id*

the LSM for which the system is to display drive information.

### ACtive

only active drives are processed. This is the default.

### Idle

only idle drives are processed (includes drives that may be offline).

### ALI

all drives are processed regardless of status.

### BYDrive

displays the drives by host device address. This is the default.

### BYLoc

displays the drives by library location.

### SHOWSlot

optionally, displays the drives by host device address, and displays the drive bay location (slot) for drives in SL3000 and SL8500 libraries.

### DETail

optionally, displays the drive media types and recording techniques.

### IDEntity

optionally, displays the serial number and world wide name of a transport associated with a drive.

The tape library must be at a sufficient compatibility level to provide this information.

- The serial number requires LMU level 13.
- The WWN requires LMU level 21.
- DISPLAY ACS shows the LMU compatibility level. In addition, the transport must supply the LMU with the serial number.

---

**Note** – IDEntity and DETail are mutually exclusive.

---

**MEDia**

optionally, limits the display of drives only to those that support the specified type of media. The default is for all types of media.

*media-type*

the media type.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for a list of valid *media-type* values.

---

**Note** – If MEDia is not specified, the drive is selected without regard to media type.

---

**RECtech**

optionally, limits the display of drives only to those that support the specified recording technique. The default is for all recording techniques. RECtech refers to the method used to record data tracks on the tape surface.

If RECtech is not specified, the drive is selected without regard to recording technique.

*recording-technique*

the recording technique.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for valid *recording-technique* values.

---

**Note** – RECtech and MODel are mutually exclusive.

---

**MODel**

optionally, limits the display of drives by the model type of a transport. You can enter a list of models, separated by commas. A list specifies a generic pool.

*model-type*

the model type.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for a list of valid *model-type* values.

---

**Note** – MODel and RECtech are mutually exclusive.

---

**UNIT**

optionally, limits the display of drives to a unit address or a range of unit addresses.

*unit-address* or *unit-address-range*

a single unit address or a range of addresses.



# Display DRIVE\_INFO

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display DRIVE\_INFO displays information for real and/or virtual drives.

## Syntax

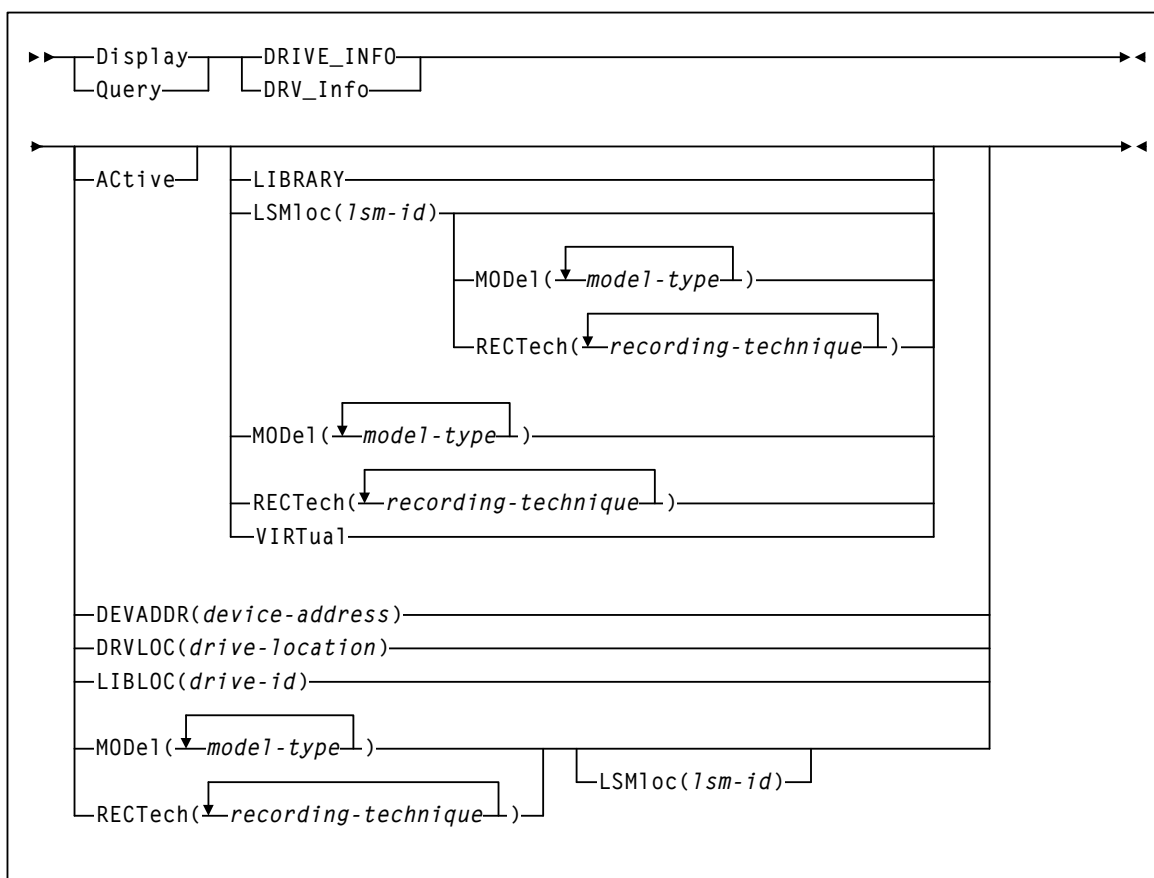


FIGURE 3-51 Display DRIVE\_INFO syntax

## Parameters

### ACtive

optionally, specifies that only drives with a volume mounted, or in the process of mounting or dismounting, are displayed.

### DEVADDR

optionally, specifies that only the device with the specified drive ID is displayed.

*device-address*

a three or four digit device address

### DRVLOC

optionally, specifies that only the single drive with a matching drive location ID is displayed.

*drive-location*

the drive location id:

For a real drive, use format R:AA:LL:PP:DD where:

- AA is the acs ID.
- LL is the LSM number.
- PP is the panel.
- DD is the drive number.

For a virtual drive, use format V:vtssname:nnnn where *nnnn* is the VTSS drive identifier

### LIBLOC

optionally, specifies that only the real drive with the specified drive ID is displayed.

*drive-id*

the drive ID, in the format AA:LL:PP:DD where:

- AA is the acs ID.
- LL is the LSM number.
- PP is the panel.
- DD is the drive number.

### LIBRARY

optionally, specifies that only library (non-virtual) drives are displayed.

### LSMloc

optionally, specifies that only drives in the specified LSM is displayed.

*lsm-id*

the lsm-id, in the format AA:LL where:

- AA is the acs ID.
- LL is the LSM number.

**MODeI**

optionally, specifies that only drives with the specified model type are displayed.

***model-type***

the model type.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODeI Values”](#) for a list of valid *model-type* values.

**RECTech**

optionally, specifies that only drives with the specified recording technique are displayed.

***recording-technique***

the recording technique.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODeI Values”](#) for a list of valid *recording-technique* values.

**VIRTual**

optionally, specifies that only virtual drives (not library drives) are displayed.

# Display EXceptns

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB

UII: No

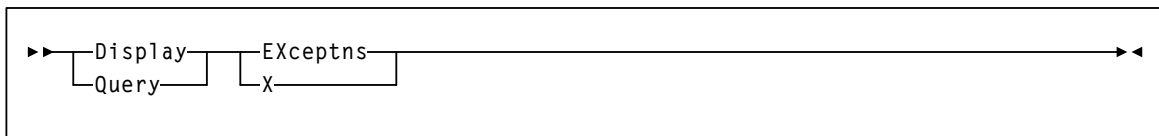
## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

Display EXceptns displays hardware status.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-52** Display EXceptns syntax

## Parameters

### EXceptns or X

displays hardware status.

Errors are reported in either LSM *AA:LL* or *AA:LL:CC* format where *AA* is the hexadecimal value for the ACS (00-FF), *LL* is hexadecimal value for the LSM (00-17), and *CC* is the hexadecimal value for the CAP identifier (00 through 0B).

## Output

Output includes status of the following:

- all LMUs
- all LSMs
- all CAPs
- all robotic hands
- all pass-thru ports (PTPs)
- all stations.

Errors are reported in *AA:LL:CC* format, where *AA* is the decimal value for the ACS (00-99), *LL* is decimal value for the LSM (00-99), and *CC* decimal value for the CAP identifier (00 through 11). The following error messages are possible:

Message:	Description:
CAP Not Operational	
CAP Door is Open	
CAP Door is Unlocked	
CAP is Reserved	
Pass Thru Port is Inoperative	
Robot Hand is Inoperative	
Robot Hand needs Maintenance	
LSM is Not Ready	
LSM is Offline	
LSM is Offline Pending	
LSM is in Maint Mode	
LSM Door is Open	
LMU Compat 10 or less; not all functions supported:	The LMU will not be able to respond correctly to some of the status queries until its microcode is updated. This condition will also cause SLS0662I LMU Response Error to be issued just before SLS4610I.
Station nn has Inactive Connection:	A hardware connection to the LMU is not usable. This may be normal for your configuration if the connection has never been made and is not necessary. The station number is in hex, so Station 0A is the tenth station, and Station 10 is really the sixteenth.
Station nn Inoperative; Host not responding:	The station number is in hex, so Station 0A is the tenth station, and Station 10 is really the sixteenth.

The following messages are summaries:

- No CAP problems were detected
- No Pass Thru Port problems were detected
- No Robot Hand problems were detected
- No LSM problems were detected
- No Station problems were detected

Message summaries only reflect that the LMU did not detect hardware errors. Something could be wrong with the software configuration, or with something that the LMU could not detect.

HSC processing continues and no user response is required.

# Display LMUPDEF

**Interfaces:**

Console or PARMLIB

UII: No

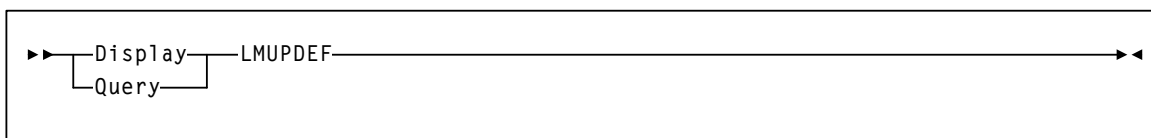
**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

Display LMUPDEF displays information about the definition data set containing LMUPATH statements, that is currently loaded.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-53** Display LMUPDEF syntax

## Parameters

None.

# Display LOCKs

**Interfaces:**

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display LOCKs displays VTCS lock status.

## Syntax

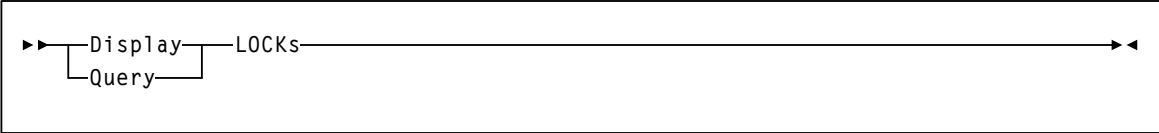


FIGURE 3-54 Display LOCKs syntax

## Parameters

None.

## Output

FIGURE 3-55 shows an example of Display LOCKs output.

SLOT	OWNING	TASK	TASK	VTD	MVC	VTV	WAITING	WAITING
ID	HOST	NBR	TYPE				HOST	TASK
002	EC21	006	RTD		EVS101		EC10	007
003	EC20	010	RTD		EVS145	X15328		
004	EC20	010		A91E		X153234		
CFLOCK		CFLOCK				OWNING		
NUMBER		TYPE				HOST		
3		HOST TO HOST (TO ECCL)				EC21		

FIGURE 3-55 Example Display LOCKs output



***Fields*****SLOT ID**

Slot ID of the lock within the lock buffer.

**OWNING HOST**

the host that owns the lock.

**TASK NBR**

the task number associated with the lock.

**TASK TYPE**

the task type.

**VTD**

the associated VTD address on the issuing host.

**MVC**

the locked MVC.

**VTV**

the locked VTV.

**WAITING HOST**

the host waiting for the lock or **ALL** if multiple hosts are waiting.

**WAITING TASK**

the task waiting for the lock or **ALL** if multiple tasks are waiting.

**CF LOCK NUMBER**

the Coupling Facility lock number.

**CF LOCK TYPE**

one of the following VTCS Coupling Facility lock types:

**Host Footprint**

used to serialize access to the host footprint list.

**Host to Host**

used to serialize access to a given host to host list.

**Lock data**

used to serialize access to the VTCS lock data.

**Formatting**

used to serialize the initial formatting of the structure; also used when rebuilding data.

**System**

lock is held, but is not a lock used by VTCS; assume it is used by MVS.

**OWNING HOST**

the host that owns the lock.

# Display Lsm

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

Display Lsm displays LSM status.

## Syntax

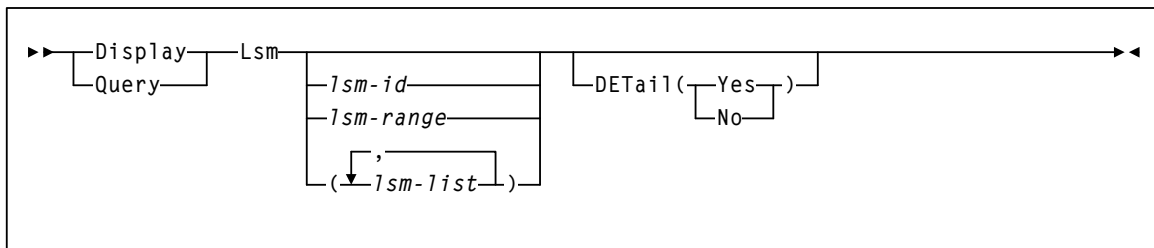


FIGURE 3-56 Display Lsm syntax

## Parameters

### *lsm-id* or *lsm-range* or *lsm-list*

optionally, one or more LSMs for which the system is to display information. If you do not supply an *lsm-id*, a status summary is displayed for every LSM in the library.

Each *lsm-list* element can be either a single LSMid or an LSMid range. The elements in a list must be separated by commas or blanks, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

An *lsm-id* format is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (decimal 00-99) and *LL* is the LSM number (decimal 00-99).

### DETail

optionally, specifies whether detail information is displayed for each LSM.

#### Yes

all detailed information is displayed for each LSM.

#### No

only summary information is displayed for each LSM.

---

**Note** – If the DETail parameter is not specified, then detailed information is displayed only if specific LSM IDs are entered.

---

## Output

LSM status includes:

- LSMid
- LSM type
- Online/offline status
- Ready/not ready status
- Automatic/manual status
- May include detail information:
  - Audits in progress (if any)
  - CAP status, priority and owning host if CAP is not drained
  - Number of free cells and scratch volumes. (Note: The number of free cells in the LSM does NOT include free cells on frozen panels.)
  - Each frozen panel, showing the total number of cells and number of free cells on the panel

# Display Message

## Interfaces:

Console or utility

UII: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

Display Message displays detailed HSC or VTCS message information.

## Syntax

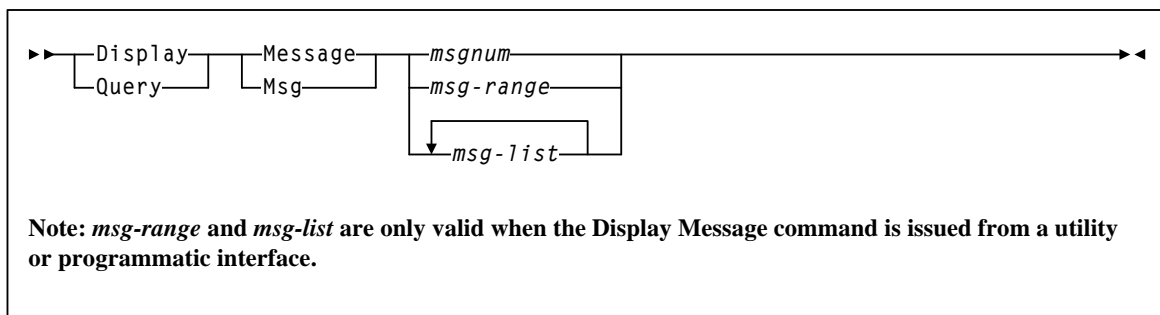


FIGURE 3-57 Display Message syntax

## Parameters

### Msg or Message

display detailed HSC or VTCS message information.

#### *msgnum*

the four-digit numerical portion of the message identifier. Leading zeros are not required.

#### *msg-range* or *msg-list*

a range or list of messages for which the system is to display status. Each *msg-list* element can be either a single *msgnum* or a *msg-range*. The elements in a list must be separated by commas or blanks, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

---

**Note** – *msg-range* and *msg-list* are **only** valid when the Display Message command is issued from a utility or programmatic interface.

---

# Display MGMTDEF

**Interfaces:**

Console or PARMLIB

UII: No

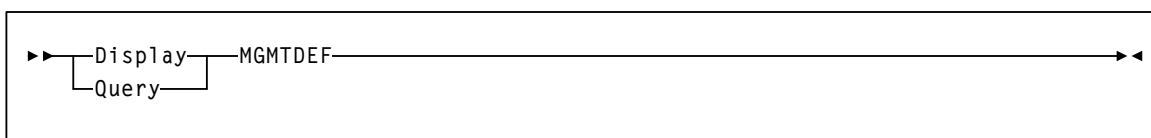
**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

Display MGMTDEF displays information about active MGMTclas control statements.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-58** Display MGMTDEF syntax

## Parameters

None.

# Display MIGrate

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display MIGrate displays migration status.

## Syntax

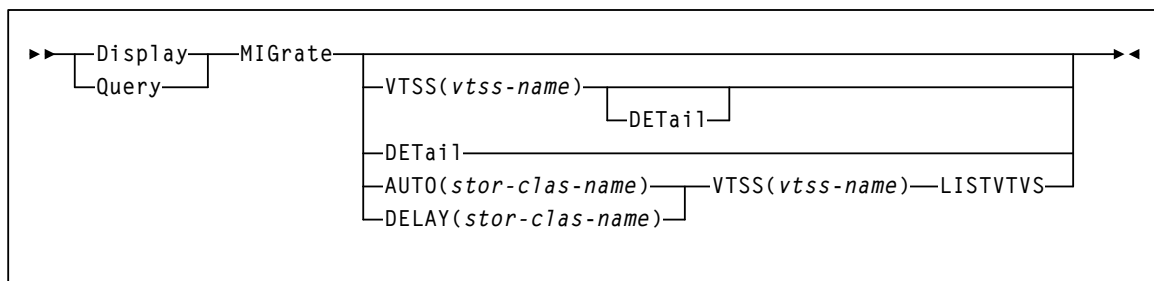


FIGURE 3-59 Display MIGrate syntax

## Parameters

### VTSS

Optionally, display migration status for a specified VTSS.

*vtssname*

the VTSS name.

### DETail

Optionally, display detailed migration status by Storage Class.

### AUTO

Optionally, display the number of VTVs for the specified storage class, and their time remaining on the AUTO queue. The time remaining is referred to as the age.

*stor-clas-name*

the Storage Class name.

### VTSS

Display migration status for a specified VTSS (*vtssname*).

### LISTVTVS

List the specific VTVs on the AUTO queue. VTSS must also be specified.

**DELAY**

Optionally, display the number of VTVs for the specified storage class, and their time remaining on the DELAY queue. The time remaining is referred to as the age.

*stor-clas-name*

the Storage Class name.

**VTSS**

Display migration status for a specified VTSS (*vtssname*).

**LISTVTVS**

List the specific VTVs on the DELAY queue. VTSS must also be specified.

## Display MIGrate Output

FIGURE 3-60 shows an example of Display MIGrate output.

```
/SLS0000I D MIG VTSS(HBVTSS16)

VTSSNAME: HBVTSS16

Active migration tasks: 4

Immediate migrate:                Max wait: 5 MINUTES

Immediate delay queue: Active

Auto migrate:                     Host: EC20 MIGRATION TARGET: 70%
```

FIGURE 3-60 Example Display MIGrate output

### *Fields*

#### **VTSSNAME**

the VTSS migrating the VTVs.

#### **ACTIVE MIGRATION TASKS**

the total number of migration tasks (automatic, immediate, and migrate-to-threshold).

#### **IMMEDIATE MIGRATE**

either **Not active** if there are no current or pending immediate migrations or the maximum time that any VTV has been waiting for immediate migration.

---

**Note** – This field only shows status for the LPAR on which the query was issued.

---

#### **IMMEDIATE DELAY QUEUE**

indicates whether there are VTVs on the Immediate Migrate Queue.

#### **AUTO MIGRATE**

either **Not active** or the name of the host and migration target (LAMT or specified threshold for a migration-to-threshold) if auto migration is active on any host.





**ACTIVE TASKS**

the number of migration tasks currently active for the Storage Class.

**AUTO**

indicates whether the Storage Class contains automatic migration VTVs.

**IMMED**

indicates whether the Storage Class contains immediate migration VTVs.

**WEIGHT (percent)**

the priority of the Storage Class compared to other Storage Classes for the VTSS.  
Storage Classes with higher priorities are assigned a greater proportion of migration tasks.

## Display MIGrate AUTO Output

FIGURE 3-61 shows an example of Display MIGrate AUTO output.

```
/SLS0000I D MIG AUTO(S1) VTSS(DVTSS16) LISTVTVS  
  
/SLS6603I VTVs awaiting migration:  
  
DX0601 DX0920  
  
2 volumes with an age range of 3-5 in the queue
```

**FIGURE 3-62** Example Display MIGrate AUTO output

## Display MIGrate DELAY Output

FIGURE 3-61 shows an example of Display MIGrate DELAY output.

```
/SLS0000I D MIG DELAY(S2) VTSS(DVTSS16) LISTVTVS  
  
/SLS6603I VTVs awaiting migration:  
  
DX0800 DX0900  
  
2 volumes with an age range of 3-5 in the queue
```

**FIGURE 3-63** Example Display MIGrate DELAY output

# Display MNTD

**Interfaces:**

Console or PARMLIB

UII: No

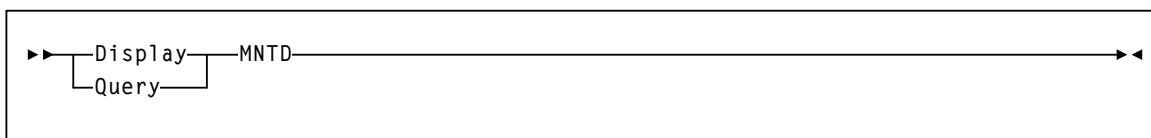
**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

Display MNTD displays current settings for all HSC mount options set by the MNTD command.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-64** Display MNTD syntax

## Parameters

None.

# Display MONitor

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB

UII: No

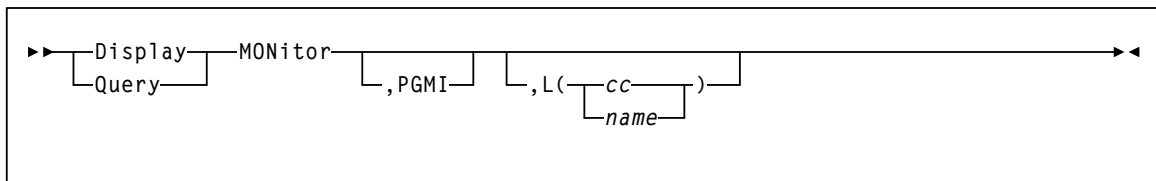
## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

Display MONitor displays a list of the monitoring consoles.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-65** Display MONitor syntax

## Parameters

### PGMI

optionally, displays the status of the monitoring of move requests received by the programmatic interface.

### L

optionally, displays the type of requests being monitored by the specified console. Console IDs and console names must be two to eight characters long.

### *cc*

the console ID.

### *name*

the console name.

If both **PGMI** and **L** are omitted, the status of all monitoring is displayed.

# Display MVC

**Interfaces:**

Console or utility

UII: Yes

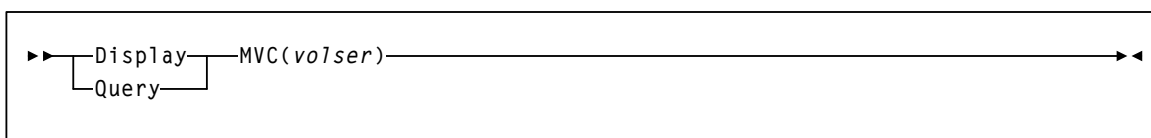
**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display MVC displays information about a specific MVC.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-66** Display MVC syntax

## Parameters

*volser*

the volser of the MVC.

## Output

FIGURE 3-67 shows an example of Display MVC output.

```

Volser:                702532
Media:                 T1B000T1
ACSid:                 00
Size(Mb) :             1000000
Migrated Count:        19
Vtv Count:             19
%Used:                 7.41
%Fragmented:           0.00
%Available:            92.59
%Usable:                0.00
Times Mounted:         77
Last Mounted:          2010Mar15 10:40:54
Last Migration:        2010Jan14 14:41:04
Last Drain/Reclaim:    2010Feb23 13:55:26
Owner:                 ALP
VTSS:                  HBVTSSY
MVCPOOL:               ALPMVC
Security access:       No profile
Status:                Initialized
Format:                Partitioned
  
```

FIGURE 3-67 Example Display MVC output

### *Fields*

#### **VOLSER**

the volser of the MVC.

#### **MEDIA**

the volume media type or recording technique. Should the value 'Need PTF' appear, then this host lacks support for this media type. Another host does have support for this media type.

#### **ACSID**

the ACS that contains the MVC. This will not appear if the MVC has been ejected from the library.

#### **SIZE (MB)**

the size of the MVC in megabytes.

#### **MIGRATED COUNT**

the number of VTVs migrated.

#### **VTV COUNT**

the number of active VTVs on the MVC.

#### **%USED**

the percentage of the MVC used by valid VTVs.

**%FRAGMENTED**

the percentage of the MVC that has invalid VTV space that is not available for use until it is reclaimed or the MVC is drained.

**%AVAILABLE**

the percentage of the MVC that is physically available for use.

**%USABLE**

the percentage of space on the MVC that can be used by VTCS. This may be zero even if there is still space physically available. For instance, if the VTV per MVC limit is reached then the %Usable will be reported as 0%. Similarly, if an error has been reported against an MVC then VTCS will not use this MVC for output and the %Usable will be reported as %0.

**TIMES MOUNTED**

the number of times the MVC has been mounted for writing or reading since it was added to the MVC inventory.

**LAST MOUNTED**

the date and time at which the MVC was mounted or attempted to be mounted upon a RTD.

**LAST MIGRATED**

the date and time at which the last VTV migration was performed to the MVC.

**LAST DRAIN/RECLAIM**

the date and time at which the MVC was last processed by Drain or reclaim processing and had its end-of-tape pointer reset.

**OWNER**

the Storage Class that owns the MVC. A MVC only becomes a member of a storage class when it contains migrated VTVs.

**VTSS**

the last VTSS that performed a migration to the MVC. CONSOLIDATE appears in this field for consolidated VTVs.

**MVCPPOOL**

either an MVC Pool Name (including DEFAULTPOOL) or NO if the MVC is not defined on an MVCPool statement.

**SECURITY ACCESS**

VTCS permissions for the MVCs defined in an MVCPPOOL statement (UPDATE, NO UPDATE, or NO PROFILE).

**STATUS**

one of the following statuses:

**INITIALIZED**

The MVC has been initialized.

**BEING AUDITED**

The MVC is either currently being audited or has been the subject of a failed audit. While in this state the MVC will not be used for migration and can be used for recalls. Due to the inherent state, recalls may fail because the CDS not yet up-to-date with the MVC contents. To clear this condition, rerun the AUDIT utility against this MVC.

**LOGICALLY EJECTED**

The MVC has either been the subject of an MVCDRain Eject or the MVC was rejected for update by a RACROUTE call. The MVC will not be used again for migration. To clear this condition, use MVCDRain against the MVC without the Eject option.

**NOT-INITIALIZED**

The MVC has been defined via the CONFIG utility, but has not ever been the subject of a successful VTV migration.

**MOUNTED**

The MVC is mounted on an RTD.

**IN ERROR**

This is a generic error that indicates the MVC, drive, or combination of the two has specifically reported a problem whilst accessing the MVC. VTCS attempts to de-preference the usage of MVCs with this state. VTCS considers this to be the most serious affliction on a MVC when considering copies to be used for recalls.

In general, to clear this state:

- If the MVC caused the problem, use a DRAIN(EJECT) command to remove the MVC from service.
- If the RTD caused the problem, use the MVCMAINT utility to reset the MVC state.

---

**Note** – One or more of the following messages is issued for IN ERROR status: SLS6686, SLS6687, SLS6688, SLS6690. Refer to the publication *ELS Messages and Codes* for recovery procedures for these messages.

---

**MARKED FULL**

The MVC is considered as being full and is not a candidate for further migrations. Due to the general behavior of tape media this can occur before the MVC has reached its nominal capacity.

**DRAINING**

The MVC is either currently the subject of drain or reclaim processing. Should the processing fail, the MVC maybe left in this state as a safeguard. To clear this condition, perform a MVCDRain against the MVC.



## LOST - FAILED TO MOUNT

VTCS attempted to mount an MVC and the mount did not complete within a 15-minute time-out period. VTCS has had no specific error report although there could be combination of hardware problems, HSC problems, or by the MVC being removed from the ACS. VTCS attempts to de-preference the usage of MVCs with this state.

Determine the cause of the error and fix it. You can also use the VTCS MVCMAINT utility to set LOST(OFF) for the following events:

- LOST(ON) was set due to LSM failures or drive errors that have been resolved
- LOST(ON) was set because the MVC was outside the ACS and has been reentered.

This condition is automatically cleared by VTCS if it subsequently requests a mount of the MVC and this is successful.

## DATA CHECK

A data check condition has been reported against this MVC. VTCS attempts to de-preference the usage of MVCs with this state. To get into this state, a data transfer must have failed upon two different RTDs.

To clear this state:

- If all VTVs on the MVC are duplexed, use MVCDRAIN on the MVC without the Eject option. This recovers all VTVs and removes the MVC from service.
- If all VTVs on the MVC are not duplexed, VTCS AUDIT the MVC. The audit will probably fail. After the audit, do an MVCDRAIN (no eject). This recalls the VTVs before the data-check area in ascending block-id order and the VTVs after the data-check area in a descending block-id order. Processing the VTVs in this sequence ensures that VTCS recovers as many VTVs as possible from the media. You then need to recreate the data for any VTVs still on the MVC.

Note that although this indicates that a specific failure has occurred when performing data transfers, this may not be a fault in the media. It could be that a RTD is writing data to the media out of specification. Patterns of failures are therefore important. As an example, lots of DATA CHECK conditions suddenly occurring lots of drives and volumes.

## READ ONLY

The MVC has been marked read-only because of one of the following conditions:

- The MVC being the target of an export or consolidation process. The read-only state protects the MVC from further updates.
- The MVC media is set to file protect. Correct the error and use the MVCMAINT utility to set READONLY(OFF).
- The MVC does not have the appropriate SAF rules set to enable VTCS to update the MVC. Correct the error and use the MVCMAINT utility to set READONLY(OFF). Refer to the publication *Installing ELS* for information about defining a security subsystem user ID for HSC, SMC, and VTCS.

## RETIRED

The MVC is retired and is considered by VTCS as having reached the end of its useful life. VTCS will recall from, but not migrate to, the MVC. Replace the MVC as soon as possible. Once this has been done, use the MVCMAINT utility to set RETIRED(OFF).

**WARRANTY HAS EXPIRED**

The MVC's warranty has expired. VTCS continues to use the MVC. You should start making plans to replace the MVC when it reaches Retired state.

**INVALID MIR**

VTCS has received status from an RTD to indicate the MIR (media information record) for a 9x40 media is invalid. An invalid MIR does not prevent access to data but may cause significant performance problems while accessing records on the tape. The MVC is not capable of high-speed searches on areas of the tape that do not have a valid MIR entry.

VTCS attempts to de-preference MVCs with this condition. For recalls, if the VTV resides on multiple MVCs, VTCS selects MVCs with valid MIRs ahead of MVCs with invalid MIRs. VTCS avoids using MVCs with invalid MIRs for migration, unless the migration is at the beginning of the tape. Migrating from the beginning of tape will correct the MIR. VTCS detects the invalid MIR condition at either mount time or dismount time. If detected at mount time and the operation can be completed with another MVC, VTCS dismounts the first MVC and selects the alternate MVC.

VTCS has only a limited ability to switch to an alternate MVC. That is, it is mainly used for migrate and virtual mount. For MVCs with invalid MIRs, determine the cause of the error, which may be caused by media or drive problems, and fix the error. To recover an MVC with an invalid MIR, read the MVC to the end of the tape, via a VTCS audit. If the media is the problem, run an MVCDRAIN EJECT to recall the VTVs and cause the MVC to be removed from the MVC pool.

**MIGRATES NOT SUPPORTED**

This host lacks support for performing migrations to this MVC. This is set by another host that does support migration.

**RECALLS NOT SUPPORTED**

This host lacks support for performing recalls from this MVC. This is set by another host that does support recalls.

**RECLAIM NOT SUPPORTED**

This host lacks support for considering this MVC for reclaim processing. This is set by another host that does support reclaim processing. This does not inhibit the MVC being processed through the MVCDRAIN command.

**FORMAT**

the VTV format, standard or partitioned.

# Display MVCPool

## Interfaces:

Console or utility

UII: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

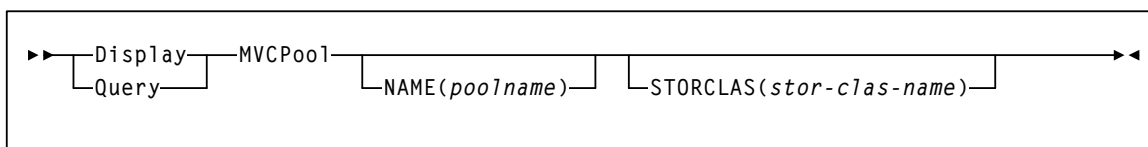
Display MVCPool displays information about a specific MVC pool.

---

**Note** – When this command is issued, MVC location information is refreshed to ensure an accurate, up to date result.

---

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-68** Display MVCPool syntax

## Parameters

### NAME

display information for the specified named MVC pool.

#### *poolname*

the MVC pool name as defined using the MVCPool control statement. Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for more information.

Alternatively, you can specify ALL to display information for all named MVC pools (including the default pool DEFAULTPOOL).

### STORCLAS

display information about MVCs by Storage Class.

#### *stor-clas-name*

the name of a specific Storage Class for which you want MVC usage displayed.

This may be for current valid Storage Classes that you defined on the STORclas control statement, or for Storage Classes which used to exist to which media is still assigned. See [“STORclas Control Statement” on page 458](#) for more information.

To display all Storage Classes, specify ALL or omit the STORCLAS parameter.

## Output

FIGURE 3-69 shows an example of Display MVCPool output. with pool name POOL1 specified.

MVCPOOL (POOL1) INFORMATION							
INITMVC	MVCFree	Threshold	MaxMVC	Start	RECLaim		
NO	2	30	4	10	DEMAND		
ACS	Media	Free-MVCS Vols	GB	Reclaim-MVCS Vols	Gb	Used-MVCS Vols	Gb
00	ECART	120	96	2	0.5	90	45
00	STK1R	30	600	1	3.5	25	350
00	TOTAL	150	696	3	4.0	115	395

FIGURE 3-69 Example Display MVCPool output (NAME POOL1)

FIGURE 3-67 shows an example of Display MVCPool output with no pool name specified.

MVCPOOL INFORMATION							
INITMVC	MVCFREE	THRESHOLD	MAXMVC	START			
NO	2	30	4	10			
ACS	MEDIA	FREE-MVCS VOLS	GB	RECLAIM-MVCS VOLS	GB	USED-MVCS VOLS	GB
00	ECART	310	248	4	1.2	100	65
00	ZCART	120	192	1	0.5	250	400
00	TOTAL	430	440	5	1.7	350	465
01	ECART	90	144	15	6.2	322	485
01	ZCART	35	700	3	11.3	43	675
01	TOTAL	125	844	18	17.5	365	1160
NON-LIB	STK2P	22	1100	0	0	12	1565
NON-LIB	TOTAL	22	1100	0	0	12	1565

FIGURE 3-70 Example Display MVCPool output (no NAME specified)

*Fields***INITMVC**

specifies whether un-initialized MVCs are to be initialized when they are first mounted.

**MVCFREE**

the minimum number of free MVCs.

**THRESHOLD**

the fragmented space threshold (as a percentage) that determines when an MVC is eligible for demand or automatic reclamation.

**MAXMVC**

MVC limit for a single reclaim.

**START**

specifies a percentage value that represents the ratio of reclaim candidates to total MVCs, which triggers automatic space reclamation.

**RECLaim**

specifies the space reclamation setting for the MVC pool.

**ACS**

the ACS containing the MVC pool. NONLIB counts are for initialized MVCs that are now outside the library.

**MEDIA**

the MVC media type.

**FREE-MVCS**

MVCs that have 100% usable space and do not contain any migrated VTVs.  
The storage shown is the total free space based on media type capacity.

**RECLAIM-MVCS**

MVCs eligible for space reclamation by this host. The storage shown is the total wasted space, including those MVCs not yet eligible for space reclaim.

**USED-MVCS**

initialized MVCs that are partially or completely full.

**DR checkpoint set: *yyyymmdd hh:mm:ss***

DR checkpoint time stamp.

**MVC protection period set: *nn hrs***

Configuration PROTECT value set.

## Display OPTion

**Interfaces:**

Console or PARMLIB

UII: No

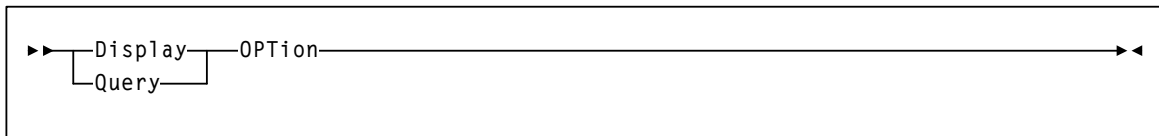
**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

### Description

Display OPTion displays current settings for general HSC options set by the OPTion command.

### Syntax



**FIGURE 3-71** Display OPTion syntax

### Parameters

None.

# Display PATH

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB

UII: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display PATH displays the status of paths from VTSSs to either RTDs or virtual libraries.

## Syntax

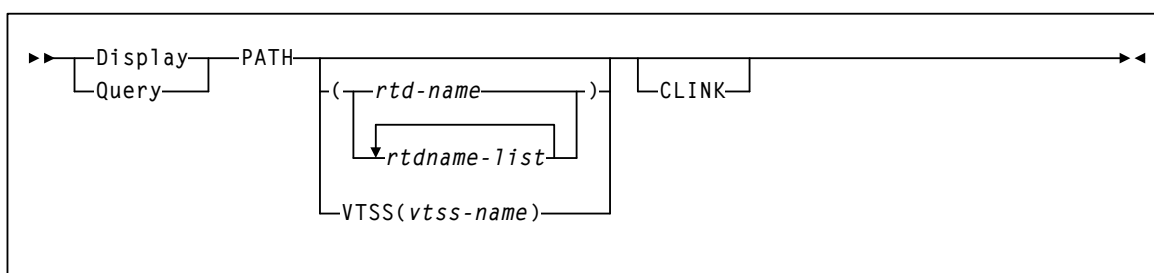


FIGURE 3-72 Display PATH syntax

## Parameters

### PATH

optionally, restricts the display to the specified paths

*rtdname, rtdname-list*

the names assigned to the paths for accessing RTDs for Virtual Libraries from a VTSS

### VTSS

optionally, restricts the display to the paths from an individual VTSS

*vtssname*

the name of the VTSS to which the paths are configured

### CLINK

optionally, include paths allocated for CLINKs in the display output. Paths for both cluster replication and electronic export are displayed.

## Output

FIGURE 3-69 shows an example of Display PATH output.

VTSSNAME	Type	RTD NAME	CHANIF	Device	Target	State
HBVTSS18	RTD	SS182A01	01 C0E	2A01		Online
	RTD	SS182A06	00 C0I	2A06		Online
	CLINK	HBVTSS19	06 C1A		CLUSTER1	On-Async
	VLIB	SS18IP0	04 I0A:0	V000	WILDCAT1	Online
	VLIB	SS18IP2	04 I1A:0		WILDCAT2	Online
	EEXP	HBVTSS16	05 I0I:0		PRIMARY	On-Sync
HBVTSS19	RTD	SS192A02	01 C0E	2A02		Online
	RTD	SS192A07	00 C0I	2A07		Online
	VLIB	SS19IP0	04 I0A:0	V010	WILDCAT1	Online
	VLIB	SS19IP2	04 I1A:0		WILDCAT2	Online
	EEXP	HBVTSS16	05 I0I:0		PRIMARY	On-Sync

FIGURE 3-73 Example Display PATH output

### Fields

#### VTSSNAME

the name of the VTSS to which the path is attached.

#### Type

The type of the path. This can be one of the following:-

- RTD – A direct connection to a RTD
- VLIB – A data path connection to a Virtual Library
- CLINK - A CLINK used for cluster replications within the tapeplex
- EEXP – A CLINK used for electronic export to another tapeplex

#### RTDNAME

The name allocated to the path. For paths defined via the RTDPATH statement in the configuration, this is the name assigned through the RTDNAME parameter. For a CLINK or EEXP type paths, this column will contain the target VTSS name.

#### CHANIF

the logical device Id assigned to the path and the CHANIF or IPIF value that was specified for the path.

#### Target

the destination subsystem for the path. For a VLIB type path, this contains the STORMNGR name assigned to the Virtual Library. For a CLINK type path, this contains the name of the cluster. For the EEXP type paths, this contains the tapeplex name to which the path is connected.

#### Device

the destination device for the path. For a RTD type path, this contains the MVS address of the tape device. If this is a VLIB path that is working in compatibility mode, this will contain the logical device address assigned to the path.



**State**

The current state of this path. This can be one of the following:-

**Online**

the path is online and available for use

**On-Async**

the path is online and available for use for asynchronous replication of VTVs.

**On-Sync**

the path is online and available for use for synchronous replication of VTVs.

**Offline**

the path or the device to which it connects has been varied offline.

**Maint**

the path or the device to which it connects has been varied into an offline maintenance mode. This could be as a result of repeated failures.

# Display Queue

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

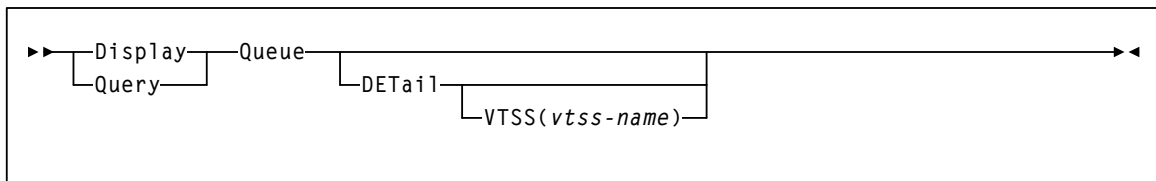
## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display Queue displays status of queued VTCS processes.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-74** Display Queue syntax

## Parameters

### DETAil

optionally, display detailed status.

### VTSS

optionally, display processes for the specified VTSS.

*vtss-name*

the VTSS name.

## Output

See [“Output” on page 263](#).

# Display REPlicat

**Interfaces:**

Console or utility

UII: Yes

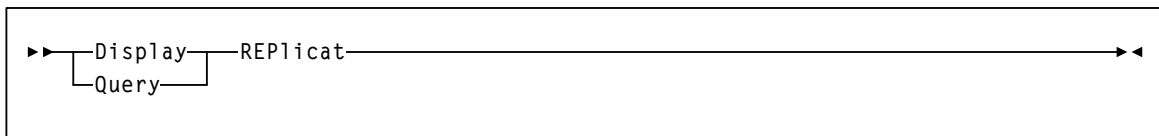
**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display REPlicat displays VTV replication status.

## Syntax

**FIGURE 3-75** Display REPlicat syntax

## Parameters

None.

## Output

FIGURE 3-76 shows an example of Display REPlicat output.

VTSS	Name	Host	Qdepth
HBVTSSY	PLEX1819	EC20	0
		EC21	0
		ECCL	0
		ECCY	0
HBVTSS18	-Cluster	EC20	0
		EC21	0
		ECCL	0
		ECCY	0
*SLS5013I Command completed (0)			

FIGURE 3-76 Example Display REPlicat output

### Fields

#### VTSS

the Primary or sending VTSS name.

#### NAME

one of the following values:

##### *name*

the name of the TapePlex to which CLINKs are connected from the VTSS.

##### **-Cluster**

indicates that the VTSS is a member of a cluster and has CLINKs defined for replication to other VTSSs in the cluster.

#### HOST

the host attached to the Primary VTSS.

#### Qdepth

the total number of VTVs waiting to be replicated.

# Display Requests

**Interfaces:**

Console or PARMLIB

UII: Yes

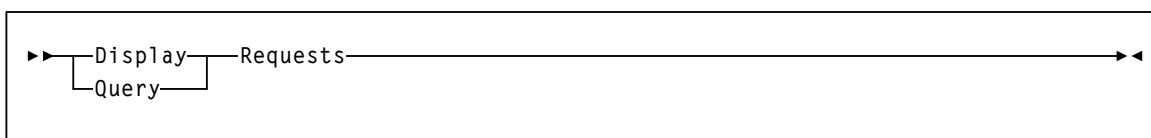
**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

Display Requests displays all pending LMU requests.

## Syntax

**FIGURE 3-77** Display Requests syntax

## Parameters

None.

# Display RTD

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UUI: Yes

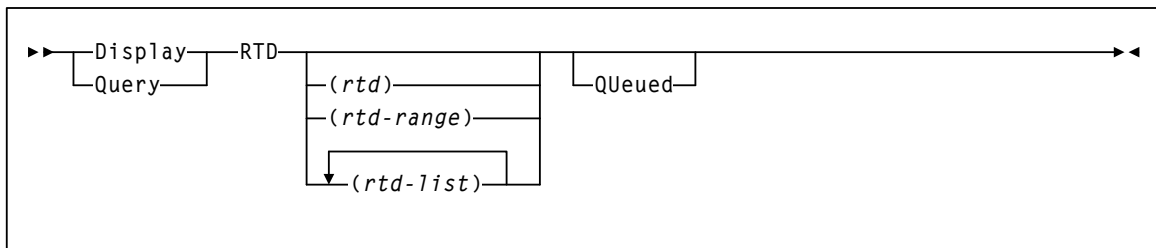
## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display RTD displays usage information for the specified RTDs.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-78** Display RTD syntax

## Parameters

*rtd-id*, *rtd-range*, or *rtd-list*

optionally, the unit addresses of one or more RTDs.

### Qeued

optionally, display information about requests queued for the RTD.

## Display RTD Output

FIGURE 3-79 shows an example of Display RTD output.

RTD	MOUNT	ALLOC	HOST	VTSS	Status	Top ID	Top Host
B200	-	-	-	DHSS16	Offline	01265	ECC20
B201	-	-	-	DHSS16	Offline	02368	ECC20
B202	-	-	-	DHSS16	Online/free		
B201	-	-	-	DHSS16	Online/free		
0B79	-	-	-	DHSS16	Online/free		
0B7A	DMV051*	DMV051	EC20	DHSS18	Recall VTV		
1600					MVS1 :Migrate		
1601					MVS1 :Migrate		

FIGURE 3-79 Example Display RTD output

### *Fields*

#### **RTD**

the unit address of the RTD.

#### **MOUNT**

the volser of the MVC currently mounted (an \* indicates an in-process mount).

#### **ALLOC**

the volser of the MVC allocated for mounting on the RTD.

#### **HOST**

the host that currently owns the RTD.

#### **VTSS**

the VTSS that is currently connected to the RTD.

#### **Status**

One of the following RTD statuses:

##### **AUDIT MVC**

An MVC is being audited.

##### **BUSY**

The RTD is busy (non-specific task).

##### **FAIL/OFFLINE**

The RTD has been placed offline due to a failure.

##### **IDLE**

An MVC is allocated to the RTD but the MVC is not being used.

##### **INITIALIZE**

The host is verifying RTD status and availability.

##### **MAINTENANCE**

The RTD is in maintenance mode.

**MIGRATE VTV**

The RTD is migrating a VTV.

**OFFLINE**

The RTD is offline and unavailable to all hosts and VTSSs.

**ONLINE/FREE**

The RTD is online and available.

**PATH OFFLINE**

The RTD status is unknown because the VTSS cannot contact the RTD or if the paths were not correctly configured.

**PATH SUSPEND**

An RTD is globally online but the path from the VTSS is suspended due to the RTD being paired with a CLINK.

**RECALL VTV**

The RTD is recalling a VTV.

**RECOVER RTD**

The RTD is being reset after a problem, a vary, or an initialization.

**RECOVERY**

The RTD is being reset following an error or a vary online mode.

**SUSPEND**

The RTD operations are suspended. This occurs under the following conditions:

- when two RTDs are connected to two separate ports on the same VSM4 ICE3 card CIP or VSM5, FICON and FIP.
- when one or more RTDs and a CLINK are configured on the same port. The RTDs remain in SUSPEND mode while the CLINK is online.

---

**Note** – An RTD can only be online if the CLINK is offline.

---

**UNLOAD MVC**

A forced unload of the RTD is occurring.

**VTV TRANSFER**

The RTD is migrating a VTV before recalling it on another VTSS.

**TOP ID**

the process Id of the request that is top of the queue for next using this RTD from this host. The TOP ID column only applies for requests from the host upon which the command has been executed. This host may not have the top claim upon the RTD.

**TOP HOST**

the host which has the request that is top of the queue for next using this RTD. The TOP HOST indicates which host has the top claim upon the RTD.



## Display RTD Queued Output

FIGURE 3-80 shows an example of Display RTD Queued output.

ID	Function	Weight	VTSS	MVC list / Storage Class
01360	<X00029>	432*	HBVTSS18	021748 022524
01425	Recall	2	!ALLVTSS	021754
01423	Recall	2	!ALLVTSS	021675
01368	Recall	2	!ALLVTSS	022551
01381	Migrate	2	HBVTSS19 -	*HBVTSS19

**FIGURE 3-80** Example Display RTD Queued output

### *Fields*

#### **ID**

the process ID, which is a unique number in the range 0 - 65536. When the process ID reaches 65536 it wraps back to zero.

#### **FUNCTION**

the type of request that is queuing for an RTD. If it is a VTV volser inside angle brackets (<>), then this is an auto recall request for a virtual mount.

#### **WEIGHT**

the weighting factor that VTCS has currently assigned to the request. The requests will be considered and queued (reported) according to this factor. An asterisks (\*) next to the value indicates that the request has been waiting sufficient long to warrant the stealing of another MVC's allocation.

#### **VTSS**

the VTSS or the VTSS list name to be used for selecting RTDs. The special value !ALLVTSS indicates that any VTSS with access to a suitable drive is eligible.

#### **MVC LIST**

the list of MVC for which we are attempting to select a RTD. For an auto recall request, this list may run to four MVCs. Conversely, for a migration request that is yet to select a MVC, this will be empty.

#### **STORAGE CLASS**

the storage class for which the migration is destined. An asterisks (\*) next to the value indicates that is storage class is in an error state.

# Display SCRatch

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

Display SCRatch displays scratch counts by subpool name, ACS id, LSM id, media type, recording technique, or owning host name.

## Syntax

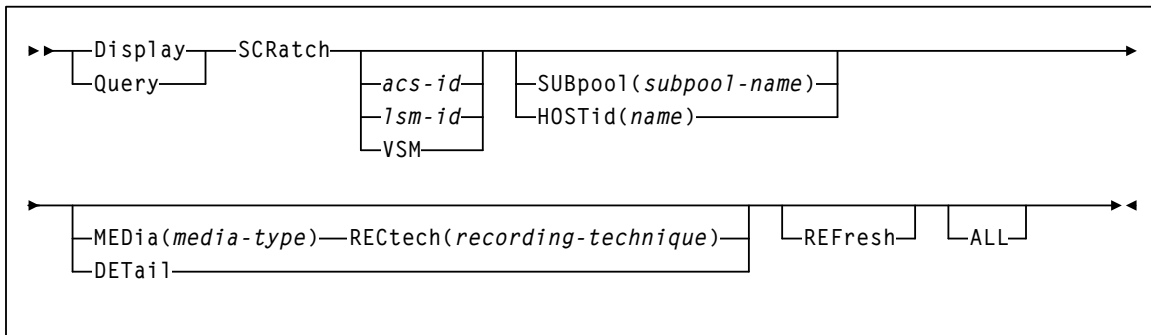


FIGURE 3-81 Display SCRatch syntax

## Parameters

### SCRatch

#### *acs-id*

optionally, the ACS for which the system is to display scratch count information. If you specify *acs-id* without an LSM number, selected scratch counts for the entire ACS are displayed.

#### *lsm-id*

optionally, the LSM for which the system is to display scratch count information.

#### VSM

optionally, restricts the Display SCRatch display to subpools with virtual volumes. VSM is not allowed if *acs-id* or *lsm-id* are also specified.

---

**Note** – If *acs-id* or *lsm-id* is specified, it must be the first parameter after the SCRatch keyword. The VSM keyword is not positional.

---

**SUBpool**

optionally, restricts the scratch count display to the named subpool only. If SUBpool is specified, then LSM and ACS totals will reflect only the named subpool. SUBpool is not allowed if HOSTid is also specified.

*subpool-name*

the name of the subpool. Specify up to 13 characters.

**HOSTid**

optionally, restricts the scratch count display to subpools that are accessible from the named HOSTid. If HOSTid is specified, then LSM and ACS totals will reflect only subpools that can be accessed from the named HOSTid. HOSTid is not allowed if SUBpool is also specified.

*name*

the SMFID or the SMC SERVER ALIASHOST ID of the host. Specify up to 8 characters.

**MEDia**

optionally, restricts the scratch count display to the volumes compatible with the specified media name. If MEDia is specified, then LSM and ACS totals will reflect only the compatible media types.

*media-type*

the media type.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for a list of valid *media-type* values.

**RECtech**

optionally, restricts the scratch count display to volumes compatible with the specified recording technique. If RECtech is specified, then LSM and ACS totals will reflect only the compatible recording techniques

*recording-technique*

the recording technique.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for valid *recording-technique* values.

---

**Note** – RECtech is not valid with the VSM parameter.

---

**DETail**

optionally, lists scratch counts by all media and recording techniques. If specified, then an additional level of media and recording technique detail is displayed for every subpool. DETail is not allowed if either MEDia or RECtech are also specified.

**REFresh**

optionally, updates VSM scratch counts prior to the display occurring.

---

**Note** – The REFresh parameter causes additional I/Os to the CDS and must be used sparingly.

---

**ALL**

optionally, lists scratch counts for subpools that have both a 0 scratch count and 0 threshold value. Normally, the Display SCRatch command will only list subpools that have either a non-zero scratch count or non-zero threshold value. Specification of ALL overrides this filter and results in the display of all defined scratch pools.

## Output

Display scratch counts for all LSMs in all ACSs:

```

DISPLAY SCRATCH

SLS2638I Scratch Summary

ACS/LSM      Subpool Name Label Media      Rectech      Count
=====
VSM          SPV001          SL   VIRTUAL  VIRTUAL      930
VSM          SPV002          SL   VIRTUAL  VIRTUAL     1036
VSM          SPM001          SL   VIRTUAL  VIRTUAL      25
VSM          Total              VIRTUAL  VIRTUAL     1991
-----
LSM 00:00    SP001          SL   All      13
LSM 00:00    SP002          SL   All      31
LSM 00:00    SPM001         SL   All     235
LSM 00:00    Non-Subpool    All      11
LSM 00:00    Total          All     290
LSM 00:01    SP001          SL   All      9
LSM 00:01    Non-Subpool    All      6
LSM 00:01    Total          All     15
ACS 00       SP001          SL   All      22
ACS 00       SP002          SL   All      31
ACS 00       SPM001         SL   All     235
ACS 00       Non-Subpool    All      17
ACS 00 Total              All     305
=====

```

Display scratch counts for a single subpool:

```

DISPLAY SCRATCH SUBPOOL(SPM001)

SLS2638I Scratch Summary

ACS/LSM      Subpool Name Label Media      Rectech      Count
=====
VSM          SPM001          SL   VIRTUAL  VIRTUAL      25
-----
LSM 00:00    SPM001          SL   All     235
ACS 00       SPM001          SL   All     235
=====

```

Display scratch counts for a single ACS:

```

DISPLAY SCRATCH ACS 00

SLS2638I Scratch Summary

ACS/LSM      Subpool Name Label Media      Rectech      Count
=====
LSM 00:00    SP001          SL    All          13
LSM 00:00    SP002          SL    All          31
LSM 00:00    SPM001         SL    All         235
LSM 00:00    Non-Subpool           All          11
LSM 00:00    Total           All         290
LSM 00:01    SP001          SL    All           9
LSM 00:01    Non-Subpool           All           6
LSM 00:01    Total           All          15
ACS 00       SP001          SL    All          22
ACS 00       SP002          SL    All          31
ACS 00       SPM001         SL    All         235
ACS 00       Non-Subpool           All          17
ACS 00 Total           All         305
=====

```

Display scratch count detail for a single LSM:

```

DISPLAY SCRATCH LSM 01:00 DETAIL

SLS2638I Scratch Summary

ACS/LSM      Subpool Name Label Media      Rectech      Count
=====
LSM 01:00    SP002          SL    ECART    36TRACK      1
LSM 01:00    SP002          SL    STANDARD 18TRACK      5
LSM 01:00    SP002          SL    STANDARD 36TRACK      5
LSM 01:00    Non-Subpool           All           8
LSM 01:00    Total           All          19
=====

```

# Display SEN

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB

UII: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

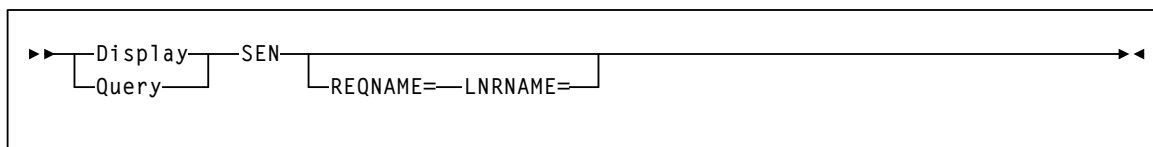
## Description

Display SEN displays SEN LISTEN requests and their status. This display can display a specific request, using the requestor and listener names, a list of related requests using only the requestor name, or all SEN requests.

Displayed information includes:

- Requestor name and listener name if any.
- EOT/EOM settings.
- Disable/enable status.
- The token associated with the request.
- The event list of the request.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-82** Display SEN

## Parameters

### REQNAME=

optionally, specifies the name of the requestor identified on the SEN request (see “Execute Form - Syntax and Parameters” on page 614).

### LNRNAME=

specifies the name of the listener routine identified on the SEN request (see “Execute Form - Syntax and Parameters” on page 614).

## Supported HSC and VTCS SEN Events

### *HSC SEN Events*

**TABLE 3-2** HSC SEN Events

Event Name	Numeric Equate
libvol_insert_event	18
libvol_delete_event	19
hsc_termination_event	20
lsmrail_added_event	25
lsmrail_removed_event	26
libdrive_added_event	27
libdrive_removed_event	28

### *VTCS SEN Events*

**TABLE 3-3** VTCS SEN Events

Event Name	Numeric Equate
vtss_performance_event	01
vtss_chanif_performace_event	02
vtv_mount_event	03
vtv_dismount_event	04
vtv_delete_event	05
mvc_mount_event	06
mvc_dismount_event	07
vtv_migrate_event	08
vtv_recall_event	09
rtd_performance_event	10
rtd_vary_event	11
mvc_usage_event	12
vtv_movement_event	13
vtv_scratch_event	14
vtv_replicate_event	15
tv_unlink_from_mvc_event	16
clink_vary_event	17



# Display SERVER

**Interfaces:**

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display SERVER displays service level and database status.

## Syntax

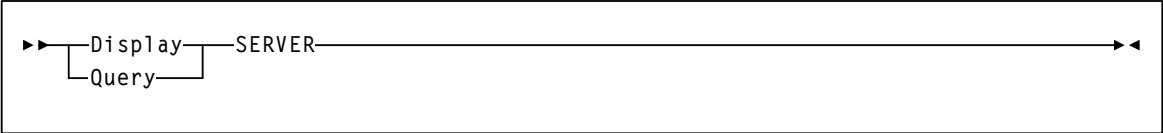


FIGURE 3-83 Display SERVER syntax

## Parameters

None.

## Output

shows an example of the Display SERVER command:

```
SLS1030I HSC service level FULL active
SLS0007I Data Base Status: 125
CDS      DSN      Active
Primary  ELS.DBASEPRM  Yes
Secondary ELS.DBASESEC  Yes
Standby   (not configured) No
```

FIGURE 3-84 Example Display SERVER command output

## Display SRVlev

**Interfaces:**

Console or utility  
UII: Yes

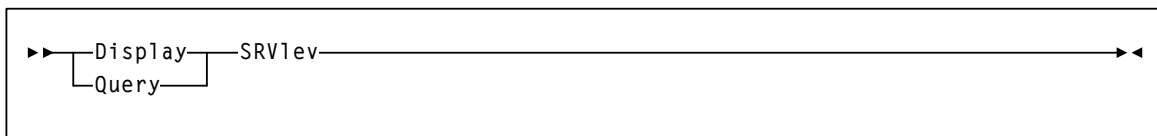
**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at FULL service level

### Description

Display SRVlev displays the current HSC service level for the host issuing the command.

### Syntax



**FIGURE 3-85** Display SRVlev syntax

### Parameters

None.

# Display Status

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB

UII: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

Display Status displays the status of pending requests currently active on the host issuing the command.

## Syntax

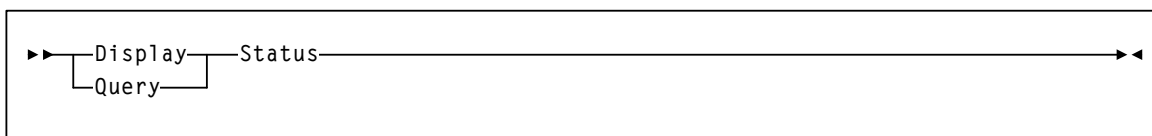


FIGURE 3-86 Display Status syntax

## Parameters

None.

## Output

The output display provides the following information to help you resolve problems during regular execution and termination of the HSC:

- requests: Dismount, Eject, Enter, Modify, Mount, Move, Vary, View
- information about the request, including:
  - the requester (such as Operator, PGMI, Clean, job name of utility)
  - physical element (such as CAPid, Drive, LSM, Station)
  - associated element for the request (such as CAPid belonging to an audit)
  - ready status of each queue, and whether a given queue is being purged or terminated.

---

### Note –

- Use the Display DRives command for information on current and pending mount activity, and Display Requests for information on queued LSM requests.
  - When an audit is running that is a full panel or more in scope, the current cell location points to the first cell in the panel being audited.
-

# Display STORCLas

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UI: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display STORCLas displays information about a Storage Class.

## Syntax

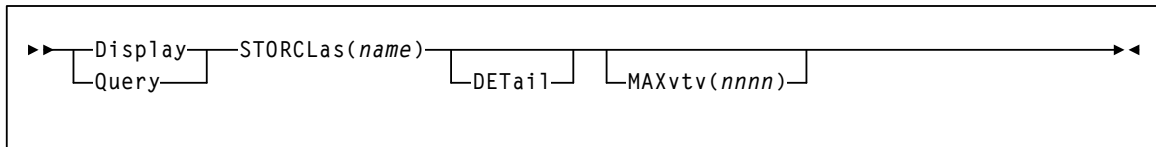


FIGURE 3-87 Display STORCLas syntax

## Parameters

### *name*

the Storage Class name, which can be any Storage Class, not just those defined via the MGMTDEF command. Thus, *stor-clas-name* can take the value of a *vtssname* or !ERROR, in order to allow details of migrations to these Storage Classes to be displayed.

### DETail

optionally, the output lists VTVs currently queued for automatic migration or immediate migration with this Storage Class.

### MAXvtv(*nnnn*)

optionally, indicates the maximum number (0-9999) of VTVs to be listed in a single automatic migration or immediate migration list (for a VTSS). MAXvtv(*nnnn*) implies DETail. If not specified, a default value of 100 is used.

---

**Caution** – Use caution when specifying MAXvtv(*nnnn*). High values can cause temporary system degradation due to the number of WTO (write to operator) messages issued.

---

## Output

FIGURE 3-88 shows an example of Display STORCLas output.

```
Summary of storage class XCA8:

MVCs must be in ACS 00 and MVCPool DEFAULTPOOL

RTDs can be any device type
MVCPool DEFAULTPOOL contains no free MVCs

There is 1 VTV awaiting auto-migration from VTSS CLIVSS16
V00002 with MGMTCLAS XCA8

VTSS CLIVSS16 has no suitable RTDs online in ACS 00
VTSS CLIVSS17 has no suitable RTDs online in ACS 00
```

**FIGURE 3-88** Example Display STORCLas output

As shown in FIGURE 3-88, the output from Display STORCLas shows:

- The characteristics of the Storage Class (ACS, MVC Pool, and Media).
- VTVs waiting migration to the Storage Class from any VTSS.
- Requirements of the MVCs to be used for migration.
- The device type(s) of the RTDs needed to write to the migration MVCs.
- Any errors with regard to satisfying the migration requirements.



## Output

FIGURE 3-88 shows an example of Display STORMNgr output.

Name	Type	Version	Status
VLELIB0	VLIB	VLE 1.0	Online
Features: Unknown			
Device	Name	VTSS	CHANIF
V000	SS16IP0	DVTSS16	08 IOA:0
V002	SS16IP1	DVTSS16	09 IOI:0
V001	SS16IP2	DVTSS16	0A I1A:0
V003	SS16IP3	DVTSS16	0B I1I:0
V010	SS17IP0	DVTSS17	08 IOA:0
V012	SS17IP1	DVTSS17	09 IOI:0
V011	SS17IP2	DVTSS17	0A I1A:0
V013	SS17IP3	DVTSS17	0B I1I:0

FIGURE 3-90 Example Display STORMNgr output

### Fields

#### Name

the name of the external storage manager

#### Type

the type of storage manager

- HSC – An HSC in another TapePlex
- VLIB – A Virtual Library

#### Version

the software version currently executing on the storage manager

#### Status

the current status of the storage manager

#### Features

a list of significant features installed or supported by the storage manager

#### Device

the destination device for the path. This column is blank in the connection to the storage manager is for autonomous device data transfers.

#### Name

the name allocated to the path within the storage manager. This column is blank if the storage manager is just for servicing mounts and dismounts to the device. If this is for a CLINK, then this column displays the target VTSS name.

**VTSS**

the name of a VTSS which has this connection to this storage manager. This column is blank if the device is driven directly by the storage manager.

**CHANIF**

the logical device Id assigned to the path and the CHANIF or IPIF value that was specified for the path. This column is blank if the path to the storage manager is not directly from a VTSS.



# Display TASKs

**Interfaces:**

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

Display TASKs displays task status.

## Syntax

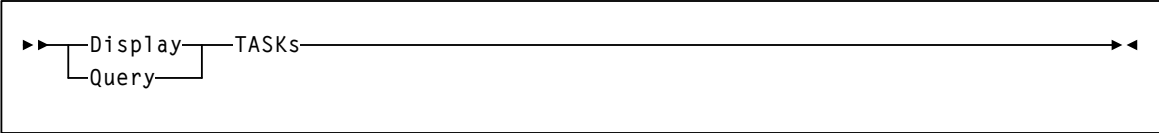


FIGURE 3-91 Display TASKs syntax

## Parameters

None.

## Output

The following figure shows an example of Display TASKs output:

TASK NBR	TASK TYPE	SLOT ID	VTSS	RTD	CURRENT PROCESS	LOCKS HELD	WAITQ COUN	PENDQ COUNT
000	DSP	019			518	T		
001	SS	034	HB VTSS16	SS16B200		T		
002	RTD	035	HB VTSS16	SS16B201		R		
003	RTD	036	HB VTSS16	SS160B79		R		
004	RTD	044	HB VTSS16	SS160B7A		R	1	
005	RTD	045	HB VTSS16	SS160B7C		R		

FIGURE 3-92 Example Display TASKs output

### Fields

**TASK NBR**

the task number for each task on the current host.

**SLOT ID**

the LOCK identifier within the lock buffer.

**TASK TYPE**

the task type:

INV	Inventory Manager
CMD	Command Task
Ctc	Cross TapePlex Communication Manager
DSP	Dispatcher Task
SS	VTSS Task
RTD	RTD Task
DRV	RTD Scheduler
SCR	Scratch Manager
RCM	Reclaim Manager
MSC	Migration Scheduler
CSH	Clink Scheduler
CLK	CLINK Task
UNK	Unknown

**VTSS**

the VTSS name.

**RTD**

the RTD name for RTD tasks.

**CURRENT PROCESS**

the current process ID.

**LOCKS HELD**

type of lock held:

T	Task Lock
M	MVC Lock
V	VTV Lock
D	VTD Lock
R	RTD Lock

**WAITQ COUNT**

the count of requests waiting for locks.

**PENDQ COUNT**

the count of pending requests.

# Display THReshld

## Interfaces:

Console or utility

UII: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

Display THReshld displays scratch count and scratch threshold information by subpool name, ACS id, LSM id, media, and recording technique.

## Syntax

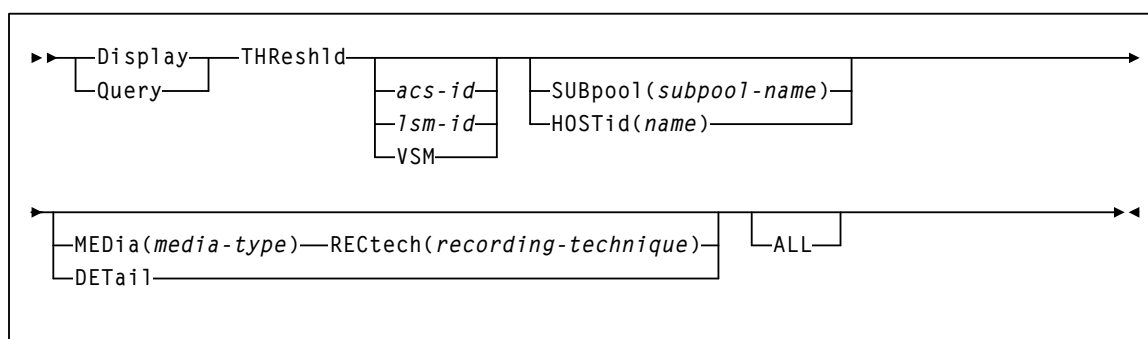


FIGURE 3-93 Display THReshld syntax

## Parameters

### THReshld

display scratch count and threshold information which can include scratch counts and scratch thresholds by subpool name, ACS id, LSM id, media, and recording technique.

#### *acs-id*

optionally, the ACS for which the system is to display scratch count and scratch threshold information. If you specify *acs-id* without an LSM number, selected scratch counts for the entire ACS are displayed.

#### *lsm-id*

optionally, the LSM for which the system is to display scratch count and scratch threshold information.

**VSM**

optionally, restricts the Display THReshld display to subpools with virtual volumes. VSM is not allowed if *acs-id* or *lsm-id* are also specified.

---

**Note** – If *acs-id* or *lsm-id* are specified, it must be the first parameter after the THReshold keyword. The VSM keyword is not positional.

---

**SUBpool**

optionally, restricts the scratch count and scratch threshold display to the named subpool only. If SUBpool is specified, then LSM and ACS totals will reflect only the named subpool. SUBpool is not allowed if HOSTid is also specified.

*name*

the subpool name. Specify up to 13 characters.

**HOSTid**

optionally, restricts the scratch count and scratch threshold display to subpools that are accessible from the named HOSTid. If HOSTid is specified, then LSM and ACS totals will reflect only subpools that can be accessed from the named HOSTid. HOSTid is not allowed if SUBpool is also specified.

*name*

the SMFID or the SMC SERVER ALIASHOST ID of the host. Specify up to 8 characters.

**MEDia**

optionally, restricts the scratch count and scratch threshold display to the volumes compatible with the specified media name. If MEDia is specified, then LSM and ACS totals will reflect only the compatible media types.

*media*

the name of the desired media to display. See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for valid media name values.

---

**Note** – MEDia is not valid with the VSM parameter.

---

**RECtech**

optionally, restricts the scratch count and scratch threshold display to volumes compatible with the specified recording technique. If RECtech is specified, then LSM and ACS totals reflect only the compatible recording techniques.

*recording technique*

the name of the desired recording technique to display. See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for valid media name values.

---

**Note** – RECtech is not valid with the VSM parameter.

---

**DEtail**

optionally, lists scratch counts and scratch threshold information by all media and recording techniques. If specified, then an additional level of media and recording technique detail is displayed for every subpool. DETail is not allowed if VSM, MEDia or RECtech are also specified.

**ALL**

optionally, lists scratch counts for subpools that have both a 0 scratch count and 0 threshold value. Normally, the Display THReshld command will only list subpools that have either a non-zero scratch count or non-zero threshold value. Specification of ALL overrides this filter and results in the display of all defined scratch pools.

**Output**

The following figure shows an example of Display THReshld output:

DISPLAY THRESHOLD						
SLS2649I Threshold Value Summary						
ACS/LSM	Subpool Name	Label	Media	Rectech	Count	Thresh
=====						
===						
VSM	SPV001	SL	VIRTUAL	VIRTUAL	930	0
VSM	SPV002	SL	VIRTUAL	VIRTUAL	1036	0
VSM	SPM001	SL	VIRTUAL	VIRTUAL	25	0
VSM	Total		VIRTUAL	VIRTUAL	1991	0
-----						
---						
LSM 00:00	SP001	SL	All		13	0
LSM 00:00	SP002	SL	All		31	0
LSM 00:00	SPM001	SL	All		235	0
LSM 00:00	Total		All		290	0
LSM 00:01	SP001	SL	All		9	0
LSM 00:01	Total		All		15	0
ACS 00	SP001	SL	All		22	0
ACS 00	SP002	SL	All		31	0
ACS 00	SPM001	SL	All		235	0
ACS 00	Total		All		305	0
=====						

**FIGURE 3-94** Example Display THReshld output

# Display Volser

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

Display Volser displays volume information.

## Syntax

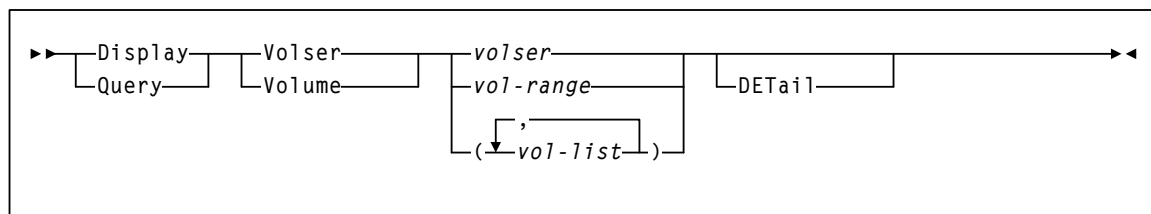


FIGURE 3-95 Display Volser syntax

## Parameters

### Volser or Volume

displays volume locations for the specified volumes. The information displayed includes:

- status of volume (selected or unselected) and its location
- the source, destination, and home location (in the case of an errant volume)

### *volser* or *vol-range* or *vol-list*

one or more VOLSERs for which the system is to display status. Each *vol-list* element can be either a single VOLSER or a VOLSER range.

---

**Note** – You can display a range of up to 100 volumes.

---

List elements must be separated by commas or blanks, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

### DETail

optionally, displays all available information about the specified volume(s).

## Output

The information displayed includes:

- the home cell location
- whether or not the volume is a scratch cartridge
- whether or not the volume is selected
- the owning host (displayed if the volume is selected)
- the drive address or drive ID (displayed if the volume is mounted)
- whether or not an external label is present
- whether or not the media label is readable by the robotic vision system (displayed if the external label exists)
- when the volume was last inserted into the library
- when the volume was last selected
- the select count
- the media type for the volume
- the recording technique for the volume
- whether or not the media label was readable (N/A appears if the value was not read from the LMU)
- how the media type has been determined for the volume. The values that appear in this field are:

<b>YES</b>	The media label and the VOLPARM defined for the volume agree.
<b>NO</b>	The media label and the VOLPARM defined for the volume do not agree.
<b>VOLATTR Only</b>	A VOLPARM has been defined, but the LMU has not determined the media type.
<b>Label Only</b>	The LMU has determined the media type, but a VOLPARM has not been defined.
<b>Undefined</b>	A VOLPARM has not been defined, and the LMU has not determined the media type.

- whether or not the volumes are unusable (i.e., spent cleaning cartridges)
- the volume density for STK1 and STK2 media volumes.
- the Media Warranty Life (MWL) percentage, stored on the cartridge MIR and collected during dismount processing. MWL percentage indicates how much of the media life has been used.

---

**Note** – To collect and report media warranty life, tape libraries and transports must meet the following requirements:

- SL8500 or SL3000 libraries
- LMU compatibility level 21 or higher
- T9x40: all media and models at firmware level 1.42 or higher (except 9840B)
- T10000: all models and media at firmware level 1.38 or higher

Refer to the publication *Managing HSC and VTCS* for more information about media warranty life.

---

# Display VOLUME\_Info

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display VOLUME\_Info displays information for real and/or virtual volumes.

## Syntax

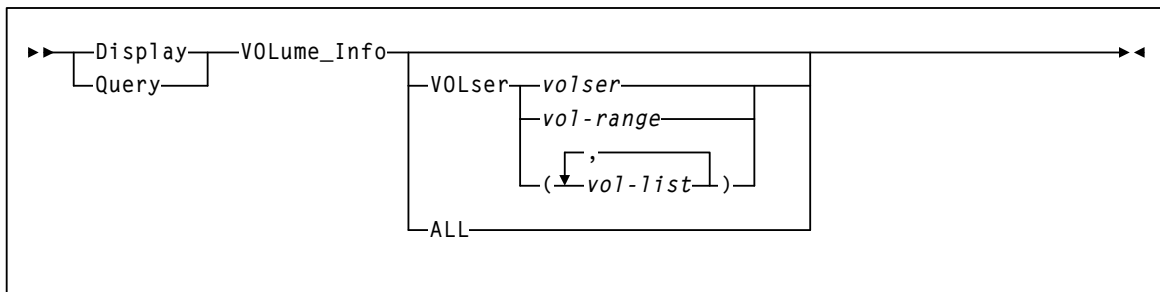


FIGURE 3-96 Display VOLUME\_INFO syntax

## Parameters

### VOLser

displays volume information for the specified volumes. The information displayed includes:

- status of volume (selected or unselected) and its location
- the source, destination, and home location (in the case of an errant volume)

*volser* or *vol-range* or *vol-list*

one or more VOLSERS for which the system is to display status. Each *vol-list* element can be either a single VOLSER or a VOLSER range.

---

**Note** – You can display a range of up to 100 volumes.

---

List elements must be separated by commas or blanks, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

### ALL

Only real (non-virtual) volumes are listed. Volumes are listed in random order.



# Display VSCRatch

## Interfaces:

Console or utility

UII: Yes

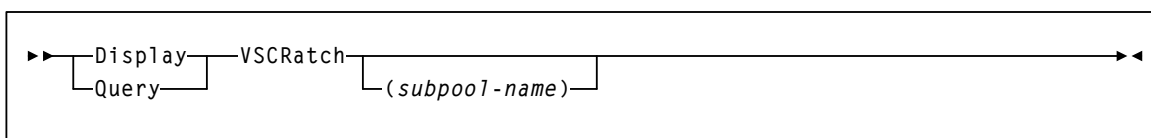
## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display VSCRatch displays diagnostic information for virtual scratch counts.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-97** Display VSCRatch syntax

## Parameters

### *subpool-name*

optionally, a subpool name. Specify up to 13 characters.

If a subpool name is specified, the virtual scratch count display is restricted to the named subpool only.

## Output

The following figure shows an example of DISPLAY VSCRatch output:

SUBPOOL NAME	SCRATCH COUNT	LABEL TYPE	<-----SCRATCH BLOCKS----->					TOT BLKS
			0.4GB	0.8GB	2GB	4GB	RNG	
M0	2	SL	1	1	1	1	1	22
M1	3	SL	1	1	1	1	1	23

**TABLE 3-4** Example Display VSCRatch output

### *Fields*

#### **SUBPOOL-NAME**

the name of the scratch subpool. Note that VTCS does not display scratch counts for non-subpool VTVs. If there are no VTV subpools defined, VTCS defines the Virtual Tapes pool for all VTVs.

#### **SCRATCH BLOCKS**

the number of CDS blocks containing scratches for valid VTV sizes (.4GB,.8GB, 2GB, 4GB), plus the number of CDS ranges and the total number of CDS blocks for this scratch pool.

# Display VTD

## Interfaces:

Console or utility

UII: Yes

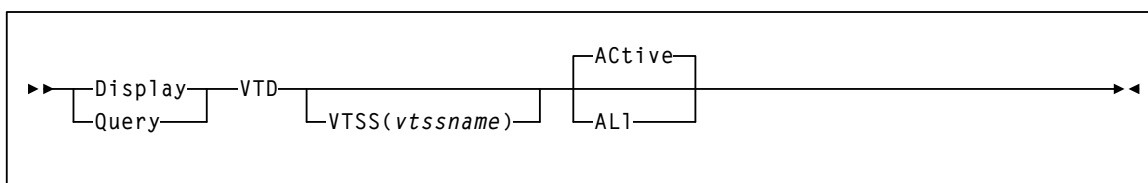
## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display VTD displays VTD status.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-98** Display VTD syntax

## Parameters

### VTSS

Optionally, display status for the VTDs connected to the specified VTSS.

*vtss-name*

the VTSS name.

### Active | All

Display status for VTDs that have VTDs mounted (Active) or all VTDs (All).

## Output

FIGURE 3-99 shows an example of Display VTD output.

DRIVE	LOCATION	VTV	STATUS
A800	HBVTSS16	X00778	ECAM only
A801	HBVTSS16		ECAM only
A802	HBVTSS16		ECAM only
A803	HBVTSS16		ECAM only

FIGURE 3-99 Example Display VTD output

### *Fields*

#### **DRIVE**

the MVS device address of the VTD. If the device has not been defined to this host in the CONFIG, then this will contain physical address within the VTSS prefixed by '##'.

#### **LOCATION**

the VTSS that contains the VTD.

#### **VTV**

the VTV volser if applicable.

#### **STATUS**

one of the following VTD statuses:

##### **Available**

the VTD is available for work.

##### **Mounted**

the VTV volser shown in the VTV column is mounted on the VTD.

##### **Mount(other)**

the VTV volser shown in the VTV column is mounted on the VTD. The mount was not performed by the host on which the command was executed.

##### **Mounting**

the VTV volser shown in the VTV column is in the process of being mounted on the VTD. Typically, this indicates that an auto recall is in progress.

##### **Dismounting**

the VTV volser shown in the VTV column is was mounted on the VTD and the VTD has been unloaded. VTCS either has not received the dismount request or is currently in the progress of synchronizing the VTV and CDS information.

##### **Redrive Later**

a previous attempt to mount the VTV volser shown in the VTV column upon the VTD failed. It will be interpreted again within the next few minutes.

**Importing**

the VTV volser shown in the VTV column is being electronically imported via the VTD.

**Imported**

the VTV volser shown in the VTV column has been electronically imported via the VTD. It is awaiting the confirmation request from the host that performed the export.

## Display VTSS

### Interfaces:

Console or utility

UUI: Yes

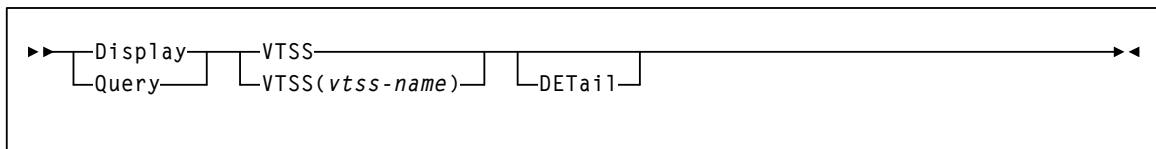
### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display VTSS displays VTSS status.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-100** Display VTSS syntax

## Parameters

## VTSS

*vtss-name*

optionally, the VTSS for which to display status.

## DETail

optionally, display detailed VTSS status information including supported features.

## Output

FIGURE 3-101 shows an example of Display VTSS output.

VTSSNAME	CAPACITY(GB)	DBU	HI AMT	LOW AMT	VTV COUNT	MX MT	MN MT	Def ACS	AUTOMIG	STATE	RTDs
HBVTSS16	56.209	9	35	30	204	6	1	--		On-P	Yes
HBVTSS17	56.209	7	35	30	218	4	3	02		On-P	Yes
HBVTSS18	N/A	N/A	35	30	N/A	3	1	01		Off	Yes
HBVTSS19	93.184	5	35	30	110	3	1	01		On	Yes

FIGURE 3-101 Example Display VTSS output

### Fields

#### VTSSNAME

the name of the VTSS.

#### CPCTY(GB)

the total physical capacity in gigabytes of the specified VTSS.

#### DBU

the percentage of disk buffer used of the total buffer capacity.

#### HI AMT

the high AMT.

#### LOW AMT

the low AMT.

#### VTV COUNT

the number of VTVs resident on the VTSS.

#### MX MT

the current MAXMIG value.

#### MN MT

the current MINMIG value.

#### DEF ACS

the default ACS.

#### AUTOMIG

indicates which host is performing the auto migration and the threshold to which the VTSS is migrating.

**STATE**

one of the following global VTSS states for all hosts:

**QUIESCING**

Quiescing state.

**QUIESCED**

Quiesced state.

**OFFLINE**

Offline state.

**OFFLINE-P**

Offline pending state.

**ONLINE**

Online state.

**ONLINE-P**

Online pending state.

**STARTED**

The VTSS is initialized and in process of going to the requested state (online, offline, or quiesced).

**RTDs**

indicates whether the VTSS has RTDs.



## Display VTSS DEtail Output

FIGURE 3-102 shows an example of the additional fields for Display VTSS DEtail output.

VTSSNAME	HOST	NOMIGRAT	NORECLAM	STATE
HBVTSS16	EC104	Y	Y	ONLINE
HBVTSS16	EC21	N	Y	ONLINE
HBVTSS17	EC21	N	Y	QUIESCED
HBVTSS17	EC10	Y	Y	OFFLINE
VTSS	TYPE	SUPPORTED FEATURES		
HBVTSS16	VSM5	2/4GB VTVS		
		LARGE PAGE VTVS		
		NOWAIT ON RTD MOUNT		
		BUDDY QUEUING		
		SYNC REPLICATE		
		LAST USE HINT		
		MGMT CLASS ON MVCS		
		CONNECT to 32 RTDS		
		STACKED MIGRATES		

FIGURE 3-102 Example Display VTSS Detail additional output

### *Fields*

#### **VTSSNAME**

the VTSSs that the hosts in the **HOST** field can access.

#### **HOST**

the hosts that have access to the VTSSs in the **VTSSNAME** field.

#### **NOMIGRAT**

whether NOMIGRAT is set on for this host.

#### **NORECLAM**

whether NORECLAM is set on for this host.

**STATE**

one of the following VTSS states for this host:

**QUIESCING**

Quiescing state.

**QUIESCED**

Quiesced state.

**OFFLINE**

Offline state.

**OFFLINE-P**

Offline pending state.

**ONLINE**

Online state.

**ONLINE-P**

Online pending state.

**STARTED**

The VTSS is initialized and in process of going to the requested state (online, offline, or quiesced).

**TYPE**

VTSS model (VSM2, VSM3, VSM4, VSM5, or unknown).

**SUPPORTED FEATURES**

One or more of the following:

**400MB | 800MB | 2/4GB VTVS**

Default VTV size.

**LARGE PAGE | STANDARD PAGE VTVS**

Default VTV page size.

**NOWAIT ON RTD MOUNT**

VTSS supports polling for RTD mount completion. It does not lock the Nearlink interface while waiting for the mount.

**BUDDY QUEUING**

VTSS supports queueing of requests to more than one RTD on a Nearlink interface.

**REPLICATION**

Asynchronous replication enabled.

**SYNC REPLICATE**

Synchronous replication enabled.

**LAST USE HINT**

VTSS supports cache management hints indicating when a VTV will be accessed in the near future.

**MGMT CLASS ON MVC**

Audit MVC is able to return management class for VTVs.

**CONNECT TO 16 | 32 RTDS**

Maximum number of RTDs per VTSS enabled.

**STACKED MIGRATES**

Stacked migrates enabled.

**PARTITIONED RTDs**

Partitioned RTDS enabled.

**T10KC Partition RTDs**

T10KC partitioned RTDs enabled.

**Write New VOL1 Label**

VTSS supports MVC labeling.

**CONCURRENT PORT I/O**

VTSS supports multiple I/Os on a single physical nearlink interface.

**MANY-TO-MANY CONNECT**

VTSS supports target VTD selection for a CLINK.

**IP REPLICATION**

VTSS supports IP CLINKs and therefore a VLE connection.

**CONCURRENT TAPE RECALL/MOUNT**

VTV mounts on VTDs can occur before the recall has completed.

**CONCURRENT TAPE RECALL/MOUNT \*DISABLED**

The Concurrent Tape Recall/mount feature is installed on the VTSS but has been disabled by either CONFIG GLOBAL FASTRECL=NO or CONFIG VTSS NOERLYMT.

**UNKNOWN VTSS FEATURE**

VTSS feature found not supported by VTCS software level.

**NONE**

No VTSS features defined.

# Display VTV

**Interfaces:**

Console or utility  
UII: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

Display VTV displays information about a specific VTV.

## Syntax

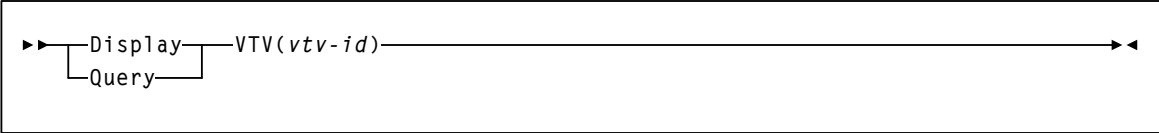


FIGURE 3-103 Display VTV syntax

## Parameters

*vtv-id*  
the ID of the VTV.

## Output

FIGURE 3-104 shows an example of Display VTV output.

Volser:	X00000	
VTSS	HBVTSS19	
Mounted	A800	
Uncompressed Size (Mb)	99.01	
Compressed Size (Mb)	97.88	
Maximum VTV size (Mb)	800	
Page Size	Standard	
Creation Date	2008Feb21 09:32:22	
Last Mounted	2008Feb21 09:32:23	
Last Recalled	2008Apr05 08:15:47	
First Migrated	2008Apr25 08:58:28	
Last Used Date	2008Apr25 08:58:28	
MVC(s)	021681	021645
Block-id(s)	1A400D24	25401185
Management Class	M13	SB
Migrate Pending	SA	
Status	Initialized	

FIGURE 3-104 Example Display VTV output

### *Fields*

#### **VOLSER**

the volser of the VTV specified in the query.

#### **VTSS**

the VTSS where the VTV last or currently resides.

#### **MOUNTED**

if the VTV is mounted on a VTD, the VTD unit address is displayed.

#### **UNCOMPRESSED SIZE(MB)**

the uncompressed size of the VTV (MB). This is the size of the VTV as perceived by the application programs.

#### **COMPRESSED SIZE (MB)**

the compressed size of the VTV (MB). This is the raw space that will be occupied upon the MVCs or within the VTSSs.

#### **MAXIMUM VTV SIZE (MB)**

the maximum (compressed) size of the VTV (400, 800, 2000 or 4000).

#### **CREATION DATE**

the date and time when the VTV contents was last changed by an application.

#### **LAST MOUNTED**

the date and time when the VTV contents was last mount for access by an application.

**LAST RECALLED**

the date and time when the VTV was last recalled back from a MVC into a VTSS.

**FIRST MIGRATED**

the date and time when the first MVC copy of this version of VTV was created.

**LAST USED DATE**

the date and time when the VTV was last touched by VTCS. This includes most functions that update the status of the VTV in some way.

**MVC(S)**

the MVC(s) where the VTV resides. This entry only appears when the VTV is migrated.

**BLOCK-ID**

the logical block ID of the beginning of the VTV upon corresponding MVC. This entry only appears when the VTV is migrated.

**MANAGEMENT CLASS**

the VTV's Management Class.

**MIGRATE PENDING**

the Storage classes to which migrations are outstanding.

**ARCHIVE PENDING**

the Storage classes to which migrations are outstanding in order to satisfy archiving requirements.

**REPLICATION STARTED**

If the VTV is being replicated between VTSSs in a cluster, the name of the target VTSS is displayed.

**REPLICATED**

If the VTV has been replicated to another VTSS in the TapePlex, the VTSS name displayed indicates where the replica can be found.

**IMPORTING**

If the VTV is being mounted via a VTD, the VTD unit address is displayed.

**ELECTRONIC IMPORTED**

If the VTV has been imported from another TapePlex. This will report the TapePlex name that owns the VTV.

**EXPORTED**

If the VTV has been exported to another TapePlex. The line will also list the TapePlexes to which the VTV copies has been successfully exported. An asterisks (\*) next to the name indicates an export that has been rejected by the target TapePlex.

**STATUS**

one or more of the following statuses:

**CONSOLIDATED**

VSM has consolidated the VTV.

**DUPLEXED**

The DUPLEX attribute has been assigned to this VTV. When VSM migrates the VTV, a copy will be written to two MVCs.

**EXPORT-FAILED**

Export of this VTV to a remote TapePlex was attempted and the request was rejected. Typically, this is due to a different copy of the VTV residing in the remote TapePlex.

**EXPORT-REJECTED**

Electronic export to one or more TapePlexes was actively rejected. This could be due to the target TapePlex not allowing import of the VTV, or a clash with copy status.

**EXPORT-REQUIRED**

This VTV should be electronically exported and is currently queued for processing.

**EXPORT-STARTED**

Electronic export is active for this VTV, but not yet complete.

**INITIALIZED**

VTCS has used the VTV at least once.

**MIGRATED**

VSM has migrated the VTV.

**MIGRATE PENDING**

VTV migration is pending. This status is displayed when a VTV is initially created, or when the VTV requires reconciling or archiving. In these latter cases, individual MVC copies may indicate 'Reconcil' or 'Deletion'.

**REPLICATION COMPLETE**

A fully replicated copy of this VTV is now resident in the Secondary VTSS.

**REPLICATION REQUIRED**

This VTV should be replicated and is currently queued for processing.

**REPLICATION STARTED**

Replication is active for this VTV but not yet complete.

**RESIDENT**

The VTV is resident on the VTSS.

**SCRATCH**

The VTV is in scratch status.

**UNINITIALIZED**

The VTV has been defined via the CONFIG utility, but has not ever been used.

**AVOID EARLY MOUNT**

Concurrent recall/mount encountered an error with this VTV. No further concurrent recall/mount activity will be attempted for this VTV.

## DRAin

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB only  
 UUI: No

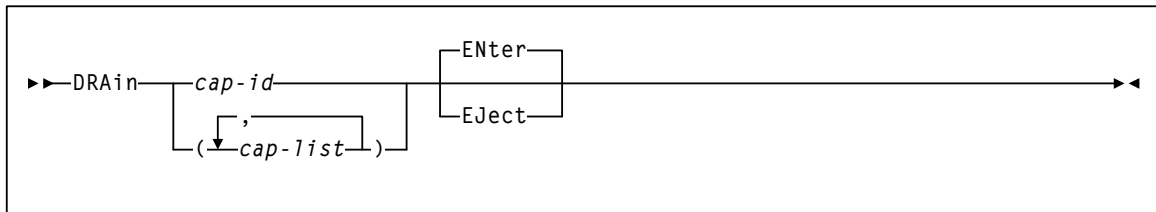
### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

The `DRAIn` command terminates an `eject` or `enter` operation on one or more CAPs, which frees the CAP resources for use by other processes.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-105** DRain syntax

## Parameters

*cap-id* or *cap-list*

one or more CAPs to be drained. The CAPids specified on a DRAin command must match the CAPids specified on the associated Eject or ENter command.

The format of a cap-id is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid, and *CC* is the CAP. See [“CAPid” on page 730](#) for a list of valid values.

Each *cap-list* element can be either an *lsm-id* or a *cap-id* that describes a specific CAP. The elements in a list must be separated by a comma or a blank, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

**ENter**

specifies that an enter operation is to be terminated on the specified CAPs. ENter is the default.

## Eject

specifies that an eject operation is to be terminated on the specified CAPs.



# DRCHKPT

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UUI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS at FULL service level

## Description

The DRCHKPT command establishes the system recovery point (checkpoint) from which MVC content can be recovered from for a period of time.

## Syntax

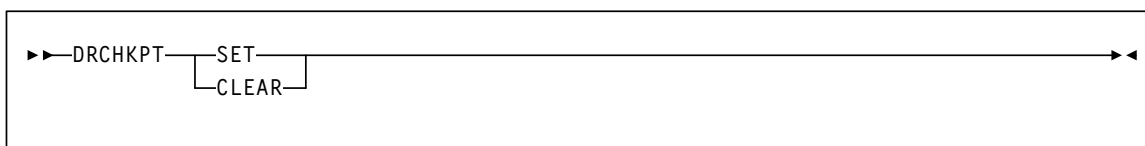


FIGURE 3-106 DRCHKPT syntax

## Parameters

### SET

Sets a date/time stamp in the active CDS which establishes the recovery point. Beginning at this recovery point, MVC content is guaranteed for a period of time in the future (for example, until another DRCHKPT utility is run).

### CLEAR

Removes any recovery point set in the active CDS. Once removed, MVC content cannot be guaranteed.

# DRMONitr

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UUI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS at FULL service level

## Description

The DRMONitr utility stalls job stream processing to ensure that critical data reaches its target destination. Once all identified data is accounted for, the utility ends.

DRMONitr can monitor for MVC and remote TapePlex copies being complete. It can also monitor for cluster replication being complete, in support of tapeless environments.

DRMONitr reports any VTV exception conditions found during execution.

## Syntax

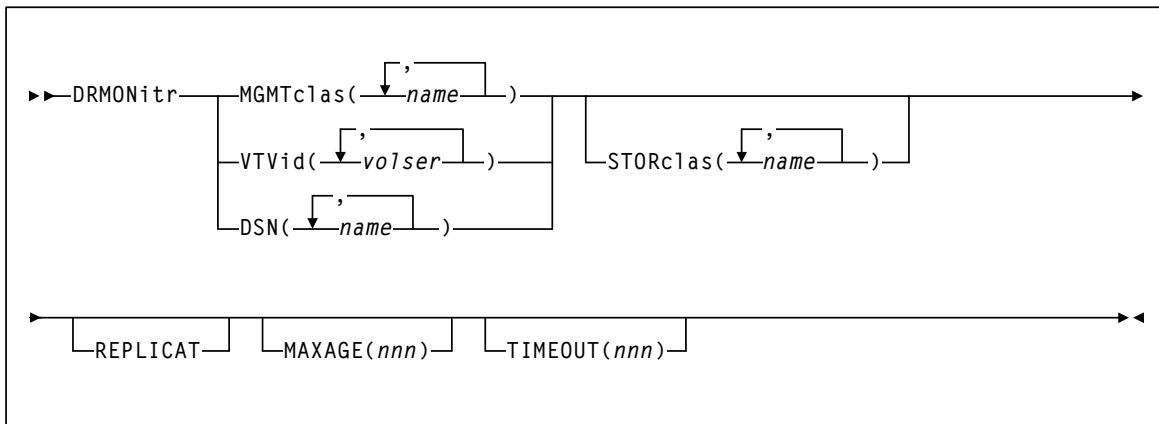


FIGURE 3-107 DRMONitr syntax

## Parameters

The MGMTclas, VTVID, and DSN parameters are mutually exclusive.

### **MGMTclas**(*name*)

optionally, specifies a list of Management Classes to be monitored for VTV migrate/copy completion.

Specified Management Classes must be defined to the active VTCS system and must specify immediate migrate. For tapeless environments, specified Management Classes must specify REPLICAT.

### **VTVID**(*volser*)

optionally, specifies a list and/or range of VTV volser to be monitored for migrate/copy completion.

The VTV's Management Class must be defined to the active VTCS system and must specify immediate migrate. For tapeless environments, the VTV's Management Class must specify REPLICAT.

### **DSN**(*name*)

optionally, specifies a list of data sets to be monitored for migrate/copy completion.

The VTUs containing these data sets must have Management Classes defined to the active VTCS system and must specify immediate migrate. For tapeless environments, the VTU's Management Class must specify REPLICAT.

### **STORclas**(*name*)

optionally, specifies the Storage Class locations that the identified VTV data is to be delivered to.

Specified Storage Classes must be defined to the active VTCS system. Although this parameter is optional, the STORclas parameter should only be omitted in tapeless environments.

### **REPLICAT**

optionally, specifies that VTV cluster replication is to be monitored for completion. Replication must be specified on the VTV's Management Class policy for the VTV to be selected for monitoring. If replications are monitored in a tape environment, their completion overrides any Storage Class requirement.

### **MAXAGE**(*nnn*)

optionally, specifies the maximum VTV age (time since last update), in hours, when monitoring migrations by Management Class (a MGMTclas value is required). Valid values are 1 to 999. There is no default.

If the VTV's age (time since last update) is greater than MAXAGE, the VTV is not monitored. DRMONitr reports the number of skipped VTUs due to MAXAGE, if specified.

If you do not specify MAXAGE, any active VTV belonging to the specified Management Classes, regardless of age, is monitored for migrate/copy completion.

**TIMEOUT(*nnn*)**

optionally, specifies the maximum time, in minutes, for DRMONitr to run.

Valid values are zero to 999. If you do not specify a TIMEOUT value, there is no limit on the time the utility can run (stall).

A TIMEOUT value of zero does not stall the DRMONitr utility. This special case reports on incomplete copies of specified VTV data.

If a non-zero TIMEOUT value is exceeded, DRMONitr ends with RC 8 and generates an error message. If the TIMEOUT value specified was zero, a return code of 4 is set if a VTV's copy is detected as incomplete, otherwise a return code 0 is set.

---

**Note** – You must specify either STORclas or REPLICAT or both to specify the destination criteria. Otherwise DRMONitr ends with RC 8 and generates an error message. Additionally, Oracle recommends that you do not specify (or monitor) Storage Classes in tapeless environments because migrations are not possible.

---

# DRTEST

The DRTEST command sets up the environment for DR testing and optionally, starts and stops the test.

Issue this command from the SLUADMIN utility to set up the DR testing environment. Once the environment is set, you can issue DRTEST from a utility or the console to START or STOP testing.

Issue this command with any of the options listed in the following table. Each option is described individually, and in more detail, on the pages to follow.

**TABLE 3-5** DRTEST options

This option:	can be issued from:	and performs the following function:
CREATE	SLUADMIN utility only	creates a DR test CDS, normally run at the DR test site
PRIMEprd	SLUADMIN utility only	updates the production CDS without creating a DRTEST CDS
RESET	SLUADMIN utility only	removes all DR test settings in the production CDS
START	SLUADMIN utility or console	starts the DR test on the production site <b>Note:</b> DRTEST START cannot run successfully until the production CDS is primed using DRTEST PRIMEprd or DRTEST CREATE.
STOP	SLUADMIN utility or console	stops the DR test on the production site

## Note –

- You can use a combination of these options provided you have correct environment and JCL requirements. For example, DRTEST STOP and DRTEST RESET can be run in the same job, however, DRTEST STOP must be run before DRTEST RESET.
- Refer to the *ELS Disaster Recovery and Offsite Data Management Guide* for information about how to use the DRTEST utility.

# DRTEST CREATE

**Interfaces:**

SLUADMIN utility only  
UII: No

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC not required

## Description

DRTEST CREATE creates a DR test CDS, normally run at the DR test site.

---

**Note** – The NOUPDprd parameter is only valid if the DRTEST PRIMEprd command is executed prior to the DRTEST CREATE command. See [“DRTEST PRIMEprd” on page 379](#) for more information.

---

**Considerations:**

- DR test **cannot** be active. This refers to the production CDS status.
- Active HSC/VTCS is **not** required.
  - If HSC/VTCS is active, SLSCNTL DD statement(s) identifying the production CDS are optional, and if included, must match the active HSC/VTCS.
  - If HSC/VTCS is not active, SLSCNTL DD statement(s) identifying the production CDS are required.
- SLSNEW DD statement(s) identifying the DRTEST CDS(s) are required.

**Sample Control Cards:**

```
DRTEST CREATE HOSTID(ZIPF,ZIPG) -  
  DRVTSS(VTSSW) -  
  DRACS(00)
```

## Syntax

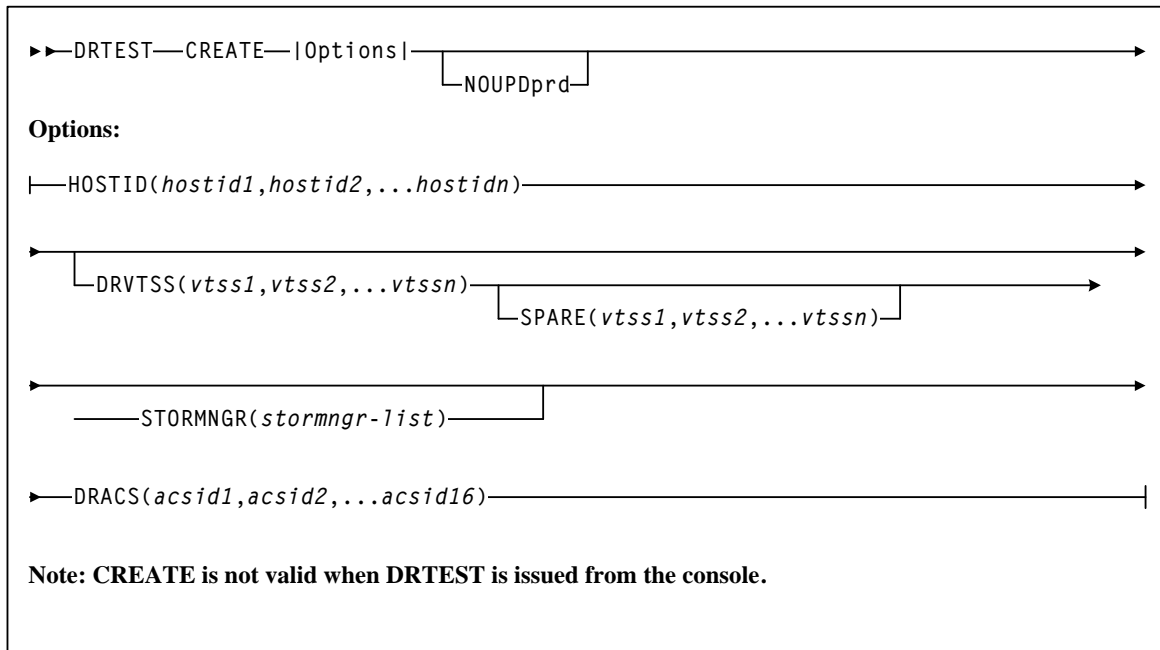


FIGURE 3-108 DRTEST CREATE syntax

## Parameters

### CREATE

Creates a DRTEST CDS.

#### **HOSTID**(*hostid1,hostid2,...hostidn*)

Specifies the HOSTIDs replicated in the test CDS in available host-id positions. The combination of existing production HOSTIDs and those identified in this parameter for replication cannot exceed the 16 host limit. If an additional host-id (not used in production) needs to be added for DR test purposes alone, this additional host-id will use 2 of the 16 host-ids in the limit.

#### **DRVTSS**(*vtss1,vtss2,...vtssn*)

Optionally, specifies the VTSS names available to the DR test site. Unless you specify these VTSSs as spares, the VTSSs are offline to the production site and online to the DR test site when the DR test starts.

#### **SPARE**(*vtss1,vtss2,...vtssn*)

Optionally, specifies that the DR test VTSS(s) are spares and that identically named VTSS(s) exist and are online at the production site when the DRTEST utility is run and during the DR test.

#### **STORMNGR**(*stormngr-list*)

Optionally, specifies the Subsystem Names of the VLE appliances attached to the DR test site TapePlex.

#### *stormngr-list*

the list of Subsystem names. For more information, refer to the publication *Configuring the Host Software for VLE*.

**DRACS**(*acsid1...acsid16*)

Specifies one or more ACSs available to the DR test site. Multiple ACS IDs must be specified as a list, and not as a range of ACS IDs. The ACSs are online to the DR test site but can remain connected (and usually are) to the production site when the DR test starts. CDRT Version 6.2 and above supports a maximum of 16 DR ACSs.

A minimum of one ACS is required. In a VSM environment running without RTDs attached to the VTSS, the ACS specified for DRACS may be a dummy ACS.

**NOUPDpr**

Optionally, does not update the input production CDS(s).

If this parameter is specified, you can use a single CDS production copy as input and that copy can be either the actual primary production CDS, a backup copy, or a mirrored copy.

This parameter is only valid if the PRIMEprd function has already been run on the production CDS. See [“DRTEST PRIMEprd” on page 379](#) for more information.



## Additional JCL Requirements

In addition to the required JCL definition statements described in [“Invoking SLUADMIN” on page 684](#), the following definition statements apply to the DRTEST CREATE JCL:

### SLSNEW1

specifies the new primary copy of the test HSC CDS.

### SLSNEW2

specifies the new secondary copy of the test HSC CDS.

### SLSNEW3

specifies the new standby copy of the test HSC CDS.

### SLSJRN00 – SLSJRN<sub>nn</sub>

DDNAMEs for the DR test journal files, which are only valid if the current CDS defines journaling. There are two files per HOSTID: SLSJRN00 and SLSJRN01 for *hostid1*, SLSJRN02 and SLSJRN03 for *hostid2*, and so forth.

### SLSSTATN

DDNAME for LMU station address changes for HOSTIDs. This file is optional, and if not supplied the same station addresses are used in the DR test CDS for the HOSTIDs as in the existing CDS.

Each entry follows the HSC SET SLISTATN utility format. See “SET SLISTATN” on page 575 for more information. The following figure shows an example of the SLSSTATN file:

```
SET SLISTATN(00E7,00E8),FORACS(01),FORHOST(PRI1)
SET SLISTATN(00E7,00E8),FORACS(01),FORHOST(PRI1)
SET SLISTATN(00E7,00E8),FORACS(01),FORHOST(PRI2)
SET SLISTATN(00E7,00E8),FORACS(01),FORHOST(PRIY)
```

**FIGURE 3-109** SLSSTATN File Example

**SLSVTSS**

DDNAME for VSM changes on the DR test CDS. This file is optional and is only used if the DR test configuration includes VSM elements. Typically, this file is used to change RTD hardware connection definitions in the DR test CDS but may be used to modify any VSM definitions on the DR test CDS because the file invokes the VTCS CONFIG RESET utility. Note that improper use of CONFIG RESET against the DR test CDS may render the DR test environment inoperable!

Each entry follows the format of the VTSS, VTD, RTD, and HOST statements of the VTCS CONFIG utility. See “CONFIg” on page 217 for more information. The following figure shows an example of the SLSVTSS file.

```

CONFIG RESET
VTSS  NAME=VTSS01  LOW=70 HIGH=80  MAXMIG=1  MINMIG=1  RETAIN=10
      RTD NAME=VTS18800 DEVNO=8800  CHANIF=0A
      RTD NAME=VTS18801 DEVNO=8801  CHANIF=0I
      RTD NAME=VTS18802 DEVNO=8802  CHANIF=1A
      RTD NAME=VTS18803 DEVNO=8803  CHANIF=1I
      HOST NAME=MVS1
      VTD LOW=8900 HIGH=893F
VTSS  NAME=VTSS02  LOW=70 HIGH=80  MAXMIG=8  MINMIG=8  RETAIN=10
      RTD NAME=VTS28805 DEVNO=8805  CHANIF=0A
      RTD NAME=VTS28806 DEVNO=8806  CHANIF=0E
      RTD NAME=VTS28807 DEVNO=8807  CHANIF=0I
      RTD NAME=VTS28808 DEVNO=8808  CHANIF=0M
      RTD NAME=VTS28809 DEVNO=8809  CHANIF=1A
      RTD NAME=VTS2880A DEVNO=880A  CHANIF=1E
      RTD NAME=VTS2880B DEVNO=880B  CHANIF=1I
      RTD NAME=VTS2880C DEVNO=880C  CHANIF=1M
      HOST NAME=MVS2
VTD   LOW=9900 HIGH=993F

```

**FIGURE 3-110** SLSVTSS File Example

## DRTEST PRIMEprd

### Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UII: No

### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

DRTEST PRIMEprd updates the production CDS without creating a DRTEST CDS.

### Considerations:

- DR test cannot be active.
- Active HSC/VTCS is not required.
  - If HSC/VTCS is active, SLSCNTL DD statement(s) identifying the production CDS are optional, and if included, must match the active HSC/VTCS.
  - If HSC/VTCS is not active, SLSCNTL DD statement(s) identifying the production CDS are required.
- SLSNEW DD statement(s) identifying the DRTEST CDS(s) are not required, and if included, are ignored.

### Sample Control Cards:

```
DRTEST PRIME HOSTID(ZIPF,ZIPG) -
DRVTSS(VTSSW) -
DRACS(00)
```

## Syntax

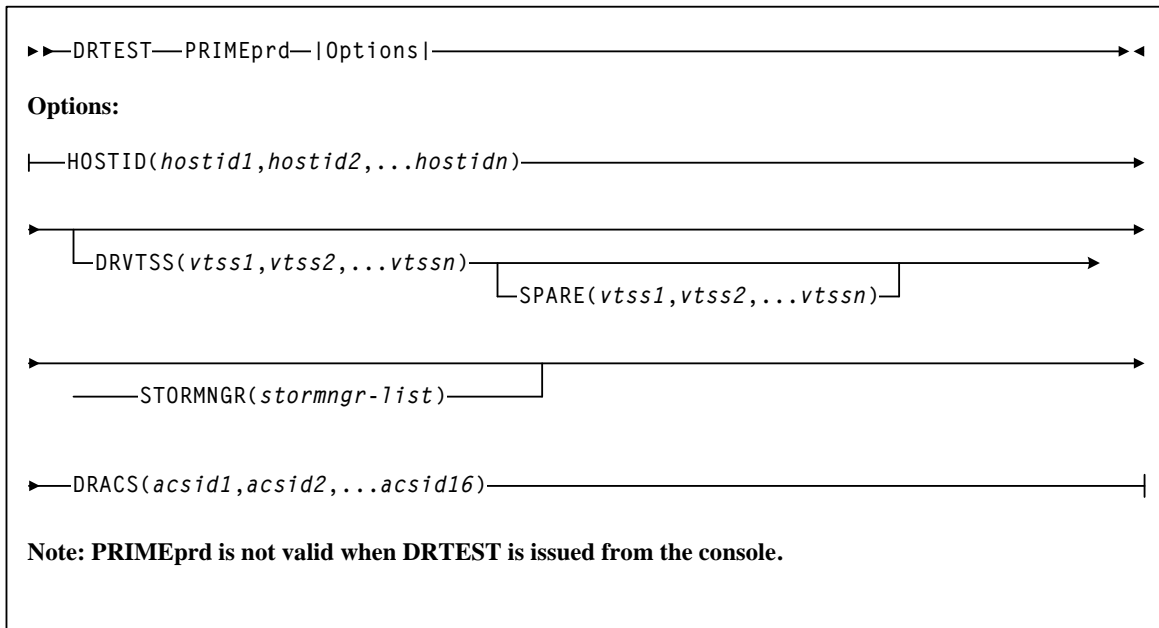


FIGURE 3-111 DRTEST PRIMEprd syntax

## Parameters

### PRIMEprd

Updates the production CDS.

#### **HOSTID**(hostid1,hostid2,...hostidn)

Specifies the HOSTIDs replicated in the test CDS in available host-id positions. The combination of existing production HOSTIDs and those identified in this parameter for replication cannot exceed the 16 host limit. If an additional host-id (not used in production) needs to be added for DR test purposes alone, this additional host-id will use 2 of the 16 host-ids in the limit.

#### **DRVTSS**(vtss1,vtss2,...vtssn)

Optionally, specifies the VTSS names available to the DR test site. Unless you specify these VTSSs as spares, the VTSSs are offline to the production site and online to the DR test site when the DR test starts.

#### **SPARE**(vtss1,vtss2,...vtssn)

Optionally, specifies that the DR test VTSS(s) are spares and that identically named VTSS(s) exist and are online at the production site when the DRTEST utility is run and during the DR test.

#### **STORMNGR**(stormngr-list)

Optionally, specifies the Subsystem Names of the VLE appliances attached to the DR test site TapePlex.

#### **stormngr-list**

the list of Subsystem names. For more information, refer to the publication *Configuring the Host Software for VLE*.

**DRACS**(*acsid1...acsid16*)

Specifies one or more ACSs available to the DR test site. Multiple ACS IDs must be specified as a list, and not as a range of ACS IDs. The ACSs are online to the DR test site but can remain connected (and usually are) to the production site when the DR test starts. CDRT Version 6.2 and above supports a maximum of 16 DR ACSs.

A minimum of one ACS is required. In a VSM environment running without RTDs attached to the VTSS, the ACS specified for DRACS may be a dummy ACS.

## DRTEST RESET

### Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UII: No

### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

DRTEST RESET removes all DR test settings in the production CDS.

### Considerations:

- DR test **cannot** be active. This refers to the production CDS status.
- Active HSC/VTCS is **not** required.
  - If HSC/VTCS is active, SLSCNTL DD statement(s) identifying the production CDS are optional, and if included, must match the active HSC/VTCS if used.
  - If HSC/VTCS is not active, SLSCNTL DD statement(s) identifying the production CDS are required.
- SLSNEW DD statement(s) identifying the DRTEST CDS(s) are not required, and if included, are ignored.

### Sample Control Cards:

DRTEST RESET

---

**Note** – DRTEST STOP and DRTEST RESET can be run in the same job, however, DRTEST STOP must be run before DRTEST RESET.

---

## Syntax

▶▶DRTEST—RESET————▶▶

**Note:** RESET is not valid when DRTEST is issued from the console.

FIGURE 3-112 DRTEST RESET syntax

## Parameters

None.



## DRTEST STOP

### Interfaces:

Console or utility  
UUI: Yes

### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

### Description

DRTEST STOP stops the DR test on the production site.

**Considerations:**

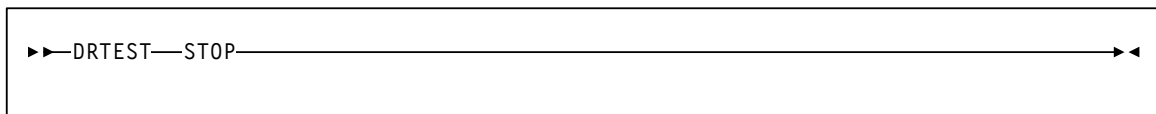
- DR test must be active. This refers to the production CDS status.
- Active HSC/VTCS is required.
- SLSCNTL DD statement(s) identifying the production CDS are not required, and if included, must match the active HSC/VTCS.
- SLSNEW DD statement(s) identifying the DRTEST CDS(s) are not required, and if included, are ignored.

**Sample control cards:**

DRTEST STOP

**Note** – DRTEST STOP and DRTEST RESET can be run in the same job, however, DRTEST STOP must be run before DRTEST RESET.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-114** DRTEST STOP syntax

## Parameters

None.



# EEXPORT

**Interfaces:**

Console or utility  
UII: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC not required

## Description

The EEXPORT command is used to perform electronic export functions. Use this command to manually export VTVs or re-drive rejected exports.

## Syntax

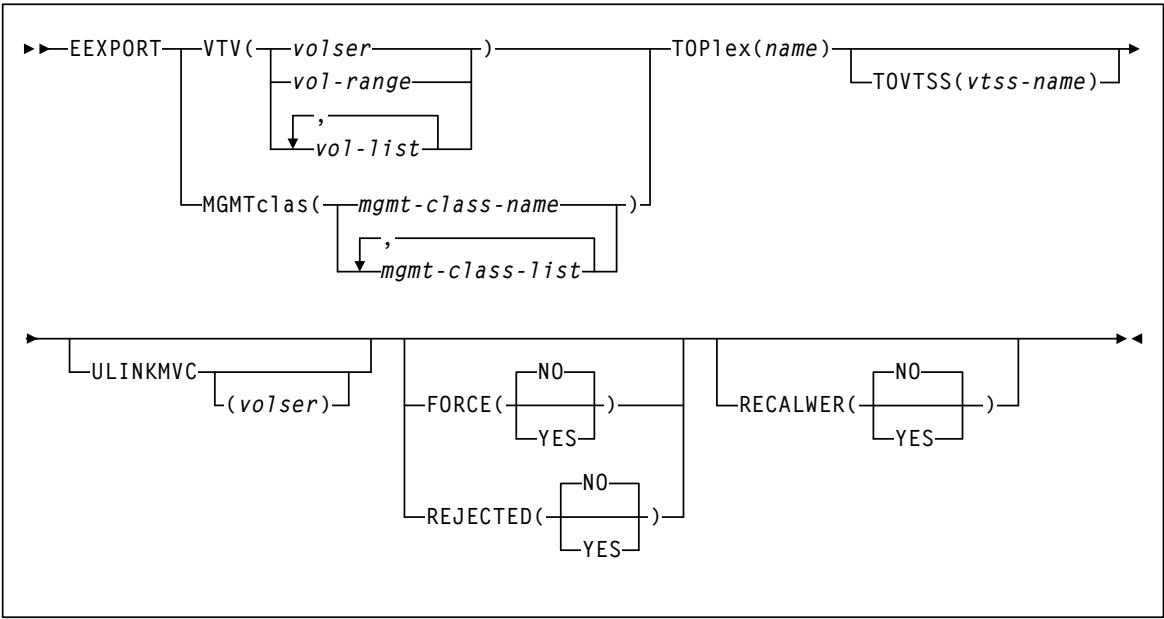


FIGURE 3-115 EEXPORT command syntax

## Parameters

### VTV

specifies one or more VTVs to electronically export.

*volser*, *vol-range*, or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more VTVs. You can specify a maximum of 2,000 volsers.

### MGMTclas

specifies one or more names of Management Classes that determine the VTVs to electronically export.

*mgmt-class-name* or *mgmt-class-list*

the Management Class name. This name must be 1 to 8 alphanumeric characters beginning with an alpha character and must follow SMS naming conventions.

### TOPlex

specifies the name of the TapePlex to which copies of the VTV are sent via electronic export. There must be at least one CLINK within the configuration that provides a route to the TapePlex.

*name*

the target TapePlex name.

### TOVTSS

optionally, specifies the VTSS name to be preferenced as the receiving VTSS within the target TapePlex specified by the TOPlex parameter.

*vtss-name*

the VTSS name.

---

**Note** – This is a preference only. Validation of the value is **not** performed.

---

### ULINKMVC

specifies whether MVC copies on the target TapePlex are to be deleted as part of the export process.

*volser*

a volser from the MVC copy to be deleted from the target VTVs. If not specified, then all MVC copies of the VTV are deleted.

### Note –

- This parameter only applies when the VTV version sent matches the version in the target TapePlex. If the versions sent is more recent, then the behavior is implicit.
  - This parameter can be used if the only MVC copies of a VTV in the target TapePlex become damaged. A replacement copy of the VTV can be supplied to the TapePlex via the EEXPORT command. The damaged MVC copies are replaced by additional migrations from the VTV copy sent.
- 

### FORCE

specifies whether VTCS exports the VTV to locations with disregard for other criteria.

**YES**

Export VTVs to the TapePlex specified in the TOPlex parameter, regardless of whether the VTVs have been previously exported to the TapePlex, or the management class points to a storage class that specifies the target TapePlex.

**NO**

Export VTVs to the TapePlex specified in the TOPlex parameter, but ignore any VTVs already marked as exported, and exclude any VTVs for which the management class does not point to a storage class that specifies the TapePlex in the TOPlex parameter. This is the default.

**REJECTED**

specifies whether VTCS only selects VTVs recorded in the CDS as being rejected by the target TapePlex.

---

**Note** – REJECTED and FORCE are mutually exclusive.

---

**NO**

Ignore any VTVs already marked as exported, and exclude any VTVs for which the management class does not point to a storage class that specifies the TapePlex in the TOPlex parameter. This is the default.

**YES**

Only select VTVs previously rejected by the target TapePlex.

**RECALWER**

specifies whether VTCS recalls VTVs with read data checks.

**NO**

Do not recall VTVs with read data checks. This is the default.

**YES**

Recall VTVs with read data checks.

# Eject

**Interfaces:**

Console or utility  
UI: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

The Eject command moves volumes to a Cartridge Access Port (CAP) for removal.

You can designate a single CAP, a specific CAP, or a list of specific CAPs. Specifying one or more CAPs limits cartridge ejection to those CAPs.

Ejections in a multiple ACS configuration may specify CAPs in each ACS if volumes reside in each ACS. If a CAP list is not provided, HSC selects the highest priority CAP available for each ACS (see [“CAPPref” on page 202](#)).

You may elect to submit multiple Eject requests, each of which may specify a particular CAP. If you elect to specify a CAP in a multi-ACS configuration, then the list of volumes must reside within the CAP ACS.

Multiple CAPs within one ACS can be allocated to the EJECT utility. Specifying multiple CAPs in a single Eject Cartridge utility typically improves performance by reducing pass-thrus.

If two CAPs are specified in the same LSM, cartridges in that LSM are ejected in sequential order. This is helpful for vaulting.

# Syntax

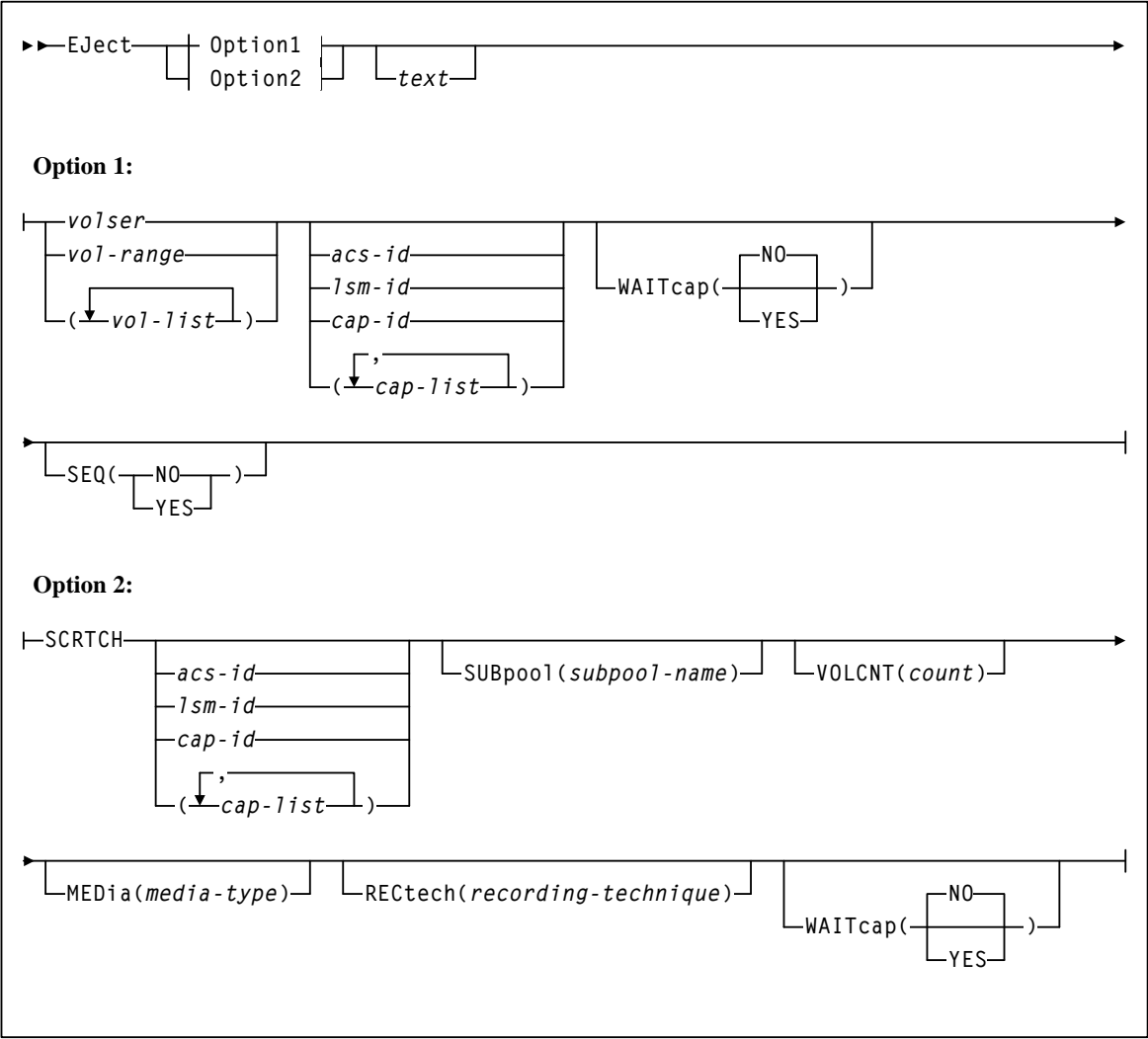


FIGURE 3-116 Eject syntax

## Parameters

### *text*

optionally, specifies the address of a 44-byte string issued whenever the operator is requested to open the CAP for an EJECT request. This text is displayed via message SLS1251E.

### **VOLser**

specifies that a VOLSER(s) is to be ejected.

#### *vol-list*

the list of volumes to be ejected. A *vol-list* can be a single VOLSER, a range of VOLSERs or a list of VOLSERs and/or VOLSER ranges in any combination.

If a list is specified, the elements must be delimited by commas or blanks, and the entire list enclosed in parentheses. A range of VOLSERs consists of a starting VOLSER and an ending VOLSER separated by a dash.

### **SEQ**

optionally, specifies whether or not CAP eject processing fills the CAP cells in the same order specified by the **VOLser** parameter.

---

#### **Note –**

- If SEQ is not specified, but two CAPs are requested in the same LSM, and the LSM is not an SL8500, cartridges in the ACS are ejected in sequential order.
  - For best performance, SEQ(NO) is recommended.
- 

### **NO**

specifies to eject the requested volumes in the order of home cell location. Eject processing fills the CAP or magazine (for the SL8500) according to the distance of the home cell to the CAP or magazine; that is, volumes closest to the CAP or magazine are ejected first.

### **YES**

specifies to eject cartridges to the CAP in the order the volumes are listed in the associated **VOLser** parameter. The first cartridge requested appears in the topmost CAP cell, the second cartridge requested appears in the next CAP cell, and so on until the CAP is full or all cartridges have been moved to the CAP.

### **WAITcap**

optionally, specifies whether or not a list of ejecting volumes waits for an available CAP if one is not available.

### **YES**

specifies that the eject process waits indefinitely for a CAP to become available. **YES** is the default.

### **NO**

specifies that the eject process does not wait for a CAP if it is not available.

**SCRTCH**

indicates that scratch volumes are to be ejected.

---

**Note –** If no CAPs are specified, only scratch tapes in ACS 00 are ejected.

---

**SUBpool**

optionally, specifies the subpool from which scratch volumes are to be ejected. If MEDia or RECtech are specified, cartridges are ejected for that media type or recording technique within the same subpool.

*subpool-name*

the name for the subpool.

**VOLCNT**

optionally, specifies that a designated number of scratch volumes are to be ejected.

*count*

the number of scratch volumes to be ejected.

**MEDia**

optionally, specifies that scratch cartridges of the desired media are to be ejected.

*media-type*

the media type.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for a list of valid *media-type* values.

**Note –**

- If MEDia is not specified, the next scratch cartridge is selected without regard to media type if RECtech does not exist. If both MEDia and RECtech are supplied, they must be compatible.
  - If SUBpool is not specified, then the next scratch cartridge is selected without regard to whether it belongs to a subpool, is defined to the default subpool using VOLPARMS, or belongs to no scratch subpool whatsoever.
- 

**RECtech**

optionally, specifies scratch cartridges of the desired recording technique are to be ejected. RECtech indicates the method used to record data tracks on the tape surface.

*recording-technique*

the recording technique.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for valid *recording-technique* values.

---

**Note –** If RECtech is not specified, the next scratch cartridge is selected depending on the media type (if supplied). If neither is supplied, the next scratch cartridge is selected without taking media type and recording technique into consideration. If both RECtech and MEDia are supplied, they must be compatible.

---

**WAITcap**

optionally, specifies whether or not a list of ejecting volumes waits for an available CAP if one is not available.

**YES**

specifies that the eject process waits indefinitely for a CAP to become available.  
**YES** is the default.

**NO**

specifies that the eject process does not wait for a CAP if it is not available or has been released.

**CAP**

optionally, specifies which Cartridge Access Port(s) is being used for the operation. This utility ejects scratch volumes to the specified CAP(s) only. EJECT searches for scratch volumes only in the LSMs that contain the specified CAP(s).

---

**Note** – If a CAP has not been specified, EJECT determines the CAP to use based upon the CAPPref command setting. See [“CAPPref” on page 202](#) for more information.

---

If a CAP preference has not been specified, the HSC displays a message and waits until the user enters a CAPPref value. Pass-thrus can be made to CAPs specified by CAPPref.

***cap-list***

the Cartridge Access Port(s). The cap-list requires explicitly specified CAPids separated by commas. A CAPid range is not allowed.

If more than one CAPid is specified, the elements must be separated by blanks or commas, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses. If no CAP is specified, one is chosen in each ACS.

The format of a cap-id is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid, and *CC* is the CAP. See [“CAPid” on page 730](#) for a list of valid values.



# ENter

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UUI: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

The ENter command makes a CAP in Automatic mode available for entering cartridges into an LSM.

## Syntax

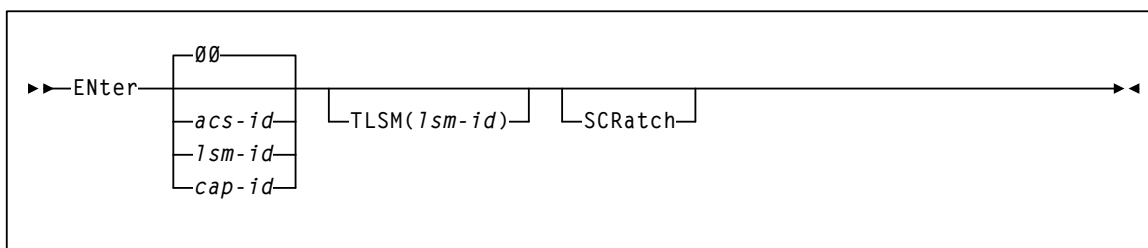


FIGURE 3-117 ENter syntax

## Parameters

### *acs-id*

specifies the ACS where cartridges are to be entered. The HSC selects a nonzero preference manual mode CAP within the ACS to use.

### *lsm-id*

identifies one of the following:

- an LSM with a single CAP
- an LSM that contains multiple CAPs. The HSC selects an available manual mode CAP with the highest nonzero preference. CAPid 00 is selected if it is available, in manual mode, and has a preference value equal to or higher than other available manual mode CAPs in the LSM.

### *cap-id*

specifies a specific manual mode CAP to use regardless of availability or CAP preference. The format of a *cap-id* is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid, and *CC* is the CAP. See [“CAPid” on page 730](#) for a list of valid values.

## **TLSM**

specifies the LSM to receive the entered cartridges.

### ***lsm-id***

identifies one of the following:

- an LSM with a single CAP
- an LSM that contains multiple CAPs. The HSC selects an available manual mode CAP with the highest nonzero preference. CAPid 00 is selected if it is available, in manual mode, and has a preference value equal to or higher than other available manual mode CAPs in the LSM.

The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (decimal 00-99) and *LL* is the LSM number (decimal 00-99).

## **SCRatch**

optionally enables you to put the volumes you enter into scratch status. If you do not specify that the volumes are to be given scratch status, the system enters them as nonscratch volumes.

# EXECParm

## Interfaces:

PARMLIB only  
 UUI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

None

## Description

The EXECParm command provides an alternative method for specifying GTF event and format IDs normally specified in the subsystem startup procedure. It also provides you with the option of displaying the command prefix preceding WTO or WTOR messages.

## Syntax

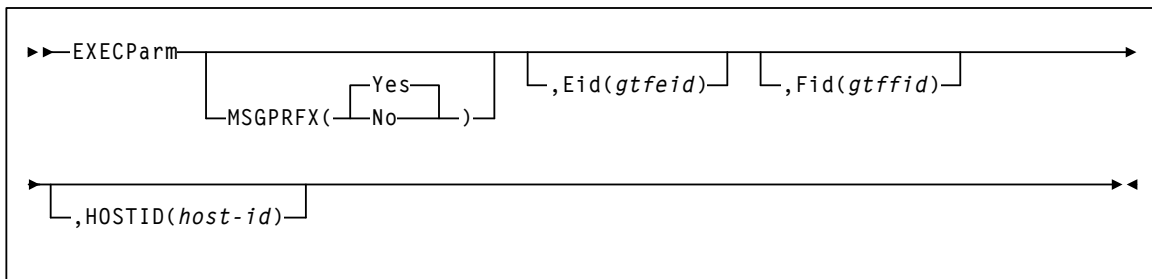


FIGURE 3-118 EXECParm syntax

## Parameters

### MSGPRFX

optionally, specifies control of whether the command prefix is to precede WTO or WTOR messages to the operator.

#### Yes

indicates that the command prefix is to display preceding WTO or WTOR messages to the operator.

#### No

indicates that the command prefix is not to display preceding WTO or WTOR messages to the operator.

**Eid**

optionally, *gtfeid* specifies a GTF event ID.

PARM='Eid(*user-specified-event-id*)' parameter is valid for use in the HSC initialization procedure as an alternative method of specifying the GTF event ID.

**Fid**

optionally, *gtffid* specifies a GTF format ID.

PARM='Fid(*user-specified-format-id*)' parameter is valid for use in the HSC initialization procedure as an alternative method of specifying the GTF format ID.

**HOSTID**

optionally, *host-id* specifies the system ID associated with the request to process the EXECParm control statement.

---

**Note** – If the *hostid* specified does not match the host executing the command, the command is ignored and no message is issued.

---

# EXPORT

## Interfaces:

Utility only

UI: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

- Active HSC/VTCS at FULL service level required when specifying the VTV or MGMTCLAS parameter.
- Active HSC/VTCS not required when specifying the MVC or STORclas parameter.

## Description

The EXPORT command consolidates VTVs (if required) and creates a manifest file that lists VTVs and MVCs available for export from a VSM system.

## Syntax

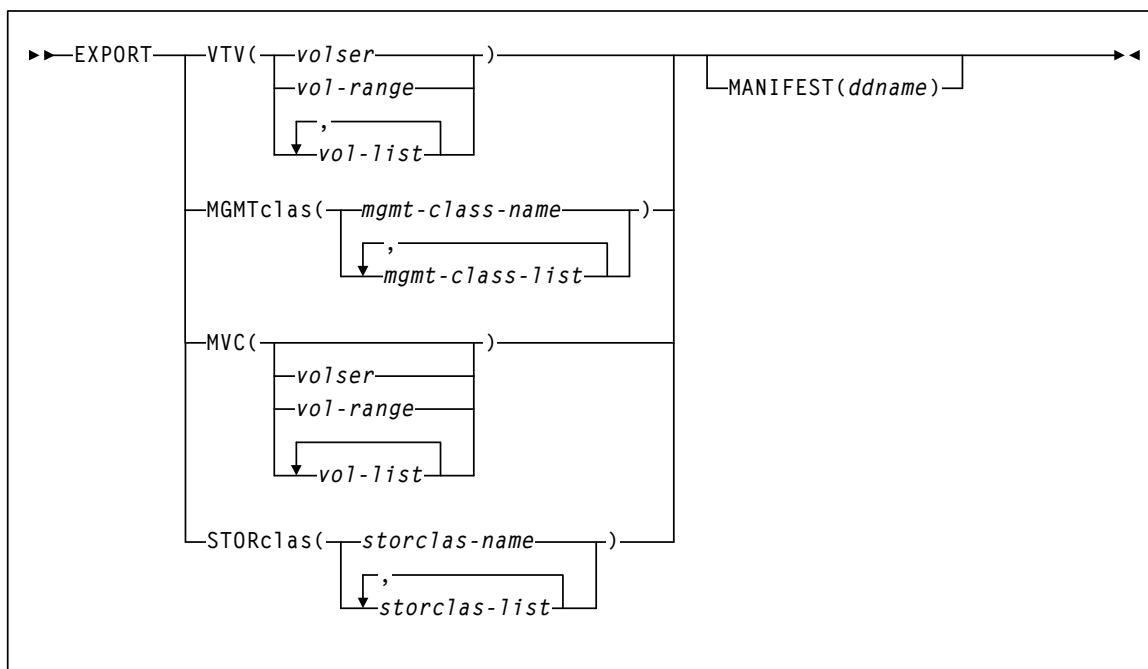


FIGURE 3-119 EXPORT syntax

## Parameters

### VTV

specifies one or more VTVs to consolidate for export.

*volser*, *vol-range* or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more VTVs. You can specify an unlimited number of VTVs.

### MGMTclas

specifies one or more Management Classes that determine one or more VTVs to consolidate for export.

*mgmt-class-name* | *mgmt-class-list*

the names of one or more Management Classes you defined on the MGMTclas control statement. See [“MGMTclas Control Statement” on page 440](#) for more information.

### MVC

specifies one or more MVCs for export.

*volser*, *vol-range* or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more MVCs.

### STORclas

specifies one or more Storage Classes that determine one or more MVCs for export.

*stor-clas-name* | *stor-clas-list*

the names of one or more Storage Classes that you defined on the STORclas control statement. See [“STORclas Control Statement” on page 458](#) for more information.

### MANIFEST

optionally, specifies the output destination ddname of the manifest file.

*ddname*

ddname of the manifest file. The default is MANIFEST.

## Additional JCL Requirements

In addition to the required JCL definition statements described in [“Invoking SLUADMIN” on page 684](#), the following definition statements apply to the EXPORT JCL:

### manifest file DD

DD statement for the manifest file (optional).

### Interfaces:

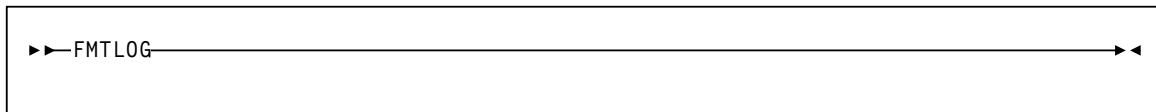
### Subsystem Requirements:

## Description

This command pre-formats a log file to be used by the logging service. It pre-formats data blocks and writes certain control information in the first record of the file. You can format a maximum of two log files with a single FMTLOG utility command.

**Note** – You must pre-format a log file before activating it with the OFFLOAD LOGFILE utility command. See “OFFload” on page 516 for more information.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-120** FMTLOG syntax

## Parameters

None.

## Additional JCL Requirements

In addition to the required JCL definition statements described in “[Invoking SLUADMIN](#)” on page 684, the following definition statements apply to the FORMAT LOGFILE JCL:

specifies the log file to be formatted.

specifies the second log file to be formatted.

---

# IMPORT

**Interfaces:**

Utility only  
UII: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC/VTCS not required

## Description

The IMPORT command imports VTVs and MVCs listed on a manifest file into a VSM system.

---

**Note** – Ensure that the “to” CDS has the same features (enabled by CDS level) as the “from” CDS. For example, if the “from” CDS has large VTV page sizes enabled and 2/4 Gb VTVs have been created, then the “to CDS” must have the same capabilities, otherwise the import fails.

---



## Syntax

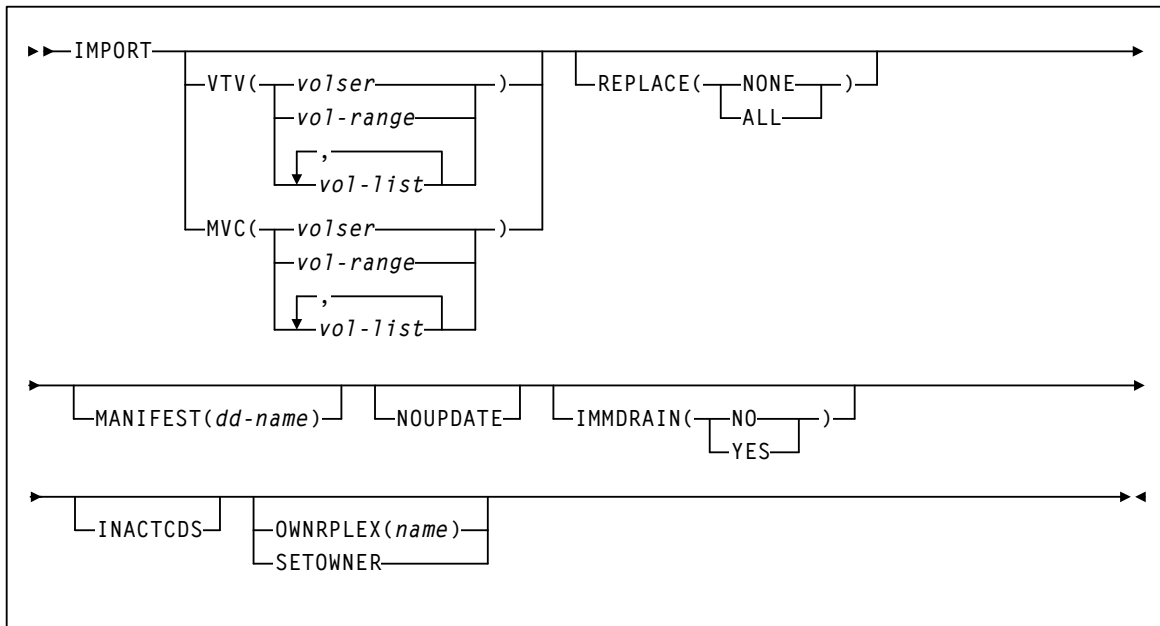


FIGURE 3-121 IMPORT syntax

## Parameters

### VTV

specifies one or more VTVs to import.

*volser*, *vol-range* or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more VTVs.

### MVC

specifies one or more MVCs to import.

*volser*, *vol-range* or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more MVCs.

### REPLACE

specifies whether VSM replaces the VTV record in the target CDS. There is no default; you must specify a value.

#### NONE

Do not replace the VTV record. VTCS only creates new records for VTVs that are not duplicates and replaces records for VTVs not initialized in the target CDS.

#### ALL

Replace any duplicate VTV records in the target CDS.

---

**Caution –**

- Ensure that you actually want to replace duplicate VTV records in the target CDS before you specify the ALL parameter. You may want to do a “validate” run with NOUPDATE to see which VTV records will be replaced.
  - If a VTV record is replaced, all existing VTSS and MVC copies of the VTV are invalidated.
  - You cannot import an MVC if the target CDS records show that the MVC contains VTVs, even if you specify REPLACE(ALL). In this situation, you must first drain (with eject) the MVC on the target system and eject it from the ACS. You can then import the MVC that you exported from the source system.
- 

**IMMDRAIN**

optionally, specifies whether VSM will immediately drain imported MVCs.

**NO**

Do not drain MVCs (the default).

**YES**

Drain MVCs.

**MANIFEST**

optionally, specifies the input ddname of the manifest file.

*ddname*

ddname of the manifest file. The default is MANIFEST.

**NOUPDATE**

optionally, specifies that VSM does not update the CDS, validates the import operation, and writes information messages to the job log.

**INACTCDS**

optionally, specifies that the import uses a different CDS from the CDS currently active on the HSC system where you are running the import job. Use the SLSCNTL definition statement in the SLUADMIN JCL to specify the alternate CDS.

---

**Note –**

- If HSC is down on the system where you are running the import job, the CDS on that system is assumed to be inactive, so you do not need to specify INACTCDS.
  - If you specify the INACTCDS parameter, the CDS specified in the SLSCNTL definition statement in the SLUADMIN JCL must be **different** from the CDS being used by HSC/VTCS (if active).
- 

**OWNRPLEX**

specifies ownership of a VTV being imported.

*name*

the name of the TapePlex that owns the original copy of the VTV. This name must match one of the known TapePlex names in the configuration.

If this name matches that indicated for the THISPLEX parameter on the CONFig TAPEPlex statement, the electronic imported status is removed.

**SETOWNER**

specifies that ownership information is to be imported.

By default, any ownership information within the manifest is ignored. The SERTOWNER parameter specifies that the TapePlex ownership and export fields are imported. VTVs appear as if electronically imported on Display commands and reports.

## Additional JCL Requirements

In addition to the required JCL definition statements described in [“Invoking SLUADMIN” on page 684](#), the following definition statements apply to the IMPORT JCL:

**manifest file DD**

DD statement for the manifest file.

---

# INITialize

**Interfaces:**

SLUADMIN utility only  
UUI: No

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

The INITialize command allows you to batch enter cartridges into the library through the CAP, and invokes a user-specified program to write a magnetic label on each tape.

The robot accepts cartridges placed into the CAP and reads the Tri-Optic labels, and the HSC passes the VOLSERs to the user-specified program. The magnetically labeled cartridges can be ejected from the library or placed into cell locations. If the cartridges are stored in the library, the control data set is updated with the VOLSER and location information. The control data set can mark each cartridge as either scratch or nonscratch.

INITialize reads the external Tri-Optic labels and records them in a data set defined through the CNTLDD parameter. CNTLDD is a control statement parameter that describes the DDname to be used for TMSTPNIT control statements.

The INITialize utility does not initialize cartridges on its own; it invokes TMS, TLMS, or any other initialization utility, which performs the initialization. CNTLDD specifies, through the HSC to the TMS utility, the DD to be used for the input parameters the TMS utility requires.

---

**Warning –** This utility must be executed on an MVS system running SMC and using a local HSC server.

---

## Syntax

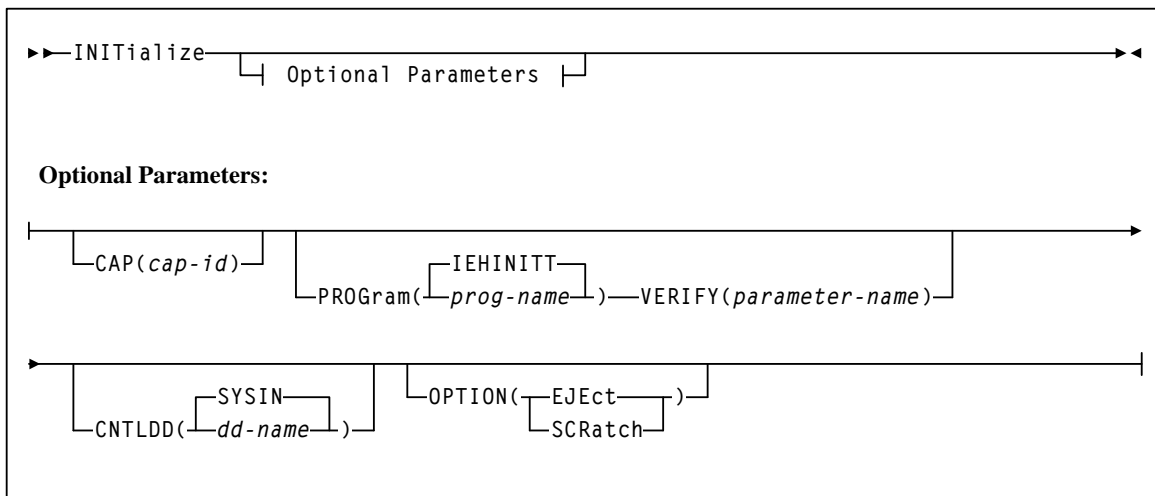


FIGURE 3-122 INITialize syntax

## Parameters

### CAP

optionally, specifies a particular CAP to be used for the operation.

If CAP is not specified, the utility chooses a CAP in the ACS implied by the device allocated to satisfy the SLSTAPE DD statement.

#### *cap-id*

the CAP. The format of a cap-id is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid, and *CC* is the CAP. See [“CAPid” on page 730](#) for a list of valid values.

### PROGram

optionally, specifies a program to be invoked to actually write the label (if not specified, IEHINITT is assumed).

#### *prog-name*

the name of the program that is to perform the initialization.

### IEHINITT

IEHINITT is the default value.

**VERIFY**

optionally, specifies a parameter to be passed to the tape initialization program identified by the PROGram parameter. **VERIFY is valid only when the PROGram parameter specifies TMSTPNIT.**

*parameter-name*

the parameter passed to the TMSTPNIT program. For example, if the following parameter is entered:

```
VERIFY (ROBOT)
```

TMSTPNIT suppresses the TMS CAL0TN01 message for NL (nonlabeled) tapes. Refer to the appropriate CA-1 publication for valid parameter values.

**CNTLDD**

optionally, specifies the DD statement to which initialization control statements are written, and from which the label program reads its control statements.

---

**Note** – This is not your control data set.

---

*dd-name*

the name of the DD statement.

---

**Note** – The *dd-name* option may only be specified when using CA-1 (TMS) prior to version 5.1. The default value (SYSIN) **MUST** be used with CA-1 (TMS) version 5.1 or later.

---

**SYSIN**

SYSIN is the default value.

**OPTion**

optionally, specifies optional handling to be performed following the completion of label processing. If not specified, the default is retention of the new cartridges in the library with a non-scratch status.

**EJEct**

specifies that the labeled volumes are to be ejected from the library after the labeling process is complete.

**SCRatch**

specifies that the labeled volumes entering the library are to be added to the scratch list. If the volume is to be treated as scratch, the installation must inform the tape management system of the volume's scratch status.

## Additional JCL Requirements

In addition to the required JCL definition statements described in [“Invoking SLUADMIN” on page 684](#), the following definition statements apply to the INITialize JCL:

### SLSINIT

substitution control card format for the invoked initialization program.

### SLSTAPE

library transport on which the cartridge is mounted for labeling. To prevent a nonlibrary transport from being allocated, specify one of the following:

- an esoteric containing only library transports
- a specific library transport address
- a TAPEREQ statement to direct the allocation to a library transport
- a user exit (refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference*)

### CNTLDD or SYSIN

contains volume serial labeling information and is passed as input to the initialization program (IEHINITT or the program specified by the PROG keyword parameter).

If CNTLDD is specified in the utility control statement, then the DDname identifies the data set containing the labeling information.

### SYSPRINT

output messages from IEHINITT.

contains volume serial labeling information and is passed as input to the initialization program (IEHINITT or the program specified by the PROG keyword parameter).

If CNTLDD is specified in the utility control statement, then the DDname identifies the data set containing the labeling information.

# INVENTORY

**Interfaces:**

Utility only  
UUI: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

The INVENTORY command lists all VTVs on specified MVCs.

Additionally, you can use this command to do the following:

- Request that the contents of the specified MVCs are cross-checked with the information recorded in the CDS.
- Terminate processing based on the end-of-tape position recorded in the CDS for the MVC, rather than at the MVC’s physical end-of-tape.
- Terminate processing for an MVC the first time a VTV is discovered that is incompatible with the information in the CDS.

## Syntax

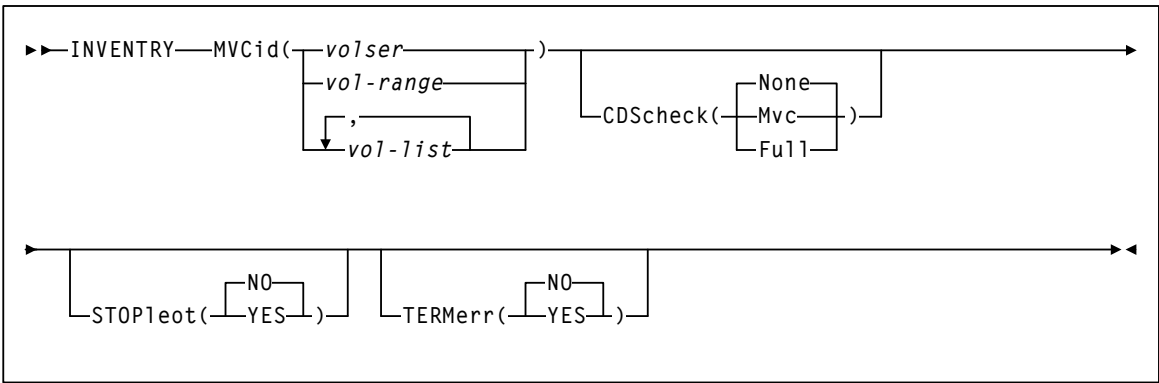


FIGURE 3-123 INVENTORY syntax



## Parameters

### MVCid

specifies the MVC(s) to be inventoried.

*volser*, *vol-range*, or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more MVCs. You can also specify one or more ranges.

### CDScheck

optionally, specifies whether the contents of each inventoried MVC is checked against the information recorded in the CDS.

#### None

Each VTV found on an inventoried MVC is listed via message SLS6933I. The CDS is not checked. None is the default.

#### Mvc

Each VTV found on an inventoried MVC is listed via message SLS6933I. The details of the VTV are obtained from the CDS. The MVC and CDS copies of the VTV are compared and listed as a comment on SLS6933I. If the CDS shows a resident or MVC copy of the VTV that differs from the copy listed in SLS6933I, its details are listed via message SLS6934I.

#### Full

Each VTV found on an inventoried MVC is listed via message SLS6933I.

The details of the VTV are obtained from the CDS. The MVC and CDS copies of the VTV are compared and listed as a comment on SLS6933I. If the CDS shows a resident or MVC copy of the VTV that differs from the copy listed in SLS6933I, its details are listed via message SLS6934I. For each inventoried MVC, the CDS is checked to determine which CTCs are shown to have a copy on the MVC. Any MVCs that were not found on the MVC are listed via message SLS6935E.

### STOPleot

optionally, specifies whether processing is to terminate when the logical end-of-tape position is reached. The logical end-of-tape position is the end-of-tape position recorded in the CDS for this MVC.

#### NO

All VTVs are to be processed on each inventoried MVC. This is the default.

#### YES

VTVs are processed on each inventoried MVC until one of the following occurs:

- The MVC's physical end-of-tape is reached.
- The first VTV is found on the MVC that is beyond the logical end-of-tape position, if this is earlier than the physical end-of-tape position. This setting is invalid with CDScheck(None).

**TERMerr**

optionally, specifies whether the inventory of an MVC is to terminate when it encounters the first inconsistency between the contents of the MVC and the VTVs that the CDS indicates are on the MVC. Such inconsistencies are listed via message SLS6935E, SLS6936E, or SLS6938E.

**NO**

The inventory of an MVC is not to terminate when it encounters the first inconsistency between the contents of the MVC and the VTVs that the CDS indicates are on the MVC. This is the default.

**YES**

The inventory of an MVC is to terminate when it encounters the first inconsistency between the contents of the MVC and the VTVs that the CDS indicates are on the MVC. This setting is invalid with CDScheck(None).

## Return Codes

**TABLE 3-6** INVENTORY Return Codes

Return Code	Description
0	All requested updates completed successfully.
4	One or more errors found. Errors are listed via message SLS6935E, SLS6396E, SLS6938E, SLS6939E, SLS6940E or SLS6941E.
8	One or more errors found that are not specific to INVENTORY processing (e.g. ECAM errors)

# Inventory Report

FIGURE 3-124 shows an example of an INVENTORY report for the following command:  
INVENTORY MVC(021549)

In this example, the customer wishes to list all VTVs on MVC 021549 without cross-checking the VTVs found with the information recorded in the CDS.

In the sample output, each VTV found on the inventoried MVC is listed via message SLS6933I.

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)	StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility	PAGE 00004
TIME 10:23:30	Inventory	DATE 2010-03-31
Inventory report for MVC 021549		
SLS6933I MVC 021549 block 00000000: VTV Y00486	Created 2007Jul17 06:33:22	Migrated 2007Jul17
SLS6933I MVC 021549 block 05402F10: VTV Y00487	Created 2007Jul17 06:34:09	Migrated 2007Jul17
SLS6933I MVC 021549 block 0A405E1F: VTV Y00489	Created 2007Jul17 06:34:56	Migrated 2007Jul17
SLS6933I MVC 021549 block 0F408D2E: VTV Y00493	Created 2007Jul17 06:36:34	Migrated 2007Jul17
SLS6933I MVC 021549 block 10409E3C: VTV Y00492	Created 2007Jul17 06:35:46	Migrated 2007Jul17

**FIGURE 3-124** Example INVENTORY report

---

# LIBGen

**Interfaces:**

SLUADMIN utility only  
UUI: No

**Subsystem Requirements:**

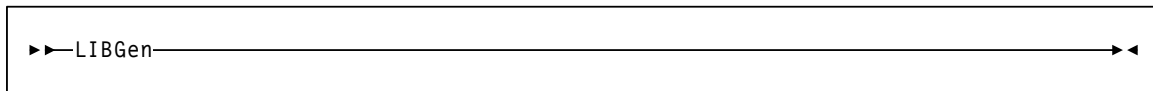
Active HSC not required

## Description

The LIBGen command decompiles the hardware configuration, VOLPARM, VAULT and LOGFILE information from the Control Data Set and creates a set of LIBGEN macros that reflects that information. The LIBGen decompile utility can be used to generate an initial set of LIBGEN macros that can be modified when you are adding new hardware to your installation that requires the creation of a new CDS.

Refer to the publication *Configuring HSC and VTCS* for detailed information about when to use this utility and how it functions.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-125** LIBGen utility syntax

## Parameters

None.

## Additional JCL Requirements

In addition to the required JCL definition statements described in [“Invoking SLUADMIN” on page 684](#), the following definition statements apply to the LIBGen JCL:

### SLSLIBGN

output data set to accommodate the LIBGEN created by the utility.

The data set has these characteristics: LRECL=80, fixed-blocked format (multiple of 80). The data set can be assigned to print or to output to a DASD. It may be assigned to DUMMY if only the SLSPRINT output is desired.

### SLSSET

output SET VOLPARM, SET VAULT/VAULTVOL, and/or SET LOGFILE control statements from the CDS.

SLSSET is **required** when VOLPARM, VAULT/VAULTVOL, or LOGFILE records exist in the CDS. If the SLSSET DD is not coded in the JCL, message SLS0212I is issued and the utility ends with a return code 4.

### SLSPARM

output VOLPARM card images from CDS.

SLSPARM is **required** when VOLPARM records exist in the CDS. If the SLSPARM DD is not coded in the JCL, message SLS0212I is issued and the utility ends with a return code 4.

## Output

Outputs resulting from the execution of the Database Decompile utility include:

- a valid LIBGEN file matching the existing control data set. The output file has the following characteristics:
  - All station and drive addresses are 4-character addresses.
  - In cases where multiple parameters point to the same label statement, the utility duplicates the statement with a unique label and points each parameter to a different, although identical statement.
  - Labels generated in the output LIBGEN are listed in Table 3-7.
  - If an Eject password exists, it is **NOT** displayed. Instead, the following line is displayed: EJCTPAS=???????
- messages associated with error conditions resulting from an unsuccessful execution of the utility.

**TABLE 3-7** Label Descriptions for Devices in Output LIBGen

Device	Label	Description
ACS	<i>ACSaa</i>	<i>aa</i> is the sequential decimal ACSid value (00 through 99), beginning with zero.
LSM	<i>LSMaall</i>	<i>aa</i> is the ACSid, and <i>ll</i> is the sequential decimal LSMid value (00 through 99), beginning with zero.
STATION	<i>STaah</i>	<i>aa</i> is the ACSid, and <i>h</i> is the sequential hexadecimal host index value (0 through F), beginning with zero.
PANEL	<i>Paallpp</i>	<i>aa</i> is the ACSid, <i>ll</i> is the LSMid, and <i>pp</i> is the sequential decimal panel number (0 through 10).
DRIVE	<i>Daallpph</i>	<i>aa</i> is the ACSid, <i>ll</i> is the LSMid, <i>pp</i> is the decimal panel number, and <i>h</i> is the hexadecimal host index value, beginning with zero.

# LMUPDEF

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB  
 UUI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

The LMUPDEF command specifies the definition data set that contains network LMU attachment (LMUPATH) statements.

If a definition file is changed by a LMUPDEF operator command, and if the change is to be permanent, you must update PARMLIB before restarting the HSC.

If the definition file is to be modified for a given shift or application, remember that the new definition remains in effect until another definition is loaded or the HSC is recycled. The definition file then reverts to the PARMLIB specification. Thus, LMUPDEF can be used to temporarily change a definition file.

## Note –

- Definition commands issued on one host are in effect only on that host. If different hosts use the same definition data set, the LMUPATH parameter statements are shared by those hosts.
- If you issue multiple LMUPDEF commands or statements, the last one processed is currently active. You can determine which LMUPDEF statement is active by entering the Display LMUPDEF command.

## Syntax

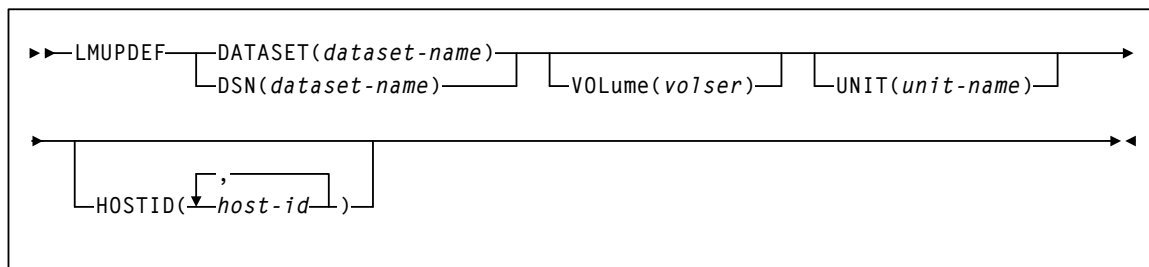


FIGURE 3-126 LMUPDEF syntax

## Parameters

### **DATASET or DSN**

specifies the name of the data set containing the LMUPATH statements to be processed and, optionally, an OPTION TITLE statement.

---

#### **Note –**

- The definition data set may contain VOLATTR, UNITATTR, TAPEREQ, LMUPATH, and OPTION TITLE statements, but only LMUPATH and OPTION TITLE statements are processed
  - If any other statement is encountered, an error message is issued and the statement is ignored.
  - See [“OPTION TITLE Control Statement” on page 519](#) for more information about the OPTION TITLE control statement.
- 

#### *dataset.name*

the name of the data set containing the LMUPATH address parameters. If the data set name includes a member name, *dataset.name* must be enclosed in quotes. For example,

```
DATASET ( ' YOUR . DSN (MEMBER) ' )
```

### **VOLume**

optionally, specifies the serial number of the DASD volume on which the data set resides. This parameter is optional. Specify the VOLume parameter if the data set is not cataloged, or if a data set on a volume other than the volume indicated by the catalog is to be used.

#### *volser*

the volume serial number for the definition data set.

### **UNIT**

optionally, specifies the unit where the definition data set is located.

#### *unitname*

the unit name. If the definition data set is not cataloged and this parameter is omitted, a unit name of SYSALLDA is the default.

### **HOSTID**

optionally, limits the execution of this control statement to the specified hosts. If one of the specified hostids matches the host executing this control statement, the control statement is executed for that host. Otherwise, it is ignored. If this parameter is omitted, the control statement is executed on all hosts.

This parameter is valid only for use in PARMLIB, so that multiple systems can share a PARMLIB member containing TAPEREQ, VOLATTR, UNITATTR, or LMUPATH statements for different releases of HSC. If entered from the console, message SLS0018I is issued.)

#### *host-id*

the name of one or more hosts from which to execute this control statement. Multiple hosts must be separated by commas.



## LMUPATH Control Statement

The LMUPATH control statement defines network LMU/Library Controller (LC) attachments. It is loaded by the LMUPDEF command.

---

**Note** – If you are using the SL3000 or SL8500 partitioning feature, the PARTID parameter connects to a specific partition defined by the SL3000 or SL8500 library for the HSC host group. Refer to the publication *Configuring HSC and VTCS* for information about how to use the partitioning feature.

---

### Syntax

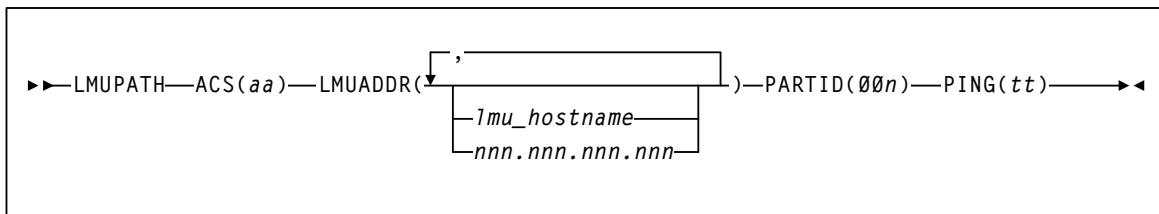


FIGURE 3-127 LMUPATH control statement syntax

### Parameters

#### ACS

specifies the ACS name.

*aa*

the decimal ACSid value (00 through 99) to identify the LMU(s) used to communicate with a HSC.

#### LMUADDR

identifies an LMU/Library Controller (LC) by host name or IP address, for each ACS. To designate a single LMU/LC environment, specify one IP address or host name. To specify a dual LMU/LC environment or a dual IP connection to an SL8500, enter an additional IP address and/or host name.

---

**Note** – The HSC automatically detects the type of connection, dual LMU for a 9330 or dual IP for an SL8500 library.

---

Users can intermix host name and IP addresses in one LMUPATH control statement. Each parameter entered must represent a different IP address.

*lmu\_hostname*

a host name for the TCP/IP connection. The host name can be up to 24 characters long. The first character must be alphabetic.

*nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn*

an IP address for the LMU/LC. A maximum of 40 IP addresses can be specified.

**PARTID**

defines a partition ID for each ACS.

---

**Note –** A partitioned SL3000 or SL8500 cannot use the multiple TCP/IP connection feature since partitioning applies only to a single SL3000 or SL8500 box.

---

*00n*

a partition ID from 001 to 999.

---

**Note –**

- All three characters must be entered for the partition ID.
  - For this release, only IDs 001 through 008 are supported.
- 

**PING**

specifies the number of minutes in between requests sent from the HSC to the LMU. These requests are to keep the connection active, which prevents a firewall from closing the connection due to inactivity.

*tt*

the time in minutes from 00-99. The default is 5 minutes if this parameter is not defined, and entering 00 turns off this feature.

---

# LOGUTIL

**Interfaces:**

SLUADMIN utility only  
UII: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC not required

## Description

The LOGUTIL command initiates the CDS recovery process for VTCS. It is used in the following scenarios:

- The CDS has become unusable or corrupt and MVCs used since the date of the CDS backup need to be identified for MVCAUDIT purposes.
- A VTSS has suffered a catastrophic data loss.

LOGUTIL calls the module that analyzes the input log files, and calls a recovery module to perform the appropriate recovery actions.

Additionally:

- The LOGUTIL FOR\_LOSTMVC statement recovers VTVs that resided on a lost or damaged MVC.
- The LOGUTIL GENAUDIT statement initiates a re-synchronization of the CDS to VSM via MVCAUDIT statements.
- The LOGUTIL LOCATE\_VTV statement recovers older versions of VTVs.
- The LOGUTIL UNDELETE statement recovers deleted VTVs.

## Syntax

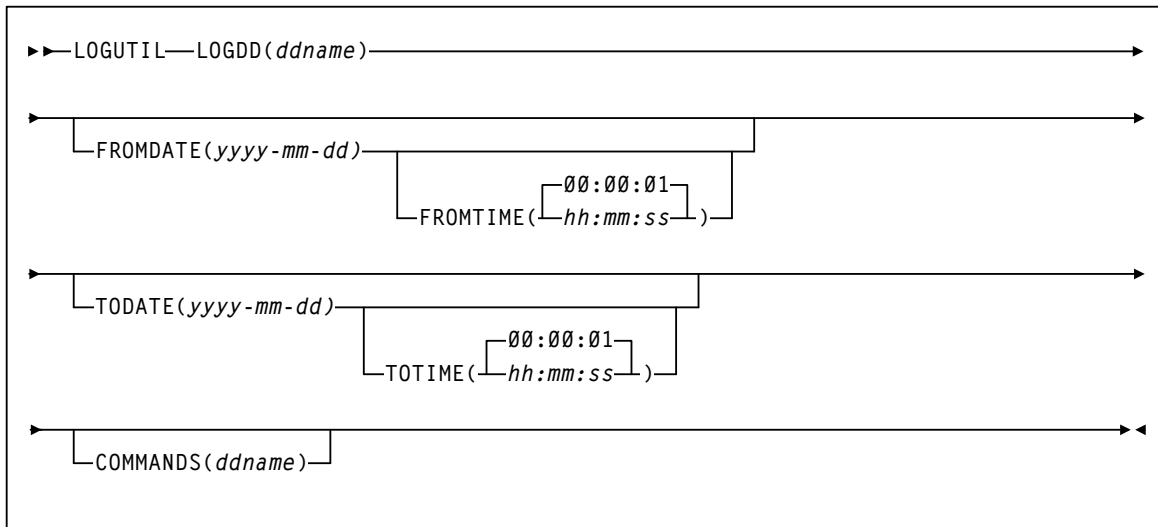


FIGURE 3-128 LOGUTIL syntax

## Parameters

### LOGDD

specifies the DD name of the input log data sets.

*ddname*

the DD name.

### FROMDATE

optionally, specifies a starting date for logged events.

*yyyy-mm-dd*

the starting date.

### FROMTIME

optionally, specifies a starting time for logged events.

*hh:mm:ss*

the starting time. The default is 00:00:0.

---

**Note** – For FROMDATE and FROMTIME, specify local dates/times as seen from the MVS system on which LOGUTIL runs.

---

**TODATE**

optionally, specifies an ending date and time for logged events

*yyyy-mm-dd*

the ending date.

**TOTIME**

optionally, specifies an ending time for logged events.

*hh:mm:ss*

the ending time. The default is 00:00:01.

---

**Note** – For TODATE and TOTIME, specify local dates/times as seen from the MVS system on which LOGUTIL runs.

---

**COMMANDS**

optionally, specifies the DD name of a data set that contains recovery commands.

*ddname*

the DD name.

## LOGUTIL FOR\_LOSTMVC Statement

The LOGUTIL FOR\_LOSTMVC statement recovers VTVs that resided on lost or damaged MVCs.

### Syntax

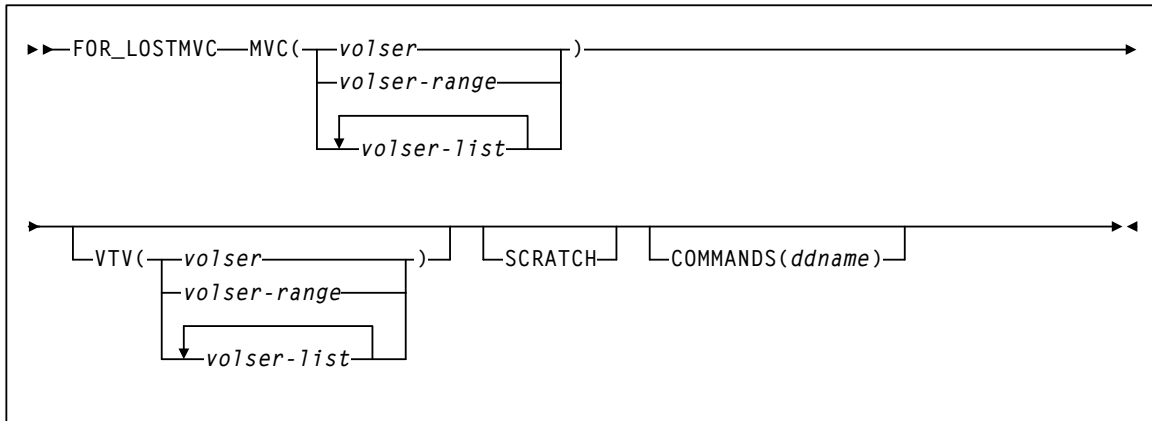


FIGURE 3-129 LOGUTIL FOR\_LOSTMVC statement syntax

### Parameters

#### MVC

specifies the MVC(s) to be recovered. You can specify a maximum of 1000 MVCs.

*volser, volser-range, volser-list*

the volser, volser range, or volser list to be processed.

#### VTV

optionally, specifies specific VTV(s) to be recovered. You can specify a maximum of 300,000 MVCs.

Specified VTVs must reside on one or more of the recovery MVCs to be processed. When this parameter is coded, only VTVs specified are recovered (if they exist on the recovery MVCs).

*volser, volser-range, volser-list*

the volser, volser range, or volser list to be processed.

This parameter behaves as a filter. If VTVs are specified that are **not** on the specified MVCs, they will **not** be recovered and will not be listed in the report output.

#### SCRATCH

optionally, specifies to specify scratch VTVs. By default, scratch VTVs are not processed as part of the recovery.

**COMMANDS**

optionally, specifies the DD name of a data set that includes the recovery commands created when the COMMANDS parameter is specified on the LOGUTIL command.

*ddname*

the DD name.

---

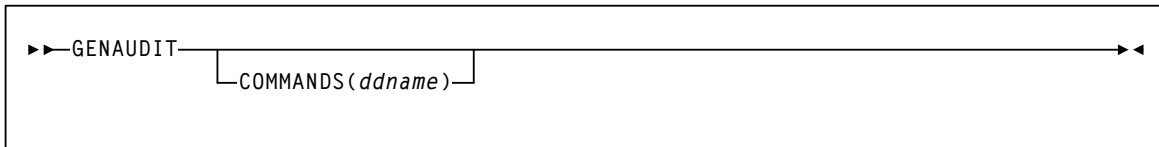
**Note –** The FOR\_LOSTMVC COMMANDS parameter works with the LOGUTIL COMMANDS parameter as follows:

- If you specify LOGUTIL COMMANDS, the FOR\_LOSTMVC statement outputs recovery commands to the specified data set even if you did not specify GENAUDIT COMMANDS.
  - If you specify COMMANDS on both LOGUTIL and FOR\_LOSTMVC, recovery commands are only output to the FOR\_LOSTMVC COMMANDS data set.
-

# LOGUTIL GENAUDIT Statement

The LOGUTIL GENAUDIT statement initiates a re-synchronization of the CDS to VSM via MVCAUDIT statements that are generated when the COMMANDS parameter is specified with the LOGUTIL command. The LOGUTIL GENAUDIT statement identifies MVCs for input to MVCAUDIT.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-130** LOGUTIL GENAUDIT statement syntax

## Parameters

## COMMANDS

optionally, specifies the DD name of a data set that includes the recovery commands created when the **COMMANDS** parameter is specified on the **LOGUTIL** command.

*ddname*

the DD name.

**Note** – The GENAUDIT COMMANDS parameter works with the LOGUTIL COMMANDS parameter as follows:

- If you specify LOGUTIL COMMANDS, the GENAUDIT statement outputs recovery commands to the specified data set even if you did not specify GENAUDIT COMMANDS.
- If you specify COMMANDS on both LOGUTIL and GENAUDIT, recovery commands are only output to the GENAUDIT COMMANDS data set.



## LOGUTIL LOCATE\_VTV Statement

The LOGUTIL LOCATE\_VTV statement recovers a non-current version of a VTV.

### Syntax

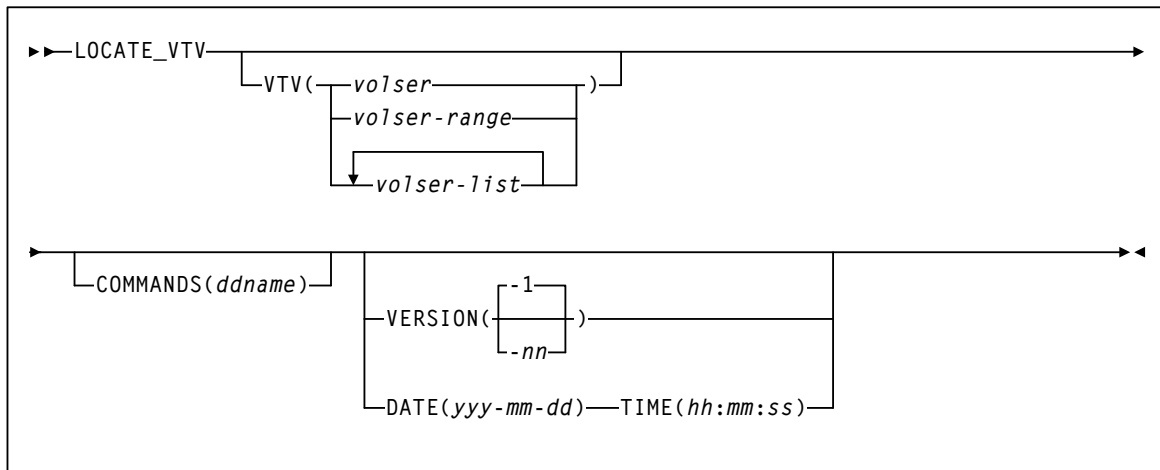


FIGURE 3-131 LOGUTIL LOCATE\_VTV statement syntax

### Parameters

#### VTV

optionally, specifies specific VTV(s) to be recovered. You can specify a maximum of 1000 VTVs.

*volser*, *volser-range*, *volser-list*

the volser, volser range, or volser list to be processed.

#### COMMANDS

optionally, specifies the DD name of a data set that includes the recovery commands created when the COMMANDS parameter is specified on the LOGUTIL command.

*ddname*

the DD name.

---

**Note** – The LOCATE\_VTV COMMANDS parameter works with the LOGUTIL COMMANDS parameter as follows:

- If you specify LOGUTIL COMMANDS, the LOCATE\_VTV statement outputs recovery commands to the specified data set even if you did not specify LOCATE\_VTV COMMANDS.
  - If you specify COMMANDS on both LOGUTIL and LOCATE\_VTV, recovery commands are only output to the LOCATE\_VTV COMMANDS data set.
-

**VERSION**

optionally, specifies the version of the VTV to recover.

Valid values are -1 to -99. The default is VERSION(-1), which is one version older than the current version.

---

**Note** – VERSION is mutually exclusive the DATE and TIME parameters.

---

**DATE**

optionally, specifies the date of the VTV version to recover. If you specify DATE, you must also specify TIME.

*yyyy-mm-dd*

the date, by year, month and day.

**TIME**

optionally, specifies the time of the VTV version to recover. If you specify TIME you must also specify DATE.

*hh:mm:ss*

the time, in hours minutes and seconds.

## LOGUTIL UNDELETE Statement

The LOGUTIL UNDELETE statement recovers deleted VTVs.

### Syntax

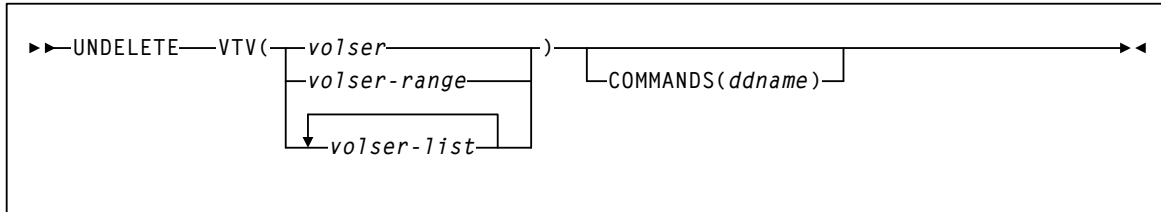


FIGURE 3-132 LOGUTIL UNDELETE statement syntax

### Parameters

#### VTV

specifies the VTV(s) to be recovered. You can specify a maximum of 1000 VTVs.

*volser*, *volser-range*, *volser-list*

the volser, volser range, or volser list to be processed.

#### COMMANDS

optionally, specifies the DD name of a data set that includes the recovery commands created when the COMMANDS parameter is specified on the LOGUTIL command.

*ddname*

the DD name.

---

**Note** – The UNDELETE COMMANDS parameter works with the LOGUTIL COMMANDS parameter as follows:

- If you specify LOGUTIL COMMANDS, the UNDELETE statement outputs recovery commands to the specified data set even if you did not specify UNDELETE COMMANDS.
  - If you specify COMMANDS on both LOGUTIL and UNDELETE, recovery commands are only output to the UNDELETE COMMANDS data set.
-

# MERGEcds

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UUI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at BASE service level only

## Description

Use the MERGEcds command to do the following:

- Add or Change a configuration to reflect new ACSs or LSMs.
- Consolidate multiple CDSs into one CDS.
- Divide one CDS into multiple CDSs. MERGEcds copies volume information from each old CDS into the new CDS.
- Merge multiple ACSs into one ACS.
- Divide one ACS into multiple ACSs.
- Modify an ACSid and/or LSMid in order to renumber ACSs and LSMs.
- Modify VTSS names.
- Remove virtual or vault data from the CDS.
- Change the number of slots reserved for vaulted volumes.

---

**Note** – Before using MERGEcds, refer to the publication *Configuring HSC and VTCS* for detailed procedures used to run the utility.

---

## Syntax

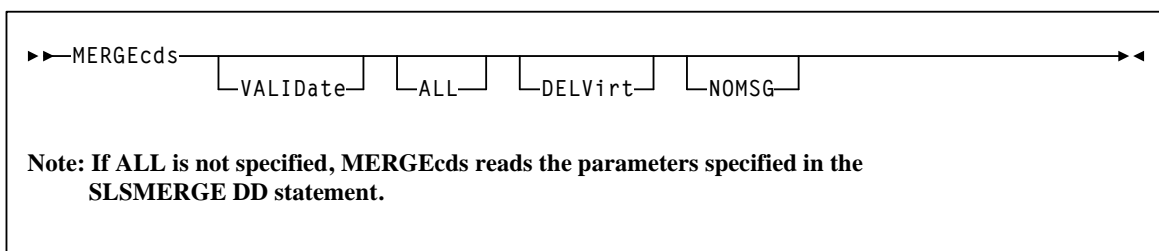


FIGURE 3-133 MERGEcds syntax

## Parameters

### VALIDate

optionally, specifies to only validate that the configurations to be reconfigured or merged are compatible, but not perform the operation. MERGEcds VALIDate reports any duplicate, in-transit, and errant volumes.

### ALL

optionally, specifies to copy volume information for all ACSs and VTSSs from the "from" CDS to the "to" CDS. For a CDS merge, the ACS ID and LSM IDs, and VTSS names must match. You can also specify the ALL parameter to convert a CDS to extended format.

---

**Note** – ALL and SLSMERGE DD are mutually exclusive.

If you do not specify ALL, MERGEcds reads the parameters specified on the SLSMERGE control statement. These parameters specify the ACSs, LSMs, VTSSs, and Vaults whose volume information you want to merge or reconfigure. See [“SLSMERGE Control Statement” on page 431](#) for more information.

---

### DELvirt

optionally, specifies that VTV and MVC volume information is not copied to the “to” CDS if both of the following are true:

- The VTVs and MVCs defined in the "from" CDS are either uninitialized or empty.  
An empty VTV is not VTSS resident and has no current MVC copies.  
An empty MVC contains no current VTVs and does not have an assigned STORCLAS. An MVC is empty when %USED is 0% and %AVAIL is 100% on an MVC Report or Q MVC display.  
Follow the procedure in the publication *Managing HSC and VTCS* for removing MVCs from the pool.
- The uninitialized or empty VTVs and MVCs in the "from" CDS are not defined in the "to" CDS. That is, no duplicate volsers exist.

DELvirt has no effect unless ALLVIRT is specified on the SLSMERGE control statement.

### NOMSG

optionally, suppresses message SLS4245I, which displays the volser of an MVC or VTV that was not copied to the “to” CDS.

NOMSG has no effect unless DELvirt is specified on the MERGECDs control statement and ALLVIRT is specified on the SLSMERGE control statement.

## Additional JCL Requirements

In addition to the required JCL definition statements described in [“Invoking SLUADMIN” on page 684](#), the following definition statements apply to the MERGEcds JCL:

### SLSFCNTL

specifies the current primary copy of the “from” HSC CDS.

### SLSFCTL2

specifies the secondary copy of the CDS, if one is defined.

### SLSFSTBY

optionally, specifies the standby copy of the CDS, if one is defined.

---

**Note** – If more than one of these statements are present, HSC determines the primary CDS from the Database Heartbeat (DHB) record of the “from” CDS. The “from” CDS is not modified. If a single CDS (SLSFCNTL) is specified, ensure that it is the primary CDS. No DHB validation occurs.

---

## SLSMERGE Control Statement

The SLSMERGE control statement specifies the "from" and "to" ACSs, LSMs, or Vaults to use for a merge, and allows you to rename a VTSS in the Resident VTSS field.

### Note –

- The SLSMERGE control statement is optional and is mutually exclusive with the MERGEcdfs ALL parameter.
- If you use SLSMERGE control statements, you must include MERGE statements that account for **all data** in the "from" CDS.

For example, if your "from" CDS contains real, virtual, and vault data, you must supply a control card for each of these types to specify whether they are to be copied to the "to" CDS. If you **do not** want a particular type of data to be copied to the "to" CDS, issue the appropriate "NO" parameter (NOREAL, NOVIRT, or NOVALT) to exclude it.

## Syntax

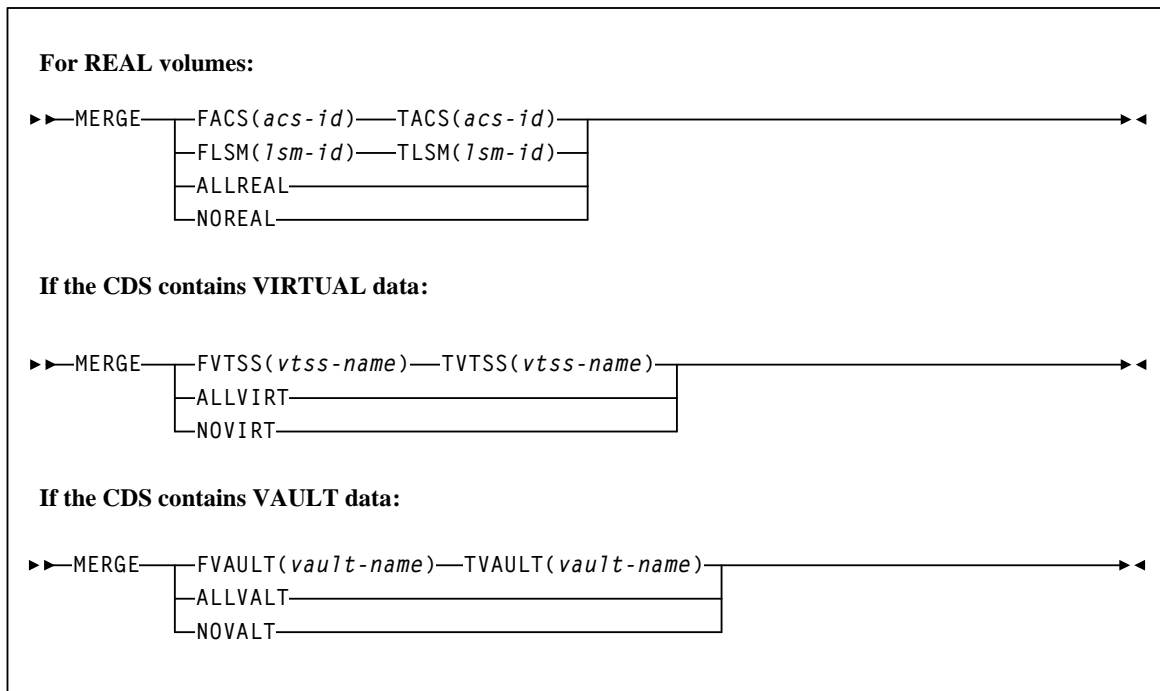


FIGURE 3-134 SLSMERGE DD Statement syntax

## Parameters

---

**Caution** – The “real” parameters (FACS, TACS, FLSM, TLSM) and “vault” parameters (FVAULT, TVAULT) act as selection criteria, while the “virtual” parameters (FVTSS, TVTSS) act **only** as rename criteria.

---

### For REAL volumes:

#### FACS(*acs-id*)

specifies the “from” ACS.

#### TACS(*acs-id*)

specifies the “to” ACS.

#### FLSM(*lsm-id*)

specifies the “from” LSM.

#### TLSM(*lsm-id*)

specifies the “to” LSM.

#### ALLREAL

Merge all real data only.

#### NOREAL

Do not merge real data.

### If the CDS contains VIRTUAL data:

#### FVTSS(*vtss-name*)

specifies the “from” VTSS name.

#### TVTSS(*vtss-name*)

specifies the “to” VTSS name.

---

**Caution** – You **cannot** use MERGEcds to remove data for certain VTSSs from the CDS.

FVTSS and TVTSS act **only** as rename criteria. When these parameters are specified, ALLVIRT is implied.

For example:

```
MERGE FVTSS(VTSS18) TVTSS(VTSS17)
```

In this example, all VTV records are copied to the new CDS, but the Resident VTSS field is changed from VTSS18 to VTSS17. All VTSSs not specified in these statements are automatically merged to the same-named VTSS in the new CDS.

---

#### ALLVIRT

Merge all virtual data only.

#### NOVIRT

Do not merge virtual data.



If the CDS contains VAULT data:

**FVAULT(*vault-name*)**

specifies the “from” vault.

**TVAULT(*vault-name*)**

specifies the “to” vault.

**ALLVAULT**

Merge all vault data only.

**NOVAULT**

Do not merge vault data.

---

# MERGMFST

**Interfaces:**

Utility only  
UII: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC not required

## Description

The MERGMFST command merges multiple manifest files produced by EXPORT into a single file.

## Syntax

```
►—MERGMFST—MERGEIN(manifin)—MERGEOUT(manifout)—◄
```

FIGURE 3-135 MERGMFST syntax

## Parameters

**MERGEIN**

specifies the DD statement for one or more input manifest files.

*manifin*

the DD name.

**MERGEOUT**

specifies the DD statement for the merged manifest file.

*manifout*

the DD name.

## Additional JCL Requirements

In addition to the required JCL definition statements described in [“Invoking SLUADMIN” on page 684](#), the following definition statements apply to the MERGMFST JCL:

***manifin* DD**

DD statement for the input manifest file(s).

***manifout* DD**

DD statement for the merged manifest file.

---

# METAdata

**Interfaces:**

Utility only  
UII: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

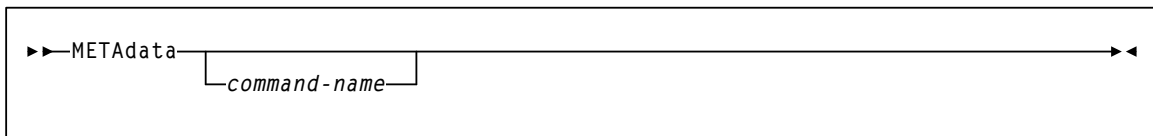
The METAdata command displays XML tags associated with a function that produces XML output.

---

**Note** – No text output is produced by the METAdata command. If neither XML nor CSV output is requested, the command will not produce any output.

---

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-136** MGMTDEF syntax

## Parameters

### *command\_name*

The command for which metadata is to be produced.

When the command contains "two parts" such as Display Volume, both portions should be entered. The METAdata command uses the same abbreviations for the *command\_name* as the command itself, for example:

```
METAdata D V
```

The METAdata command itself does not support metadata.

The following tags are produced by the METAdata command:

#### **<command\_name>**

The full name of the command.

#### **<security\_level>**

Required security level if command authorization is in effect. Values are QUERY, SET, and ADMIN.

#### **<command\_tags>**

Header tag for all XML tags.

The following tags are produced for each XML tag in the requested command:

#### **<tag\_data>**

Header tag for each XML tag.

#### **<tag\_name>**

The XML tag name, for example, volser.

#### **<tag\_type>**

Values are header (header XML tag), data (XML data tag, normally associated with a value), and trailer (indicates the position of the trailer tag associated with a header tag).

#### **<occurrences>**

The maximum number of expected occurrences, for tags that may occur multiple times. This may be either a numeric value or "unlimited."

The following tags are produced only for data-type tags.

#### **<data\_type>**

Indicates the type of data expected in the tag value. Produced only for data tags. Values include: char, numeric, flag, hex, date, time.

#### **<maximum\_size>**

Indicates the maximum output data size.



## Parameters

### **DATASET or DSN**

specifies the definition data set that contains the MGMTclas and STORclas statements to load.

*dataset.name*

the data set name.

### **VOLume**

optionally, specifies the DASD volume where the definition data set resides. This parameter is optional, unless the data set is not cataloged, or the data set resides on a volume other than the volume indicated by the catalog.

*volser*

the DASD volser.

### **UNIT**

optionally, specifies the DASD device where the definition data set resides.

*unitname*

the DASD unit name. If the definition data set is not cataloged and this parameter is omitted, the unit name defaults to SYSALLDA.

### **HOSTID**

optionally, specifies the host for execution of the MGMTDEF command. This parameter is only valid when MGMTDEF is specified as a PARMLIB control statement.

*host-id*

the name of one or more hosts from which to execute the MGMTDEF command. Multiple hosts must be separated by commas.

## MGMTclas Control Statement

The MGMTclas control statement defines a VSM Management Class. It is loaded by the MGMTDEF command.

---

**Note –**

- By default, advanced VSM management features are automatically enabled. The FEATures command, included in previous ELS releases to enable these features, is no longer valid.
- ELS includes parameters designed to improve migration control. If you choose not to use these features, refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for information about existing legacy MGMTclas parameters.
- When HSC/VTCS is active and the MGMTDEF command is issued to re-load MGMTclas control statements, the 'changed' control statements only affect newly created VTVs. Additional action is required to apply the changes to existing VTVs.

For example:

- If you change the IMMDELAY value, you must recycle the HSC to apply the change to existing VTVs.
  - If you change the MIGpol value from 1 storage class to two, you must recall the VTV to allow for creation of the second migrated copy.
-



## Syntax

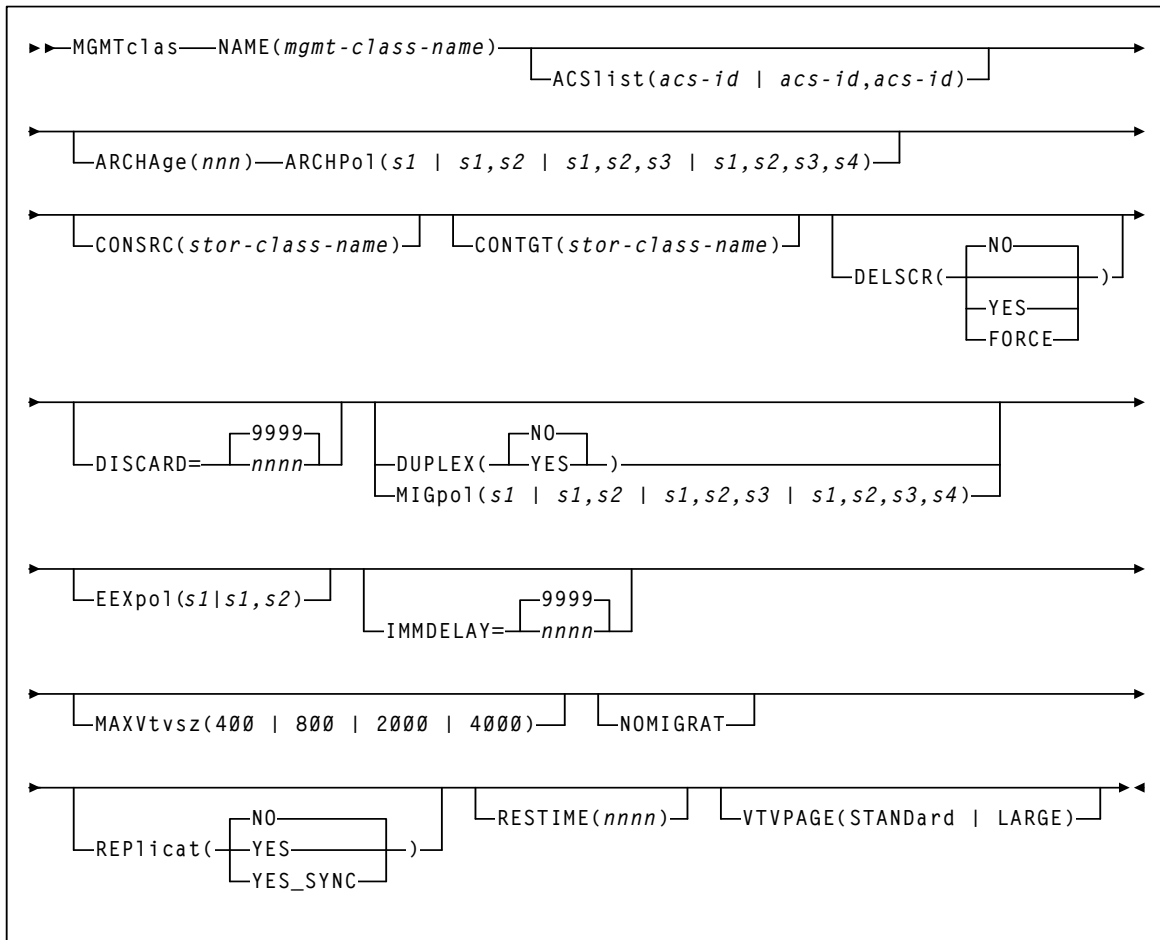


FIGURE 3-138 MGMTclas control statement syntax

## Parameters

### NAME

specifies the name of the Management Class.

*mgmt-class-name*

the Management Class name. This name must be 1 to 8 alphanumeric characters beginning with an alpha character and must follow SMS naming conventions.

### ACSlist

optionally, specifies the ACSs from which RTDs and MVCs are selected.

If not specified, the default is the ACS specified on the CONFIG DEFLTACS parameter.

See DUPlex, below, for information about using the DUPlex and ACSlist parameters.

*acs-id* | *acs-id,acs-id*

either one or two ACS IDs. An ACSid is a two digit decimal ACS identifier from 00-99.

### ARCHAge

optionally, specifies the age (in days) of a VTV before it is archived as specified by ARCHPol. If you specify ARCHAge, you must specify ARCHPol.

This parameter is optional; there is no default value. Valid values are 1 to 999.

*nnn*

the VTV age in days.

### ARCHPol

optionally, specifies up to four Storage Classes that specify the ACS and media type of the archive MVCs. If you specify:

- One Storage Class, VTCS archives one copy of a VTV.
- Multiple Storage Classes (with different ACS values, different MEDIA values, or both), VTCS archives multiple copies of the VTV to different MVCs in different ACSs.
- Multiple Storage Classes with identical ACS and MEDIA values, VTCS archives multiple copies of the VTV to the same ACS and media type but to different MVCs.

---

**Note** – Multiple Storage Classes on ARCHPol also affects how VTV recall, MVC space reclamation, and VTV consolidation function:

---

This parameter is optional; there is no default value. If you specify ARCHPol, you must specify ARCHAge.

*stor-clas-name1...stor-clas-namen*

the names of one or more Storage Classes that you defined on the STORclas control statement. Greater than two copies requires you to specify CDSLEVEL(V6ABOVE) or CDSLEVEL(V6ABOVE) on the CONFIG statement.

**CONSRC**

optionally, specifies the Storage Class that species a preference for the source MVC ACS and media for consolidation of VTVs that are migrated and copied to multiple MVC locations or media types. If the MVC in the specified Storage Class is unavailable, and the specified Storage Class is not the last (in order specified in the migration policy), VTCS uses the MVC associated with the last Storage Class. If the MVC in the specified Storage Class is unavailable and the specified Storage Class is the last (in order specified in the MIGpol parameter), VTCS uses the MVC associated with the previous Storage Class (in order specified in the MIGpol parameter).

***stor-class-name***

the name of a Storage Class that you defined on the STORclas control statement.

**CONTGT**

optionally, specifies the Storage Class that determines the output MVC ACS and media for VTV consolidation. Note that the media preferencing is in the opposite order of the list of media types specified on the Storage Class.

This parameter is optional; there is no default value. If you do not specify a value for CONTGT, VTCS selects the output MVC as follows:

- For single-ACS and dual-ACS configurations, the media selection order for VTV consolidation.
- For multiple ACS systems, VTCS selects MVCs from the default ACS specified by the CONFIG DEFLTACS parameter.

***stor-class-name***

the name of a Storage Class that you defined on the STORclas control statement.

**DELSCR**

optionally, specifies whether VSM deletes scratched VTVs.

**NO**

Do not delete scratched VTVs (the default).

**YES**

Delete scratch VTVs unless this would cause a processing delay due to unavailable resources.

**FORCE**

Delete scratch VTVs and wait for access to any resources that are required. This may cause a processing delay.

---

**Caution** – When you scratch a VTV with DELSCR YES attribute, **VSM erases the VTV data at scratch synchronization time**, which eliminates the ability “unscratch” a VTV to recover data!

---

**Also note** that when using HSC to perform scratch synchronization, **it is possible that a volume that is scratch** in the TMC at the beginning of scratch synchronization run and also scratch in the CDS from the previous scratch update run (and thus is in the list for HSC to scratch in the CDS) is accessed by a job during the scratch update run and written to and **made non-scratch** by the TMS in the TMC. **In this case, it is still possible for HSC to scratch the volume** because it was in the originally extracted list of volumes to be scratched. Therefore, Oracle **strongly recommends** that you **do not** run any jobs that use scratches during HSC scratch synchronization.

See [“Scratch Conversion Utility \(SLUCONDB\)” on page 700](#) for more information about HSC scratch synchronization with the Scratch Conversion Utility (SLUCONDB).

Refer to the *LCM User's Guide* for more information about LCM scratch synchronization with the SYNCVTV function.

**DISCARD**

optionally, specifies the discard time in hours. This value represents the time after a VTV is dismounted that the VTV is kept in the buffer. After this time value expires, the VTV is preferred for deletion from the VTSS buffer if all required copies of the VTV exist on MVCs.

*nnnn*

time in hours. Valid values are 0 to 9999. The default is 9999.

**Note –**

- When IMMEDmig is specified, DISCARD is not used for immediate migration processing. It is only applicable for AUTO migration requests.
  - If RESTIME is also specified for a VTV, it overrides the DISCARD value.
-

**DUPlex**

optionally, specifies whether VSM will migrate two copies of the VTV to two MVCs.

---

**Note** – DUPlex and MIGpol are mutually exclusive.

---

**NO**

Do not duplex the VTV (the default).

**YES**

Duplex the VTV.

The following table describes possible scenarios using the DUPlex and ACSlist parameters:

**TABLE 3-8** MGMTclas ACSlist/DUPlex Scenarios

<b>DUPlex Setting</b>	<b>ACSlist Setting</b>	<b>Action</b>
YES	two ACSs	VSM migrates the VTVs to two MVCs, one in each ACS. (This scenario is the normal one for duplexing to two ACSs.)
YES	one ACS	VSM migrates the VTVs to two MVCs in the ACS specified
NO	two ACSs	VSM ignores the DUPlex policy and migrates the VTVs to two MVCs, one in each ACS.
NO	one ACS	VSM migrates the VTVs to one MVC in the ACS specified

**MIGpol**

optionally, specifies up to four Storage Classes that specify the ACS and media type of migration MVCs.

---

**Note** – DUPlex and MIGpol are mutually exclusive.

---

If you specify:

- One Storage Class, VTCS migrates one copy of a VTV.
- Multiple Storage Classes (with different ACS values, different MEDIA values, or both), VTCS makes multiple copies the VTV to different MVCs in different ACSs.
- Multiple Storage Classes with identical ACS and MEDIA values, VTCS makes multiple copies of the VTV to the same ACS and media type but to different MVCs.

---

**Note** – Multiple Storage Classes on MIGpol also affects how VTV recall, MVC space reclamation, and VTV consolidation function.

---

This parameter is optional; there is no default value.

*s1* | *s1,s2* | *s1,s2,s3* | *s1,s2,s3,s4*

the names of up to 4 Storage Classes that you defined on the STORclas control statement. Greater than two copies requires you to specify CDSLEVEL(V6ABOVE) or greater on the CONFIG statement.

---

**Note** – The CONFIG GLOBAL REPLICat parameter specifies when to replicate a VTV (always, or only when changed while mounted).

---

**EEXpol**

optionally, specifies the storage classes for electronic export.

*s1* | *s1,s2*

a maximum of two Storage Classes that specify the TAPEPLEX parameter. If these storage classes do not specify the TAPEPLEX parameter, an error condition results.

---

**Note** –

- If there are two TAPELEX storage classes, then they must specify different destination TapePlex names.
  - A warning will be generated if the two TapePlex storage classes are specified with the SYNC=YES parameter. It is only possible to synchronously export to one other TapePlex.
  - If there is a conflict, electronic export functionality takes precedence over replication with a cluster.
  - If either one of the storage classes referenced contains the THISPLEX name, then the storage class is silently ignored. This allows common storage class definitions to be applied across TapePlexes.
-

**IMMDELAY**

optionally, specifies the immediate migration delay time; the amount of time after VTV dismount that the migration should be queued for action.

This allows VTVs used in multi-step jobs to remain resident for a specified time before being processed for migration.

*nnnn*

the immediate migration delay time in minutes. Valid values are 0 to 9999 (the default).

If IMMDELAY=9999 then immediate migration does not occur. Migration and deletion is handled via auto/command migration.

When this value is specified, MIGRSEL and MIGRVTV have no influence on migration control.

RESTIME and DISCARD parameter values represent buffer management priorities:

- If the IMMDELAY value is less than the RESTIME value, keep the VTD in the VTSS as a priority.
- If the IMMDELAY value is greater than the RESTIME value but less than the DISCARD value, manage the buffer according to LRU (default state).
- If the IMMDELAY value is greater than the DISCARD value, remove the VTD from the VTSS as a priority.

The IMMDELAY parameter is designed to replace the IMMEDmig parameter, described in the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference*. These parameters are mutually exclusive. The following table describes equivalent values:

IMMDELAY/DISCARD values	Equivalent IMMEDmig value	Action
IMMDELAY(1-9998)	None	Delay migration for the specified number of minutes.
IMMDELAY(9999)	IMMED(NO)	VSM does not immediately migrate the VTV, but migrates it according to standard VSM migration criteria. MIGRSEL and MIGRVTV have no influence on migration control.
IMMDELAY(0) DISCARD(9999)	IMMED(KEEP)	VSM immediately migrates a VTV and keeps a copy resident on the VTSS until the VTV become eligible for deletion.
IMMDELAY(0) DISCARD(0)	IMMED(DELETE)	VSM immediately migrates the VTV and then deletes it from the VTSS.

**MAXVtvsz**

optionally, specifies the maximum size for VTVs in this Management Class. Valid values for this parameter depend on both the CDS level and the microcode levels of the applicable VTSSs.

**400**

400MB. This is the default.

**800**

800MB. The CDS must be at a E level or above.

**2000**

2GB. The CDS must be at a G level or above.

**4000**

4GB. The CDS must be at a G level or above.

---

**Note –**

- The size of a VTV changes only after it goes through a scratch cycle. Therefore, if you change the Management Class and DISP=MOD, then it will still retain the original size.
  - If you specify a VTV size that is not supported by the configuration, VTCS issues warning messages and MAXVtvsz defaults to the largest VTV size supported by the configuration.
  - MAXVtvsz does not apply to VSM2s.
  - MAXVTVSZ(2000 | 4000) requires VSM4/VSM5 microcode D02.02.00.00 or VSM3 microcode N01.00.77.00. No installed option is required.
- 

**NOMIGRAT**

optionally, specifies that VTVs in the Management Class **are not** candidates for migration, consolidation or export, but are candidates to reside on a tapeless VTSS.

VTSS selection is changed to prefer tapeless VTSSs for VTVs in Management Classes with NOMIGRAT, and to disallow VTVs without NOMIGRAT from VTSSs with no RTDs.

NOMIGRAT is mutually exclusive with ACSLIST, IMMDELAY, DUPLEX, MIGPOL, ARCHAGE, ARCHPOL, RESTIME, CONSRC and CONTGT.



**REPLICAT**

optionally, specifies whether VSM replicates the VTV.

**NO**

Do not replicate the VTV (the default).

**YES**

Asynchronously replicate the VTV.

**YES\_SYNC**

Synchronously replicate the VTV.

---

**Note –** Synchronous replication must be enabled via the CONFIG GLOBAL SYNCHREP parameter. For more information, see [“CONFIG GLOBAL Statement” on page 220](#).

---

**RESTIME**

optionally, specifies how long VTCS attempts to keep a VTV as VTSS-resident before becoming a preferred automatic migration candidate.

This parameter is optional; there is no default value. Valid values are 1 to 9999. Value 9999 specifies that the VTVs in this Management Class are resident permanently unless VTSS space management requires VTCS to automigrate the VTV and then delete it from the VTSS.

*nnnn*

the residency time in hours.

**Note –**

- RESTIME and IMMEDmig(DELETE) are mutually exclusive.
  - RESTIME takes effect when a VTV is created, and does not apply to a recalled VTV.
-

**VTVPAGE**

optionally, specifies that the page size used to store VTV data in the VTSS and on the MVCs. This setting only applies to 400 and 800 MB VTVs. If VTVPAGE is not specified on either the MGMTclas statement or the CONFIG GLOBAL statement, the default is STANDARD.

**STANDARD**

standard page size, which is compatible with all VSM3/VSM4 models and microcode levels.

**LARGE**

large page size, which can provide improved performance within the VTSS and for migrates and recalls. Large page size requires a G level CDS. For more information on CDS levels, see [“CONFIG” on page 217](#). For 2 and 4 GB VTVs (MAXVtvsz 2000 or 4000) a VTVPAGE setting of LARGE is always used.

---

**Note –**

- VTVPAGE **does not** apply to VSM2s. VTVPAGE(LARGE) requires VSM4/VSM5 microcode D02.02.00.00 or VSM3 microcode N01.00.77.00. No installed option is required.
  - MGMTCLAS VTVPAGE, if specified, overrides the CONFIG GLOBAL VTVPAGE value. If VTVPAGE is not specified on either the MGMTclas statement or the CONFIG GLOBAL statement, the default is STANDARD.
- 

---

**Caution –**

- The page size of a VTV can only be changed by a VTV scratch mount. Additional restrictions may also apply for scratch VTVs that were previously resident in a VTSS.
  - If you specify LARGE and the CDS level and/or VTSS microcode **do not** support LARGE, VTCS issues warning messages and VTVPAGE defaults to STANDARD.
  - If you specify STANDARD for 2 or 4 GB VTVs VTCS issues warning messages and defaults to LARGE.
  - Creating VTVs with large pages makes these VTVs **unreadable** in configurations that do not support large VTV pages.
  - The VTVPAGE valued specified for this Management Class overrides the global value specified on the CONFIG utility.
-

## MIGRSEL Control Statement

The MIGRSEL control statement controls migration request settings for a Storage Class, VTSS, and/or host. It is loaded by the MGMTDEF command.

### Syntax

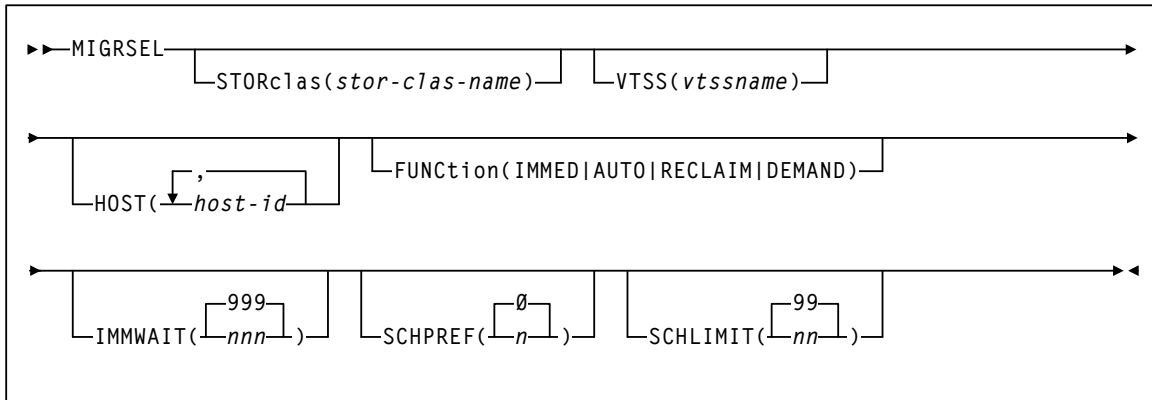


FIGURE 3-139 MIGRSEL control statement syntax

### Parameters

#### STORclas

optionally, specifies a Storage Class to which the migration settings apply. If you do not specify a Storage Class, the statement applies to all Storage Classes.

*stor-clas-name*

the Storage Class name you defined on a STORclas control statement.

#### VTSS

optionally, specifies a VTSS to which the migration settings apply. If you do not specify a VTSS, the statement applies to all VTSSs.

*vtssname*

the VTSS name.

#### HOST

optionally, specifies one or more hosts to which the migration settings apply. Any hosts not specified on this parameter ignore the settings. If you do not specify one or more hosts, the settings apply to all hosts.

*host-id*

a host identifier (maximum 8 characters).

**FUNCTION**

optionally, specifies the type of migration to which the settings apply:

**IMMED**

migrations resulting from either of the following:

- MGMTclas IMMEdmig(KEEP)
- MGMTclas IMMEdmig(DELETE)

**AUTO**

automatic migrate to threshold migration processing.

**RECLAIM**

migrations resulting from MVC DRAIN or RECLAIM requests.

**DEMAND**

migrations resulting from a MIGRATE command or utility (demand migrations).

**IMMWAIT**

optionally, makes the MIGRSEL rule sensitive to the state of the current immediate migration work load. The specified value provides an immediate migration wait time or age, in minutes, that this MIGRSEL migration rule will apply to. This value is compared against the amount of time VTVs have been waiting for immediate migration to a particular storage class. If the amount of time (minutes) that VTVs have been waiting is less than or equal to the IMMWAIT value the MIGRSEL rule will apply.

*nnn*

the immediate migration wait time or age, in minutes. Valid values are 0 to 999. The default is 999.

- The default value of 999 makes the rule apply to all VTV wait times.
- A value of zero is used for applying MIGRSEL rules if immediate migration is not active.

**SCHPREF**

optionally, preferences automatic and immediate migration per storage class. MIGRSEL VTSS and HOST allow you to specify the VTSS and host to which the preferencing applies.

*n*

the preferencing value. Valid values are 0 to 9. The default is 0.

- Higher values can produce quicker migration times, but may not optimize MVC usage.
- Lower values may produce slower migration times, but may optimize MVC usage.

The MIGRSEL SCHPREF setting may be affected by the number of RTDs available, the SCHLIMIT setting, and the GLOBAL MAXMIG parameter for the VTSS.

**SCHLIMIT**

optionally, de-preferences migration per Storage Class.

*nn*

the preferencing value. Valid values are 0 to 99. The default is 99, which indicates no limit, up to the VTSS MAXMIG value.

Lower values de-preference migration, and you can specify automatic, immediate, demand, and reclaim migrates. Lower values can do the following:

- Optimize MVC usage.
- Preference migration to other Storage Classes.
- Limit migration to keep RTDs available for auto recalls.
- Reduce MVC swapping when workloads change.

For auto and immediate migration processing, MIGRSEL SCHLIMIT de-preferences migration for the VTSS to storage class relationship. This comparison is not global and only effects requests driven by the individual VTCS host.

For demand migration requests, MIGRSEL SCHLIMIT will cause the request to be held if the scheduling of it would cause the number of globally active migration requests on the VTSS that satisfy the same FUNCTION and STORCLAS selection criteria to be exceeded. The migration requests will be released and an MVC picked once the constraint subsides.

## MIGRVTV Control Statement

The MIGRVTV control statement controls individual VTV copies processed by immediate migration. It is loaded by the MGMTDEF command.

### Syntax

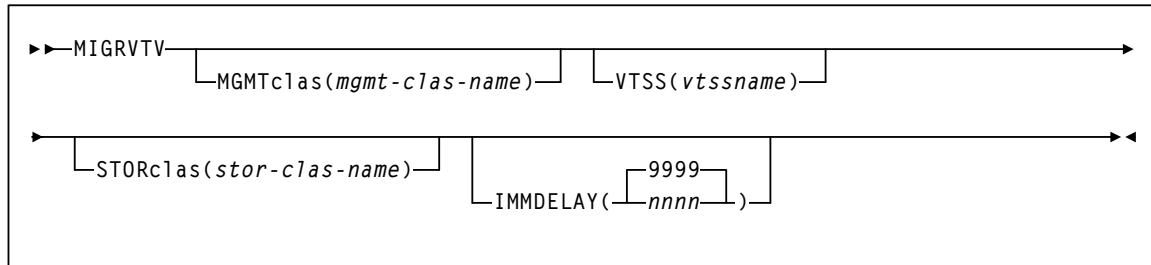


FIGURE 3-140 MIGRVTV control statement syntax

### Parameters

#### MGMTclas

optionally, specifies a Management Class to which the migration settings apply. If you do not specify a Management Class, the statement applies to all Management Classes.

*mgmt-clas-name*

the name of a Management Class you defined on the MGMTclas control statement.

#### VTSS

optionally, specifies a VTSS to which the migration settings apply. If you do not specify a VTSS, the statement applies to all VTSSs.

*vtssname*

the VTSS name.

#### STORclas

optionally, specifies a Storage Class to which the migration settings apply. If you do not specify a Storage Class, the statement applies to all Storage Classes.

*stor-clas-name*

the name of a Storage Class you defined on the STORclas control statement.

**IMMDELAY**

optionally, specifies the immediate migration delay time; the amount of time after VTV dismount that the migration should be queued for action.

This allows VTVs used in multi-step jobs to remain resident for a specified time before being processed for migration.

*nnnn*

the immediate migration delay time in minutes. Valid values are 0 to 9999 (the default).

- If IMMDELAY=9999 then immediate migration does not occur. Migration and deletion is handled via auto/command migration.

When this value is specified, MIGRSEL and MIGRVTW have no influence on migration control.

- If IMMDELAY=0 then immediate migration is scheduled immediately.
- If IMMDELAY is less than 9999 and DISCARD is greater than IMMDELAY then immediate migration occurs and deletion is deferred to auto/command migration.
- If IMMDELAY is less than 9999 and DISCARD is less than or equal to IMMDELAY then immediate migration and immediate deletion occur together.
- If auto migration encounters a VTV that has passed its DISCARD time, the VTV is moved to the front of the migration queue, and it will be processed first.

---

**Note** – See [“MGMTclas Control Statement” on page 440](#) for information about the DISCARD parameter.

---

## MVCATTR Control Statement

The MVCATTR control statement assigns a swap-to RTD device type to an MVC media name. When an error occurs while reading an MVC on an RTD, VTCS may swap the MVC to another RTD to retry the operation.

### Syntax

```
►—MVCATTR—MEDIA(media-name)—SWAPTO(device-type)—————►
```

FIGURE 3-141 MVCATTR control statement syntax

### Parameters

#### MEDIA

specifies the MVC media name to which the attribute is assigned.

---

**Note** – Only one MVCATTR should be coded for each *media-name*.

---

#### *media-name*

the MVC media name; see [TABLE 3-9](#).

#### SWAPTO

defines the RTD device type the MVC is swapped to (if possible).

#### *device-type*

the RTD device type; see [TABLE 3-9](#).

**TABLE 3-9** Valid MVC Media Names and Compatible SWAPTO RTD Device Types

Valid MEDIA Names	Compatible SWAPTO Device Types
STK1R	STK1RA34, STK1RB34, STK1RD34, STK1RDE4  <b>Note:</b> STK1RA34 and STK1RB34 devices are equivalent to VTCS, so you cannot ensure a swap to these specific device types.
STK1RC	STK1RC34, STK1RD34, STK1RDE4
STK1RD	STK1RD34, STK1RDE4
STK1RDE	STK1RDE4
STK2P	STK2PA34, STK2PB34
STK2PB	STK2PB34
T10000T1	T1A34, T1AE34, T1B34, T1BE34
T10000TS	T1A34, T1AE34, T1B34, T1BE34
T10000E1	T1AE34, T1BE34



**TABLE 3-9** Valid MVC Media Names and Compatible SWAPTO RTD Device Types

Valid MEDIA Names	Compatible SWAPTO Device Types
T10000ES	T1AE34, T1BE34
T1B000T1	T1B34, T1BE34
T1B000TS	T1B34, T1BE34
T1B000E1	T1BE34
T1B000ES	T1BE34

## STORclas Control Statement

The STORclas control statement defines a VSM Storage Class. It is loaded by the MGMTDEF command.

This statement can specify whether a VTV copy is to be written to:

- An MVC (with required attributes)
- The name of a remote TapePlex to which a copy of the VTV is to be exported. It also specifies whether a storage class uses partitioned media.
- The subsystem name of a VLE appliance.

### Syntax

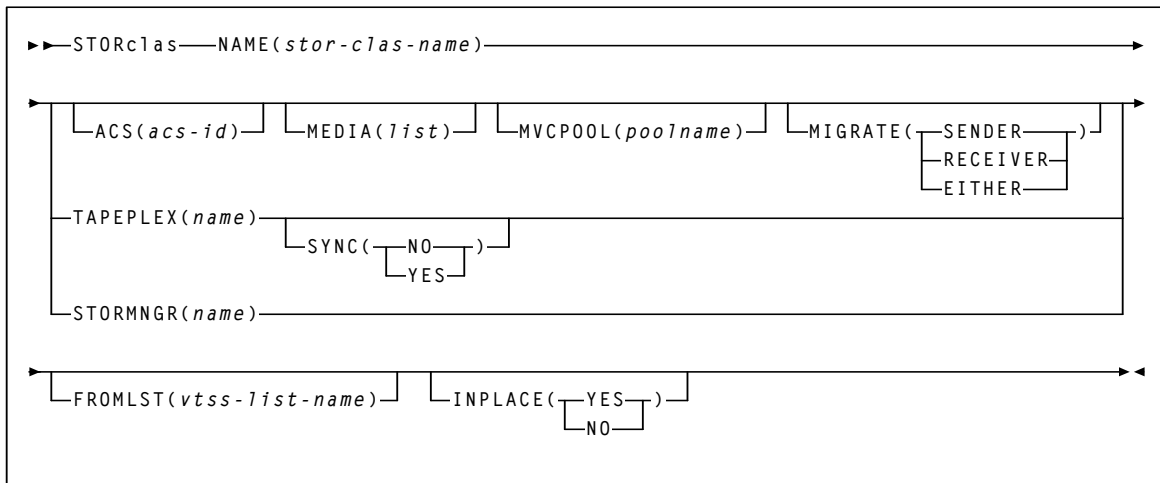


FIGURE 3-142 STORclas control statement syntax

### Parameters

#### NAME

specifies the name of the Storage Class.

*stor-clas-name*

the Storage Class name. This name must be 1 to 8 alphanumeric characters beginning with an alpha character and must follow SMS naming conventions.

#### ACS

optionally, specifies the ACSs from which RTDs and MVCs are selected.

*acs-id*

a two digit decimal ACS identifier from 00-99.

**STORMNGR**

optionally, specifies the Subsystem Name of a VLE appliance. If the specified Subsystem does not exist, then any migrations fail and the VTVs are “stuck” in their source VTSS.

***stormngr***

a Subsystem name. For more information, refer to the publication *Configuring the Host Software for VLE*.

**MEDIA**

optionally, specifies a preference list of MVC media types. This list supersedes the default media selection list. Refer to the publication *Configuring HSC and VTCS* for more information.

***list***

preference list of media types.

**MVCPool**

optionally, specifies the Named MVC Pool from which volumes are selected. If you do not specify an MVC Pool name, the volumes are selected from the default pool (DEFAULTPOOL).

***poolname***

the name of an MVC Pool that you defined on the MVCPool control statement.

**MIGRATE**

optionally, for Management Classes with REPLICAT(YES) that reference this Storage Class, specifies the source VTSS (in a Cluster) for VTV migration. This parameter cannot be specified if FROMLST is specified.

**RECEIVER**

VTSS that receives the replicated VTV (the default), which is the Secondary VTSS in a Primary-Secondary Cluster.

**SENDER**

VTSS that sends the replicated VTV, which is the Primary VTSS in a Primary-Secondary Cluster.

**EITHER**

Either VTSS in a Peer-to-Peer Cluster. The source VTSS is randomly selected.

**TAPEPLEX**

optionally, specifies the name of the TapePlex to which a copy of the VTV is exported. At least one VTSS in the configuration must also specify this name in a CLINK definition.

**SYNC**

optionally, specifies whether the exporting of a VTV to TapePlex is performed synchronously.

**NO**

export of VTV to TapePlex is performed asynchronously. This is the default.

**YES**

export of VTV to TapePlex is performed synchronously.

If a VTV is specified with two storage classes that specify synchronous exporting, only the first one is honored while the second is exported asynchronously. Likewise, if synchronous replication is specified in the management class, then synchronous exporting is ignored.

**FROMLST**

optionally:

- for Management Classes with REPLICAT(YES) that reference this Storage Class, specifies the source VTSS (in a Cluster) for VTV migration.
- for export of a VTV to another TapePlex, specifies the source VTSS for the export. Specification of this parameter for a TapePlex storage class also implies that any replication processing within the TapePlex is completed before the export is performed.

***vtss-list-name***

the name of the VTSSLST statement that contains a list of VTSS names. Either the migrate or export from this storage class will be directed from one of the VTSSs in this list.

- If only one of the VTSSs exists in the list, it is used as the source.
- If both VTSSs are in the list, the VTSS with the highest priority is used as the source.
- If both VTSSs have equal priority, the source VTSS is randomly selected.

**INPLACE**

optionally, specifies whether the storage class has a preference for using partitioned MVCs (when available) for migration. This parameter does not force job allocation or the MVC to use/not use partitioned or standard format media.

If this parameter is not specified, the storage class inherits the INPLACE value specified on the CONFIG RECLAIM statement. See [“CONFIG RECLAIM Statement” on page 228](#) for more information.

**YES**

When available and possible, new media selected for this storage class will be formatted in partitioned mode.

**NO**

When available, new media selected for this storage class will be formatted in standard mode.

---

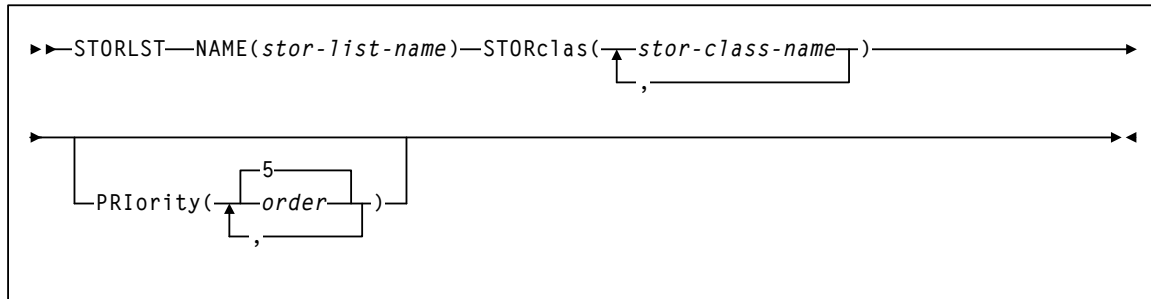
**Note –**

- The CDS must be at H level and dynamic reclaim support must be enabled on the CONFIG RECLAIM configuration statement before any STORCLAS INPLACE parameter is accepted or displayed.
  - **Only** T10000B media is supported for dynamic reclaim. INPLACE is only valid if the storage class has access to this media. Sport cartridges are not supported in partitioned format.
-

## STORLST Control Statement

The STORLST control statement specifies a list of Storage Classes and their corresponding preferencing. It is loaded by the MGMTDEF command.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-143** STORLST control statement syntax

## Parameters

## NAME

specifies the name of the Storage Class list.

*stor-list-name*

the list name (a maximum of 8 alphanumeric characters).

## STORclas

specifies one to ten Storage Classes on the Storage Class list.

*stor-clas-name*

the name of a Storage Class that you defined on the STORclas control statement.

**PRiority**

a list of priorities corresponding to the Storage Classes specified on the `STORclas` parameter.

*order*

the specified priority. Valid values are 0 to 9 (highest priority), and the default is 5. You can assign the same priority to multiple Storage Classes. For example, if two Storage Classes both have a priority of 9, VTCS selects randomly from the two. A 0 (zero) priority specifies that VTCS selects the Storage Class only if all other Storage Classes are unavailable (for example, no free MVCs available for write).

The Storage Class list is further qualified by the criteria specified by the MGMTclas and VTSS parameters of the STORSEL statement.

## STORSEL Control Statement

The STORSEL control statement defines a Storage Class usage rule that applies to the Storage Class list and its preferencing specified on a referenced STORLST control statement. It is loaded by the MGMTDEF command.

### Syntax

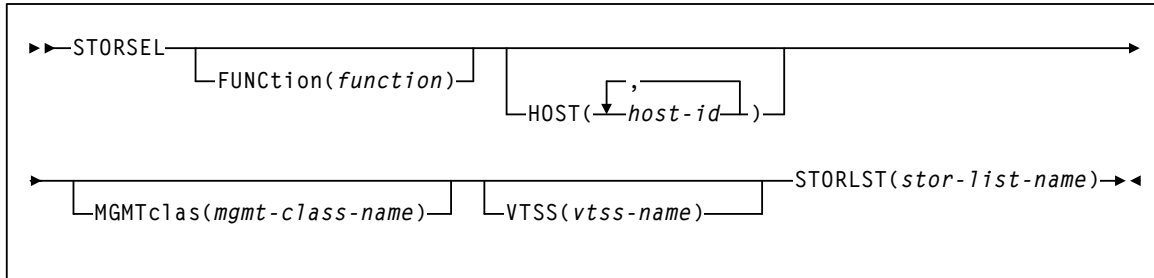


FIGURE 3-144 STORSEL control statement syntax

### Parameters

#### FUNCTION

optionally, specifies the VSM function to which the rule applies. Only one function can be specified per statement. If this parm is omitted, it applies to all functions. If all functions do apply, then it makes economical sense to omit the FUNCTION parm, thus reducing the number of statements to 25% of what would otherwise need to be coded.

#### *function*

the function name, as described in [TABLE 3-10](#).

TABLE 3-10 STORSEL Functions

Function	Explanation
<b>SPECIFIC</b>	Applies to automatic recall of a specific VTV for mounting. The list of Storage Classes is determined by the specified STORLST statement. This list influences the list of RTDs eligible to mount the MVC in the Storage Class to recall the VTV.
<b>RECALL</b>	Applies to demand recall of a specific VTV for mounting. The list of Storage Classes is determined by the specified STORLST statement. This list influences the list of MVC copies of a VTV to select the optimal MVC for recall of the VTV.
<b>EXPORT</b>	Applies to export. The list of Storage Classes is determined by the specified STORLST statement. This list influences the list of MVC copies of a VTV to select the optimal MVC for export of the VTV.
<b>CONSOLID</b>	Applies to consolidate. The list of Storage Classes is determined by the specified STORLST statement. This list influences the list of MVC copies of a VTV to select the optimal MVC for consolidation of the VTV.

**HOST**

optionally, specifies one or more hosts to which the rule applies. If this parameter is used, any hosts not specified on this parameter ignore the rule. If the parameters is not used the statement applies to all hosts.

*host-id*

a host identifier (maximum 8 characters).

**MGMTclas**

optionally, specifies a Management Class.

*mgmt-class-name*

the name of a Management Class that you defined on the MGMTclas control statement.

**VTSS**

optionally, specifies a VTSS.

*vtss-name*

the VTSS name, as follows:

- For automatic recalls, the VTSS where the recall is performed.
- For all other functions, the VTSS where the VTV previously resided. This may be determined from the VTSS value shown in the Display VTV output.

**STORLST**

specifies a list of Storage Classes and their corresponding preferencing.

*stor-list-name*

the name of a Storage Class list that you defined on the STORLST control statement.

---

**Note** – The Storage Class list specified on the STORLST parameter is further qualified by the criteria specified by the MGMTclas and VTSS parameters.

---



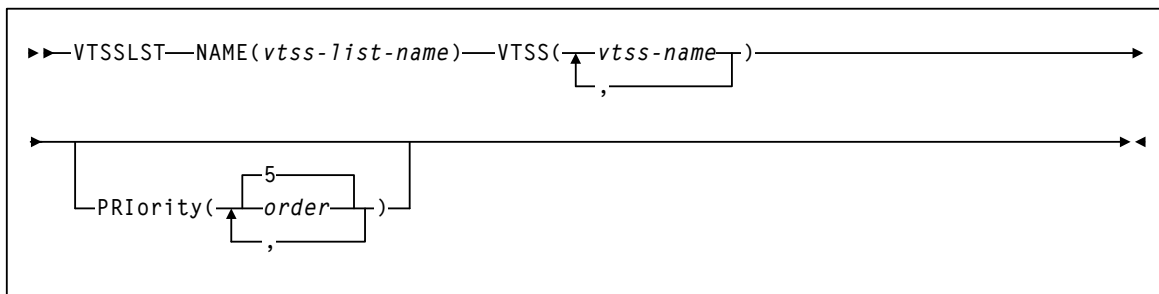
## VTSSLST Control Statement

The VTSSLST control statement specifies a list of VTSSs and their corresponding preferencing. It is loaded by the MGMTDEF command.

VTCS first determines a system priority for each VTSS, based on various factors. For example, whether the VTSS can service the request, whether the required resources are online/available or whether the VTSS is in a compromised state (high DBU).

When more than one VTSS has the highest system priority, VTSSLST priorities can be used to influence which VTSS is used. However, VTSSLST is only considered when there is an obvious choice of VTSSs with equal abilities to service a request.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-145** VTSSLST control statement syntax

## Parameters

## NAME

specifies the name of the VTSS list.

*vtss-list-name*

the list name (a maximum of 8 alphanumeric characters).

## VTSS

specifies one to eight VTSSs on the VTSS list.

*vtss-name*

a VTSS name.

**PRiority**

optionally, lists priorities corresponding to the VTSS names specified on the VTSS parameter.

***order***

the specified priority. Valid values are 0 to 9 (highest priority), and the default is 5. You can assign the same priority to multiple VTSSs.

Within a set of VTSSs with the highest system priority:

- If two or more VTSSs have the same highest VTSSLST priority, VTCS selects randomly from the two (according to factors such as DBU and VSM model).
- A 0 (zero) priority specifies that VTCS selects the VTSS only if all other VTSSs are unavailable (for example, unavailable due to DBU > 95%, VTSS offline, or RTDs offline).

---

**Note** – The VTSS list specified on the VTSSLST parameter is further qualified by:

- The function specified on VTSSSEL statement.
- The criteria specified by the MGMTclas, VTSS, STORclas, and MVCpool parameters of the VTSSSEL statement.
- Other factors such as RTD connectivity.

For example, in scratch allocation, the list of VTSSs is reduced to the VTSSs that can meet Management Class policies (such as REPLICAT(YES)). If the list of VTSSs is reduced to zero, the request fails.

---

## VTSSSEL Control Statement

The VTSSSEL control statement defines a VTSS usage rule that applies to the VTSS list and its preferencing specified on a referenced VTSSLST control statement. It is loaded by the MGMTDEF command.

---

**Note** – VTSSSEL statements are honored only if the VTVs on the MVCs being processed are not resident in a VTSS. If the VTVs are resident, then VTCS ignores the VTSSSEL statement and migrates the VTV from the VTSS where it is resident.

---

### Syntax

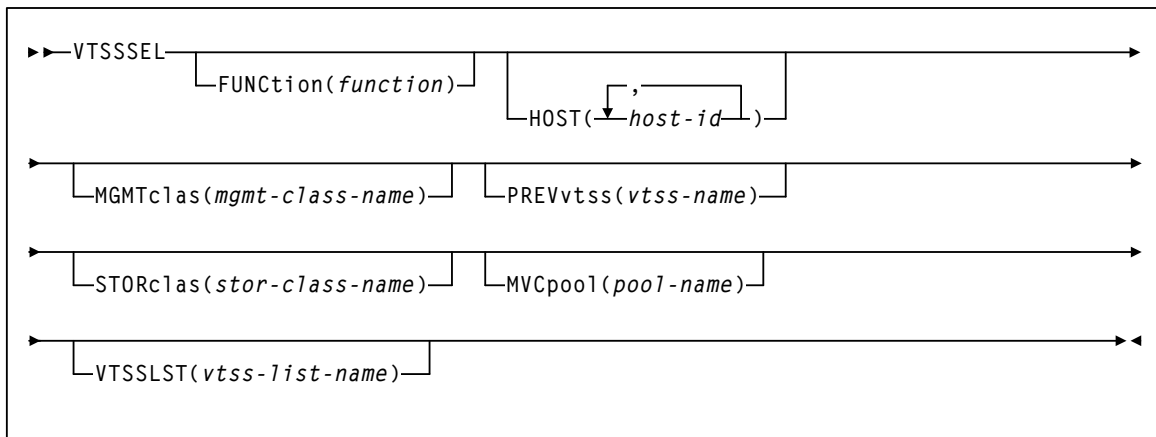


FIGURE 3-146 VTSSSEL control statement syntax

## Parameters

### FUNCTION

optionally, specifies the VSM function to which the rule applies. Only one function can be specified per statement. If this parm is omitted, it applies to all functions. If all functions do apply, then it makes economical sense to omit the FUNCTION parm, thus reducing the number of statements to 25% of what would otherwise need to be coded.

*function*

the function name, as described in [TABLE 3-11](#).

**TABLE 3-11** VTSSSEL Functions

Function	Explanation
<b>SCRATCH</b>	Applies to non-specific (scratch) VTV allocation. The list of eligible VTDs is determined by the specified VTSSLST statement. The PREVVTSS, STORclas and MVCpool parameters do not apply.
<b>SPECIFIC</b>	Applies to specific VTV allocation. The list of eligible VTDs is determined by the specified VTSSLST statement. The STORclas and MVCpool parameters do not apply.
<b>RECALL</b>	Applies to demand recall. The list of eligible VTSSs for recall is determined by the specified VTSSLST statement. The VTSS list also determines the search order for an RTD to service the MVCs selected for recall (derived from the VTVs selected). The MGMTclas parameter does not apply.
<b>RECLAIM</b>	Applies to reclaim. The list of eligible VTSSs for reclaim is determined by the specified VTSSLST statement. The VTSS list also determines the search order for an RTD to service the MVCs selected for reclaim. The MGMTclas parameter does not apply.
<b>DRAIN</b>	Applies to drain. The list of eligible VTSSs for drain is determined by the specified VTSSLST statement. The VTSS list also determines the search order for an RTD to service the MVCs selected for drain. The MGMTclas parameter does not apply.
<b>MOVEVTVS</b>	Applies when an ARCHIVE or RECONCIL command has the MOVEVTV parameter specified. The list of eligible VTSSs for moving the VTVs via is determined by the specified VTSSLST statement. The VTSS list also determines the search order for an RTD to service the MVCs selected for processing. The MGMTclas parameter does not apply.
<b>AUDIT</b>	Applies to MVC audit. The list of eligible VTSSs for audit is determined by the specified VTSSLST statement. The VTSS list also determines the search order for an RTD to service the MVCs selected for audit. The MGMTclas parameter does not apply.
<b>EXPORT</b>	Applies to export. The list of eligible VTSSs for export is determined by the specified VTSSLST statement. VTSS list also determines the search order for an RTD to service the MVCs selected for export. The MGMTclas parameter does not apply.
<b>CONSOLID</b>	Applies to consolidate. The list of eligible VTSSs for consolidation is determined by the specified VTSSLST statement. VTSS list also determines the search order for an RTD to service the MVCs selected for consolidation. The MGMTclas parameter does not apply.

**HOST**

optionally, specifies one or more hosts to which the rule applies. If this parameter is used, any hosts not specified on this parameter ignore the rule. If the parameters is not used the statement applies to all hosts.

*host-id*

a host identifier (maximum 8 characters).

---

**Note** – The VTSS list specified on the VTSSLST parameter is further qualified by the criteria specified by the MGMTclas, VTSS, STORclas, and MVCpool parameters.

---

**MGMTclas**

optionally, specifies a Management Class.

*mgmt-class-name*

the name of a Management Class that you defined on the MGMTclas control statement.

**PREVvtss**

optionally, specifies a VTSS where a VTV:

- Is or resident
- Was migrated from

**STORclas**

optionally, specifies a Storage Class and applies only when MVCs are used to select VTSSs.

*stor-clas-name*

the name of a Storage Class that you defined on the STORclas control statement.

**MVCpool**

optionally, specifies a Named MVC Pool and applies only when MVCs are used to select VTSSs.

*poolname*

the name of an MVC Pool that you defined on the MVCpool control statement.

**VTSSLST**

optionally, specifies a list of VTSSs and their corresponding preferencing.

*vtss-list-name*

the name of a VTSS list that you defined on the VTSSLST control statement.

# MIGrate

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UUI: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

The MIGrate command migrates VTVs to MVCs.

## Syntax (Format 1)

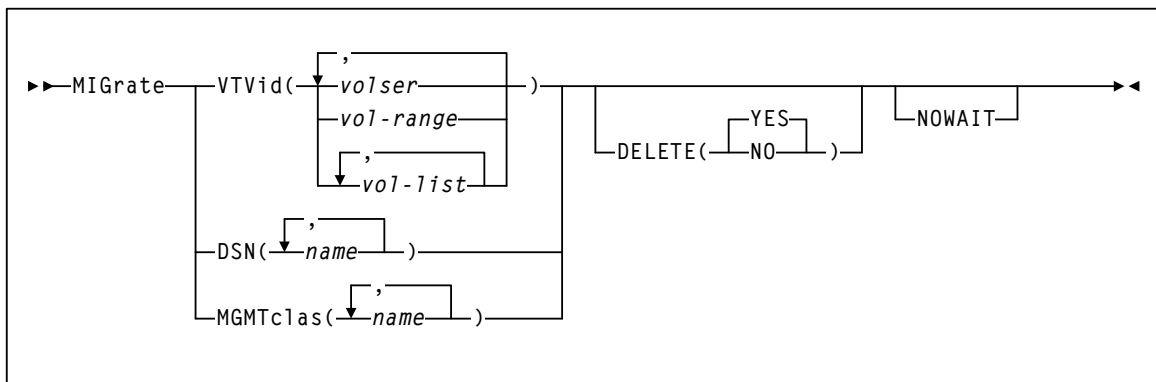


FIGURE 3-147 MIGrate syntax (Format 1)

## Parameters (Format 1)

### VTVid

specifies the VTVs to migrate.

*volser*, *vol-range*, or *vol-list*

the volser of one or more VTVs. You can also specify one or more ranges.

### DSN

specifies data sets used to select VTVs to migrate.

*name*

the data set name. [TABLE 3-12](#) describes the valid wild cards for data set names. You cannot address a member of a GDG using a wildcard.

**TABLE 3-12** Valid Wildcards

Wildcard	Stands for...
*	A qualifier or one or more characters within a qualifier. An asterisk can precede or follow a set of characters.
**	zero or more qualifiers. A double asterisk cannot precede or follow any characters; it must be preceded or followed by either a period or a blank.
% or ?	Exactly one alphanumeric or national character.
%% or ??	One to eight percent signs or question marks can be specified in each qualifier.

---

**Note** – Wildcard are only supported on MVS systems running DFSMS/MVS 1.4 or greater. At systems below this level the catalog search does not support wildcard.

---

### MGMTclas

specifies one or more Management Classes that determine one or more VTVs to migrate.

*mgmt-class-name* | *mgmt-class-list*

the names of one or more Management Classes that you defined on the MGMTclas control statement; for more information, see [“MGMTclas Control Statement” on page 440](#).

---

**Note** – MGMTclas, VTVid, and DSN are mutually exclusive.

---

### DELETE

optionally, specifies whether VSM deletes VTVs from the VTSS after migrating the VTVs.

**NO**

do not delete VTVs from the VTSS after migrating the VTVs.

**YES**

delete VTVs from the VTSS after migrating the VTVs (the default).

## NOWAIT

specifies that the utility does not wait for the operation to complete and returns after the request is submitted.

## Syntax (Format 2)

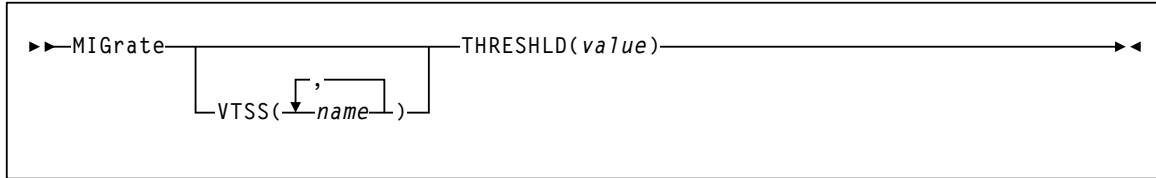


FIGURE 3-148 MIGrate syntax (Format 2)

## Parameters (Format 2)

### VTSS

specifies one or more VTSSs to migrate to the specified threshold.

*name*

the names of one or more VTSSs.

### THRESHLD

specifies that VTCS runs the VTSS space management/VTV migration cycle until VTSS space reaches the specified threshold. Valid values are 0 to 95%.

*value*

the threshold to migrate to (percent of VTSS space).



# MNTD

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB only  
 UUI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

The MNTD command specifies how HSC processes mounts and dismounts of library volumes.

## Syntax

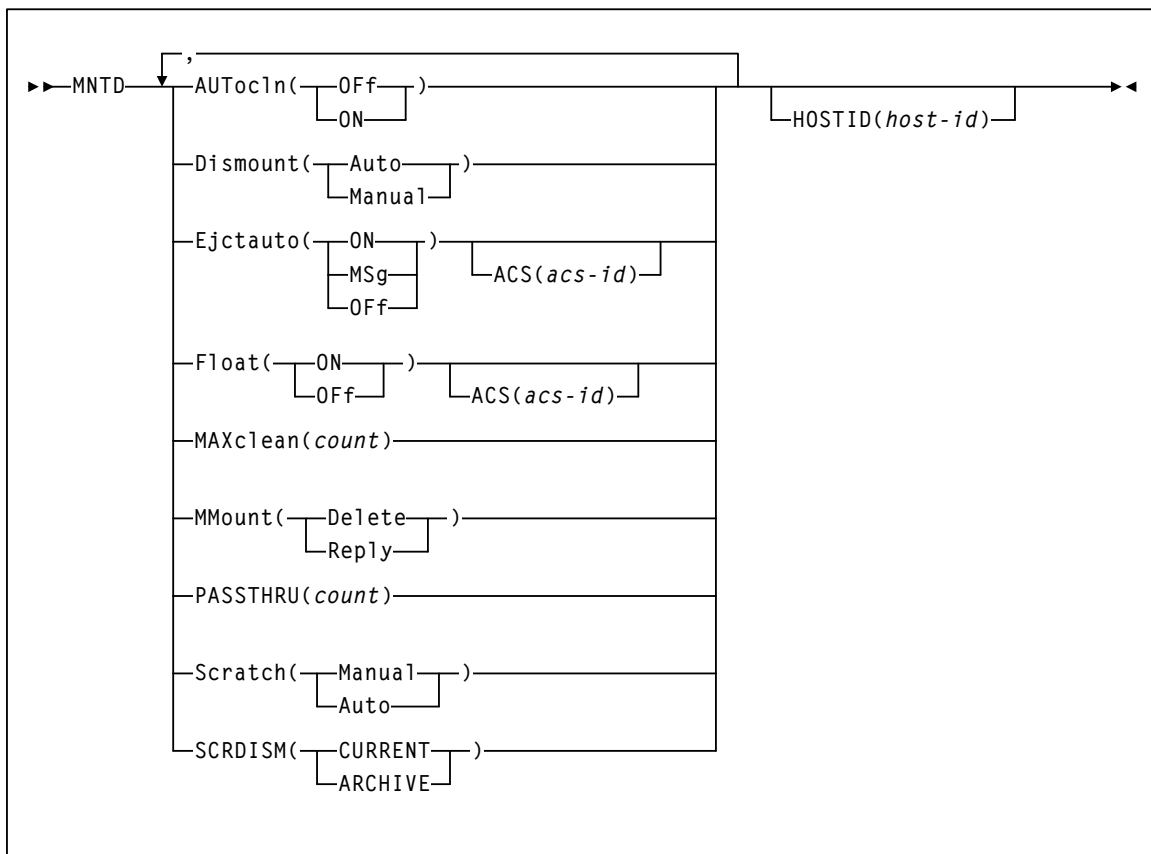


FIGURE 3-149 MNTD syntax

## Parameters

### **AUtocln**

controls automated transport cleaning.

#### **Off**

disables the automated cleaning function. Off is the initial value for the HSC.

#### **ON**

enables the following HSC cleaning functions:

- the automated cleaning function, which detects when a transport requires cleaning and schedules the mount of a cleaning cartridge prior to the next volume mount
- the CLean command which is used to schedule the mount of a cleaning cartridge for a specified transport. See [“CLEan” on page 212](#) for more information.

### **Dismount**

specifies whether volumes are to be deleted automatically from the control data set when a dismount is requested in a manual mode LSM for a volume that was mounted by the robot before the LSM was modified offline.

#### **Auto**

indicates that volumes are to be automatically deleted from the control data set when a manual dismount is requested for a volume that was mounted by the robot. Auto is the initial value for the HSC.

#### **Manual**

directs the HSC to issue a message prompting the operator to decide whether the volume is to be deleted from the control data set when a manual dismount is requested for a volume that was mounted by the robot.

Setting Dismount to Manual is useful when an LSM is modified offline for only a short time. In this case, the operator can choose to not respond to the dismount message and leave the volume mounted on the transport. When the LSM is modified online the HSC re-drives the outstanding dismount request, causing the robot to dismount the volume and place it in a storage cell.

**EJctauto**

controls automatic ejection of cleaning cartridges that have exceeded their maximum use.

In a multi-host environment, the EJctauto setting for a given ACS should be the same on all hosts. EJctauto status is not shared among the HSCs on different hosts.

**ON**

directs the HSC to automatically eject cleaning cartridges that have exceeded the number of times they can be used (as specified by the MNTD MAXclean or VOLATTR MAXclean parameters). ON is the initial value for the HSC.

**MSg**

directs the HSC to prompt the operator to either eject an over use-limit cartridge from the ACS or to keep a cleaning cartridge in the ACS.

**OFF**

directs the HSC to keep an over use-limit cleaning cartridge in the ACS. A message is issued displaying the cleaning cartridge's volser and describing this action.

**ACS**

optionally, specifies that the EJctauto settings apply only to the specified ACS. If this parameter is omitted, EJctauto settings affect all ACSs.

***acsid***

indicates a decimal value from 00 to 99 that identifies the ACS. A single digit *acsid* can be entered.

**Float**

specifies whether the HSC is to select a new home cell location when it dismounts a volume that required a pass-thru when it was mounted.

In multi-host environments, the Float setting for a specific ACS should be the same on all hosts. Float status is not shared among the HSCs on different hosts.

**ON**

directs the HSC to select a new home cell location for the volume in the LSM where the dismount occurs (provided a cell is available). If no cells are available in the new LSM, a location is chosen in the nearest LSM with free cells or the volume can be forced to its original home cell. Setting Float to ON reduces the number of pass-thru operations. ON is the initial value for the HSC.

**OFF**

directs the HSC to return the volume to its original home cell location when it is dismounted.

---

**Note** – The MNTD Float OFF command is useful for remote ACS/CDS link down situations to avoid control data set integrity issues by making sure cartridges are returned to their original home cell locations. Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for information about remote libraries.

---

**ACS**

optionally, specifies that the Float setting applies only to this ACS. If the ACS parameter is omitted, the Float setting affects all ACSs.

***acsid***

a decimal value from 00 to 99 that identifies the ACS. A single digit acsid can be entered.

**MAXclean**

specifies the maximum number of times a cleaning cartridge is to be used.

**Note –**

- The **EJctauto** setting in effect for the ACS controls how cleaning cartridges are handled when they exceed their maximum use.
- In a multi-host environment, the **MAXclean** setting should be the same on all hosts. The **MAXclean** value is not shared among the HSCs on different hosts.
- Follow the cartridge vendor's recommendations for the number of times a cleaning cartridge should be used.

***count***

a decimal value, in the range from 1 through 32767. The initial value for the HSC is 100.

**Note –**

- The *count* value applies to each cleaning cartridge in the library.
- When a cleaning cartridge is used *count* number of times, it is not selected if there are cleaning cartridges compatible with the transports in the ACS that have been used less than *count* number of times. Over use-limit cleaning cartridges may be automatically ejected, depending on the MNTD EJctauto setting.

**MMount**

specifies whether or not a mount message is issued during manual mode that allows the operator to retain a manually mounted volume in the control data set.

**Delete**

generates a manual mode mount message which prompts the operator to respond "D" to delete the volume from the control data set, or "I" to ignore the mount request. Delete is the initial value of the HSC.

**Reply**

generates a manual mode mount message which prompts the operator to reply "M" to DOM the message and retain the volume in the control data set, or "I" to ignore the mount request.

---

**Note –** When MNTD MMount(Reply) is specified, the HSC action for a manual mode dismount is determined by the MNTD Dismount setting.

---

**PASSTHRU**

specifies the maximum number of pass-thrus that can occur to allow cartridge archival if SCRDISM(ARCHIVE) is specified.

***count***

the maximum number of pass-thrus allowed for archival of cartridges. Allowable values are decimal in the range from 1 through 99. The initial value of the HSC is 1.

**Scratch**

determines how a scratch volume is selected to satisfy a scratch mount request for a manual mode LSM.

**Manual**

specifies that the operator must select a scratch volume when a scratch mount is requested for a manual mode LSM. Manual is the initial value for the HSC.

**Auto**

directs the HSC to select a scratch volume when a scratch mount is requested for a manual mode LSM. If Scratch is set to Auto, the HSC manual mount message indicates the cartridge VOLSER and cell location as if it were a request for a specific volume.

**SCRDISM**

specifies whether or not scratch volumes mounted in a 9310 or 9360 LSM are to be automatically archived to a larger or slower LSM upon dismount.

---

**Note –** 9740 LSMs cannot attach to any other type of LSM. Thus, SCRDISM does not affect mounts in ACSs containing 9740s.

---

**CURRENT**

indicates that scratch volumes mounted in a 9310 or 9360 LSM are to be dismounted according to the MNTD Float parameter setting. CURRENT is the initial value for the HSC.

**ARCHIVE**

indicates that scratch volumes mounted in a 9310 or 9360 LSM are to be archived into a larger or slower storage device. Archival occurs only if the number of pass-thrus does not exceed PASSTHRU. Archival of a cartridge can occur

- from a 9360 to either a 9310 or a 4410
- from a 9310 to a 4410.

**Note –**

- SCRDISM(ARCHIVE) overrides the MNTD Float parameter setting.
  - The ARCHIVE parameter does not affect dismounts in ACSs containing 9740 LSMs.
-

**HOSTID**

optionally, identifies the host associated with the MNTD command. This allows you to restrict certain startup options to a specific host.

If this parameter is not specified, the command is executed by each host that accesses PARMLIB.

*host-id*

the host ID (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).

---

**Note** – If the *host-id* does not match the host executing the command, a message is issued and the command is not processed.

---

# MODify

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB only  
 UUI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

The MODify command performs the following functions:

- modifies a CAP or an LSM online or offline to all hosts, independent of the issuing host
- starts dynamic hardware reconfiguration for a SL3000 or a SL8500 library
- adds, deletes, or updates an SL3000 or SL8500 ACS definition in the CDS that was preallocated using the SLILIBRY FUTRACS parameter

Dynamic hardware reconfiguration for the SL3000 and SL8500 libraries represents the portion of Near Continuous Operation (NCO) that allows you to dynamically add or delete drives and expansion panels.

Enter the MODify CONFIG command to activate dynamic hardware reconfiguration.

Refer to the publication *Configuring HSC and VTCS* for more information about Near Continuous Operation and dynamic hardware reconfiguration.

---

**Warning – Before** you enter MODify CONFIG, perform a backup of the CDS.

---



---

**Note –** It is possible to remove LSMs from the SL8500 configuration without performing a LIBGEN, MERGEcds, and recycle of the HSC. However, this operation requires assistance from Oracle StorageTek Support.

---

The MODify command differs from the Vary command in the following ways:

- The MODify command places a specified CAP or LSM online/offline globally to all hosts.
  - A CAP that is modified offline cannot be used for eject/enter processing.
  - An LSM that is modified offline must be operated in manual mode.
  - A manual mode LSM is still available for diagnostic requests from a host.
- The Vary command places a host station online/offline to an LMU.
  - A host that has all of its LMU stations varied offline is disconnected from all LSMs attached to the LMU.
  - An LSM can still be used to semi-automate cartridge handling for a disconnected host by issuing HSC commands from a connected host.

## Syntax

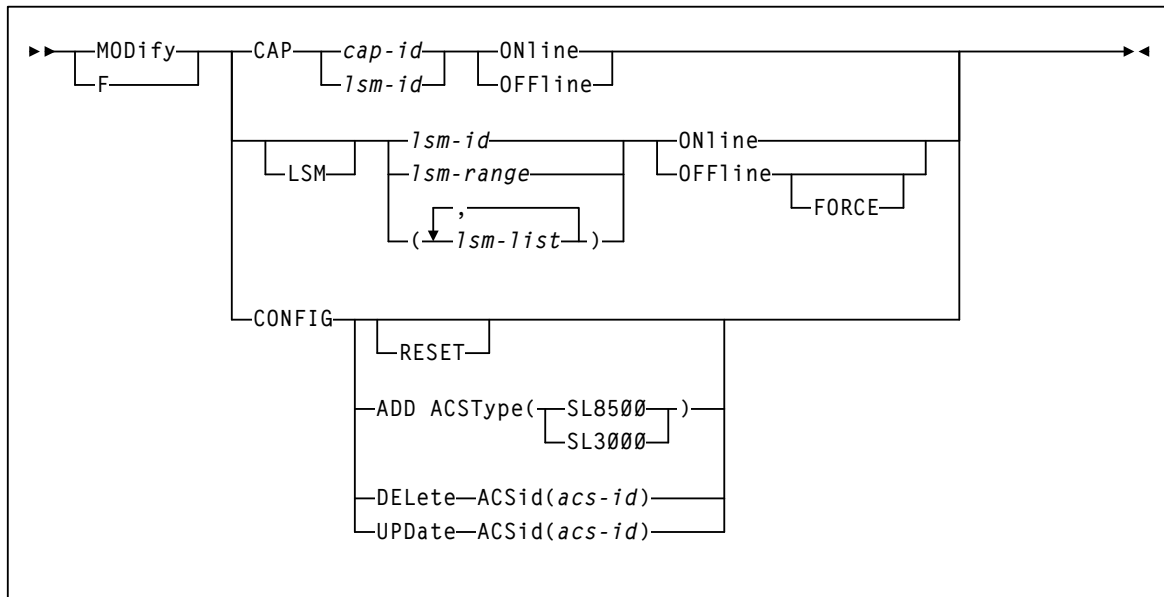


FIGURE 3-150 MODify syntax

## Parameters

### CAP

specifies that a CAP is to be modified online/offline to all hosts.

#### *cap-id*

a specific CAP to be modified online/offline. The format of a *cap-id* is AA:LL:CC, where AA:LL is the LSMid, and CC is the CAP. See [“CAPid” on page 730](#) for a list of valid values.

#### *lsm-id*

a standard CAP to be modified online/offline. The format of an LSMid is AA:LL, where AA is the ACSid (decimal 00-99) and LL is the LSM number (decimal 00-99).

### ONline

specifies that the CAP is to be modified online to all hosts. When a CAP is modified online, the HSC attempts to restore the CAP mode (automatic or manual) that was in effect when the CAP was modified offline.

### OFFline

specifies that the CAP is to be modified offline to all hosts. Modifying a CAP offline places it in an unavailable state, preventing it from being allocated. The CAP mode (automatic or manual) is retained in the control data set.



---

**Caution –**

- Be sure to specify the CAP parameter to modify a CAP offline. If the LSM is online, and you specify an *lsm-id* to modify the CAP offline but do not specify the CAP parameter, the LSM will be modified offline.
  - Use this command only in an emergency. Make sure the CAP is not being used by another active process. Issuing the MODify command on an active CAP may cause the process using the CAP to receive errors.
- 

**LSM**

optionally, indicates that one or more LSMs are to be modified online/offline to all hosts.

***lsm-id* or *lsm-range* or *lsm-list***

one or more LSMs to be modified online/offline to all hosts. Each *lsm-list* element may be either a single LSMid or an LSMid range. The elements in a list must be separated by commas or blanks, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (decimal 00-99) and *LL* is the LSM number (decimal 00-99).

**ONline**

specifies that the LSMs are to be modified online to all hosts. Modifying an LSM online places it in automatic mode. When an LSM is modified online, CAPs that were in auto mode before the LSM was modified offline are again placed in auto mode (unlocked state).

**OFFline**

specifies that the LSMs are to be modified offline to all hosts. Modifying an LSM offline places it in manual mode. CAPs in a manual mode LSM cannot be used, but the auto/manual state of each CAP is retained.

**FORCE**

specifies that the LSM(s) is to be modified offline immediately. FORCE is only used with the OFFline parameter to modify an LSM offline.

**CONFIG****(no parameters)**

optionally, initiates the Near Continuous Operation (NCO) for hardware reconfiguration process for SL3000 and SL8500 libraries. This is a system wide change which propagates to all hosts connected to the CDS.

---

**Note –** Refer to the publication *Configuring HSC and VTCS* for more information about Near Continuous Operation and dynamic hardware reconfiguration.

---



---

**Warning –** Before you enter MODify CONFIG, perform a backup of the CDS.

---

**ADD**

initiates an NCO configuration change to add one ACS to the HSC configuration. The ACS added takes on the library characteristics of the library type specified by the ACSType parameter. The number of ACSs that can be added is limited by the number specified on the SLILIBRY FUTRACS parameter.

**ACSType**

specifies the library type to use for the configuration change. Options are SL3000 or SL8500.

**DELeTe**

initiates an NCO configuration change to delete the disconnected ACS specified in the ACSid(*acs-id*) parameter.

If the ACSid is the highest numbered ACS, the ACS is entirely deleted and can be re-added as a different ACSType. If the ACSid is not the highest numbered ACS, the ACS becomes a place holder with a status of unallocated and can be re-added only as the same ACSType.

**RESET**

resets internal flags for any host that may be failing as a hardware configuration is being performed. When the failing host comes back up, the new hardware configuration is automatically recognized and implemented.

A reset is intended only to reset a failing host and does not initiate the actual dynamic hardware reconfiguration operation. The MODify CONFIG command, without the RESET parameter, must be run separately to invoke dynamic hardware reconfiguration.

**UPDate**

initiates an NCO configuration change to update the ACS configuration specified in the ACSid(*acs-id*) parameter. This is not a system wide change and does not propagate to other hosts connected to the CDS. If a system wide update is needed, enter the MODify CONFIG command minus any additional parameters

The ADD and DELeTe parameters are only valid if the FUTRACS parameter was specified in the SLILIBRY macro during the LIBGEN process.

---

# Mount

**Interfaces:**

Console or utility  
UI: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

The Mount command mounts a scratch or specific volume on a transport, or mounts a VTV on a VTD and optionally assigns a Management Class to that VTV.

---

**Note** – Do not use this command to manage a mount that appears to have been missed by a batch job. Instead, use the SMC RESYNChronize command to automate pending mounts. See [“RESYNChronize” on page 130](#) for more information.

---

## Syntax

**To mount a specific Nearline volume on a transport:**

```
►► Mount — volser — devaddr —————►
                        |
                        | ,
                        | host-id | Readonly | ForceRT |
                        |_____|
```

**To mount a scratch volume on a transport:**

```
►► Mount —————►
►
| SCRTCH | devaddr —————►
| PRIVAT | | host-id | SUBpool(subpool-name) | MEDIA(media-type) |
|_____|
```

**To mount a VTV on a VTD and optionally, assign a management class to the VTV:**

```
►► Mount — volser — devaddr —————►
           | SCRTCH | | MGMTclas(mgmt-clas-name) |
```

FIGURE 3-151 Mount syntax

## Parameters

### To Mount a Specific Volume on a Transport

***volser***

specifies the volume to be mounted.

***devaddr***

specifies the device address of the transport on which to mount the volume.

***host-id***

optionally, indicates that the volume is to be mounted on the device address defined to the specified host (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).

---

**Note** – The *host-id* specified is only used for device address resolution. The *host-id* for subpool validation is obtained from the command origin.

---

**Readonly**

indicates that the volume is to be mounted for read-only access.

If you do not supply a *host-id* and do specify Readonly, a comma must be entered immediately before Readonly to indicate the missing operand. For example:

```
MOUNT 123456 0B0 , ,READONLY
```

**ForceRT**

optionally, allows a volume to be mounted on a device with a different recording technique. The media type for the volume must be compatible with the device. Caution should be used because it is possible to mount a volume written at a high density on a drive that is not capable of reading the high density.

## To Mount a Scratch Volume on a Transport

### SCRATCH

specifies a scratch volume is to be mounted.

### PRIVAT

specifies a scratch volume is to be mounted.

### *devaddr*

specifies the device address of the transport on which to mount the volume.

### *host-id*

optionally, indicates that the volume is to be mounted on the device address defined to the specified host (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).

---

**Note** – The *hostid* specified is only used for device address resolution, The *hostid* for subpool validation is obtained from the command origin.

---

### SUBpool

optionally, indicates the scratch volume is to be taken from a scratch subpool. If this parameter is not specified, then the behavior is dependent upon how scratch pools were defined:

- If VOLPARM specified, then the volume will be selected from the DEFAULTPOOL which contains all scratch tapes in the ACS that were specified in VOLPARM but were not assigned to a named subpool.
- If VOLPARM not specified (i.e. VOLATTR, or UX03 scratch pool definitions), then the volume will be selected from subpool-0 which contains all scratch tapes in the ACS including both non-subpool and subpool volumes.

### *subpool-name*

is the name of the subpool from which the scratch volume is to be taken.

### MEDia

optionally, specifies the type of media for the scratch volume. The specified media must be compatible with the requested *devaddr*.

---

**Note** – If **MEDia** is not specified, the next scratch cartridge is selected without regard to media type.

---

### *media-type*

the media type

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for a list of valid *media-type* values.

## To Mount a VTV on a VTD and Optionally, Assign a Management Class to the VTV

***volser* | SCRTCH**

specifies a specific VTV volser or the scratch VTV attribute (SCRTCH).

***volser***

the volser of a specific VTV.

***devaddr***

specifies the MVS device address of the VTD to use to mount the VTV.

**MGMTclas**

optionally, specifies a Management Class you defined on the MGMTclas control statement.

***mgmt-class-name***

the Management Class name.

# MOVE

**Interfaces:**

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

The MOVE command moves volumes to specified locations within the same LSM or to any other LSM within an ACS.

**Note –**

- Movement of volumes to all LSMs is done on a first-come first-served basis. As volumes are moved, should an LSM become fully populated before the move request is satisfied for that LSM, the move request continues with the movement of volumes designated for the next LSM specified in the request. An LSM is fully populated when all available cells contain tape cartridges. This process continues until the entire move request is completed or all destination LSMs are full.
- Moves are performed one at a time to allow for other LSM activity.

## Syntax

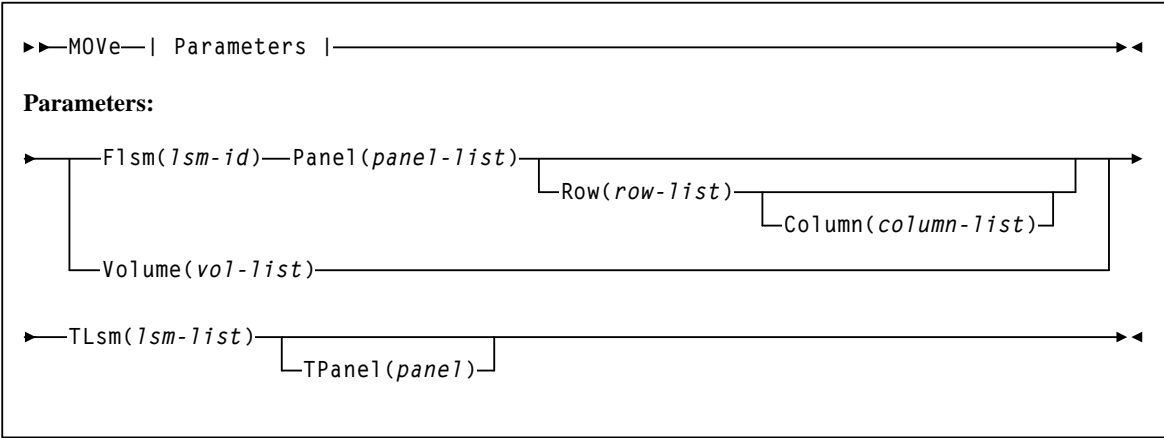


FIGURE 3-152 MOVE syntax



## Parameters

### Flsm

specifies the “From” LSMid in the format *AA:LL* that the cartridges are to be moved from. If you specify the **Flsm** parameter, you may not specify the Volume parameter.

#### *lsm-id*

LSM identifier name. An LSMid (*lsm-id*) is made up of the ACSid (decimal 00-99) and the LSM number (decimal 00-99) separated by a colon (:).

### Panel

specifies a panel number to be moved from. This parameter has a corequisite of the **Flsm** parameter and is required.

An entire panel can be emptied if the **Row** and **Column** parameters are not specified.

#### *panel-list*

a one or two digit panel number. Ranges are not valid. This parameter cannot contain a list if a list is specified for the **Row** or **Column** parameter.

Panels specified by *panel-list* are excluded as destination panels if cartridges are being moved within the same LSM.

A *panel-list* element is a one or two digit decimal number, specific to the LSM type. See “[Panels](#)” on page 731 for a list of valid values.

### Row

specifies a list of rows to be moved from. This parameter has a corequisite of the **Panel** parameter.

#### *row-list*

a one or two digit row number or list of row numbers. The maximum list allowed is four rows. However, this parameter cannot contain a list if a list was specified for the **Column** parameter. Ranges are not valid.

A *row-list* element is a one or two digit decimal number, specific to the LSM type. See “[Rows](#)” on page 732 for a list of valid values.

### Column

specifies a list of columns to be moved from. This parameter has a corequisite of the **Row** parameter and is optional. If this parameter is not specified, all columns will be moved for the rows specified.

#### *column-list*

a one or two digit column number or list of column numbers. This parameter cannot contain a list if a list was specified for the **Row** parameter. Ranges are not valid.

A *column-list* element is a one or two digit decimal number, specific to the LSM type. See “[Columns](#)” on page 733 for a list of valid values.

### Volume

optionally, specifies volumes to be moved.

#### *vol-list*

a list of volumes (a maximum of 300 can be specified) or a range of volumes. If you specify the **Volume** parameter, you may not specify the **Flsm** parameter.

**TLsm**

specifies the target LSM(s). This is a required parameter. The LSMs are specified as *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid and *LL* is the LSMid. The ACSid:

- must be identical to the Flsm parameter “aa” (ACSid), or
- must be the same ACS in which the volume resides if the Volume parameter is specified.

***lsm-list***

a list of LSMs (a maximum of 24 can be specified). Ranges are invalid. An LSMid (*lsm-id*) is made up of the ACSid (decimal 00-99) and the LSM number (decimal 00-99) separated by a colon (:).

**TPanel**

optionally, specifies the panel in the **TLsm** to move the cartridge(s) to.

***panel***

a one or two digit panel number. This parameter cannot contain a list or range. See [“Panels” on page 731](#) for a list of valid values.

# MVCDRain

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

The MVCDRain command recalls all current and scratched VTVs from an MVC and, optionally, “virtually” ejects the MVC, making it unavailable for VSM use without physically ejecting it from the library. You can use this command to override the CONFIG RECLAIM CONMVC setting.

## Syntax

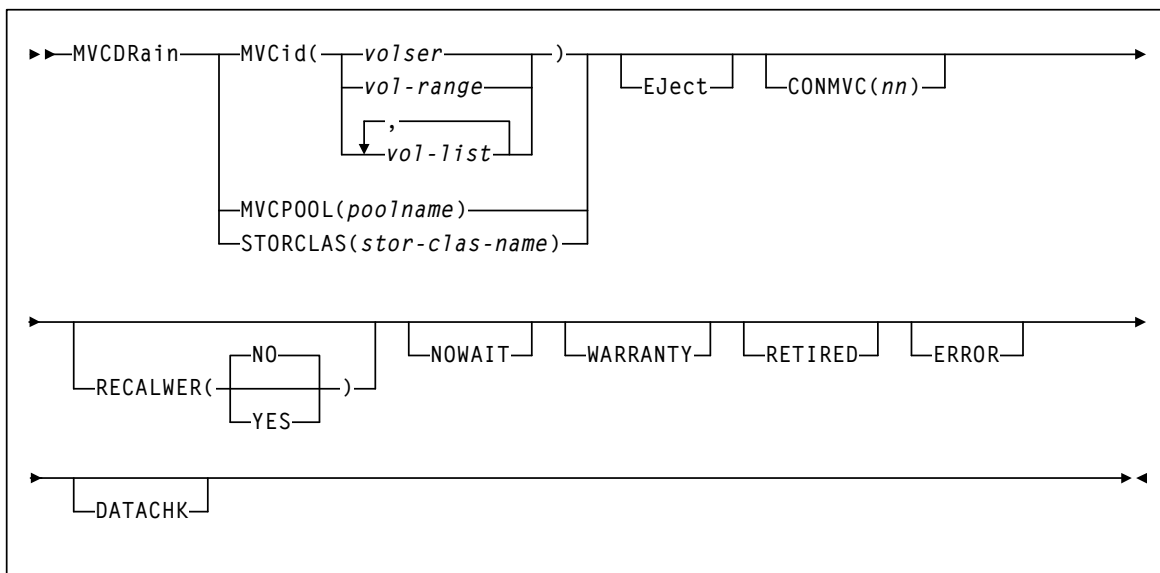


FIGURE 3-153 MVCDRain syntax

## Parameters

### MVCid

drain one or more MVCs by volser.

*volser*, *vol-range*, or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more MVCs up to a maximum of 50.

### MVCPOOL

drain the MVCs in the specified Named MVC Pool.

*poolname*

the name of an MVC Pool that you defined on the MVCPOOL control statement.  
Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for more information.

### STORCLAS

drain the MVCs in the specified Storage Class.

*stor-class-name*

the name of a Storage Class that you defined on the STORclas control statement;  
for more information, see [“STORclas Control Statement” on page 458](#).

### Eject

optionally, specifies that VTCS “virtually” ejects the MVC (the MVC will not be used for output).

### CONMVC(*nn*)

optionally, specifies the maximum number of MVCs that VTCS concurrently processes for both drain and reclaim.

Valid values are 1 to 99. If not specified, the default is the CONMVC value specified on the CONFIG RECLAIM statement.

### RECALWER

optionally, specifies whether VTCS recalls VTVs with read data checks.

**NO**

Do not recall VTVs with read data checks. This is the default.

**YES**

Recall VTVs with read data checks.

### NOWAIT

optionally, specifies that the utility does not wait for the operation to complete and returns after the request is submitted.

### WARRANTY

optionally, selects MVCs with expired warranties (denoted by a W in the Status T column on an MVC Report).

### RETIRED

optionally, selects MVCs that are retired (denoted by a T in the Status T column on an MVC Report).

**ERROR**

selects MVCs that are in error (denoted by a B in the Status B column on an MVC Report).

**DATACHK**

selects MVCs that have a data check (denoted by a D in the Status D column on an MVC Report).

# MVCMAINT

## Interfaces:

Utility only  
 UUI: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

- Active HSC/VTCS required if RENVTSS is specified
- Can run in batch-only mode when there are no hosts active (on any LPAR) using the CDS that is to be updated

## Description

The MVCMAINT command specifies MVC attributes.

## Syntax

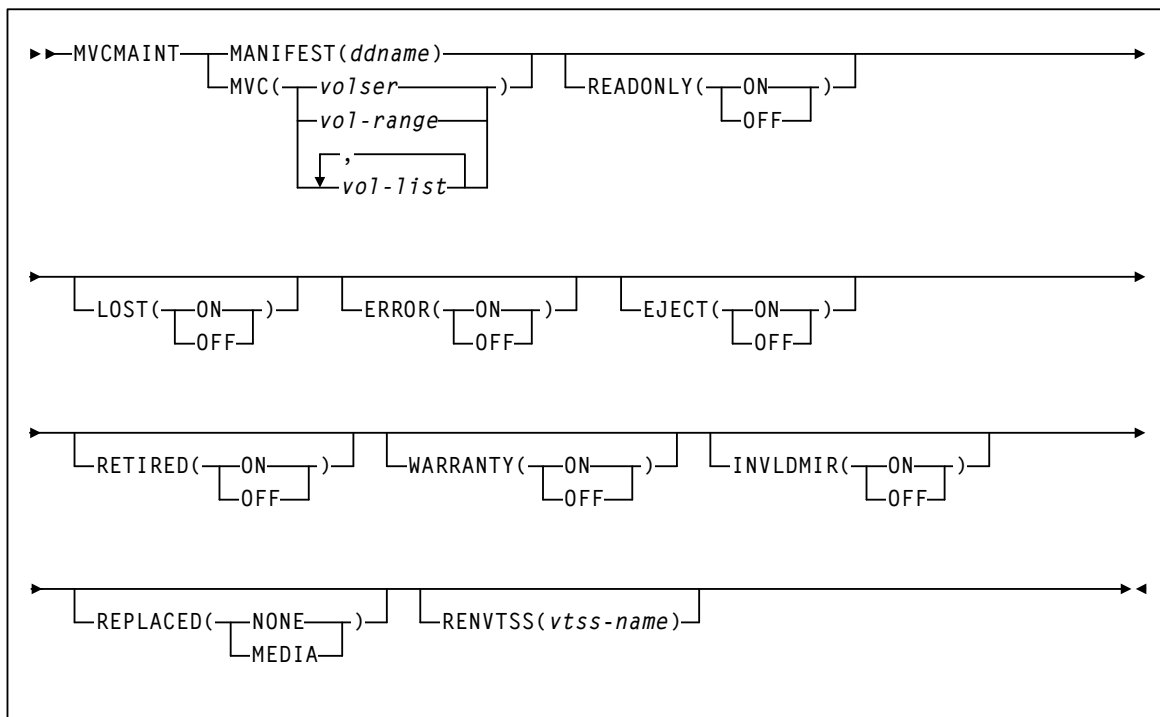


FIGURE 3-154 MVCMAINT syntax

## Parameters

### MANIFEST

specifies the input ddname of the manifest file. **Note that** you can specify a merged manifest file or multiple manifest files.

*ddname*

ddname of the manifest file. The default is MANIFEST.

When specified, VTCS reads the MANIFEST file to discover which MVCs are to be updated (all MVCs in the manifest file). VTCS then updates the MVCs in the CDS with the actions specified by the remaining parameters (LOST, READONLY, etc.)

### MVC

optionally, specifies the MVCs whose read/write attribute is changed.

*volser*, *vol-range* or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more MVCs.

### READONLY

optionally, sets the read/write status of the MVC.

**ON**

MVC is readonly.

**OFF**

MVCs is writable.

### LOST

optionally, sets the “lost” status of the MVC.

**ON**

MVC is lost.

**OFF**

MVC is not lost.

### ERROR

optionally, sets the error status of the MVC.

**ON**

MVC is in error.

**OFF**

MVC is not in error.

### EJECT

optionally, sets the “logical eject” status of the MVC.

**ON**

MVC is “logically ejected”.

**OFF**

MVC is not “logically ejected”.

**RETIRED**

optionally, sets the “retired” status of the MVC.

**ON**

MVC is retired.

**OFF**

MVC is not retired but is still in “expired warranty” state (still selectable for output).

**WARRANTY**

optionally, sets the “expired warranty” status of the MVC.

**ON**

MVC’s warranty has expired.

**OFF**

MVC’s warranty has not expired.

---

**Note** – WARRANTY and RETIRED are mutually exclusive.

---

**INVLDMIR**

optionally, sets the invalid MIR status of the MVC.

**ON**

MIR is invalid.

**OFF**

MIR is not invalid.

**REPLACED**

optionally, updates various MVC fields in the MVC record after an MVC is physically replaced.

**NONE**

The MVC record is not updated.

**MEDIA**

The following MVC fields are updated:

- MVC media type is cleared
- Count of times mounted is set to zero
- Warranty Expired Flag is turned off
- Invalid MIR Flag is turned off
- Retired Flag is turned off
- Broke/Error Flag is turned off
- Lost Flag is turned off
- Data Check Flag is turned off
- VTSS Last Written By is cleared
- Date/Time MVC was last written to is cleared
- Storage Class is cleared
- Date/Time of Last Drain/Reclaim is cleared
- Date/Time of Migrate from Empty State is cleared
- Date/Time the MVC was last mounted is cleared



---

**Note –**

- This parameter requires the MVC to be empty (contain zero) and unmounted.
  - REPLACED is mutually exclusive with the LOST, ERROR, EJECT, RETIRED, WARRANTY, and INVLDMIR parameters.
- 

**RENVTS**

optionally, sets the name of the owning VTSS to *vtss-name*.

*vtss-name*

the new VTSS name. This must be the name of an existing VTSS in your configuration.

---

**Note –** To use RENVTS, the host on which MVCMAINT is run must have access to the owning VTSS.

---

## Additional JCL Requirements

In addition to the required JCL definition statements described in [“SLUADMIN Definition Statements” on page 687](#), the following definition statements apply to the MVCMAINT JCL:

**manifest file DD**

DD statement for the manifest file.

---

**Note –**

- MVCMAINT JCL may specify the CDS to be updated if the CDS is in use by HSC/VTCS on the LPAR where MVCMAINT is run. If specified, the CDS data sets specified in MVCMAINT JCL must match the CDS data sets used by HSC/VTCS.
  - MVCMAINT JCL must specify the CDS to be updated if MVCMAINT is being executed in batch-only mode, i.e. when there are no hosts active (on any LPAR) using the CDS.
-

## Return Codes

**TABLE 3-13** MVCMAINT Return Codes

Return Code	Description
0	All requested updates for the MVC completed successfully.
4	One requested update for the MVC failed and at least one other requested update completed successfully.
8	All requested updates for the MVC failed.

---

**Note** – The **final** return code for the MVCMAINT job is the **largest** return code generated by any single MVC updated. For example, if 5 MVCs generate a return code 0 and one MVC generates a return code 8, the final return code is 8.

---

## MVCMAINT Reports

FIGURE 3-155 shows an example of an MVCMAINT report for the following command:

```
MVCMAINT MVC(022577-022579) READONLY=OFF
```

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)		StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility								PAGE 00001			
TIME 09:26:54		MVC MAINTENANCE								DATE 2010-03-31			
MVCMAINT SUMMARY REPORT													
MVC		RC											
022577		00											
022578		08											
022578		08											
MVCMAINT EXCEPTION REPORT													
*SLS6737I MVC 022578 ALREADY HAS READONLY(OFF); REQUEST IGNORED													
*SLS6737I MVC 022579 ALREADY HAS READONLY(OFF); REQUEST IGNORED													
SLS1315I SWS500.V5.CDS WAS SELECTED AS THE PRIMARY CONTROL DATA SET													
SLUADMIN (7.1.0)		StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility								PAGE 00002			
TIME 09:26:54		VTCS MVC SUMMARY REPORT								DATE 2010-03-31			
MVC		NUMBER	%USED	%AVAIL	%FRAG	MEDIA	TIMES	STATUS	<-----LAST MOUNTED----->		A	OWNER/	
											C	S	
VOLSER	OF	VTVS				SIZE	MOUNTED	I B L D R U T	DATE	TIME	VTSS	I CONSOLIDA	
						(MB)		M				D TE TIME	
022577	0		0.00	99.96	0.04	400	142	I - - - - C -	2008MAY14	06:23:23		0 2008MAY14	
								-				0 06:09:23	
022578	0		0.00	99.96	0.04	400	197	I - - - - U -	2008MAY14	06:23:23	VTSS16	0 VTSS16	
								-				0	
022579	0		0.00	99.96	0.04	400	142	I - - - - U -	2008MAY14	16:23:23		0 2008MAY14	
								-				0 16:09:23	
	3	INITIALIZED MVCS PROCESSED											
	0	NON-INITIALIZED MVCS PROCESSED											
	0	NON-LIBRARY MVCS PROCESSED											

FIGURE 3-155 Example MVCMAINT report

As shown in FIGURE 3-155, the MVCMAINT report shows:

- Status of MVCs processed - volser and return code (0 - all updates completed, 4 - some updates completed, 8 - no updates completed).
- An exception report of the reason for all uncompleted updates.
- An MVC summary report.

# MVCPLRPT

## Interfaces:

Utility only  
 UUI: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

The MVCPLRPT command reports the status of a named MVC Pool or MVC Storage Class.

## Syntax



FIGURE 3-156 MVCPLRPT syntax

## Parameters

### MVCPOOL

optionally, report on MVCs in the specified Named MVC Pool.

#### *poolname*

the name of an MVC Pool that you defined on the MVCPool control statement. Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for more information.

To report on all Named MVC Pools (including DEFAULTPOOL), specify ALL or omit the MVCPOOL parameter.

### STORCLAS

optionally, report on MVCs in the specified Storage Class.

#### *stor-class-name*

the name of a Storage Class that you defined on the STORclas control statement. See [“STORclas Control Statement” on page 458](#) for more information. You can also specify Storage Classes which used to exist to which media is still assigned.

To report on all Storage Classes, specify ALL or omit the STORCLAS parameter value.

The **STORCLAS** parameter allows you to filter the MVCs reported from the **MVCPOOL**, i.e. only those MVCs with a matching Storage Class are reported. If the **STORCLAS** parameter is specified then the summary counts section will contain Storage Class subtotals, either for every Storage Class encountered if the parameter value **ALL** or no value is specified, or for those media types where there are MVCs matching the specified value.

---

**Note** – You can specify **MVCPOOL**, **STORCLAS**, or both together to filter the report.

---

**DETail**

Report MVC detail lines (the default).

**SUMmary**

Report summary counts only.

# Named MVC Pool Reports

FIGURE 3-157 and FIGURE 3-169 on page 536 show an example of a report for Named MVC Pool CUST1POOL.

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)		StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility												PAGE 00001				
TIME 09:26:54		VTCS MVC SUMMARY REPORT - MVCPOOL=CUST1POOL												DATE 2010-03-31				
MVC	Number				Size	Mount	<----Status---->							<-----Last Mounted----->			Location	Owner/Comment/
Volser	VTVS	%Used	%Avail	%Frag	(GB)	Count	I	B	L	D	R	U	T	M	Date	Time	VTSS	/ ACS ID Consolidate Time
DETAILS FOR MVCPOOL CUST1POOL																		
DMV600	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	P	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2010Mar15	17:59:59		00
DMV601	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	P	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2010Mar15	17:59:59		00
DMV602	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	P	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2010Mar15	17:59:59		00

FIGURE 3-157 Example MVCPLRPT report (Part 1)

## Fields

The following list describes the Named MVC Pool report fields. The Summary fields are either for a Storage Class or a Named MVC Pool, depending on which was specified on the report JCL. If a Storage Class specifies a Named MVC Pool, the report gives information for that subpool.

### MVC Volser

the MVC volser.

### Number of VTVS

the number of current VTVs on the MVC. If the MVC has been used for VTV export, this field reports **EXPVTV**.

### %Used

the percentage of the MVC used by current VTVs.

### %Avail

the percentage of the MVC that is physically available for use.

### %Frag

the percentage of the MVC that contains non-current VTVs. This space is not usable until it is reclaimed or the MVC is drained.

### Media Size (MB)

the size of the MVC (MB). This will only be determined after VTCS has used an MVC. "UNKNOWN" appears in this field until VTCS migrates a VTV to the MVC.

### Times Mounted

the number of times that the MVC has been mounted for writing or reading since it was added to the MVC inventory.

### STATUS

one or more of the following statuses:

#### I

The MVC has been initialized.

**B**

The MVC has an error that should be investigated. The error may not make the MVC unusable, but VTCS will not select the MVC for migration for 12 hours after it is marked "B". After the 12 hour period, the MVC will be least preferred for subsequent migrations, and recalls from the MVC may cause VTCS to drain it. This error condition may be accompanied by messages SLS6686, SLS6687, SLS6688, SLS6690, and/or SLS6693.

Any of the following conditions can cause this MVC error:

- MVC corrupted by another job (other than VTCS/VTSS)
- attempt to use a read-only MVC for migration
- DDR swap failure
- RTD failure

**L**

The MVC was not mounted in response to the last mount request. The MVC can still be used for migration, but will not select the MVC for migration for 12 hours after it is marked "L". After the 12 hour period, the MVC will be least preferred. This condition will clear itself the next time that the MVC is mounted.

**D**

A data check was reported for this MVC. VSM will not use this MVC again for migration.

**R**

the MVC has been marked read-only.

**U**

one of the following usage statuses:

**U**

the MVC is available for output (migration, reclamation, export, or consolidation).

-

the MVC is not available for output (migration, reclamation, export, or consolidation).

**A**

The MVC is either being audited or the audit failed. If the audit failed, VTCS will not use the MVC for migration. To clear this condition, rerun the AUDIT against this MVC.

**C**

The MVC is a consolidation MVC.

**E**

The MVC is an export MVC.

**F**

There is no space available on the MVC.

**J**

Either you issued a MVCDRain Eject for the MVC or the MVC was ejected for update by a RACROUTE call. The MVC will not be used again for migration or recall. To clear this condition, use MVCDRain against MVC without the Eject option.

**N**

Either:

- The MVC is being drained because of an automatic drain or demand reclaim or an explicit MVCDRain command.

OR

- The previous DRAIN request failed, in which case VTCS will not use the MVC for migration. To clear this condition, enter MVCDRain against MVC without the Eject option.

**X**

The MVC has reached the maximum VTVs per MVC.

**T**

One of the following statuses:

**T**

The MVC is retired.

**W**

The MVC's warranty has expired.

**M**

The MVC has an invalid MIR.

#### **Last Mounted**

the date and time that the MVC was last mounted and the VTSS where the MVC was last used.

#### **ACS ID**

the ACS where the MVC resides.

#### **Owner/Consolidate Time**

If the MVC is empty, this field is null. If the MVC is a consolidation MVC, this field displays the time of the consolidation. If the MVC is a migration MVC and contains current VTVs, this field displays the MVC's Storage Class. If no Storage Class was explicitly assigned via the MGMTclas statement, the default Storage Class is the name of the last VTSS that wrote to the MVC for reclamation or migration.

If VTCS receives a request to migrate a VTV that is assigned to an invalid Management Class, VTCS will dynamically create the !ERROR Storage Class and migrate the VTVs defined by the invalid Management Class to the !ERROR Storage Class. Use this Storage Class to identify and correct invalid Management Classes, drain the affected MVCs, and resubmit the request.



## SUMMARY FOR MVCPOOL CUST1POOL

INITMVC	MVCFree	Threshold	INPTHRSH	Max MVC	Start
No	2	25	15	2	10

ACS	Media	Free-MVCs		Reclaim-MVCs		Used-MVCs	
		Vols	Gb	Vols	Gb	Vols	Gb
00	T1B000T1	3	2,930	0	0	0	0
00	***Total	3	2,930	0	0	0	0

## Summary of MVCs by usage:

```

3 Total MVCs processed
0 Standard MVCs processed
3 Partitioned MVCs processed
0 Un-initialized MVCs processed
3 Free MVCs available
0 MVCs with status AUDIT
0 MVCs with status DRAIN
0 MVCs with status EXPORT
0 MVCs marked EJECTed
0 MVCs marked FULL
0 MVCs with maximum VTVs
0 MVCs marked Read-Only
0 MVCs with status Broken
0 MVCs with status Lost
0 MVCs with Expired Warranty
0 MVCs marked Retired
0 MVCs have Invalid MIRs
0 MVCs have Data-Checks
0 MVCs with status CONSOLIDATE
3 MVCs are USABLE

```

SLS0155I Condition code for utility function is 0

FIGURE 3-158 Example MVCPLRPT report (Part 2)

## Fields

## Summary for Storage Class or Named MVC Pool

This section shows number of MVCs (**Vols**) and total storage (**Gb**) by ACS and media type for the following categories:

**Free-MVCs**

MVCs that have 100% usable space and do not contain any migrated VTVs. The storage shown is the total free space based on media type capacity.

**Reclaim-MVCs**

MVCs eligible for space reclamation. The storage shown is the total wasted space including those MVCs not yet eligible for space reclaim.

**Used-MVCS**

Initialized MVCs that are partially or completely full.

**Total MVCs**

Total MVCs for the Storage Class or Named MVC Pool with subtotals for initialized, uninitialized, and free MVCs.

**Summary of MVCs by Usage**

This section shows number of MVCs by the task that last used the MVC.

# MVCRPt

## Interfaces:

Utility only  
 UUI: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

The MVCRPt command reports the status of your VSM system's MVCs.

## Syntax

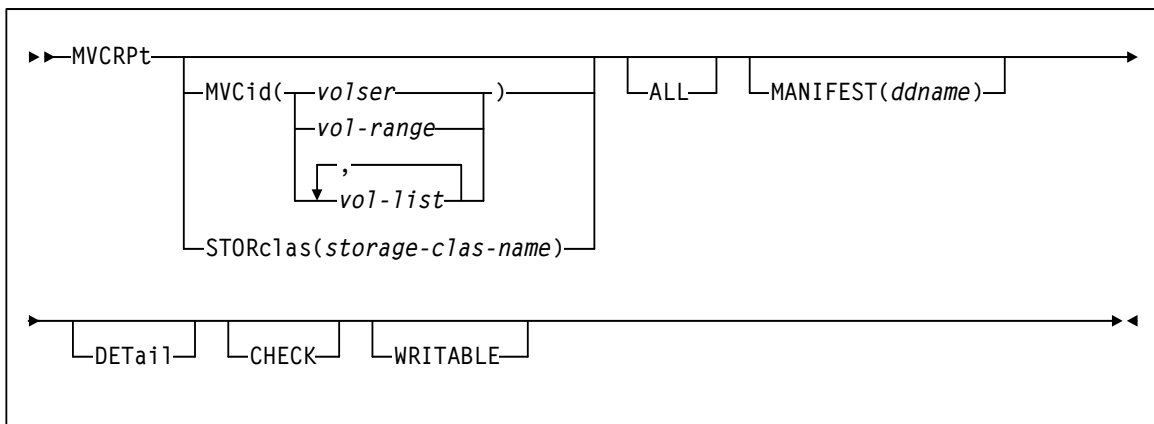


FIGURE 3-159 MVCRPt syntax

## Parameters

### MVCid

optionally, specifies the MVCs for the report. If you do not specify the MVCs, the report includes all MVCs in your VSM system.

*volser*, *vol-range* or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more MVCs.

### STORclas

optionally, specifies a storage class with the MVCs to be reported.

*stor-clas-name*

a 1-8 character storage class name.

---

**Note** – STORclas is mutually exclusive with MVCid, ALL, and MANIFEST.

---

### ALL

optionally, generate a report for all MVCs.

### MANIFEST

optionally, specifies the input ddname of the manifest file used to generate the report.

*ddname*

ddname of the manifest file. **Note that** you can specify a merged manifest file or multiple manifest files.

### DETail

optionally, produce a detailed MVC report; see [FIGURE 3-161 on page 514](#) for an example. If you do not specify this option, the default is to produce a summary MVC report; see [FIGURE 3-160 on page 509](#) for an example.

### CHECK

optionally, MVCRPt does limited MVC integrity checking, during which the CDS is reserved. Use **only** if directed by Oracle StorageTek Software Support.

### WRITABLE

optionally, MVCRPt ignores readonly MVCs on MVC detailed reports and when you specify the CHECK parameter.

## MVC Reports

The following sections describe the MVC summary and detailed reports that the MVCRPT produces.

### MVC Summary Report

The following table shows an example of an MVC summary report.

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)				Sun Microsystems Enterprise Library Software Utility												PAGE 00002			
TIME 08:41:28				VTCS MVC Summary Report												DATE 2009-11-06			
MVC	Number				Size	Mount	<----Status---->							<-----Last Mounted----->			Location	Owner/Comment/	
Volser	VTVs	%Used	%Avail	%Frag	(GB)	Count	I	B	L	D	R	U	T	M	Date	Time	VTSS	/ ACS ID	Consolidate Time
DMV600	40	11.11	70.60	18.29	930.0	257	P	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep30	13:42:27	DVTSS16	00	DMV600
DMV601	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV602	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV603	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV604	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV605	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV606	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV607	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV608	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV609	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV610	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV611	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV612	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV613	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV614	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV615	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV616	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV617	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV618	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
DMV619	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	500.0	256	I	-	-	-	-	U	-	-	2009Sep29	16:59:59		00	
20 Initialized MVCs processed																			
19 Initialized MVCs are standard format																			
1 Initialized MVCs are partitioned																			
0 Non-Initialized MVCs processed																			
0 Non-Library MVCs processed																			
SLS0155I Condition code for utility function is 0																			

FIGURE 3-160 Example MVC summary report

## *Fields*

### **MVC Volser**

the MVC volser.

### **Number of VTVS**

the number of current VTVs on the MVC. If the MVC has been used for VTV export, this field reports **EXPVTV**.

### **%Used**

the percentage of the MVC used by current VTVs.

### **%Avail**

the percentage of the MVC that is physically available for use.

### **%Frag**

the percentage of the MVC that contains non-current VTVs. This space is not usable until it is reclaimed or the MVC is drained.

### **Size (GB)**

the size of the MVC (GB). This will only be determined after VTCS has used an MVC. "UNKNOWN" appears in this field until VTCS migrates a VTV to the MVC.

### **Times Mounted**

the number of times that the MVC has been mounted for writing or reading since it was added to the MVC inventory.

### **STATUS**

one or more of the following statuses:

#### **I**

The MVC has been initialized. MVCs written in partitioned format are indicated by the letter 'P' under this column.

#### **B**

This is a generic error that indicates the MVC, drive, or combination of the two has a problem. VTCS attempts to de-preference MVCs with this state. To clear this state:

If the MVC caused the problem, use a DRAIN(EJECT) command to remove the MVC from service.

If the RTD caused the problem, use the MVCMAINT utility to reset the MVC state.

**Note also** that one or more of the following messages is issued for BROKEN status: SLS6686, SLS6687, SLS6688, SLS6690. For detailed recovery procedures for these messages, see *VTCS Messages and Codes*.

**L**

VTCS attempted to mount an MVC and the mount did not complete within a 15-minute time-out period. VTCS is attempting to recover from a situation that may be caused by hardware problems, HSC problems, or by the MVC being removed from the ACS. VTCS attempts to de-preference MVCs with this state.

If VTCS does perform a subsequent successful mount of an MVC with LOST(ON) state, VTCS sets the state to LOST(OFF).

Determine the cause of the error and fix it. You can also use the VTCS MVCMAINT utility to set LOST(OFF) for the following events:

LOST(ON) was set due to LSM failures or drive errors that have been resolved

LOST(ON) was set because the MVC was outside the ACS and has been reentered.

**D**

A data check condition has been reported against this MVC. VTCS attempts to de-preference MVCs with this state. To clear this state:

If all VTVs on the MVC are duplexed, use MVCDRAIN on the MVC without the Eject option. This recovers all VTVs and removes the MVC from service.

If all VTVs on the MVC are not duplexed, VTCS AUDIT the MVC. The audit will probably fail. After the audit, do an MVCDRAIN (no eject). This recalls the VTVs before the data-check area in ascending block-id order and the VTVs after the data-check area in a descending block-id order. Processing the VTVs in this sequence ensures that VTCS recovers as many VTVs as possible from the media. You then need to recreate the data for any VTVs still on the MVC.

**R**

The MVC has been marked read-only because of one of the following conditions:

The MVC being the target of an export or consolidation process. The read-only state protects the MVC from further updates.

The MVC media is set to file protect. Correct the error and use the MVCMAINT utility to set READONLY(OFF).

The MVC does not have the appropriate SAF rules set to enable VTCS to update the MVC. Correct the error and use the MVCMAINT utility to set READONLY(OFF). Refer to the publication *Installing ELS* for information about defining a security subsystem user ID for HSC, SMC, and VTCS.

**U**

one of the following usage statuses:

**U**

The MVC is available for output (migration, reclamation, export, or consolidation).

-

The MVC is not available for output (migration, reclamation, export, or consolidation).

**A**

The MVC is either being audited or the audit failed. If the audit failed, VTCS will not use the MVC for migration. To clear this condition, rerun the AUDIT against this MVC.

**C**

The MVC is a consolidation MVC.

**E**

The MVC is an export MVC.

**F**

There is no space available on the MVC.

**J**

Either you issued MVCDRain Eject for the MVC or the MVC was ejected for update by a RACROUTE call. The MVC will not be used again for migration or recall. To clear this condition, use MVCDRain against MVC without the Eject option.

**N**

Either the MVC is being drained because of:

- an automatic drain or demand reclaim, or an explicit MVCDRain command.

OR

- The previous DRAIN request failed, in which case VTCS will not use the MVC for migration. To clear this condition, enter MVCDRain against MVC without the Eject option.

**X**

The MVC has reached the maximum VTVs per MVC.

**T**

One of the following statuses:

**T**

The MVC is retired. VTCS will recall from, but not migrate to, the MVC. Replace the MVC as soon as possible.

**W**

The MVC's warranty has expired. VTCS continues to use the MVC. You should start making plans to replace the MVC when it reaches Retired state.



**M**

VTCS has received status from an RTD to indicate the MIR (media information record) for a 9x40 media is invalid. An invalid MIR does not prevent access to data but may cause significant performance problems while accessing records on the tape. The MVC is not capable of high-speed searches on areas of the tape that do not have a valid MIR entry.

VTCS attempts to de-preference MVCs with this condition. For recalls, if the VTV resides on multiple MVCs, VTCS selects MVCs with valid MIRs ahead of MVCs with invalid MIRs. VTCS avoids using MVCs with invalid MIRs for migration, unless the migration is at the beginning of the tape. Migrating from the beginning of tape will correct the MIR.

VTCS detects the invalid MIR condition at either mount time or dismount time. If detected at mount time and the operation can be completed with another MVC, VTCS dismounts the first MVC and selects the alternate MVC. **Note that** VTCS has only a limited ability to switch to an alternate MVC. That is, it is mainly used for migrate and virtual mount.

For MVCs with invalid MIRs, determine the cause of the error, which may be caused by media or drive problems, and fix the error.

To recover an MVC with an invalid MIR, you simply need to read the MVC to the end of the tape, which can be done via a VTCS audit. If the media is the problem, run an MVCDRAIN EJECT to recall the VTVs and cause the MVC to be removed from the MVC pool.

**Last Mounted**

the date and time that the MVC was last mounted and the VTSS where the MVC was last used.

**ACS ID**

the ACS where the MVC resides.

**Owner/Consolidate Time**

If the MVC is empty, this field is null. If the MVC is a consolidation MVC, this field displays the time of the consolidation. If the MVC is a migration MVC and contains current VTVs, this field displays the MVC's Storage Class. If no Storage Class was explicitly assigned via the MGMTclas statement, the default Storage Class is the name of the last VTSS that wrote to the MVC for reclamation or migration.

If VTCS receives a request to migrate a VTV that is assigned to an invalid Management Class, VTCS will dynamically create the !ERROR Storage Class and migrate the VTVs defined by the invalid Management Class to the !ERROR Storage Class. Use this Storage Class to identify and correct invalid Management Classes, drain the affected MVCs, and resubmit the request.

**Initialized MVCs processed**

the total number of initialized MVCs. Also includes a breakdown of the number of MVCs that are standard format or partitioned.

**Non-Initialized MVCs processed**

the number of non-initialized MVCs.

**Non-library MVCs processed**

the number of non-library MVCs processed.

## MVC Detailed Report

The MVC detailed report provides all the fields from the MVC summary report and a separate section that lists additional fields. The following table shows an example of these additional fields from an MVC detailed report.

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)			StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility				SSYS=HSCC	PAGE 00003																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																						
TIME 13:00:46			MVC DMV600 Detail Report				DATE 2010-08-16																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																							
Vtv	Size	Block	Management	Migration	Block	Message																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																								
Volser	(MB)	Id	Class	Date	Count																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0000	1802.24	0000/00000000	MF	2010Aug16	29078																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0001	282.62	0000/00007196	MF	2010Aug16	4567																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0002	3850.24	0000/0000836D-0001	MF	2010Aug16	62109																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0003	1802.24	0001/0001760A	MF	2010Aug16	29077																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0004	2764.80	0001/0001E79F-0002	MF	2010Aug16	44602																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0005	778.24	0002/000295D9	MF	2010Aug16	12561																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0006	1802.24	0002/0002C6EA	MF	2010Aug16	29077																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0007	180.22	0002/0003387F	MF	2010Aug16	2915																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0008	2826.24	0002/000343E2-0003	MF	2010Aug16	45593																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0009	3850.24	0003/0003F5FB-0004	MF	2010Aug16	62109																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0010	266.24	0004/0004E898	MF	2010Aug16	4303																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0011	3440.64	0004/0004F967-0005	MF	2010Aug16	55503																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0012	1290.24	0005/0005D236	MF	2010Aug16	20819																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0013	282.62	0005/00062389	MF	2010Aug16	4567																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0014	3850.24	0005/00063560-0006	MF	2010Aug16	62109																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0015	1802.24	0006/000727FD	MF	2010Aug16	29077																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0016	282.62	0006/00079992	MF	2010Aug16	4567																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0017	1802.24	0006/0007AB69	MF	2010Aug16	29077																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0018	2826.24	0006/00081CFE-0007	MF	2010Aug16	45593																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0019	778.24	0007/0008CF17	MF	2010Aug16	12561																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0020	1802.24	0007/00090028-0008	MF	2010Aug16	29077																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0021	2826.24	0008/000971BD	MF	2010Aug16	45593																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0022	3850.24	0008/000A23D6-0009	MF	2010Aug16	62109																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0023	282.62	0009/000B1673	MF	2010Aug16	4567																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
DX0024	3850.24	0009/000B284A-000A	MF	2010Aug16	62109																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
25 VTVs found for MVC:DMV600				Last migrate:2010Aug16 13:00:04																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																										
181 unused / 11 used partitions found for MVC:DMV600																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																														
Unused partitions :																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																														
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	

FIGURE 3-161 Example MVC detailed report (additional fields)

## *MVC Detailed Report Additional Fields*

The following list describes the additional fields for the MVC detailed report.

### **VTV Volser**

the volsers of the VTVs on the MVC.

### **Size (MB)**

the uncompressed size of the VTV (MB).

### **Block ID**

the partition id and logical block ID of the beginning of the VTV on the MVC. If there are VTVs spanning partitions, the 'spanned to' partition is shown to the right of the blockid location.

### **Management Class**

the VTV's Management Class.

### **Migration Date**

for migrates done by a 6.0 system or above **only**, the approximate date that the VTV copy was migrated. This date is approximate because it is recorded in the CDS as the number of days since VTV creation, and time zone adjustments can cause the value to slip a day.

### **Block Count**

the decimal number of blocks of data that the VTV occupies on the MVC.

### **Message**

reports the results of MVC integrity checking. Any message **not** listed below should be reported to Oracle, as it may indicate a serious problem with the CDS **except** messages that can appear if the MVC is being audited or has failed an audit while the MVC report is being run. An MVC report returns a minimum return code of 4 if any MVCs in audit state are encountered; the audit state also prevents some other errors from being reported.

#### ***nnnn empty space to previous***

**Explanation.** Informational message, indicating that there are *nnnn* (decimal) blocks of free space before this VTV on the MVC.

#### ***Migrated size was not as expected***

**Explanation.** If output for VTV *v* on MVC *m*, it indicates that the (compressed) size of VTV *v* migrated to MVC *m* was different to the (compressed) size of VTV *v* recorded in the CDS.

This is normal if VTV *v* had previously been recalled with error. Otherwise this indicates a possible error which should be reported to Oracle StorageTek software support.

### **Used/Unused Partitions**

Summary of used and unused partitions for the MVC.

# OFFload

The OFFload command can be used to offload one or both journals on a given host, or transaction records from active log files used in the HSC Transaction Logging Service.

This command can be issued with the options listed in the following table. Each option is described individually, and in more detail, on the pages to follow.

**TABLE 3-14** OFFload options

<b>This option:</b>	<b>performs this action:</b>
JOURnal	offloads one or both journals on a given host. Refer to the <i>ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference</i> for information about this option.
LOGFILE	offloads transaction records from active log file(s) used in the HSC Transaction Logging Service

# OFFload LOGFILE

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

The OFFload LOGFILE command offloads transaction records from active log file(s) used by the HSC Transaction Logging Service and saves them in a sequential data set so that space in the log files can be reused.

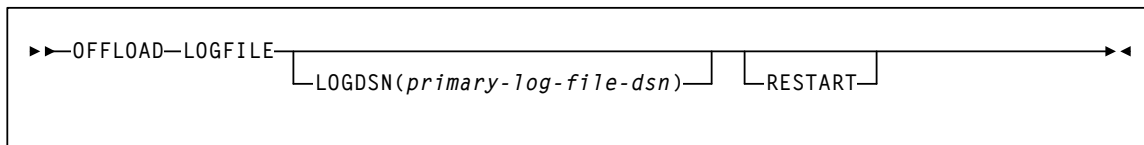
If logging is currently active, you **must** run the OFFload LOGFILE utility to change log file names.

---

**Note** – Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for information about using OFFload for legacy journaling purposes.

---

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-162** OFFload LOGFILE syntax

## Parameters

Generally, OFFload LOGFILE is issued without parameters. The utility selects the input log data set from the active log data sets as recorded in the CDS.

### LOGDSN

optionally, offloads the log file without using or updating the CDS. Use this parameter in any case where the CDS is restored, or is otherwise considered to be unreliable.

*primary-log-file-dsn*

the data set name for the primary log file.

For example: OFFLOAD LOGFILE LOGDSN(hsc.log1).

---

**Note** – If you attempt to run the OFFLOAD LOGFILE utility after restoring the CDS but without specifying the LOGDSN option, the offload may not succeed, or may create an erroneous log offload file.

---

### RESTART

optionally, restarts the offload, selecting the input log file from among the group of log data sets that were active when the failed offload started. It also uses the block number range used by the failed offload.

Use this parameter to recover the records from the log data set(s) that become inactive when a failed offload causes a log data set switch.

## Additional JCL Requirements

In addition to the required JCL definition statements described in [“Invoking SLUADMIN” on page 684](#), the following definition statements apply to the OFFload LOGFILE JCL:

### SLSOFFLD

specifies the output data set

It is recommended that no DCB be specified for this data set. If a DCB is specified, the RECFM and LRECL are ignored.

# OPTION TITLE Control Statement

The OPTION TITLE control statement specifies an identifying string for a definition data set. This identifying string can be any information that helps the user describe the contents of the definition data set. You can specify this statement in a definition data set along with the following:

- LMUPDEF
- MGMTDEF
- TREQDEF (SMC)

It can also be specified with older HSC commands, described in the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference*:

- MVCDEF
- SCRPDEF
- VOLDEF

The OPTION TITLE statement **must** be placed in a definition data set; it **cannot** be issued as an operator command. If more than one OPTion statement is specified in the definition data set, only the identifying string of the last OPTion statement encountered is retained.

## Syntax

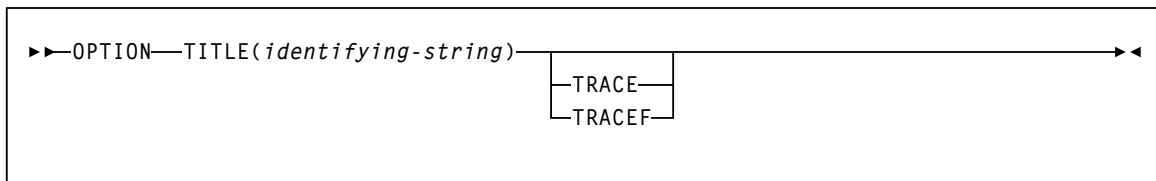


FIGURE 3-163 OPTION TITLE syntax

## Parameters

### OPTION TITLE

specifies an identifying string for the definition data set. If this statement is omitted, the definition data set has no identifying string associated with it.

#### *identifying-string*

the identifying string. The maximum length of the identifying string is fifty characters. If the identifying string includes one or more spaces, or any characters other than alphabetic, numeric, or national (i.e., \$, @, #), it must be enclosed in quotes.

### TRACE or TRACEF

optionally, used to control internal tracing of HSC table lookups. During problem resolution, Software Support may request that you specify one of these parameters.

---

# OPTion

## **Interfaces:**

Console or PARMLIB only  
UII: No

## **Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

# Description

The OPTion command sets or changes general HSC options.



## Syntax

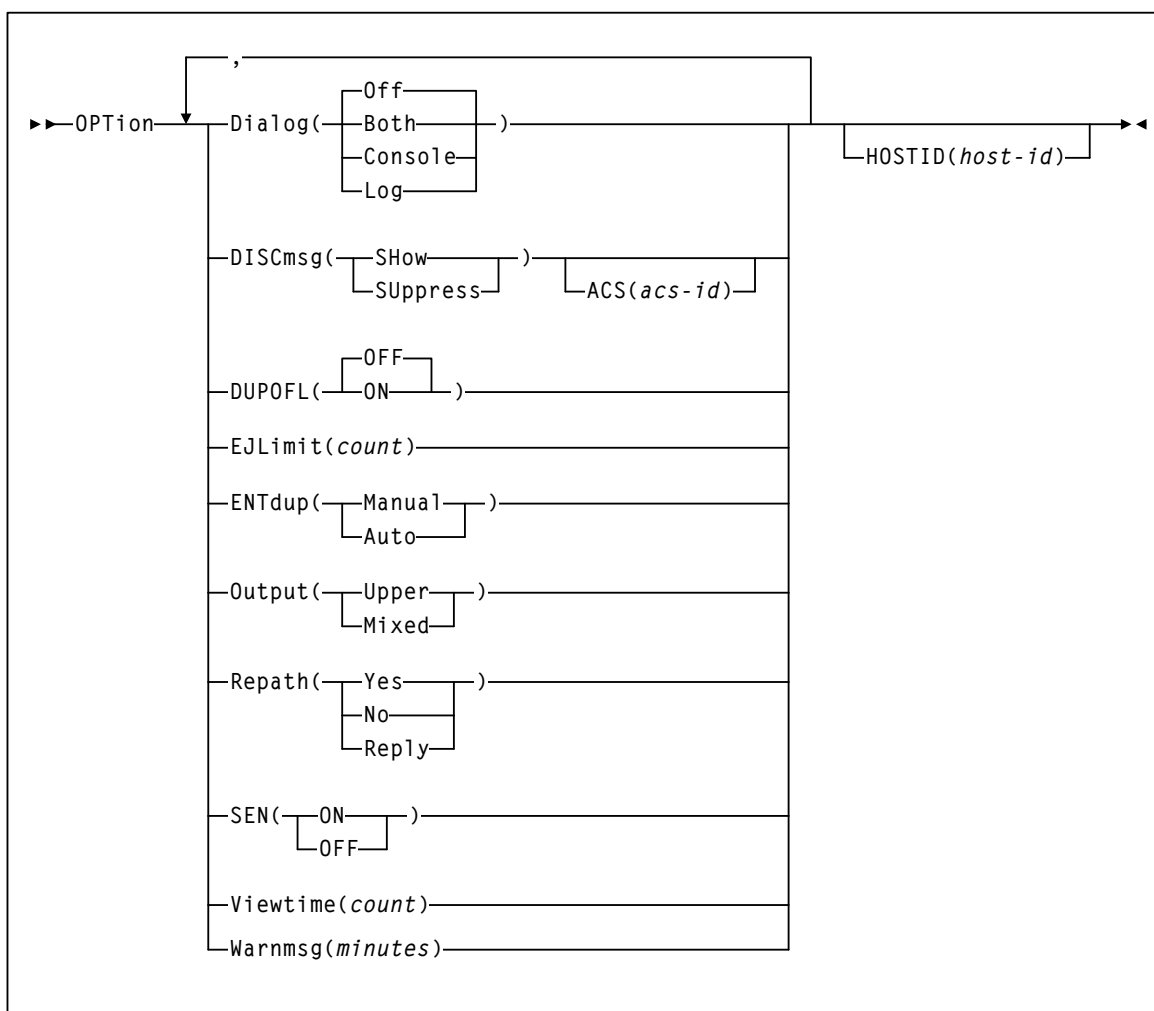


FIGURE 3-164 OPTion syntax

## Parameters

### Dialog

allows HSC messages to be written to the operator console and/or the system log. These messages indicate that the HSC is waiting for an active task to complete before the HSC terminates. The initial Dialog value is set by the EXEC statement during HSC startup.

#### Off

specifies that messages are not to be written. **Off is the default value for the HSC if the Dialog parameter is not specified on the EXEC statement.**

#### Both

specifies that messages are written to the system log and the operator console.

#### Console

specifies that messages are written to the operator console only.

#### Log

specifies that messages are written to the system log only.

### DISCmsg

specifies whether or not the “ACS *acs-id* is disconnected” message (SLS1664A) is displayed for the specified ACS.

This option is useful when an ACS has been added to the LIBGEN in advance to provide for future expansion. Entering DISCmsg allows the user to turn off the display for those ACSs that will not be connected until later.

#### SHow

Displays the “ACS *acs-id* is disconnected” message (SLS1664A) for an ACS. This is the initial value.

#### SUPpress

Suppresses the “ACS *acs-id* is disconnected” message (SLS1664A) for an ACS.

#### ACS

optionally, specifies the ACS for which the command applies. If ACS is not specified, the DISCmsg setting entered (**Show** or **Suppress**) applies to all ACSs.

#### *acs-id*

the decimal ACSid value (00-99).

If **ACS** is not specified, all ACSs are affected.

### DUPOFL

optionally, allows the duplicate VOLSER process to continue when the VOLSER being entered into the CAP shows in the CDS that it exists in an ACS that is disconnected, or in an LSM that is offline.

#### OFF

disables the duplicate VOLSER process. This is the default.

#### ON

enables the duplicate VOLSER process.

**EJLimit**

indicates the maximum number of cartridges that can be specified on one Eject command.

***count***

the limit. Allowable values are 1 through 9999. The initial value for the HSC is 100.

**ENTdup**

specifies whether the HSC prompts the operator when an enter operation finds a duplicate VOLSER in the control data set, but cannot locate the cartridge in the ACS.

When someone attempts to enter a cartridge with a VOLSER that duplicates an entry in the control data set, the HSC attempts to locate the original cartridge. The ENTdup option determines how the HSC responds when the cartridge

- is not in its home cell,
- is not selected, and
- is not errant.

**Auto**

instructs the HSC to delete the cartridge in the control data set and allow the enter to continue.

**Manual**

instructs the HSC to issue a console message when a duplicate VOLSER is entered. The message prompts the operator to decide whether the HSC should delete the cartridge in the control data set and allow the enter to continue, or eject the duplicate cartridge. **Manual** is the initial value for the HSC.

**Output**

specifies whether the output messages are displayed on the console in uppercase or mixed case.

**Upper**

specifies uppercase. **Upper** is the initial value for the HSC.

**Mixed**

specifies mixed case.

**Repath**

determines how the HSC processes volumes associated with a specific CAP for an Eject command, when the CAP is drained or becomes unavailable before the eject operation completes.

**Yes**

automatically causes the unavailable CAP's volumes to be associated with another CAP running under the same Eject command. **Yes** is the initial value for the HSC.

**No**

causes failure messages to be generated for volumes associated with the unavailable CAP. The Eject command continues processing the next volume.

**Reply**

generates a message which prompts the operator to determine how the volumes are processed. The operator must respond either "Y" or "N," where

**Y**

causes the unavailable CAP's volumes to be associated with another CAP running under the same Eject command.

**N**

causes failure messages to be generated for volumes associated to the unavailable CAP. The Eject command continues processing the next volume.

**SEN**

enables or disables the Significant Event Notification (SEN) facility. Refer to the *ELS Programming Reference* for more information about the SEN.

**ON**

enables the SEN.

**OFF**

disables the SEN.

**Viewtime**

specifies the length of time in seconds the system is to hold an LSM camera in one location when the View command is issued. See ["View" on page 614](#) for more information.

**count**

the number of seconds. Allowable values for count are decimal in the range from 5 through 120. The initial value for the HSC is 10 seconds.

---

**Note –**

- The View command allows the user to override the OPTion Viewtime setting for a single viewing operation.
  - An SMF record (subtype 8) is written when the View command is issued to document robot activity.
-

**Warnmsg**

sets the number of minutes between scratch depletion messages.

***minutes***

the number of minutes. Allowable values for minutes are 1 through 65535. The initial value is 5 minutes.

**HOSTID**

optionally, identifies the host associated with the OPTion command. This allows you to restrict certain startup options to a specific host.

If this parameter is not specified, the command options are applied to each host that accesses PARMLIB.

***host-id***

the host identifier (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).

---

**Note** – If the *host-id* does not match the host executing the command, a message is issued and the command is not processed.

---

# PITCOPY

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only

UUI: No

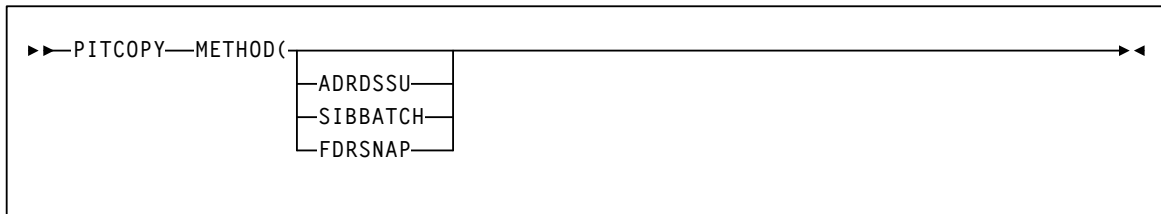
### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

The PITCOPY command uses a utility snapshot feature to produce a point-in-time copy of the CDS. PITCOPY ensures CDS backup integrity by performing a CDS RESERVE to ensure that any ongoing updates are serialized. The PITCOPY function backs up only the primary CDS. Refer to the publication *Managing HSC and VTCS* for more information about how to use the PITCOPY utility.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-165** PITCOPY syntax

## Parameters

## METHOD

specifies the snapshot copy utility to use for the PIT copy.

ADRDSSU

DFSMdss SnapShot/DFSMdss FlashCopy (ADRDSSU)

## SIBBATCH

StorageTek SVAA SnapShot (SIBBATCH) utility

## FDRSNAP

FDR-invoked SnapShot (FDRSNAP) utility

## Additional JCL Requirements

In addition to the required JCL definition statements described in [“Invoking SLUADMIN” on page 684](#), the following definition statements apply to the PITCOPY JCL:

### **SLSPARMP**

specifies a parameter file containing control statements to back up the CDS data set defined as SLSCNTL. Note that this may not be the primary CDS data set at the time the backup is taken.

### **SLSPARMS**

specifies a parameter file containing control statements to back up the CDS data set defined as SLSCNTL2.

### **SLSPARMB**

specifies a parameter file containing control statements to back up the CDS data set defined as SLSSTBY.

### **SYSIN**

specifies a file to be output by the PITCOPY function and used as input to the snapshot copy function. When the PITCOPY function determines the primary CDS, it copies the appropriate SLSPARMx file into SYSIN.

---

#### **Note –**

- Other definition statements are required by the snapshot utility you are requesting.
  - If you use Oracle’s StorageTek SVAA SnapShot function, it is recommended that you use the SOURCE option specifying the data set name, rather than the INDDNAME option specifying the DDNAME; or that you always include the DD statements for the CDS data sets. If the dynamic CDS allocation feature is used, the primary CDS is automatically allocated to SLSCNTL. Therefore, a control statement in SLSPARMS, for example, to back up the SLSCNTL2 DD, would result in backing up a CDS copy that is not the primary.
-

# RECall

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UUI: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

The RECall command performs demand recalls of VTVs to a VTSS.

## Syntax

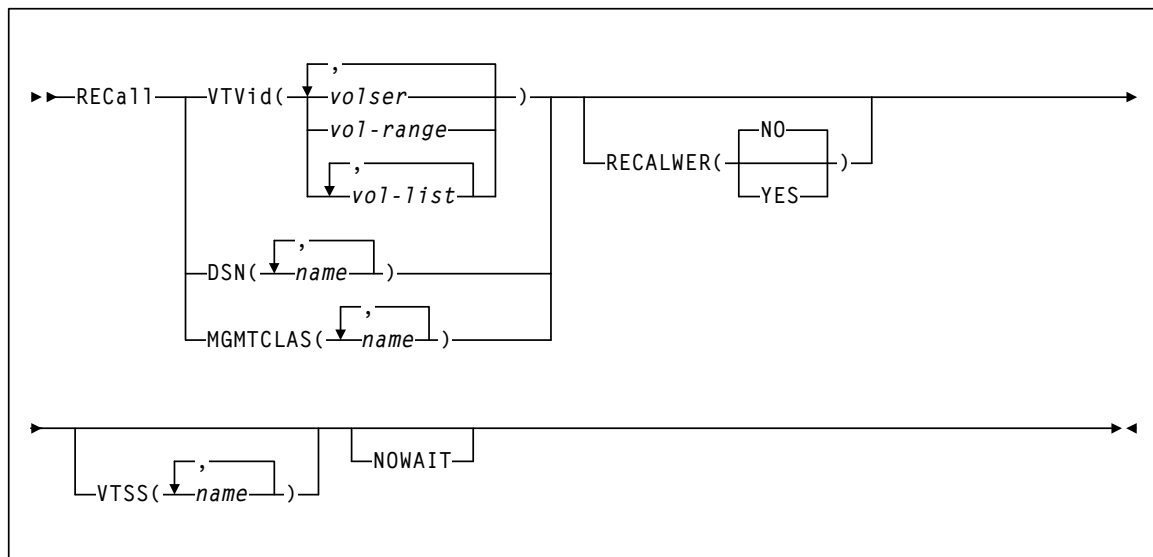


FIGURE 3-166 RECall syntax



## Parameters

### VTVid

specifies the VTVs to recall.

*volser*, *vol-range*, or *vol-list*

the volser of one or more VTVs. You can also specify one or more ranges.

### DSN

specifies data sets used to select VTVs to recall.

*name*

the data set name. [TABLE 3-12 on page 471](#) describes the valid wildcards for data set names.

### MGMTCLAS

specifies one or more Management Classes that determine one or more VTVs to recall.

*mgmt-class-name* | *mgmt-class-list*

the names of one or more Management Classes that you defined on the MGMTclas control statement; for more information, see [“MGMTclas Control Statement” on page 440](#).

---

**Note** – MGMTCLAS, VTVid, and DSN are mutually exclusive.

---

### VTSS

specifies where the VTVs are recalled as follows:

- If you do not specify a VTSS (the default), VTCS attempts to recall the VTVs to the VTSS of creation if it is accessible. Otherwise VTCS recalls the VTVs to the VTSS with the lowest DBU.
- If you specify a single VTSS, VTCS attempts to recall the VTVs to the specified VTSS if it is accessible. Otherwise, VTCS recalls the VTVs to the VTSS with the lowest DBU.
- If you specify a list of VTVs, VTCS attempts to recall the VTVs to the VTSS of creation if it is on the list and accessible, otherwise VTCS recalls the VTVs to the VTSS with the lowest DBU on the list.

*vtss-name*

the names of one or more VTSSs.

### RECALWER

optionally, specifies whether VTCS recalls VTVs with read data checks.

**NO**

Do not recall VTVs with read data checks. This is the default.

**YES**

Recall VTVs with read data checks.

### NOWAIT

optionally, specifies that the utility does not wait for the operation to complete and returns after the request is submitted.

# RECLaim

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UUI: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

The RECLaim command performs demand MVC space reclamation. This command can also override the CONFIG RECLaim settings for the THRESHLD, INPTHRSH, MAXMVC, and CONMVC parameters.

## Syntax

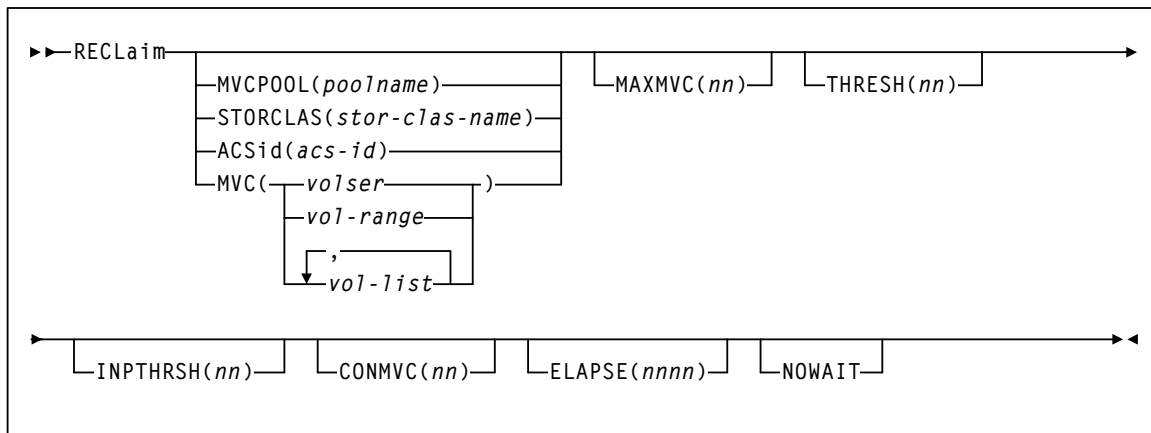


FIGURE 3-167 RECLaim syntax

## Parameters

### MVCPool

reclaim the MVCs in the specified Named MVC Pool.

*poolname*

the name of a Named MVC Pool that you defined on the MVCPool control statement. Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for more information.

### STORCLAS

reclaim the MVCs in the specified Storage Class.

*stor-class-name*

the name of a Storage Class that you defined on the STORclas control statement; for more information, see [“STORclas Control Statement” on page 458](#).

### ACSid

reclaim the eligible MVCs in the specified ACS.

*acs-id*

a two digit decimal ACS identifier from 00-99.

### MVC

reclaim the specified MVC(s).

*volser*, *vol-range* or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more MVCs. You can also specify individual MVCs and ranges in a list. For example:

(MVC000-MVC005,MVC010,MVC015)

### MAXMVC(*nn*)

optionally, specifies the maximum number of MVCs that will be processed by a single space reclamation task. Valid values are 1 to 98. There is no default; if not specified, the CONFIG RECLAIM value (or default) is used.

For automatic space reclamation to start, the number of eligible MVCs (determined by the THRESH parameter) must also exceed the MAXMVC value.

### THRESH(*nn*)

optionally, specifies the percentage of fragmented space that makes an MVC eligible for demand or automatic reclamation. Valid values are 4 to 98. If not specified, the CONFIG RECLAIM value (or default) is used.

**INPTHRSH**

optionally, specifies the percentage of fragmented space that makes an MVC in partitioned format eligible for dynamic reclaim processing. This value overrides the global INPTHRSH value specified in the CONFIG RECLAIM statement. If this parameter is not specified, the current active global INPTHRSH value is used.

*nn*

a percentage between 3 and 97. This value must be less than the THRESHLD value.

---

**Note** – If INPTHRSH is specified, THRESHLD must also be specified. Both INPTHRSH and THRESHLD play roles when space reclamation processes MVCs in partitioned format. Refer to the publication *Configuring HSC and VTCS* for more information.

---

**NOWAIT**

optionally, specifies that the utility does not wait for the operation to complete and returns after the request is submitted.

**CONMVC(*nn*)**

optionally, specifies the maximum number of MVCs that VTCS concurrently processes for both drain and reclaim.

Valid values are 1 to 99. If not specified, the default is the CONMVC value specified on the CONFIG RECLAIM statement.

**ELAPSE(*nnnn*)**

optionally, specifies the maximum time for the reclaim in minutes. If the maximum time expires, VTCS issues message SLS6682I. If there are no MVCs currently mounted, reclaim stops when the ELAPSE value is reached. If any MVCs are currently mounted when the ELAPSE value is reached, reclaim processes the mounted MVCs and then stops.

Valid values are 1 to 1440. If not specified, there is no time limit on the reclaim process.

---

# RECONcil

**Interfaces:**

Utility only  
UI: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

The RECONcil command reconciles VTV media and location (moves VTVs from one Storage Class to another).

RECONcil performs a series of cross-checks between the MVCs, VTVs, STORCLAS and MGMTCLAS definitions.

RECONCIL has two phases:

- In the first phase, VTCS selects MVC and Storage Classes to be checked. MVCs are checked to ensure they meet the Storage Class definitions and ACS definitions. If inconsistencies are found, then the VTVs on those MVCs are added to the list of VTVs to be recalled and re-migrated to give correct MVC, ACS and Storage Class copies for that VTV. The RECONcil parameters STORCLAS and MVC limit the checking in this phase.
- In the second phase, VTCS selects the VTVs and Management Classes to establish the correct number and location of VTV copies. Any VTVs with inconsistencies are added to the list of VTVs to be recalled and re-migrated. The RECONcil parameters MGMTCLAS and VTV limit the checking in this phase.

## Syntax

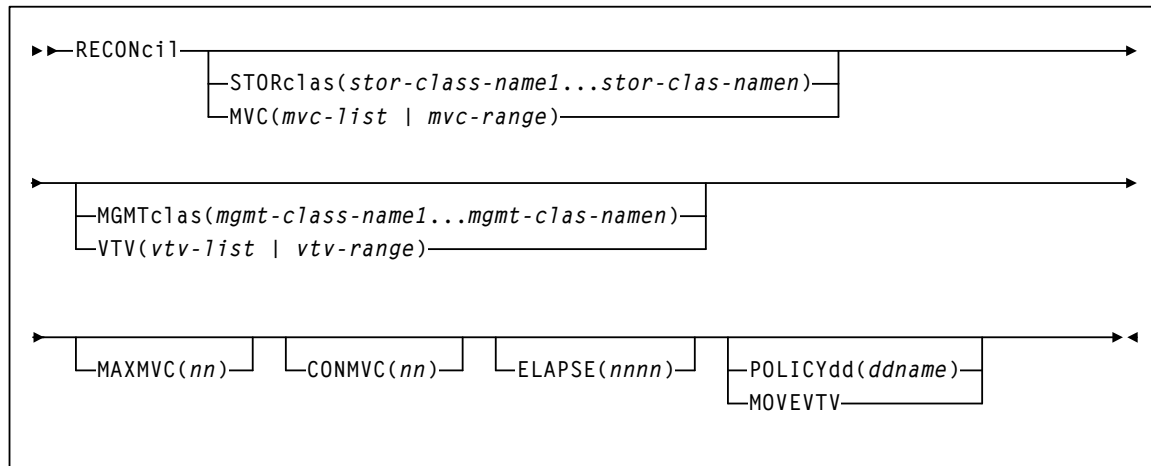


FIGURE 3-168 RECONcil syntax

## Parameters

The STORclas and MVC parameters limit the first phase of checking to the specified Storage Classes or MVCs. If STORclas or MVC are **not** specified, VTCS checks all MVCs by default.

### STORclas

optionally, specifies one or more Storage Classes.

*stor-class-name1...stor-class-namen*

one or more Storage Classes.

### MVC

optionally, specifies a list or range of MVCs.

*mvc-list | mvc-range*

a list or range of MVCs.

The MGMTclas and VTV parameters limit the second phase of checking to the specified Management Classes or VTVs. If MGMTclas or VTV are **not** specified, VTCS checks all VTVs by default.

### MGMTclas

optionally, specifies one or more Management Classes.

*mgmt-class-name1...mgmt-class-namen*

one or more Management Classes.

### VTV

optionally, specifies a list or range of VTVs.

*vtv-list | vtv-range*

a list or range of VTVs.

**MAXMVC(*nn*)**

optionally, specifies the maximum number of MVCs that will be processed by a single reconciliation task.

Valid values are 1 to 98. If not specified the CONFIG RECLAIM value (or default) is used. This parameter is ignored if MOVEVTV is not specified.

**CONMVC(*nn*)**

optionally, specifies the maximum number of MVCs that VTCS concurrently processes during subsequent recall and migrate operations.

Valid values are 1 to 99. If not specified the CONFIG RECLAIM value (or default) is used. This parameter is ignored if MOVEVTV is not specified.

**ELAPSE(*nnnn*)**

optionally, specifies the maximum time for the reconciliation in minutes. If the maximum time expires, VTCS issues message SLS6682I. If there are no MVCs currently mounted, reconciliation stops when the ELAPSE value is reached. If any MVCs are currently mounted when the ELAPSE value is reached, reconciliation processes the mounted MVCs and then stops.

Valid values are 1 to 1440. If not specified, there is no time limit on the reconciliation process. This parameter is ignored if MOVEVTV is not specified.

**POLICYdd(*ddname*)**

optionally, specifies the *ddname* of a file containing an alternate MGMTclas statement.

**MOVEVTV**

optionally, move VTVs per the currently active Management Policies as specified by the MGMTclas statements that apply to the VTVs. If you do not specify MOVEVTV, only a report is generated.

---

**Note** – POLICYdd and MOVEVTV are mutually exclusive.

---

## RECONcil Reports

### RECONcil Report (MOVEVTV Not Specified)

The following figure shows an example of a RECONcil report.

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)		StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility										PAGE 00002	
TIME 08:06:35		Reconcile VTV Report										DATE 2010-03-31	
VTV	Size	Comp	<----Creation---->		MGMT	MVC1	MVC2	MVC3	MVC4	Tapeplex	REASON		
Volser	(MB)	%	Date	Time	CLASS								
DX1000	358.4	0	2009Jan18	16:00:00	M5					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1001	358.4	0	2009Jan18	15:59:58	M5					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1008	358.4	0	2009Jan18	15:59:43	M5					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1009	358.4	0	2009Jan18	15:59:41	M5					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1010	358.4	0	2009Jan18	15:59:40	M5					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1011	25.6	0	2009Jan18	15:59:38	M5					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1020	358.4	0	2009Jan18	15:59:19	M5					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1021	358.4	0	2009Jan18	15:59:18	M5					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1024	358.4	0	2009Jan18	15:59:12	M5					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1025	358.4	0	2009Jan18	15:59:10	M5					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1028	358.4	0	2009Jan18	15:59:04	M6					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1029	358.4	0	2009Jan18	15:59:01	M6					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1032	358.4	0	2009Jan18	15:58:56	M6					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1033	358.4	0	2009Jan18	15:58:54	M6					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1036	358.4	0	2009Jan18	15:58:48	M5					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1037	358.4	0	2009Jan18	15:58:46	M6					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1050	51.2	0	2009Jan18	15:58:20	M5					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1051	51.2	0	2009Jan18	15:58:17	M5					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1052	51.2	0	2009Jan18	15:58:15	M5					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1053	51.2	0	2009Jan18	15:58:14	M5					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1054	51.2	0	2009Jan18	15:58:12	M5					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1055	51.2	0	2009Jan18	15:58:10	M6					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1056	51.2	0	2009Jan18	15:58:08	M6					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1057	51.2	0	2009Jan18	15:58:06	M6					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1058	51.2	0	2009Jan18	15:58:04	M6					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
DX1059	51.2	0	2009Jan18	15:58:02	M6					SECNDARY	EEXPORT		
Total VTVs =			26	Total Size =		5913MB							
SLUADMIN (7.1.0)		StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility										PAGE 00003	
TIME 08:06:35		Reconcile Tapeplex Report										DATE 2009-01-19	
Tapeplex	Candidate VTVs	Total VTV size (MB)											
SECNDARY	26	5913.60											
	DX1000 DX1001 DX1008 DX1009 DX1010 DX1011 DX1020 DX1021 DX1024 DX1025 DX1028 DX1029 DX1032 DX1033												
	DX1036 DX1037 DX1050 DX1051 DX1052 DX1053 DX1054 DX1055 DX1056 DX1057 DX1058 DX1059												
Total tapeplexes =		1	Total Size =		5913MB								
SLS0155I Condition code for utility function is 0													

**FIGURE 3-169** Example output from RECONcil REPORT only



## *RECONcil Report Fields*

The following list describes the RECONcil report fields.

### **VTV Volser**

the VTV volser.

### **Size (MB)**

the uncompressed size of the VTV (MB). <**MOUNT**> indicates that the VTV was mounted when the report ran. <**FENCED**> indicates that the VTV's state is unknown. If <**FENCED**> appears, contact Oracle StorageTek Software Support.

### **Comp %**

the VTV compression percentage achieved. This is the difference between the uncompressed and compressed VTV size expressed as a percentage of the uncompressed VTV size. For example if a 100MB VTV compresses to 40MB then the compression% will be given as 60%. A compression of 0% indicates that no compression was possible on the VTV.

### **Creation Date and Time**

the date and time that the VTV was created.

### **MGMT Class**

the name of the Management Class for the VTV specified.

### **MVC1, MVC2, MVC3, MVC4**

the MVC(s) affected as a result of the Reconcil.

### **Tapeplex**

the TapePlex name.

### **Reason**

the reason for the VTV selection: media type, media location, migration (space release), immediate migration, or Storage Class.

The **RECONcil Tapeplex Report** section displays the number of candidate VTVs and Total VTV size (MB) for each TapePlex.

### *MVC Report Fields*

The following list describes the RECONcil MVC report fields. The data for each MVC is followed by one or more VTV volser with copies on the MVC. This section of the report is followed by a total line showing the number of candidate MVCs and the size in MB to be recalled and remigrated.

**MVC Volser**

the MVC volser.

**MVC Media Type**

the MVC type.

**Media Size (MB)**

the size of the MVC (MB). This will only be determined after VTCS has used an MVC. "UNKNOWN" appears in this field until VTCS migrates a VTV to the MVC.

**Storage Class/Consolidate time**

the MVC's Storage Class or time the VTVs on it were consolidated.

**Candidate VTVs**

the number of candidate VTVs on the MVC.

**Total VTV Size (MB)**

the size of all candidate VTVs on the MVC in MBs.

**Location (ACS ID)**

the ACS where the MVC resides. If blank, the MVC is not currently in an ACS.

## MOVEVTV Report

FIGURE 3-170 shows an example of an RECONcil report with the MOVEVTV option.

```

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)      StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility      PAGE 0001
TIME 10:07:10          RECONCILE MOVEVTV REPORT                          DATE 2010-03-31

Move VTV - MVC 022705 ignored, MAXMVC reached
Move VTV - VTV X04898 ignored, all MVC copies rejected
Move VTV - 4 MVCs selected for processing
Move VTV - 5 VTVs selected for processing
Move VTV - 5 VTV copies to be processed
Move VTV - 0 VTV copies not matched to request
Move VTV - 1 VTV copies rejected by MAXMVC limit
Move VTVs - MVC 023484 selected and contains 1 VTVs
Move VTVs - MVC 022628 selected and contains 1 VTVs
Move VTVs - MVC 022631 selected and contains 2 VTVs
Move VTVs - MVC 022608 selected and contains 1 VTVs

Recall from MVC 022628 to VTSS HBVTSS17
SLS6683I Bulk recall of 1 VTVs issued to MVC 022628
SLS6644I VTV X99909 recalled from MVC:022628 Block:25401431
SLS6637I Recall from MVC 022628 completed

Recall from MVC 023484 to VTSS HBVTSS17
SLS6683I Bulk recall of 1 VTVs issued to MVC 023484
SLS6644I VTV X04897 recalled from MVC:023484 Block:02402581
SLS6637I Recall from MVC 023484 completed

Recall from MVC 022608 to VTSS HBVTSS16
SLS6683I Bulk recall of 1 VTVs issued to MVC 022608
SLS6637I Recall from MVC 022608 completed

Migrate to storage class HBVTSS16 from VTSS HBVTSS17
SLS6681I VTV X99909 migrated to MVC:022589 Block:01400025 StorCl:HBVTSS17
MgmtCl:SIMPLEX
SLS6636I Demand migration to MVC 022589 completed

Recall from MVC 022631 to VTSS HBVTSS16
SLS6683I Bulk recall of 2 VTVs issued to MVC 022631
SLS6644I VTV X99910 recalled from MVC:022631 Block:03400141
SLS6644I VTV X99908 recalled from MVC:022631 Block:05400281
SLS6637I Recall from MVC 022631 completed

```

**FIGURE 3-170** Example output from RECONcil MOVEVTV

# RECOVer

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB  
 UUI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

The RECOVer command recovers the resources owned by a host that becomes inoperable. Cross-host recovery frees library resources that are owned by the failing host, and transfers that ownership to the recovering host. These resources include CAPs, which can be activated by only one host at a time, and volumes, which are assigned to a particular host while moving or mounting.

## Syntax

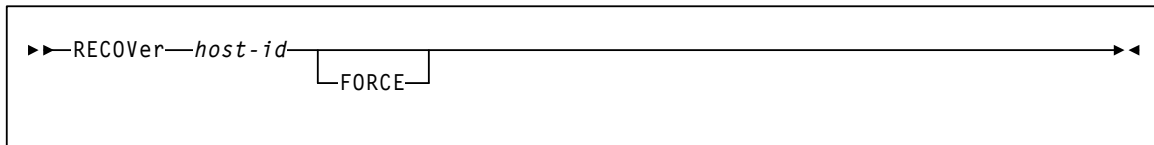


FIGURE 3-171 RECOVer syntax

## Parameters

### *host-id*

identifies the host for which to perform recovery (the SMF system identifier for **both** JES2 and JES3).

### **FORCE**

optionally, indicates that recovery is to be performed for the specified host even if the HSC has not detected that the host is inactive. This allows recovery of a host when the active flag for that host is still on.

---

**Caution – Use the FORCE operand with great caution. Make sure the specified host is inactive before specifying this operand.**

---

Forced recovery of an active host requires that the HSC on that host be recycled. All database activity is prohibited on the recovered host, which can cause unexpected abends when tape activity occurs, or when the HSC is recycled on that host.

---

# RELease

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB only  
 UI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

The RELease command frees an allocated CAP, making it available for other processes, without requiring a recycle of all HSCs sharing the control data set.

A CAP can be left allocated to a host if the HSC on that host terminated without performing recovery while the CAP was active.

This command can be issued from any connected host. The operator is required to confirm the release operation by responding to a console message.

---

**Caution – Use this command as a last resort. Make sure the CAP is not being used by another active process.** Issuing the RELease command on an active CAP may cause the process using the CAP to receive errors.

---

## Syntax

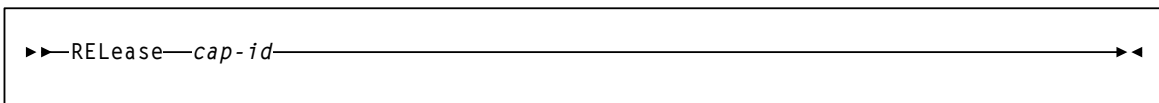


FIGURE 3-172 RELease syntax

## Parameters

### *cap-id*

identifies the CAP to be released. The format of a *cap-id* is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid, and *CC* is the CAP. See [“CAPid” on page 730](#) for a list of valid values.

---

**Note –** The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (decimal 00-99) and *LL* is the LSM number (decimal 00-99).

---

# REPLaceall

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
UUI: Yes

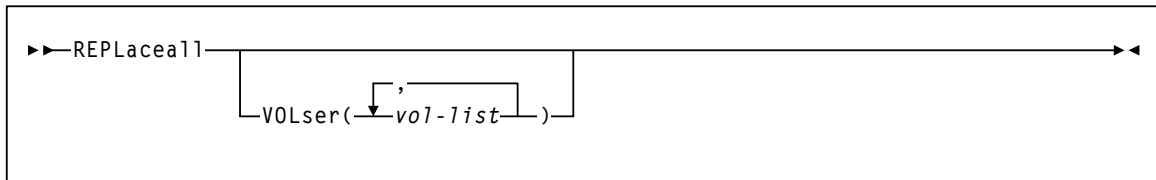
### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

The REPLaceall command deletes the scratch list in the CDS and optionally replaces it with a new list.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-173** REPLaceall syntax

## Parameters

## VOLser

optionally, specifies the list of volume serial numbers to be added, deleted, or replaced in the scratch list(s).

*vol-list*

the volume serial numbers; this can be a single volume, a list of volume serial numbers, ranges of volume serial numbers, or combinations of lists with ranges delimited by commas. The entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

---

# RESTore

**Interfaces:**

SLUADMIN utility only  
UII: No

**Subsystem Requirements:**

HSC must be down (inactive)

## Description

The RESTore command restores, or re-creates the library Control Data Set (CDS) from a previous CDS backup copy. If multiple CDS DD statements are specified, then multiple CDS copies are created in the RESTore process.

---

**Note** – Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for information about using RESTore when journaling is enabled.

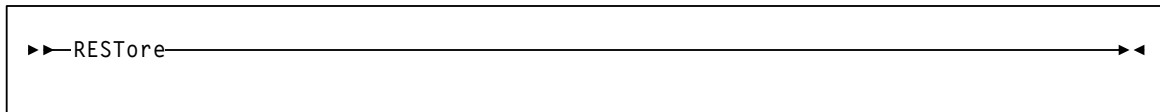
---

---

**Caution** – It is critical that you restore all data sets referenced by the HSC (primary, secondary, standby). Failing to restore all data sets can cause CDS mismatches. Refer to the publication *Managing HSC and VTCS* for detailed information about when to use this utility and how it functions.

---

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-174** RESTore syntax

## Parameters

None required. Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for information about using RESTore when journaling is enabled.

## Additional JCL Requirements

In addition to the required JCL definition statements described in [“Invoking SLUADMIN” on page 684](#), the following definition statements apply to the RESTore JCL:

### **SLSCNTL**

specifies the primary CDS.

### **SLSCNTL2**

optionally, specifies the secondary CDS.

If a secondary CDS exists, include this statement so that if a switch occurs and the secondary CDS becomes active, the CDSs can be reordered to maintain database integrity.

### **SLSSTBY**

optionally, specifies the standby CDS.

If a standby CDS exists, include this statement so that if a switch occurs and the standby CDS becomes active, the CDSs can be reordered to maintain database integrity.

### **SLSBKUP**

the backup data set.



# SCRAtch

## Interfaces:

Console or utility  
 UII: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

The SCRAtch command scratches one or more volumes.

## Syntax

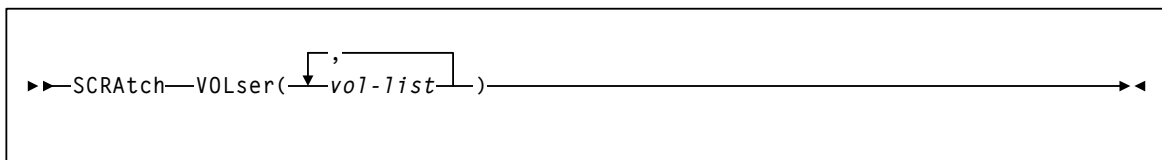


FIGURE 3-175 SCRAtch syntax

## Parameters

### VOLser

specifies the list of volume serial numbers to be added, deleted, or replaced in the scratch list(s).

#### *vol-list*

the volume serial numbers; this can be a single volume, a list of volume serial numbers, ranges of volume serial numbers, or combinations of lists with ranges delimited by commas. The entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

# SCREdist

**Interfaces:**

SLUADMIN utility only  
UUI: No

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

The SCREdist command redistributes, or balances, the number of scratch volumes across the library.

SCREdist permits the redistribution of scratch volumes either:

- among LSMs implied by the specification of an ACS, or
- among the LSMs explicitly identified through an optional parameter.

SCREdist allows you to select one media type and recording technique. If specified, scratch volume redistribution will be based on the MEDia and RECtech settings.

If neither MEDia nor RECtech is specified, volumes are redistributed without regard to media type or recording technique.

When only the ACS parameter is specified, the redistribution method transfers cartridges from LSMs with a greater number of scratch volumes to LSMs with a lesser number of scratch volumes. The process is repeated until the number of scratch volumes in each LSM is within the defined scratch tolerance level.

Distribution in an ACS containing a mix of LSMs (4410s, 9310s, 9360s, 9740s) is performed based on a percentage of scratch cartridges in the ACS. That is, the utility causes each LSM to have the same percentage of scratch tapes within the ACS as the LSM has cells within the ACS. For example, in an ACS where a 9310 LSM contains 80 percent of the cells within the ACS, 80 percent of the scratch tapes will reside in the 9310.

---

**Note** – The SL3000 and SL8500 are standalone libraries and cannot be combined with any other LSM type.

---

After Scratch Redistribution is completed, only the specified LSMs contain scratch cartridges, if the LSM parameter was specified.

Concurrent redistributions among different ACSs are accomplished by multiple executions of this utility program.



**BALtol**

optionally, specifies a balance tolerance value. Scratch volumes are distributed based on this specified value.

***tolerance-value***

a percent value that identifies when cartridge redistribution ends. Valid values are 1 through 999, where the values indicate a percentage from .1 to 99.9 (i.e., 1 signifies .1 percent; 999 equals 99.9 percent). **The initial value for the HSC is 1. If *tolerance-value* is not specified in this utility, HSC uses the initial value for scratch redistribution.**

The utility finishes redistributing scratch cartridges when the percentage of scratch tapes in all specified LSMs is within tolerance-value / 2 percentage points of each LSM's percentage of cells in the ACS.

For example, assume an ACS has one 4410 LSM with 5,000 cells, one 9360 (WolfCreek) LSM with 1,000 cells, and 600 total scratch tapes in the ACS. Scratch Redistribution attempts to put 500 scratches in the 4410 and 100 scratches in the 9360.

Entering BALtol(100) specifies a setting of 10 percent, which means that the utility ends when all LSMs are within ±5 percent of the expected number of scratches for each LSM (500 for the 4410, 100 for the 9360).

The expected number can be determined as follows:

$$expnumlsm = totscracs * \frac{totcellsism}{totcellsacs}$$

where:

***expnumlsm***

expected number of scratches for each LSM.

***totscracs***

total number of scratches in the ACS.

***totcellsism***

total number of cells in the LSM.

***totcellsacs***

total number of cells in the ACS.

In the previous example, the 4410 should have a range 470-530 scratches and the 9360 a range of 70-130. To determine the BALtol range BALtol range:

$$\text{BALtol range} = \text{expnumlsm} + \frac{\text{baltol} / 1000 * \text{totscracs}}{2}$$

where:

**BALtol range**

range of balance tolerance value.

**expnumlsm**

expected number of scratches for each LSM (see above).

**baltol**

user-supplied percent value (*tolerance-value*) that specifies when scratch cartridge redistribution ends.

**totscracs**

total number of scratches in the ACS.

### **MEDia**

optionally, specifies the type of cartridge to redistribute across the ACS.

**media-type**

the media type

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for a list of valid *media-type* values.

### **RECtech**

optionally, specifies the method used to record data tracks on the tape surface.

---

**Note** – If RECtech is not specified, the next scratch cartridge is selected depending on the MEDia type that has been specified.

---

**recording-technique**

the recording technique.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for valid *recording-technique* values.

---

# SENter

**Interfaces:**

Console or PARMLIB only  
UUI: No


**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

The SENter command schedules an enter on a CAP that is currently allocated to an eject operation. The SENter command must be issued from the host that has the CAP allocated for ejecting cartridges.

## Syntax



```
►►SENter—cap-id◄◄
```

FIGURE 3-177 SENter syntax

## Parameters

***cap-id***

specifies the CAP to use to enter the cartridge. One CAP must be specified and it must be allocated to the host issuing the SENter command.

The format of a *cap-id* is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid, and *CC* is the CAP. See [“CAPid” on page 730](#) for a list of valid values.

---

**Note** – The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (decimal 00-99) and *LL* is the LSM number (decimal 00-99).

---

# SET

The SET command allows you to change selected library configuration settings without performing a library reconfiguration. It performs operations directly on the control data set and does not require the HSC to be active.

This command can be issued with the options listed in the following table. Each option is described individually, and in more detail, on the pages to follow.

**TABLE 3-15** SET options

This option:	Sets:
CLNPRFX	cleaning cartridge prefix
COMPRFX	HSC/VTCS command prefix
DRVHOST	whether to allow all SMC client systems to use device addresses defined in the SMC DRIVEMAP command to influence allocation and request mounts and dismounts.
EJCTPAS	eject password
FREEZE	whether to disallow (freeze) or allow (unfreeze) additional cartridges to be stored on a panel or LSM
HOSTID	changes an old host id to a new host id
HSCLEVEL	specifies that the HSC active and release level indicators are to be cleared for the designated host
LOGFILE	defines primary and secondary log files to include logical transactions necessary to recover the CDS.
MAJNAME	specifies that the ENQ/DEQ/RESERVE QNAME is to be set
MIGOPT	changes the following VTCS migration parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ maximum and minimum concurrent automatic migration, immediate migration, and migrate-to-threshold tasks</li> <li>■ high and low AMTs</li> </ul>
NEWHOST	specifies that a new host is to be added
RMM	enables or disables the VTCS to DFSMSrmm interface
SCRLABL	specifies the scratch label type is to be set.
SLISTATN	specifies that the LMU station addresses are to be set.
SLIDRIVS	specifies that the device numbers for the drives in a particular panel are being changed or added
SMF	specifies that the SMF record type used by the HSC is to be set
TAPEPlex	specifies that the TapePlex is to be set
TCHNIQE	specifies that the control data set recovery technique is to be set
VAULT	The SET Vault utility is used to define the VAULT information of a server complex.
VAULTVOL	The SET VAULTVOL utility is used to define the VAULT Volume area.
VOLPARM	The SET VOLPARM utility defines the volume and pool information of a Server complex.

## SET CLNPRFX

### Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UI: No

### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

SET CLNPRFX sets a cleaning prefix.

---

**Note** – HSC must be shut down on all systems before changing the cleaning prefix.

---

## Syntax

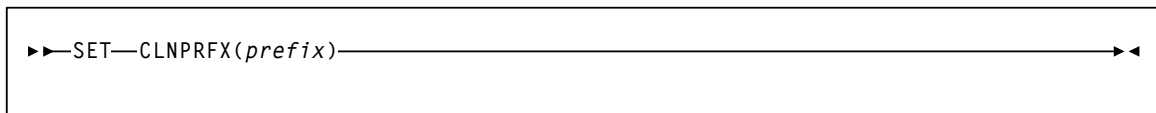


FIGURE 3-178 SET CLNPRFX syntax

## Parameters

### CLNPRFX

#### *prefix*

a 3-character prefix for the cleaning cartridges.  
 Valid characters are A-Z, 0-9, \$, #, and @.

---

**Note** – HSC must be shut down on all systems before changing the cleaning prefix.

---



## SET CLNPRFX Procedure

Follow this procedure to change a cleaning cartridge prefix:

1. Eject **all** cleaning cartridges from **all** ACSs. The HSC records information about cleaning cartridges in the CDS.
2. Terminate the HSC on all hosts.
3. Change the cleaning prefix using SET CLNPRFX.
4. Initialize the HSC on any desired hosts.
5. Enter new cleaning cartridges identified with the new prefix into all ACSs.

---

**Note** – It is preferable to enter new cleaning cartridges because a cartridge's select count is set to zero when it is ejected and reentered. The select count tracks the number of times a cleaning cartridge has been used.

---

## SET COMPRFX

### Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UII: No

### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

SET COMPRFX sets a HSC/VTCS command prefix.

## Syntax

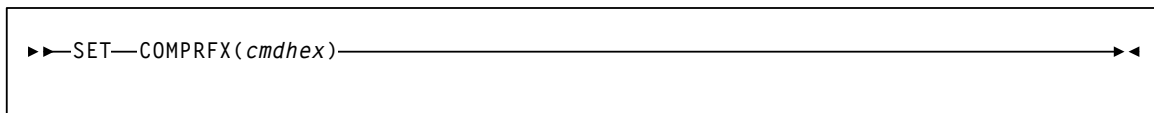


FIGURE 3-179 SET COMPRFX syntax

## Parameters

### COMPRFX

#### *cmdhex*

the 2-character hexadecimal code of the command prefix. Do not choose a value that conflicts with values assigned to other subsystems. The characters associated with each code are shown in Table 3-16 on page 555.

### Note –

- The command prefix is not valid until the HSC or VTCS system is recycled.
- Make sure that the prefix character used does not conflict with any of the following:
  - another subsystem's command prefix character (such as "\$" for JES2, "\*" for JES3, or ";" the delimiter for TSO).
  - the command delimiter for MVS, specified as the value for the CMDDELIM keyword in SYS1.PARMLIB (CONSOLxx) and described in the IBM *z/OS Installation and Tuning Guide*.
  - a JES line editing character as specified in the JES installation statements or default. For JES2 the initialization statement is CONDEF.
  - For JES3 the installation statement is CONSTD. Descriptions of these statements and default values can be found in the appropriate IBM *z/OS JES3 Installation and Tuning Guide*.
- If you are running the HSC on a VM host that shares the CDS with a HSC running on MVS, make sure that your command prefix character does not conflict with any of the VM facilities, such as the CP line editing symbol.

**TABLE 3-16** Mapping of Command Prefix Codes to Characters

Hex	Character	Description
40	null	blank
4A	¢	cent
4B	.	period
4C	<	less than
4D	(	left parenthesis
4E	+	plus
4F		vertical bar
50	&	ampersand
5A	!	exclamation point
5B	\$	dollar sign
5C	*	asterisk
5D	)	right parenthesis
5E	;	semicolon
5F	¬	not symbol
60	-	minus
61	/	slash
6B	,	comma
6C	%	percent
6D	_	underscore
6E	>	greater than
6F	?	question mark
7A	:	colon
7B	#	crosshatch
7C	@	at sign
7E	=	equals sign
7F	“	double quote
<p><b>Note:</b> If you specify a null command prefix (hex 40), you must use the MVS MODIFY command to perform any HSC operator command.  Example: F SLS0 MOUNT EDU050,B30  where:  <b>F</b> an abbreviation for the MVS MODIFY command  <b>SLS0</b> a HSC subsystem  <b>MOUNT</b> a HSC operator command  <b>EDU050</b> a VOLSER ID  <b>B30</b> a designated tape drive</p>		

# SET DRVHOST

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

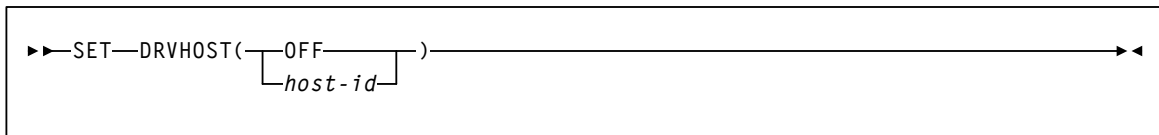
SET DRVHOST directs SMC client systems to use drive addresses defined in the SMC DRIVemap command to influence allocation and request mounts and dismounts.

---

**Note** – See [“DRIVemap” on page 85](#) for more information about the SMC DRIVemap command.

---

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-180** SET DRVHOST syntax

## Parameters

### DRVHOST

#### OFF

indicates that each HSC reports device addresses to SMC clients based on drives defined for that host in the HSC SLILIBRY LIBGEN macro.

#### *host-id*

a host name defined in the CDS.

# SET EJCTPAS

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UII: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

SET EJCTPAS sets a HSC eject password. This password is not valid until the HSC system is recycled.

## Syntax

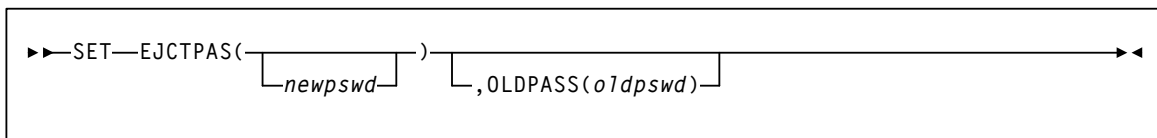


FIGURE 3-181 SET EJCTPAS syntax

## Parameters

### EJCTPAS

#### *newpswd*

a 1- to 8-character eject password.

The new password must be alphanumeric: A-Z (capital letters only) and 0-9.

If *newpswd* is omitted, eject password checking is disabled.

---

**Note** – *newpswd* is not be displayed on SLSPRINT.

---

### OLDPASS

specifies that the old eject password is being specified. The old password must be specified to change or delete a password. To delete an old password, omit it from the syntax, i.e., OLDPASS(). If there is not currently an eject password, this parameter can be omitted.

#### *oldpswd*

the 1-to 8-character old eject password.

---

**Note** – *oldpswd* is not displayed on SLSPRINT.

---

## SET FREEZE

### Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UII: No

### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

SET FREEZE specifies whether to disallow (freeze) or allow (unfreeze) additional cartridges to be stored on a panel or LSM.

## Syntax

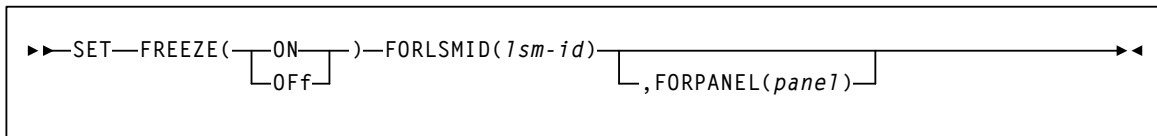


FIGURE 3-182 SET FREEZE syntax

## Parameters

### FREEZE

#### ON

specifies to freeze a panel or LSM, which prevents additional cartridges from being moved to it. This restriction includes allocating new cartridge locations on a panel or LSM as a result of:

- a MOVE command, utility, or PGMI request
- cartridge entry into the ACS
- float, scratch dismount, or scratch redistribution processing.

If a cartridge on a frozen panel is selected (e.g., through a mount request), it may be returned to its home cell on the frozen panel after fulfilling the request.

Cartridges already located on a frozen panel or LSM must be deliberately moved off using the MOVE command, utility, or PGMI request, or cartridges can be ejected by running the EJECT command or EJECT utility.

#### OFF

specifies to unfreeze a panel or LSM, which allows additional cartridges to be moved to it.

**FORLSMID**

specifies that the operation is being restricted to a specific panel or LSM.

*lsm\_id*

the LSMid (AA:LL) of the LSM being frozen or unfrozen. An LSMid (*lsm-id*) is made up of the ACSid (decimal 00-99) and the LSM number (decimal 00-99) separated by a colon (:).

**FORPANEL**

optionally, specifies that the operation is being restricted to a specific panel.

*panel*

the 2-digit ID of the panel to be frozen or unfrozen. The specified panel must be an existing drive panel in the LSM. See [“Panels” on page 731](#) for a list of valid values.

---

**Note –**

- If frozen panels already exist in an LSM, and then you freeze the entire LSM, **all** panels will be unfrozen when you unfreeze the LSM.

If you want some panels to remain frozen after unfreezing the entire LSM, you can add SET FREEZE ON FORLSMID FORPANEL statements to the same SLUADMIN JOBSTEP.

- When an LSM is frozen, no new cell allocations occur. However, any cartridge from the frozen LSM that is currently mounted on a drive will return to its home cell.
- Frozen or unfrozen panels and LSMs are recognized immediately by all active HSCs. It is not necessary to stop and reinitialize active HSCs to detect changes made by SET FREEZE.

On a frozen panel, if a panel type is changed by running the MERGEcds or Reconfiguration utility, the new panel is not frozen. If the panel type **did not** change, the panel remains frozen after a merge or reconfiguration.

---

# SET HOSTID

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

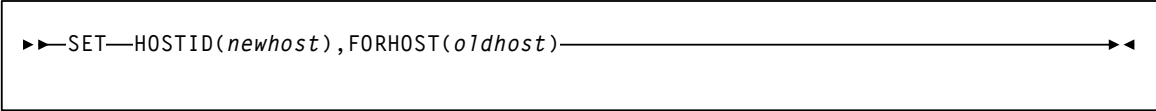
SET HOSTID renames a hostid.

---

**Note** – If other hosts are active at the time of the host name change, some messages on those active hosts may display the old host name. After the HSC is restarted on those hosts, the new host name appears in the messages.

---

## Syntax



```
▶▶SET—HOSTID(newhost),FORHOST(oldhost)————▶▶
```

FIGURE 3-183 SET HOSTID syntax

## Parameters

### HOSTID

specifies that the old host ID is being changed to a new name.

#### *newhost*

a 1-8 character host ID, which represents the SMF system ID for **both** JES2 and JES3. *newhost* cannot already be defined in the CDS.

### FORHOST

specifies the old host ID.

#### *oldhost*

a 1-to 8-character host ID. This host must not be marked active in the CDS. A HSC can be down but still marked active. SET HOSTID would fail to run. To be marked inactive, the HSC, in the host that is down, must be brought up and then shut down. Also, another host could perform cross-host recovery on the HSC that is down, but marked active. Either of these change the status in the CDS of the down HSC from active to inactive. See [“SET HSCLEVEL” on page 561](#) for information about resetting operating flags.

---

**Note** – You must delimit the HOSTID (*newhost* or *oldhost*) with quotes when this ID is in lower case.

---



# SET HSCLEVel

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

SET HSCLEVel clears HSC active and release level indicators for a designated host.

---

**Note** – If used, HSCLEVel should be performed **only when the host designated in *host-id* is inactive**.

---

These indicators remain set after an abrupt termination of the HSC has occurred (e.g., a cancellation of the HSC or a crash of the operating system).

## Syntax

```
▶—SET—HSCLEVel (OFF), FORHOST(host-id)—▶
```

FIGURE 3-184 SET HSCLEVel syntax

## Parameters

### HSCLEVel

#### OFF

specifies that the HSC active and HSC release level indicators for the designated host are to be cleared.

#### FORHOST

specifies that the active indicators are to be cleared for the designated host.

#### *host-id*

the 1- to 8-character host ID of the host to which the operation is restricted.

---

**Note** – Oracle recommends the following alternatives to executing SET HSCLEVel because they reset the HSC indicators and recover resources owned by the failing host:

- Restart the HSC on the host.
  - Enter the RECover *host-id* FORCE operator command.
-

## SET LOGFILE

### Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UI: No

### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

The SET LOGFILE command is part of the HSC Transaction Logging Service, introduced in HSC 7.0.

This command defines primary and secondary log files used by the HSC transaction logging service to record VTCS logical transactions necessary to recover the CDS.

If it becomes necessary to restore a CDS, the information in these log files can be used to reduce the amount of time required to restore the VTCS data in the CDS back to the proper state.

### Note –

- Log files must be pre-formatted using the FMTLOG utility. See [“FMTLOG” on page 399](#) for more information.
- If logging is not currently active, log file names specified in the SET LOGFILE command are activated immediately.
- If logging is currently active, you must run the OFFload LOGFILE utility using the OFFload LOGFILE command to change the log files. See [“OFFload” on page 516](#) for more information.

## Syntax

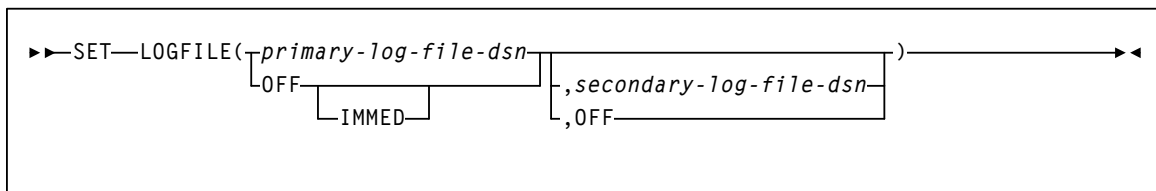


FIGURE 3-185 SET LOGFILE syntax

## Parameters

### LOGFILE

#### *primary-log-file-dsn*

the data set name for the primary log file. This parameter is required.

#### OFF

Specify OFF in place of the *primary-log-file-dsn* to indicate that logging should be terminated. Logging will continue on the HSC subsystem until you run OFFload LOG, unless you also specify the IMMED parameter.

#### IMMED

specifies that logging should be immediately stopped on all active HSC subsystems. When IMMED is specified, any previous log data **cannot** be offloaded.

#### *secondary-log-file-dsn*

optionally, the data set name for the secondary log file. This parameter is required if a secondary log file was previously defined.

When changing only the secondary log file data set name, you must re-specify the existing primary log file data set name in the primary log file data set name position.

#### OFF

Specify OFF in place of the *secondary-log-file-dsn* to change from duplex to simplex logging.

# SET MAJNAME

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UII: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

- Active HSC not required
- HSC must be shut down on all systems before changing the QNAME.

## Description

SET MAJNAME sets the ENQ/DEQ/RESERVE QNAME.

## Syntax

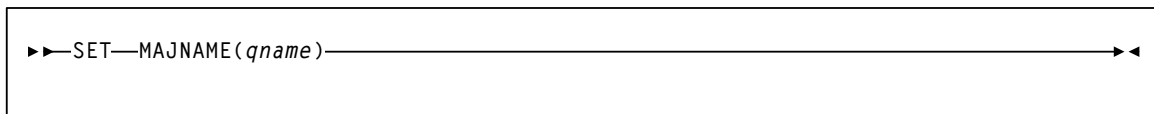


FIGURE 3-186 SET MAJNAME syntax

## Parameters

### MAJNAME

#### *qname*

a 1- to 8-character QNAME. The QNAME is blank padded on the right. The name should conform to the requirements for a QNAME. If any hosts are MVS hosts, to prevent conflicts with the operating system, the QNAME should not start with "SYSA" through "SYSZ." Since the HSC is authorized, the "SYSA" through "SYSZ" names would be allowed, but deadlock may result.

---

**Note** – HSC must be shut down on all systems before changing the QNAME.

---

# SET MIGOPT

## Interfaces:

Console or utility

UI: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

SET MIGOPT changes the following migration parameters:

- Maximum and minimum concurrent automatic migration, immediate migration, and migrate-to-threshold tasks
- High and low AMTs

## Syntax

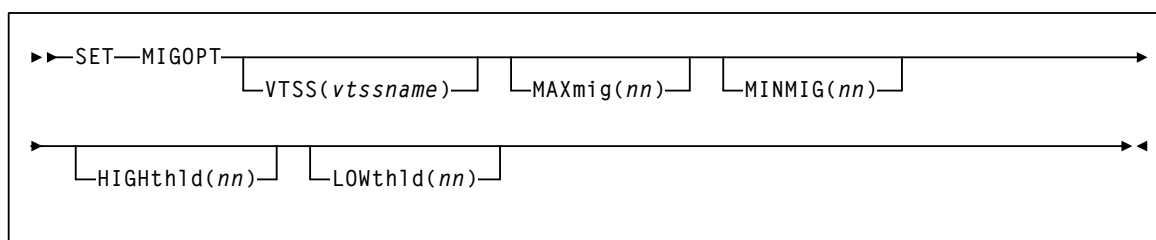


FIGURE 3-187 SET MIGOPT syntax

## Parameters

### VTSS

optionally, specifies the VTSS whose migration parameters you want to change. If you do not specify a VTSS, the changes affect all VTSSs.

*vtssname*

the VTSS identifier.

### MAXMIG(*nn*)

optionally, specifies the maximum number of concurrent automatic migration, immediate migration, and migrate-to-threshold tasks.

Valid values are 1 to the number of RTDs attached to the VTSS. There is no default; if you do not specify a value, the current value is unchanged.

### MINMIG(*nn*)

optionally, specifies the minimum number of concurrent automatic migration, immediate migration, and migrate-to-threshold tasks.

Valid values are 1 to the MAXMIG setting. There is no default; if you do not specify a value, the current value is unchanged.

**HIGHthld**

optionally, specifies the new high AMT.

***high-thr***

the new high AMT as a percent of VTSS space. Valid values are 5 to 95 and must be greater than the LOWthld value.

**LOWthld**

optionally, specifies the new low AMT.

***low-thr***

the new low AMT as a percent of VTSS space. Valid values are 5 to 95 and must be less than the HIGHthld value.

# SET NEWHOST

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UII: No

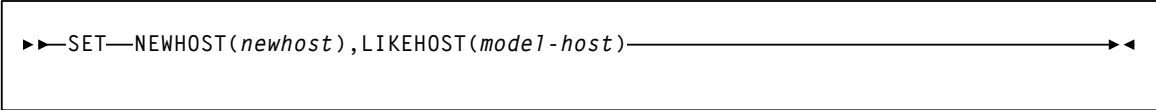
## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

SET NEWHOST defines a new host.

## Syntax



```
►►SET—NEWHOST(newhost), LIKEHOST(model-host)◄◄
```

FIGURE 3-188 SET NEWHOST syntax

## Parameters

### NEWHOST

#### *newhost*

a 1-8 character host ID, which represents the SMF system ID for **both** JES2 and JES3.

### Note –

- The new host to be added cannot exceed the maximum limitation of 16 hosts.
- *newhost* cannot already be defined in the CDS.
- You must delimit the HOSTID with quotes when *newhost* is in lower case.

### LIKEHOST

specifies that an existing configuration, as currently defined in the LIBGEN, is to be used for the new host. Settings used include:

- SLILIBRY>NNLBDRV (nonlibrary drive esoteric)
- SLIACS ACSDRV (ACS drive esoteric)
- SLISTATN ADDRESS (ACS 3270 station addresses)
- SLIDRIVS ADDRESS (drive addresses)

#### *model-host*

a 1- to 8-character host ID.

## SET RMM

### Interfaces:

Console or utility

UII: Yes

### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC/VTCS

## Description

SET RMM enables or disables the VTCS to DFSMSrmm interface.

## Syntax

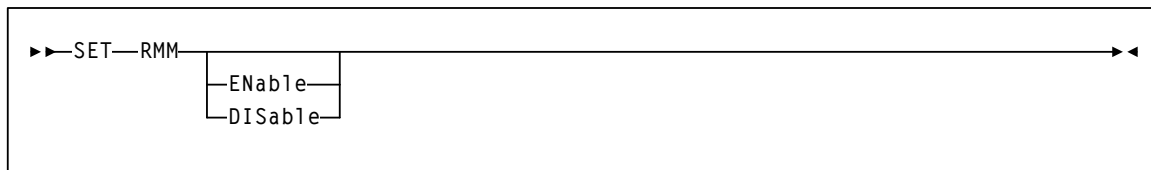


FIGURE 3-189 SET RMM syntax

## Parameters

### ENable

enables the VTCS to DFSMSrmm interface. With the interface enabled, VTCS communicates with DFSMSrmm on all scratch mounts and scratch requests of VTVs whose Management Class specifies DELSCR(YES).

### DISable

disables the VTCS to DFSMSrmm interface. With PTF L1H139T installed, the interface is automatically disabled at VTCS initialization.

If you do not specify a parameter, VTCS displays the current setting of the interface.

### Note –

- Enabling the DFSMSrmm interface is required **only** for sites that do not have IBM APAR OA03368 applied and the following (minimum) VTSS microcode levels installed:
  - VSM3: N01.00.65
  - VSM4: D01.00.03
  - VSM5: all microcode levels have the required change
- If required, Oracle recommends adding the VT SET RMM ENA command to the SLSSYSxx PARMLIB member read at HSC initialization.
- Enabling this interface can cause delays in scratch mount processing.



# SET SCRLABL

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only

UII: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

SET SCRLABL specifies the scratch label type.

To add to the scratch pool, the REPLaceall function is run before the Scratch Update utility. Otherwise, the scratch update utility should be run to update the scratch pools after using this function.

## Syntax

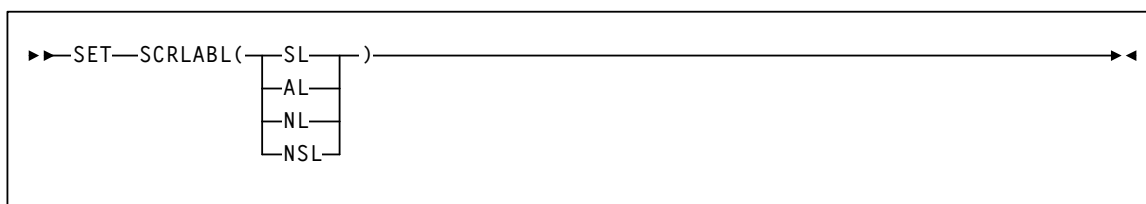


FIGURE 3-190 SET SCRLABL syntax

## Parameters

### SCRLABL

#### SL

specifies that nonspecific requests for standard-labeled tapes are to be automated.

#### AL

specifies that nonspecific requests for ANSI-labeled tapes are to be automated.

#### NL

specifies that nonspecific requests for nonlabeled tapes are to be automated.

#### NSL

specifies that nonspecific requests for nonstandard labeled tapes are to be automated.

## SET SLIDRIVS

### Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UII: No

### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

SET SLIDRIVS adds or changes device numbers for drives in a particular panel.

- For 9310 and 9740 libraries, these changes take effect when you recycle the affected HSC system(s). See [“Running SET SLIDRIVS With the HSC Active” on page 573](#) for more information.
- For SL3000 and SL8500 libraries, these changes take effect when you issue a MODIFY CONFIG UPD ACS(XX) for the ACS that the drives were added to. NCO adds the drives to the configuration. There is no need to recycle the HSC.

---

**Caution** – For 9310 and 9740 libraries, Oracle recommends you bring the HSC down on all hosts before specifying this parameter, and recycle the HSC after every SET SLIDRIVS operation. Table 3-17 on page 573 describes some instances where the HSC can remain active, however, unpredictable results can occur.

---

## Syntax

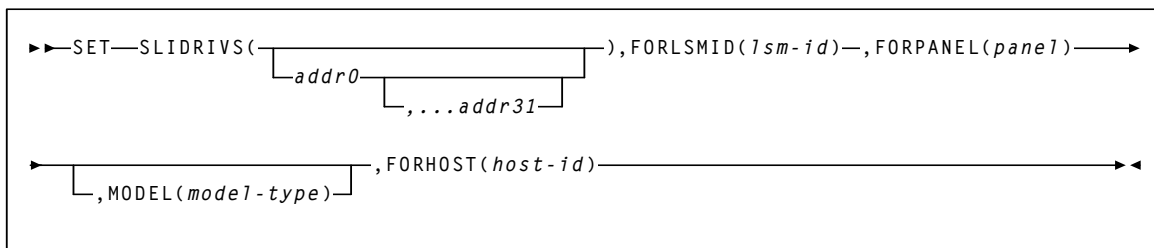


FIGURE 3-191 SET SLIDRIVS syntax

## Parameters

### SLIDRIVS

*addr0,...addr31*

the device numbers for the panel. The numbers are from the top of the panel down. If a device number is omitted, this means that the host cannot access a drive in that particular position in the panel, or the drive does not exist.

---

#### Note –

- Blanks as well as commas may be used to separate the drive specifications.
  - The total number of drives specified (including comma placeholders) must be:
    - 4, 10, or 20 for a 9310
    - 16 for an SL8500
    - 8, 16, 24 or 32 for an SL3000
    - You cannot specify 20-drive panels on 9740 (TimberWolf) LSMs or SL8500 libraries.
    - 10-drive and 20-drive panels cannot be specified on 4410 LSMs.
  - Before this utility can be executed, all cells in the panel must be empty if the user is moving to or from a 20-drive panel configuration.
  - The user can change a drive panel between a 4- or 10-drive panel (normal) and a 20-drive panel (wide) without running a reconfiguration. Affected panels must be empty and no cells in the panels can be allocated to cartridges.
- To make sure that drive panels being changed from normal to wide configurations (or vice versa) remain empty, freeze them with the SET FREEZE utility. Then, move all cartridges to other panels or LSMs.
- If a panel type is changed by SET SLIDRIVS, the new panel will not be frozen. Frozen panels whose panel type did **not** change remain frozen after SET SLIDRIVS.

- HSC does not allow duplicate addresses for drives.

If it becomes necessary to exchange the drive addresses on one panel with the drive addresses on another panel, the addresses on one of the panels must first be changed to temporary addresses that are not currently defined. For example:

```
LSM00, PANEL10, ADDRESSES-400,401,402,403
LSM01, PANEL11, ADDRESSES-404,405,406,407
```

If the 400-403 addresses are to be moved to LSM01 and 404-407 are to be moved to LSM0, the SET utility must first be run to change the LSM0 addresses (400-403) to 900-903 (or some other addresses that are not currently defined). The SET utility is then run to change the LSM01 addresses to 400-403. The utility is run a third time to change the temporary LSM0 addresses (900-903) to 404-407.

- On all 9310 LSMs, drives are defined to the HSC from top to bottom, with *addr0* representing the topmost drive and *addrn* the bottommost drive.

However, on a 9740 10-drive panel LSM, the drives are populated and configured to the 9740 LSM from bottom to top. (9740 4-drive panels are configured to the 9740 LSM from top to bottom, as are all other LSM drive panels.)

An example showing how to define a 9740 10-drive panel containing five 9840 drives is:

```
SET SLIDRIVS( , , , , BD4, BD3, BD2, BD1, BD0), FORLSMID(lsm-id),  
FORPANEL(panel)
```

For the SL3000, drives are defined from top to bottom, right to left, as looking from the front to the back of the library.

For the SL8500, drives are defined from top to bottom, right to left, as viewed from the outside of the library.

### FORLSMID

specifies that the operation is being restricted to a specific LSM.

*lsm-id*

the LSMid (AA:LL) containing the drive panel whose addresses are being changed. An LSMid (*lsm-id*) is made up of the ACSid (decimal 00-99) and the LSM number (decimal 00-99) separated by a colon (:).

### FORPANEL

specifies that the operation is being restricted to a specific panel.

*panel*

the 2-digit ID of the panel containing the drives whose addresses are being changed. See [“Panels” on page 731](#) for a list of valid values.

**Note** – The specified panel must be an existing drive panel in the LSM.

### MODEL

optionally, specifies the transport model number.

*model-type*

the model type.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for a list of valid *model-type* values.

**Note** – The MODEL parameter is only used to specify the drive type for manual RTDs., which are defined in a nonexistent ACS. When an LSM is brought online, the (non-manual) drive type is automatically set.

**FORHOST**

specifies that the operation is being restricted to a specific host. Only the specified hosts' drive device numbers are set. If omitted, the device numbers for all hosts are changed.

---

**Note** – The number of drive positions for a specific host must equal the number of drive positions defined globally (issuing SET SLIDRIVS without the FORHOST parameter).

---

*host-id*

the 1- to 8-character host ID of the host, to which the operation is restricted.

## Running SET SLIDRIVS With the HSC Active

---

**Note** – The following applies to 9310 and 9740 LSMs only. It does not apply to the SL8500 or SL3000.

---

Ideally, the HSC should be shut down on all hosts when you specify the SET SLIDRIVS parameter. In some cases, however, the HSC can be left active without causing adverse results. Table 3-17 defines options for running SET SLIDRIVS.

**TABLE 3-17** HSC State/SET SLIDRIVS Operation

HSC State	Effect on SET SLIDRIVS
Down	If the HSC is down on all hosts, the HSC recognizes all new drive locations when it is initialized.
Active	The HSC can be up on all hosts only if <i>new drives are being added at new drive locations</i> . The HSC recognizes the new drive locations when it is recycled on a host.
Active	<p>If unit addresses are changed or deleted for an <i>existing drive location</i>, either</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ the affected LSM must be offline until the HSC has been recycled on all hosts, or</li> <li>■ the affected ACS must be offline to all affected hosts that access an HSC that has not been recycled.</li> </ul>

## SET SLIDRIVS Procedure

The following procedures show one method for changing unit addresses with the HSC active.

### *For the 9310 and 9740:*

■ For one host:

1. Modify the affected LSM offline (MODify *lsm-id* OFFline). The LSM will be offline to all hosts.
2. Use SET SLIDRIVS to update the CDS drive records while the Oracle StorageTek CSE(s) is making the hardware changes.
3. Recycle the HSC on one host.
4. Vary the affected ACS offline (Vary ACS(*acs-id*) OFFline) on all hosts running an HSC that has not been recycled.
5. Modify the affected LSM online (MODify *lsm-id* ONline). The LSM will be online to all hosts where the ACS is online.

---

**Note** – Only hosts that are online to the ACS and running a recycled HSC will mount to drives connected to this LSM.

---

- For the remaining hosts, recycle the HSC, and the affected ACS will come up.

### *For the SL3000 and SL8500:*

1. Make necessary hardware changes (add/delete/move drives).
2. Modify the SET SLIDRIVS JCL deck to reflect the changes.
3. Run SET SLIDRIVS.
4. Issue MODIFY CONFIG (or MODIFY CONFIG ACS(*xx*))

The changes will cascade to all other hosts.

# SET SLISTATN

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only

UII: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

SET SLISTATN adds or changes LMU station addresses in an ACS. The change does not take effect until the affected HSC(s) is recycled.

An affected HSC is one that resides in the host specified in FORHOST. If FORHOST is omitted, all HSCs are relevant because the operation is not restricted to a specific host.

## Syntax

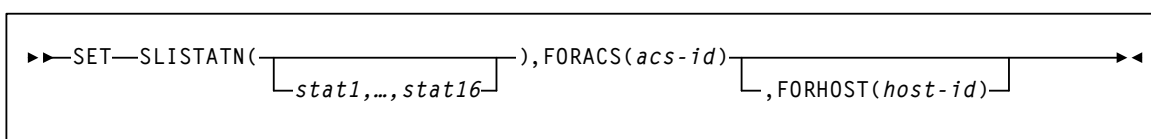


FIGURE 3-192 SET SLISTATN syntax

## Parameters

### SLISTATN

*stat1,...,stat16*

the LMU station addresses associated with a particular ACS. No station addresses are required. Up to 16 can be specified, separated by commas.

### Note –

- When adding one or more station addresses to an existing list of stations, you must specify all old stations as well as new ones. Any stations (for this ACS and Host ID) not specified here will be deleted and no longer available for use.
- To remove station addresses for an ACS or host, do not specify station addresses following the SLISTATN parameter. For example,

```
SET SLISTATN( ) , FORACS(01) , FORHOST(HSCA)
```

### FORACS

specifies the ACS for which station addresses are being changed.

*acs-id*

the ACSid whose stations are being changed (00 - FF).

SET

**FORHOST**

specifies that the operation is being restricted to a specific host. Only the specified hosts' stations are set. If omitted, the stations for all hosts are changed.

*host-id*

the 1- to 8-character host ID for the host to which the operation is restricted.



## SET SMF

### Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UI: No

### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

SET SMF adds a new SMF record type for HSC.

Until the HSC is recycled on all CPUs, the ACTivities command produces incorrect results because some HSC systems are writing records with the old SMF type, and some with the new record type.

## Syntax

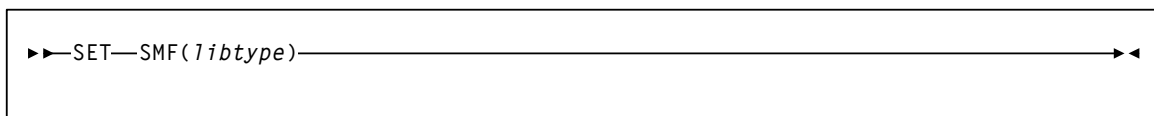


FIGURE 3-193 SET SMF syntax

## Parameters

### SMF

#### *libtype*

the SMF record type. The range is from 0 to 255, inclusive.

Since 128 through 255 are for user-defined records, it is recommended that a number from 128 through 255 be chosen, and that the number does not conflict with other user-defined record types.

## SET TAPEPlex

### Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UII: No

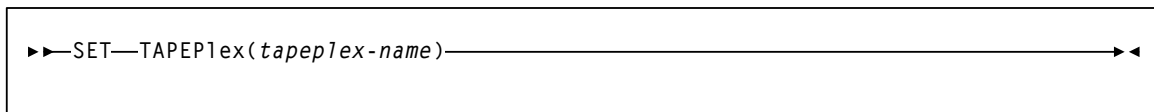
### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

SET TAPEPlex sets a TapePlex name.

## Syntax



```
►►SET—TAPEPlex(tapeplex-name)—————►►
```

FIGURE 3-194 SET TAPEPlex syntax

## Parameters

### TAPEPlex

#### *tapeplex-name*

the 1-8 character TapePlex name.

The TapePlex name must start with an alphabetic or numeric character. Remaining characters may be letters, numbers, or hyphens, however, a hyphen may not be the last character. You can specify a NULL value (TAPEPLEX()) to allow the TapePlex name to be set automatically by the next SMC transaction.

---

**Note** – This name must match the TapePlex name specified on the SMC TAPEPlex command on ALL SMC systems that communicate with this HSC system. See [“TAPEPlex” on page 148](#) for more information about the SMC TapePlex command.

---

## SET TCHNIQE

### Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only

UII: No

### Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

SET TCHNIQE sets the control data set recovery technique. This replaces the recovery technique currently defined in the CDS.

Refer to the publication *Configuring HSC and VTCS* for information about the LIBGEN SLIRCVRY macro. A recovery technique value must be specified; there is no default value.

## Syntax

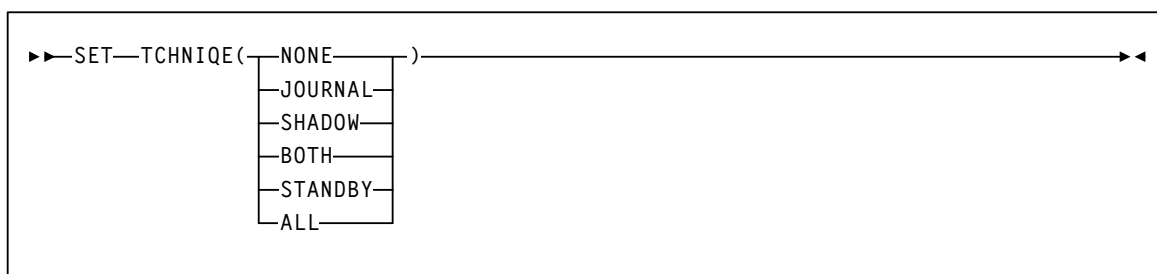


FIGURE 3-195 SET TCHNIQE syntax

## Parameters

### TCHNIQE

#### NONE

specifies no form of recovery is used for the control data set. Thus, the primary control data set must be rebuilt, if inaccessible.

#### JOURNAL

specifies that there is to be only one primary control data set and that journals are kept. These data sets are to be used for recovery purposes.

The journals contain a record of all transactions that update the control data set. There are two journals per host. It is recommended that they are placed on separate HDAs from the primary control data set DASD volume.

#### SHADOW

specifies that there is to be two distinct copies of the control data set (primary and secondary) for recovery purposes. It is recommended that these data sets reside on separate HDAs and separate strings. A journal is not recorded.

#### BOTH

specifies that two distinct copies of the control data set (primary and secondary) and journals are specified for recovery purposes. **The default is BOTH.**

#### STANDBY

specifies that primary, secondary, and standby control data sets are to be recorded for recovery purposes. No journals are recorded during HSC operation.

#### ALL

specifies that all control data sets (primary, secondary, and standby) and journals are to be kept and available for recovery purposes.

## SET TCHNIQE Procedure

Use the following procedure to invoke the TCHNIQE utility and to set the appropriate recovery technique value:

1. ALLOCATE, based on existing CDS definitions, any new CDS copies that will be needed for the subsequent SET recovery technique.
2. Stop the HSCs on all hosts configured to use the CDS you are intending to update with SET recovery technique.
3. Run the BACKup utility.
4. Run the RESTore utility to restore all CDS copies required to support the current recovery technique. If the recovery technique update in the following step requires new CDS copies, then include them in this restore.
5. Run the SET utility with the appropriate recovery technique value. It is important to note that the SET utility for this recovery technique update must include DD statements for all CDS copies defined in either the old or the new recovery technique.
6. Run the BACKup utility again. This backup provides you with the ability to restore the updated CDS.

# SET VAULT

**Interfaces:**

SLUADMIN utility only  
UII: No

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC not required

## Description

SET VAULT defines VAULT information for a server complex. This information is stored in the CDS and serves as the VAULT information source for all server systems that access the CDS.

**Note** – Before running this utility for the first time, you **must** run the SET VAULTVOL utility to create the Vault Volume records in the CDS.

## Syntax

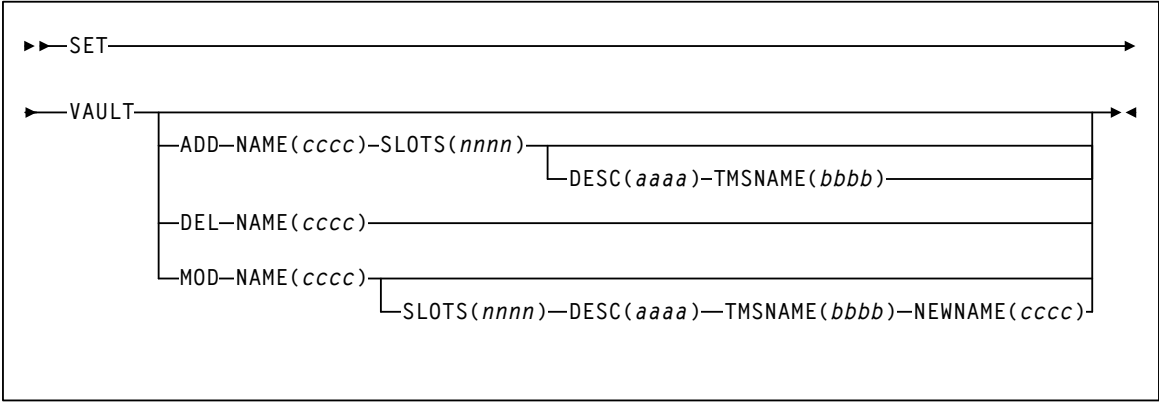


FIGURE 3-196 SET VAULT syntax

## Parameters

### VAULT

#### ADD, MOD, DEL

specifies to add, modify, or delete a Vault from the CDS. Only one of these parameters may be specified on a SET VAULT statement.

#### NAME

specifies the name of the Vault. You can specify a maximum of 8 characters. This parameter is required.

#### DESC

optionally, specifies the description of the Vault. You can specify a maximum of 120 characters. If blank characters are included, the entire value must be enclosed in single quotes. This parameter is only valid with the ADD and MOD parameters.

#### NEWNAME

optionally, specifies the new name of the Vault. You can specify a maximum of 8 characters. This parameter is only valid with the MOD parameter.

#### TMSNAME

optionally, specifies the TMS Vault name. You can specify a maximum of 8 characters. This parameter is only valid with the ADD and MOD parameters.

#### SLOTS

specifies the number of slots in the Vault. The slot number can be 1-999,999,999. When specified with the MOD option, the SLOTS number must be greater than the current number of SLOTS defined to the Vault.

This parameter is required with the ADD option and optional with the MOD option.

---

**Note** – The total number of slots for all Vaults cannot exceed the number of Vault Volumes set by the SET VAULTVOL utility.

---

# SET VAULTVOL

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only

UII: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

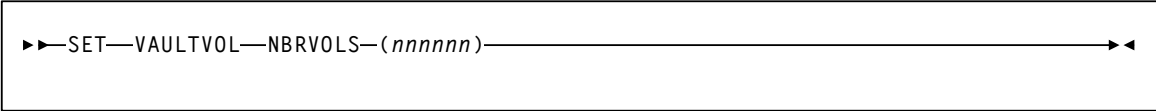
SET VAULTVOL defines the VAULT volume area. This information is stored in the CDS and serves the VAULT volume area information source for all server systems that access the CDS.

---

### Note –

- You **must** run this utility before running the SET VAULT utility.
  - There is no SET utility command to increase, decrease, or remove all vault volume records once the SET VAULTVOL utility is run. To increase the number of vault volume records, use the Merge CDS utility to migrate vaults and vaulted volumes to a CDS that has been configured with a greater number of vault volumes.
- 

## Syntax



```
►►SET—VAULTVOL—NBRVOLS—(nnnnnn)—————►
```

FIGURE 3-197 SET VAULTVOL syntax

## Parameters

### VAULTVOL

### NBRVOLS

specifies the number of VAULT volumes to be added to the CDS. This number can be 1-9,999,999,999.

---

### Note –

- Refer to the publication *Configuring HSC and VTCS* for details on calculating CDS space requirements for Vaulting.
  - The number of Vault volumes must be greater than the total number of slots for all Vaults created with the SET VAULT utility.
-

# SET VOLPARM

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UII: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

SET VOLPARM defines the volume and pool information for a server complex. This information is stored in the CDS and is the volume and pool information source for all server systems (ELS 7.0 or higher) that access the CDS.

SET VOLPARM reads POOLPARM and VOLPARM control statements that define VOLUME/POOL information in the form of named pools of specific types, and their associated volser ranges.

Once SET VOLPARM is run, older volume and pool definitions are disabled for all server systems (ELS 7.0 or higher) that access the common CDS.

---

**Note** – HSC 6.2 or lower systems are unaware of the presence of the SET VOLPARM data and continue to operate as though the SET VOLPARM utility had not been run.

---

The following commands are disabled for systems (ELS 7.0 or higher) after SET VOLPARM:

HSC:

- VOLDEF
- SCRPDEF

VTCS:

- MVCDEF
- CONFIG VTVVOL/MVCVOL

The HSC/VTCS systems do not need to be recycled for the new volume and pool definitions to take effect. The attached HSC/VTCS in the CDS complex are notified of the definition changes and the volume and pool definitions are automatically active.

## Syntax

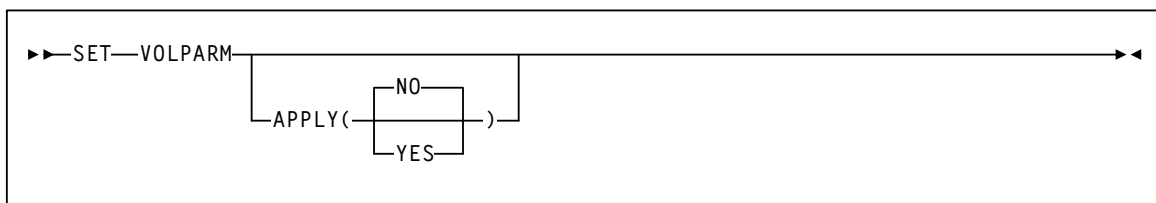


FIGURE 3-198 SET VOLPARM syntax



## Parameters

### **VOLPARM**

#### **APPLY**

specifies whether the POOLPARM/VOLPARM definitions are to be applied to the CDS:

#### **NO**

Validate the definitions but do not apply them to the CDS (the default).

#### **YES**

Apply the definitions. If you specify YES, the SLSPARM data set containing POOLPARM and VOLPARM control statements is read and applied to the CDS.

POOLPARM and VOLPARM control statements are defined in the SLSPARM data set, and define VOLUME/POOL information in the form of named pools of specific types, and their associated volser ranges.

- When a POOLPARM statement is read, all subsequent VOLPARMs encountered until the next POOLPARM statement are applied to the prior POOLPARM.
- When VOLPARM statements are read without a prior POOLPARM, those VOLSER volumes will be considered non sub-pool (subpool 0) volumes.

See [“POOLPARM Control Statement” on page 586](#) and [“VOLPARM Control Statement” on page 592](#) for more information.

## Additional JCL Requirements

In addition to the required JCL definition statements described in [“Invoking SLUADMIN” on page 684](#), the following definition statements apply to the SET VOLPARM JCL:

### **SLSPARM**

specifies the data set that contains the POOLPARM and VOLPARM control statements that define volumes and pools.

## POOLPARM Control Statement

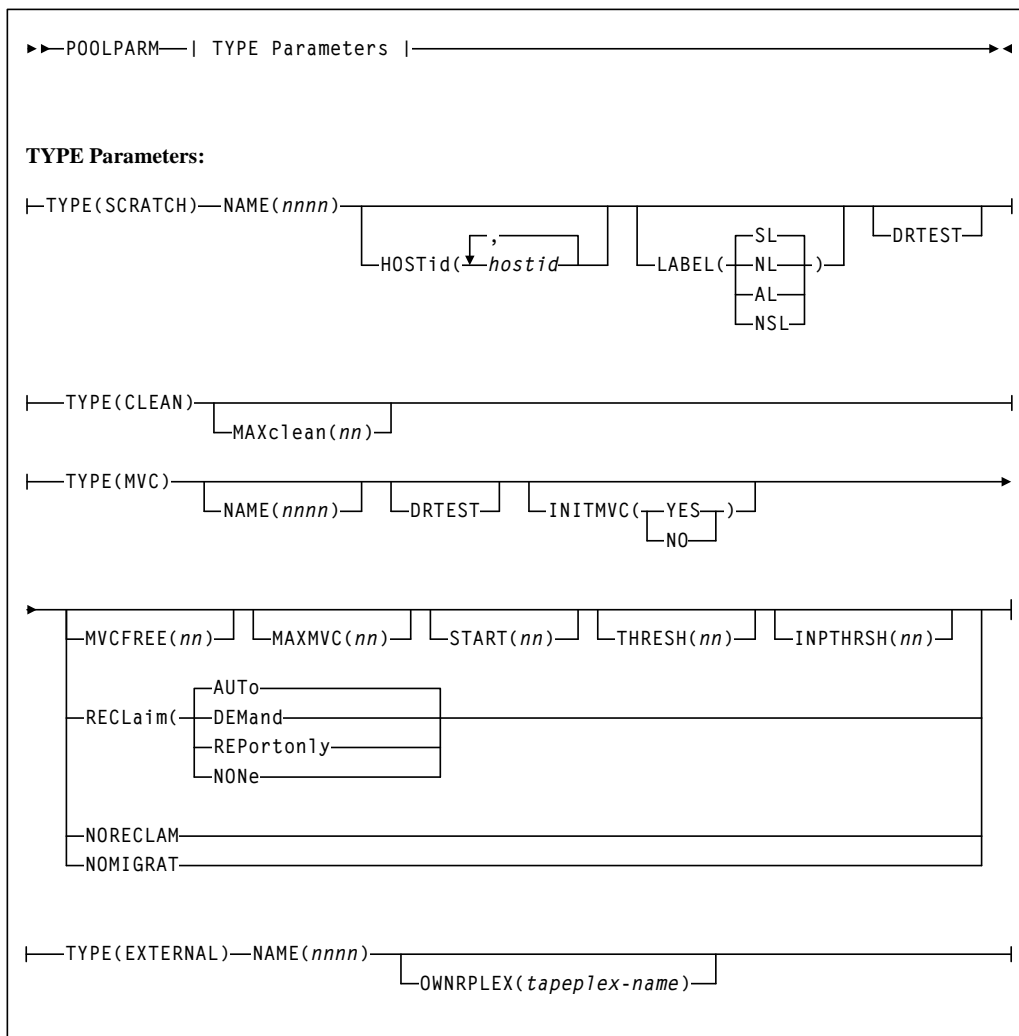
POOLPARM control statements define pool information for a server complex in the form of named pools of specific types.

VOLPARM statements define a volser, volser list, or volser range to be associated with the specified POOLPARM statement.

POOLPARM and VOLPARM statements are defined in the SLSPARM data set, and are loaded using the SET VOLPARM utility. See [“SET VOLPARM” on page 584](#) for more information.

- When a POOLPARAM statement is read, all subsequent VOLPARAM statements encountered before the next POOLPARAM statement are applied.
- When VOLPARAM statements are read without a prior POOLPARAM, those VOLSER volumes are considered non-subpool (subpool 0) volumes.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-199** POOLPARM control statement syntax

## Parameters

### TYPE

specifies the type of pool definition. Valid types are SCRATCH, CLEAN, MVC, and EXTERNAL.

### NAME

specifies the name of the volume pool.

#### *nnnn*

the volume pool name. A maximum of 13 characters is allowed; blank spaces are not permitted.

- NAME is **required** for TYPE(SCRATCH) and TYPE(EXTERNAL) pools.
- NAME is **optional** for TYPE(MVC) pools.
- NAME is **not valid** for TYPE(CLEAN) pools.

Additionally:

- NAME(DEFAULTPOOL) is not valid for TYPE(SCRATCH) or TYPE(MVC).
- NAME(ALL) is not valid for TYPE(MVC).

## TYPE(SCRATCH) Subparameters

### HOSTid

optionally, defines the hosts that can access the named sub-pool.

#### *hostid*

the host id. Multiple host-lists may be specified, separating each host-list value with a comma. If a host id is not specified, the default is all hosts.

HOSTid determines which client hosts can mount volumes from the named subpool. If a mount request is received from a client not specified in the HOSTid list, the HSC rejects the mount request and the mount is not satisfied. If you did not specify an ALIASHOST on the SMC SERVER command, then specify the 4 character SMFID of the MVS hosts that will access the subpool. Otherwise, you can specify up to 8 characters for the host name matching the SMC ALIASHOST specification.

### LABEL

optionally, specifies the label type associated with the named sub-pool. Types include:

- SL - standard label (default)
- NL - no label
- AL - ANSI label
- NSL - nonstandard label

---

**Note** – Scratch volume requests without a sub-pool (sub-pool 0) will come from volumes NOT defined in named SUBPOOLS.

---

### DRTEST

optionally, specifies that the scratch pool is to be used in DRTEST environments.

*TYPE(CLEAN) Subparameters***MAXclean**

optionally, specifies the maximum cleaning cartridge usage for the named sub-pool. Do not specify values that exceed the manufacturer's recommendation for usage.

The volumes defined in the CLEAN sub-pools must begin with the cleaning cartridge prefix defined in the LIBGEN.

---

**Note** – If MAXclean is not specified in the VOLPARM statement, the value or default of the MAXclean parameter in the MNTD operator command is used for all cleaning cartridge counts.

---

*TYPE(MVC) Subparameters***DRTEST**

optionally, specifies that the MVC pool is to be used **only** in DRTEST environments.

**INITMVC**

optionally, enables or disables the MVC initialization feature.

**YES**

enables the MVC initialization feature.

**NO**

disables the MVC initialization feature.

**MVCFREE(nn)**

optionally, specifies the minimum number of free MVCs in the MVC pool. A free MVC has 100% usable space and does not contain any migrated VTVs.

Valid values are 0 to 255. There is no default; if not specified, the CONFIG RECLAIM value (or default) is used.

If free MVCs is equal or less than this value, VTCS issues message SLS6616I and initiates an automatic space reclamation.

**MAXMVC(nn)**

optionally, specifies the maximum number of MVCs to be processed in a single space reclamation run. Valid values are 1 to 98. There is no default; if not specified, the CONFIG RECLAIM value (or default) is used.

For automatic space reclamation to start, the number of eligible MVCs (determined by the THRESH parameter) must also exceed the MAXMVC value.

**START=*nn***

optionally, specifies the level at which automatic space reclamation starts for each ACS (not globally for all ACSs), or, if specified, for a Named MVC Pool. Specify a percentage value, which is equal to:

$$(\text{Reclaim Candidates} / \text{Reclaim Candidates} + \text{Free MVCs}) * 100$$

Where:

*Reclaim Candidates*

is the number of Reclaim Candidates determined by the CONFIG RECLAIM THRESHLD parameter.

*Reclaim Candidates + Free MVCs*

equals the number of Reclaim Candidates plus the number of free MVCs.

Valid values are 1 to 98. There is no default; if not specified, the CONFIG RECLAIM value (or default) is used.

**THRESH(*nn*)**

optionally, specifies the percentage of fragmented space that makes an MVC eligible for demand or automatic reclamation. Valid values are 4 to 98. There is no default; if not specified, the CONFIG RECLAIM value (or default) is used.

**INPTHRSH**

optionally, specifies the percentage of fragmented space that makes an MVC in partitioned format (within the pool) eligible for dynamic reclaim processing.

This value overrides the global INPTHRSH value specified in the CONFIG RECLAIM statement. If this parameter is not specified, the current active global INPTHRSH value is used.

*nn*

a percentage between 3 and 97. This value must be less than the THRESHLD value.

---

**Note** – If INPTHRSH is specified, THRESHLD must also be specified. Both INPTHRSH and THRESHLD play roles when space reclamation processes MVCs in partitioned format. Refer to the publication *Configuring HSC and VTCS* for more information.

---

**RECLaim**

optionally, specifies space reclaim behavior of the MVCPOOL.

**AUTo**

VTCS will output message SLS6699E and schedule automatic space reclaims.

Reclaims may also be invoked using the RECLAIM command. This is the default.

**DEMAND**

VTCS will not output message SLS6699E and will not schedule automatic space reclaims. Reclaims may be invoked using the RECLAIM command.

RECLaim(DEMAND) is mutually exclusive with MVCFREE and START.

**REPortonly**

VTCS will output message SLS6699E but will not schedule automatic space reclaims. Reclaims may not be invoked using the RECLAIM command.

RECLaim(REPortonly) is mutually exclusive with MAXMVC, START, and THRESH.

---

**Note** – REPortonly is equivalent to, and replaces, the NORECLAM parameter though NORECLAM is still tolerated if the RECLaim parameter is not specified.

---

**NONe**

VTCS will not output message SLS6699E and will not schedule automatic space reclaims. Reclaims may not be invoked using the RECLAIM command.

RECLaim(NONe) is mutually exclusive with MVCFREE, MAXMVC, START, and THRESH.

**NORECLAM**

optionally, specifies that the named MVCPOOL will not be eligible for space reclamation.

---

**Note** – The use of the MVCFREE, MAXMVC, THRESH, INPTHRSH and START parameters override the values specified on CONFIG for the named sub-pool.

---

**NOMIGRAT**

optionally, specifies that the MVCPOOL will not be eligible for selection for migration MVCs. This allows MVC information to be retained in the CDS virtual area. The MVCs will not be used for new migrations.

## *TYPE(EXTERNAL) Subparameters*

### **OWNRPLEX**

optionally, specifies the name of the TapePlex that owns the volumes in the external pool.

For VTVs, this controls volumes imported via Cross-TapePlex Replication. A VTV can only be imported if the sending system's TapePlex name matches the OWRNRPLEX value.

Volumes in an EXTERNAL pool can be scratched only if the scratch request originates from the TapePlex matching the OWRNRPLEX name. The TapePlex name is defined via the SMC TAPEPLEX NAME parameter and the CONFIG TAPEPLEX THISPLEX parameter.

Alternatively, volumes in an external pool with an OWRNRPLEX name of "LOCALHSC" can be scratched on the local system (but not used as scratch volumes on the local system).

---

**Note** – Refer to the publications *Managing HSC and VTCS* and *ELS Disaster Recovery and Offsite Data Management Guide* for more information about Cross-Tape Replication.

---

## VOLPARM Control Statement

VOLPARM control statements define volume attributes for a server complex. These statements define a volser, volser list, or volser range to be associated with a specified POOLPARM statement.

POOLPARM and VOLPARM statements are defined in the SLSPARM data set, and are loaded using the SET VOLPARM utility. See [“SET VOLPARM” on page 584](#) for more information.

VOLPARM statements follow a POOLPARM statement and apply **only** to that POOLPARM.

- When a POOLPARM statement is read, all subsequent VOLPARM statements encountered before the next POOLPARM statement are applied.
- When VOLPARM statements are read without a prior POOLPARM, those VOLSER volumes are considered non-subpool volumes.

### Syntax

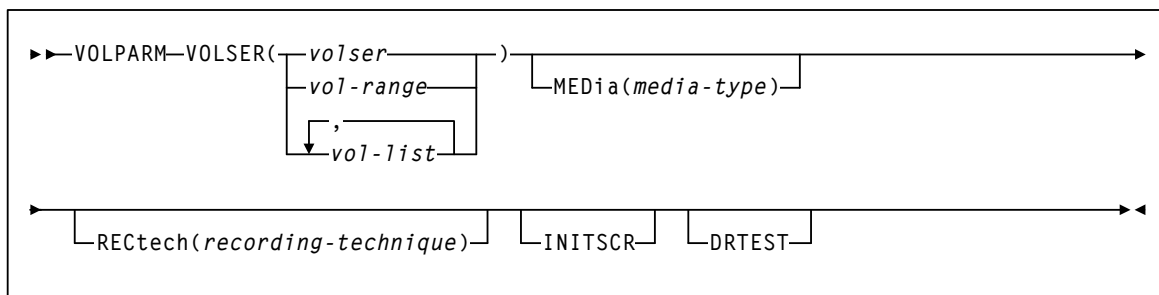


FIGURE 3-200 VOLPARM syntax



## Parameters

### VOLSER

specifies one or more volumes to which this definition applies.

*volser* or *vol-range* or *vol-list*

a single VOLSER, a VOLSER range, or a list of VOLSERS.

Do not overlap the ranges. Doing so causes an error which invalidates the entire POOLPARM definition.

### MEDia

optionally, specifies the media type for the volume(s) specified on the VOLSER parameter.

*media-type*

the media type.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for a list of valid *media-type* values.

---

### Note –

- Only specific media types can be entered. Generic media types, that is, LONGitud and HELical cannot be specified.
  - If this parameter is not specified, a default is chosen based on the value of the RECtech parameter. [TABLE A-2 on page 722](#) shows default values used if MEDia is omitted.
  - If both media type and recording technique are omitted, all media types and recording techniques are assumed to be eligible. It is recommended that MEDia always be specified on all VOLPARM statements.
- 

### RECtech

optionally, specifies the method used to record data on the media for the volume(s) specified on the VOLSER parameter.

*recording-technique*

the recording technique.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for valid *recording-technique* values.

If this parameter is not specified on any matching VOLPARM statement, a default is chosen based on the value of the MEDia parameter. [TABLE A-4 on page 725](#) shows default values used if RECtech is omitted.

### INITSCR

optionally, specifies that the VIRTUAL volume has an initial status of SCRATCH.

The INITSCR parameter is only valid with MEDIA(VIRTUAL) and/or RECTECH(VIRTUAL) volumes. INITSCR only has meaning when the VTV is first defined.

### DRTEST

optionally, specifies that the volumes in the defined range are to be used **only** in DRTEST environments. The DRTEST parameter is only valid for VOLPARM statements defined before the first POOLPARM statement.

# SRVlev

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB only  
 UII: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

The SRVlev command sets the HSC service level. See [“HSC Service Levels” on page 61](#) for information about BASE and FULL service levels.

## Syntax

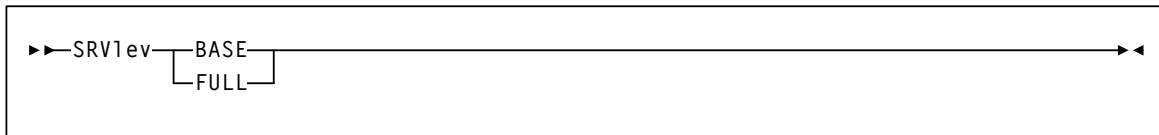


FIGURE 3-201 SRVlev syntax

## Parameters

### BASE

specifies that the HSC is to operate at the BASE service level.

---

**Note** – When the HSC service level drops to BASE, host-to-host communications using the LMU method are switched to the CDS method. When the HSC FULL service level is restored, you must issue the COMMPath command to return to LMU communications.

---

### FULL

specifies that the HSC is to operate at the FULL service level.

---

**Note** – When the HSC service level is brought from BASE up to FULL, outstanding mount requests are resolved.

---



# SWitch

**Interfaces:**

Console or PARMLIB only  
UUI: No

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

The SWitch command can be used to manually reverse the roles of the master and standby LMUs or Library Controllers (LCs). The following configurations support switching:

- dual LMU
- SL8500 dual Library Controller (LC)

In a dual LMU environment, this command initiates an IPL in the master LMU, causing the current standby LMU to become the master LMU. If the former master LMU completes the IPL successfully, it then assumes the role of the standby LMU.

In a dual LC configuration for a multiple SL8500 library ACS, the SWitch command issues a request to the LMU to switch the library LCs by library ID.

---

**Caution** – Issue the Display Acs command **before** you enter the SWitch command to ensure the library to switch includes an assigned TCP/IP address or host name for the standby. If it does not, **do not** switch the library because doing so causes the HSC to lose communication with the library.

---

---

**Note** –

- **For this release, only the SL8500 library is supported for dual LC switching.**
  - For an automatic switch to occur (for example, from LCA to LCB or visa versa), the LC must fail. In this case, if there is a network/communication problem with LCA, the HSC goes into network recovery for the LCA connection(s). If you cannot recover or fix the connection, issue the SWitch command to switch LCA to LCB manually.
  - Before you issue the SWitch command, if the library is partitioned, be aware of other host software groups (ACSLs, HSC, ELS) using other partitions in the same library.
-

## Syntax

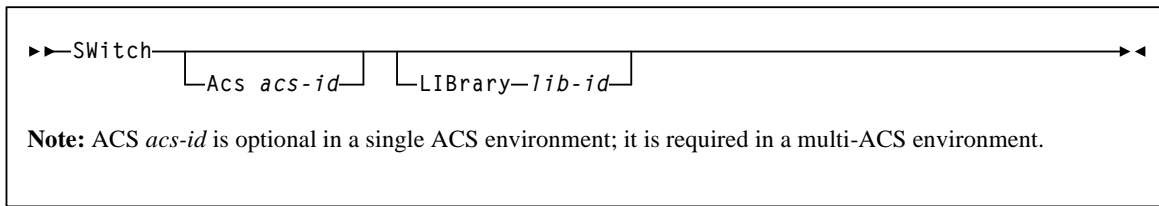


FIGURE 3-203 SWitch syntax

## Parameters

### Acs

optionally, indicates that an ACSid is being specified. **This parameter is required for a multiple-ACS environment** configuration or if an *acs-id* is specified.

#### *acs-id*

identifies the ACS that must switch the current active connection as standby and bring the standby connection online as active.

### Note –

- In a single ACS configuration, Acs *acs-id* is optional and defaults to ACS 00.
- If the *acs-id* defaults to 00 or is specified with no other parameters, then all of the ACS's active connections are switched to standby, and the standby connections are switched to active.

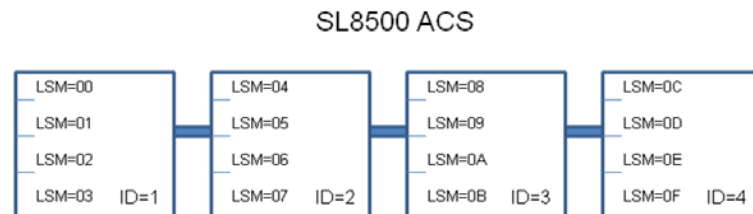
### LIBrary

optionally, specifies the SL8500 library ID for the connection switch. **This parameter applies only to the SL8500 library.**

#### *lib-id*

the library id from 1 to 9 or A to G.

For an SL8500 four library ACS cluster, each library is assigned an ID from 1 to 4, as shown below.



An ACS can have up to 16 library connections with A and B Library Controller (LC) connections. For the initial release, only one library (preferred to be ID 1) can have A and B LC connections. The other libraries can have a single LC connection. Each LC can handle dual TCP/IP (2B and 2A). The following table describes the LSM ID correlation to Library ID:

Library ID	LSM ID Range	Library ID	LSM ID Range
1	00-03	9	20-23
2	04-07	A	24-27
3	08-0B	B	28-2B
4	0C-0F	C	2C-2F
5	10-13	D	30-33
6	14-17	E	34-37
7	18-1B	F	38-3B
8	1C-1F	G	3C-3F

---

#### Note –

- Before issuing this command, use the Display ACS *acs-id* command to see if the library to switch has a TCP/IP address or Host Name assigned to the standby. If there is **not** a TCP/IP address or Host Name assigned to the standby, **do not** switch the library as this will cause HSC to lose communication to the library.
  - For a switch to occur (for example, from LCA to LCB), the LC must fail. For example, if there is a network/communication problem with LCA, HSC enters network recovery for the LCA connection(s). If you cannot recover/fix the connection, then issue the HSC SWitch command to manually switch LCA to LCB.
  - If the library is partitioned, please be aware of the other host software groups (ACSLs, HSC, ELS) that are using other partitions in the same library before issuing the switch command.
- 

## Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the SWitch command:

Switch control of ACS 00 to the Standby ACS

```
SWITCH ACS 00
```

Switch control of ACS 00 to the Standby Library

```
SWITCH ACS 00 LIB 1
```

---

# TRace

**Interfaces:**

Console or utility  
UII: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

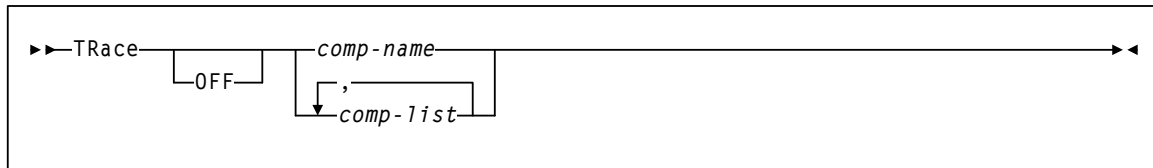
Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

The TRace command enables or disables tracing of events for selected HSC and VTCS components.

The MVS GTF GTRACE facility performs the actual tracing. To create GTF output for the event, GTF must be started and the TRace command must be issued before the event.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-204** TRace syntax

## Parameters

### OFF

turns off tracing for the specified component(s).

### *comp-name* or *comp-list*

one or more components for which tracing is to be enabled or disabled. If a list of component names is specified, separate the identifiers with blank spaces or commas. Valid component names are listed below; uppercase letters denote the minimum abbreviations allowed.

<b>ALloc</b>	Allocation volume lookup
<b>AScomm</b>	Aaddress Space Communications
<b>CAP</b>	CAP Common
<b>COnfigur</b>	Configuration Control
<b>Database</b>	Database server
<b>FP</b>	Function Points <b>Note:</b> FP tracing is used only by Oracle developers.
<b>HComm</b>	Host Communications
<b>Initiali</b>	Initialization
<b>Lmu</b>	LMU Server
<b>LS</b>	LibraryStation
<b>Mount</b>	Mount/Dismount
<b>Operator</b>	Operator Commands
<b>Recovery</b>	Recovery (Note: must also trace SERvice)
<b>SERvice</b>	Services
<b>Utilitie</b>	Utilities
<b>UII</b>	Unified User Interface
<b>Volume</b>	Volume/Cell
<b>VTcs</b>	VTCS
<b>Wto</b>	WTO Services
<b>XMI</b>	XML Interface

---

### Note –

- When tracing is enabled or disabled for one or more components, the status of all component tracing is displayed.
  - By default, all TRace command output goes to GTF. For example, to trace an LMU and send the output to GTF, issue TR LMU. No other parameters are necessary.
  - To trace the Recovery component, you must also trace the SERvice component (a service is used to trace Recovery).
  - The LS component displays in message SLS0068I only if LibraryStation has been initialized.
-



# TRACELKP

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB only  
 UII: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

The TRACELKP command enables or disables tracing of LOOKUP events associated with HSC definition files. The GTF GTRACE facility is used to perform the tracing.

## Syntax

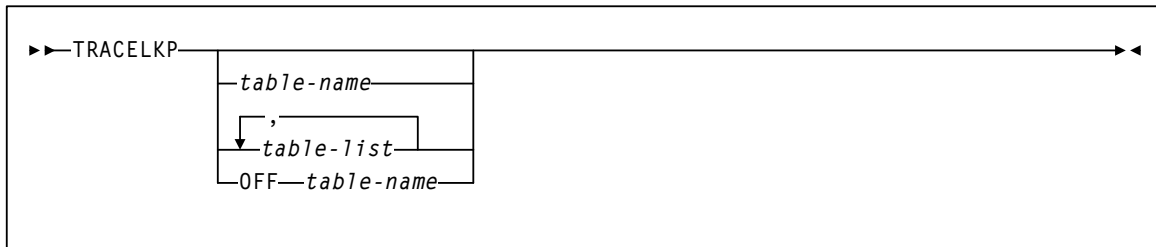


FIGURE 3-205 TRACELKP syntax

## Parameters

### OFF

disables tracing for the specified component(s).

### *table-name* or *table-list*

one or more LOOKUP definition files for which tracing is to be enabled or disabled. If a list of event names is specified, separate the identifiers with blank spaces or commas.

### Note –

- When LOOKUP tracing is enabled or disabled for one or more files, the status of all LOOKUP tracing is displayed.
- All LOOKUP tracing output goes to GTF.

Valid LOOKUP table names are listed below; uppercase letters denote the minimum abbreviations allowed.

<b>VOLATTR</b>	VOLATTR (VOLDEF) table
<b>LMUPATH</b>	LMUPATH (LMUPDEF) table
<b>MVCPOOL</b>	MVCPOOL (MVCDEF) table
<b>MGMTCLAS</b>	MGMTCLAS (MGMTDEF) table
<b>STORCLAS</b>	STORCLAS (STORDEF) table
<b>LOOKFAIL</b>	Trace the LOOKUP failures in detail. If LOOKFAIL is specified, the detail failure trace records are output for all events that are ON.
<b>MIGRSEL</b>	MIGRSEL (MGMTDEF) table
<b>MIGRVTV</b>	MIGRVTV (MGMTDEF) table

---

# UEXIT

**Interfaces:**

Console or PARMLIB only  
UUI: No

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

The UEXIT command defines how HSC processes your user exits.

HSC user exits allow you to invoke your own processing routines at particular points during HSC processing. User exits controlled by the HSC are loaded at HSC initialization from the load library identified by DDNAME SLSUEXIT. The following user exits are managed by the HSC using the UEXIT command:

- SLSUX03
- SLSUX05
- SLSUX06
- SLSUX14
- SLSUX15

Using the UEXIT command, you can start the HSC with a user exit disabled and then enable the exit at any time the HSC is operational. If an exit does not perform as expected, make the necessary changes and load it again.

The UEXIT command optionally allows you to provide unique user exit load module names and to create different versions of an exit that can be run at different times (for example, day shift versus night shift). The load modules are contained in a user-defined load module library described at HSC startup

---

**Note –**

- User Exit 03 and User Exit 05 are legacy interfaces and have been replaced by alternative facilities that do not require a User Exit.
  - User Exit 03 is enabled at HSC initialization. The UEXIT command cannot be used to enable, disable, or reload this exit.
-

## Syntax

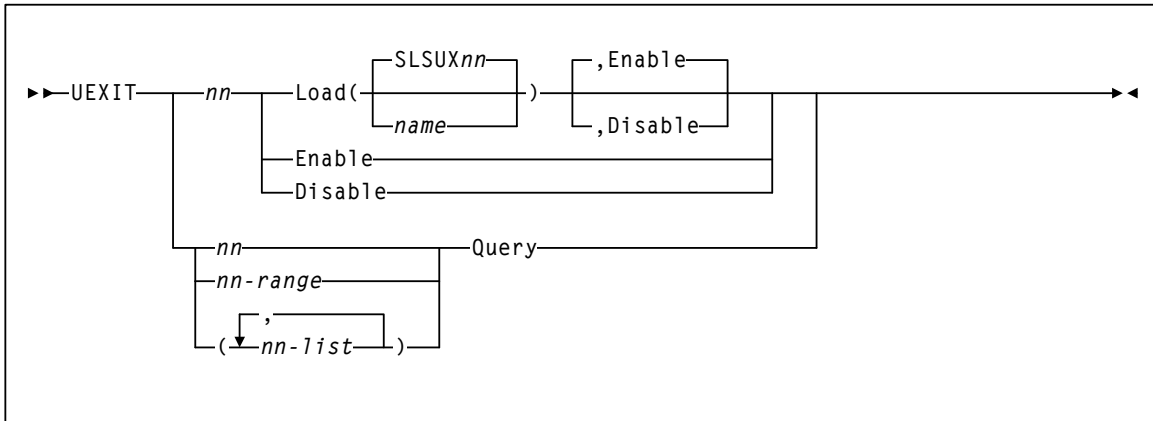


FIGURE 3-206 UEXIT syntax

## Parameters

### *nn*

specifies the user exit number. Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for user exit numbers.

### Enable

optionally, specifies that the most current module for the specified user exit (*nn*) is to be enabled. This parameter may also be specified with the Load parameter.

### Disable

optionally, specifies that the most current module for the specified user exit (*nn*) is to be disabled. This parameter may also be specified with the Load parameter.

### Load

causes the specified module to be loaded into storage.

### SLSUX*nn*

specifies the default name for the user exit. If *name* is not specified, then the default name is used when the HSC loads the module into storage.

### *name*

the name of the module to be used for this exit. This is the entry point name which is used to link-edit the load module.

### Enable

indicates that upon completion of the command the specified exit is considered as being active. Enable is the default.

### Disable

indicates that upon completion of the command the specified exit is considered as being inactive.

***nn* or *nn-range* or *nn-list***

can be used with the Query parameter to specify a single user exit, a range of exits, or a list of exits.

When specifying a range of user exit numbers, the beginning number must be separated from the ending number by a hyphen.

**Example:** (04-09)

In a list of user exits, the user exit numbers must be separated by commas and the list must be enclosed in parentheses.

**Example:** (01,04,10)

**Query**

requests the status of all the currently loaded versions of the specified user exit number(s). A display of user exit status may be specified for a single user exit, a range of exits, or a list of exits.

---

# UNSCratch

**Interfaces:**

Console or utility  
UII: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

The UNSCratch command unscratches one or more volumes.

## Syntax

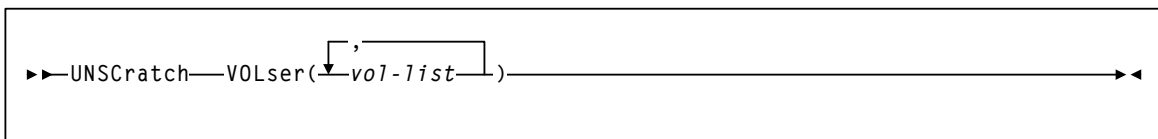


FIGURE 3-207 UNSCratch syntax

## Parameters

**VOLser**

specifies the list of volume serial numbers to be added, deleted, or replaced in the scratch list(s).

***vol-list***

the volume serial numbers; this can be a single volume, a list of volume serial numbers, ranges of volume serial numbers, or combinations of lists with ranges delimited by commas. The entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

# UNSElect

## Interfaces:

SLUADMIN utility only  
 UI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

The UNSElect command unselects a volume that is erroneously in a selected state.

### Note –

- Use this utility only if you are certain that the HSC has incorrectly left the volume selected. Incorrect use of this utility can result in HSC abends and errant volumes.  
 Issue a Display Volume DEtail command to determine which host has the volume in question. Then, issue Display DRives and Display Requests commands on the host that has the volume in question to see if that volume is being used.  
 If the selected volume is mounted on a transport, issue a DISMount command for the transport. If there is a request active to the LMU for the volume, wait for the request to complete. If the overdue response handler indicates the request has timed out, you may want to abort the request.
- The UNSElect function can only be invoked when SLUADMIN is invoked APF authorized, key 0 through 7, or supervisor state. The load module invoked by UNSElect is SLUNSEL. Restricting access to this module restricts access to this utility function.

## Syntax

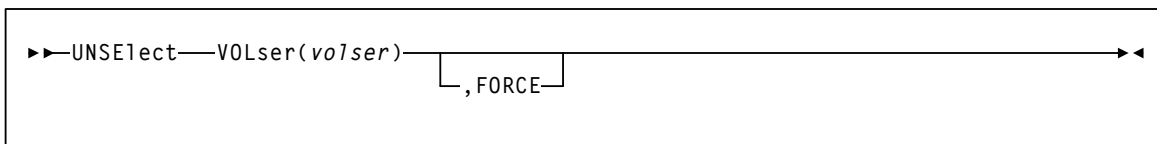


FIGURE 3-208 UNSElect syntax

## Parameters

### **VOLser**

indicates that a VOLSER is being specified for unselection.

*volser*

the VOLSER to be unselected.

### **FORCE**

optionally, indicates that the volume is to be unselected even if communication with the host that has the volume selected is not possible.



---

# Vary

**Interfaces:**

- Console or PARMLIB (Vary ACS)
- Console or utility, UUI All (Vary CLINK, RTD, or VTSS)

UUI: Yes

**Subsystem Requirements:**

- Active HSC at FULL service level (Vary ACS)
- Active HSC/VTCS (Vary CLINK, RTD, or VTSS)

## Description

The Vary command changes the online/offline state for the following:

- ACS or station
- CLINK
- PATH
- RTD
- VTSS

## Syntax

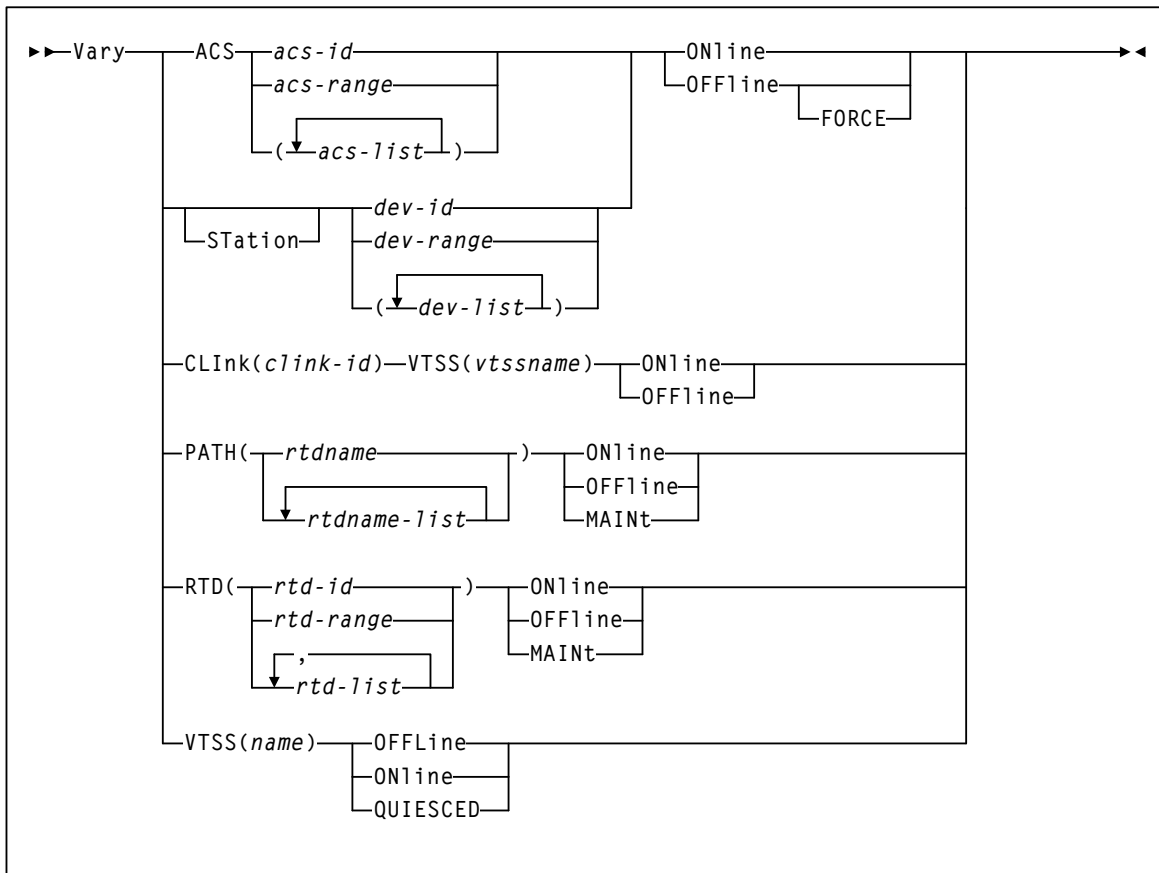


FIGURE 3-209 Vary syntax

## Parameters

### ACS

optionally, specifies the ACS to be made online, offline, or standby to this host.

*acs-id* or *acs-range* or *acs-list*

one or more ACSs to be varied. Each *acs-list* element can be either a single ACSid or an ACSid range. Ranges are separated by a dash. The elements in a list must be separated by commas or blanks, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

### STation

optionally, specifies the stations to be made online, offline, or standby to this host.

In an ACS, a connection between the host CPU and an LMU is referred to as a "station." Each station appears to the host CPU as a 3278-2 device and is physically connected to a port on a supported 3174, 3274 or compatible terminal controller. Each LMU can contain a maximum of 16 stations. Depending on the number of host CPUs connected to the ACS, each host CPU can have either one or several stations to each LMU.

***dev-id* or *dev-range* or *dev-list***

the stations to an LMU to be varied. Each *dev-list* element can be either a single device number or a range of device numbers. Ranges are separated by a dash. The elements in a list must be separated by commas or blanks, and the entire list must be enclosed in parentheses.

Each device number identifies a device attached to the host issuing the command. Allowable values are 000-FFF.

**ONline**

specifies that the stations are to be made online or standby to this host.

**OFFline**

specifies that the stations are to be made offline to this host.

**FORCE**

optionally, indicates that the stations are to be made offline immediately. The FORCE option can be specified when the HSC is at the full service level or is past the base service level going to the full service level.

This parameter applies only to the OFFline operand.

**CLInk**

the specified CLINK.

***clink-id***

the link ID.

**VTSS**

the sending VTSS in the Cluster.

***vtssname***

the 1 to 8 character identifier of the sending VTSS.

**ONline**

Vary the specified CLINK online.

**OFFline**

Vary the specified CLINK offline.

## **PATH**

optionally, specifies the path (from a VTSS to RTDs) to be made online, offline, or standby to this host. This permits the individual RTDPATH from a VTSS to a device to be varied to the desired state. This path may represent either a direct connection to a RTD from a VTSS or a connection to a Virtual Library.

*rtdname* or *rtdname-list*

the names assigned to the paths for accessing RTDs for Virtual Libraries from a VTSS

## **ONline**

Vary the specified path (from a VTSS to RTDs) to an online state.

## **OFFline**

Vary the specified path (from a VTSS to RTDs) to an offline state.

## **MAINT**

Vary the specified path (from a VTSS to RTDs) to an offline (maintenance mode) state.

## **RTD**

Change the state of the specified RTDs.

*rtd-id*, *rtd-range*, or *rtd-list*

the unit addresses of one or more RTDs. Lists and ranges of RTDs are limited to 64 items for VSM2s and VSM3s and 256 items for VSM4s.

## **ONline**

Vary the specified RTDs online to their connected VTSSs.

## **OFFline**

Vary the specified RTDs offline to their connected VTSSs.

## **MAINT**

Vary the specified RTDs offline (maintenance mode) to their connected VTSSs.

**VTSS**

Change the state of the specified VTSS.

*name*

the VTSS identifier.

**OFFline**

Vary the specified VTSS offline.

**ONline**

Vary the specified VTSS online.

**QUIESCED**

Vary the specified VTSS to quiesced state.

---

**Note** – Vary VTSS **does not** change the state of the VTDs or RTDs associated with the specified VTSS.

---

# View

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB only  
 UUI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at FULL service level

## Description

The View command allows you to see specified internal components of the LSM when video monitors are attached to the LSM.

## Syntax

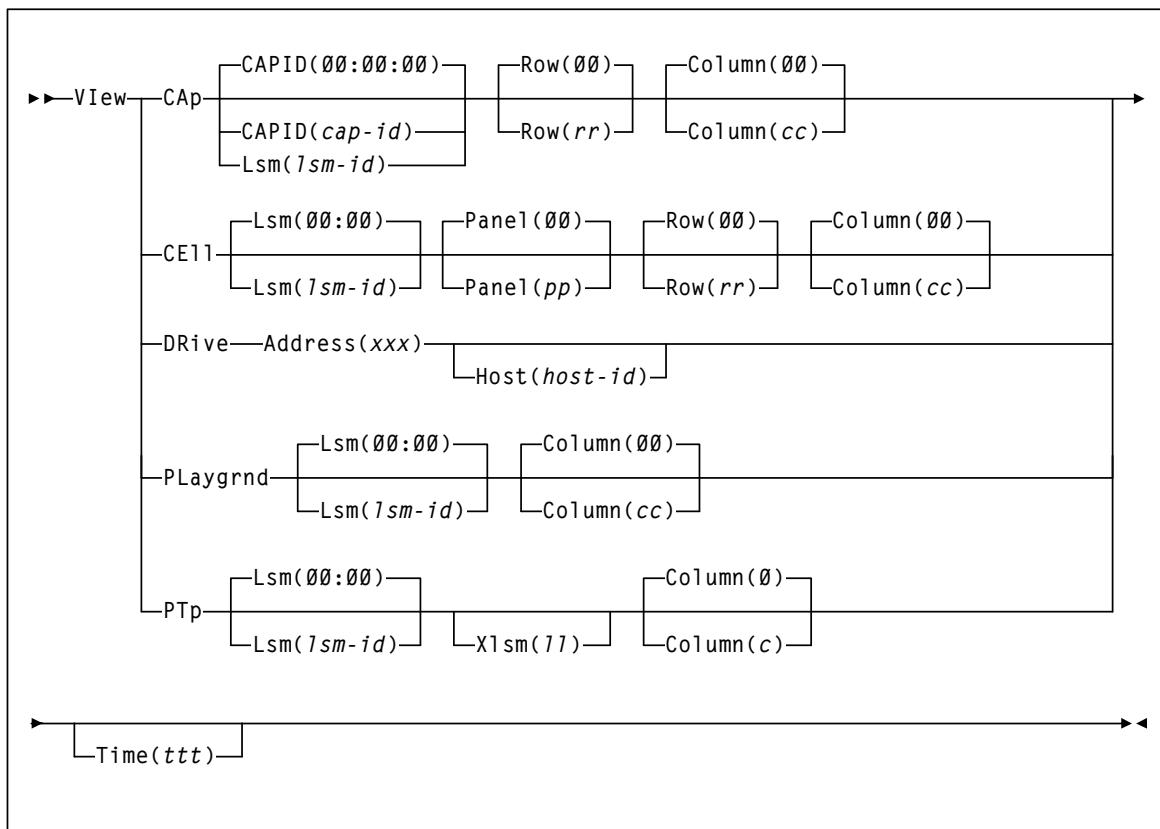


FIGURE 3-210 View syntax

# Parameters

## CAP

indicates that a camera is to focus on a cell location in a CAP. If you do not specify the CAPID or Lsm parameter, the command defaults to CAPid 00:00:00. If you do not specify the Row and Column parameters, the command defaults to row 0, column 0.

### CAPID

identifies one CAP in an LSM that contains multiple CAPs.

#### *cap-id*

the CAP that you want to view. The format of a *cap-id* is *AA:LL:CC*, where *AA:LL* is the LSMid, and *CC* is the CAP. See [“CAPid” on page 730](#) for a list of valid values.

### Lsm

identifies an LSM that contains a single CAP.

#### *lsm-id*

the single CAP that you want to view. The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (decimal 00-99) and *LL* is the LSM number (decimal 00-99).

### Row

identifies a row number in a CAP. If you do not specify this parameter the command defaults to row 00.

#### *rr*

the row number. Allowable values for *rr* are decimal and are specific to the LSM type. See [“Rows” on page 732](#) for a list of valid values.

### Column

identifies the column number within a CAP. If you do not specify this parameter the command defaults to column 00.

#### *cc*

the column number. Allowable values for *cc* are decimal and are specific to the LSM type. Columns are numbered starting at the left of the panel. See [“Columns” on page 733](#) for a list of valid values.

**Cell**

indicates that a camera is to focus on a cartridge storage or diagnostic cell in an LSM panel. If you do not specify the *Lsm*, *Panel*, *Row*, and *Column* parameters, the command defaults to LSM 00:00, panel 0, row 0, column 0.

**Lsm**

identifies an LSM. If you do not specify this parameter, the command defaults to LSMid 00:00.

*lsm-id*

the LSMid. The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (decimal 00-99) and *LL* is the LSM number (decimal 00-99).

**Panel**

designates the LSM panel number containing the cartridge storage or diagnostic cell that the camera is to view. If you do not specify this parameter the command defaults to panel 00.

*pp*

the panel number. Allowable values for *pp* are decimal and are specific to the LSM type. See [“Panels” on page 731](#) for a list of valid values.

**Row**

identifies a row number in an LSM panel. If you do not specify this parameter the command defaults to row 00.

*rr*

the row number. Allowable values for *rr* are decimal and are specific to the LSM type. See [“Rows” on page 732](#) for a list of valid values.

---

**Note –**

- Column 3 on panel 2 allows row entries only on rows 28-41.
  - The cells on panel 3 are optional.
- 

**Column**

identifies the column number within a panel. If you do not specify this parameter the command defaults to column 00.

*cc*

the column number. Allowable values for *cc* are decimal and are specific to the LSM type. Columns are numbered starting at the left of the panel. See [“Columns” on page 733](#) for a list of valid values.

**DRive**

indicates that a camera is to focus on a cartridge drive. You **must** designate the *Address* parameter to identify the drive. The *Host* parameter enables you to view a drive defined to another host.

**Address**

specifies the address of a cartridge drive. The *Address* parameter defines the operating system address of the transport you want to inspect.

*xxx*

the hexadecimal address of the transport. The HSC verifies that the specified address matches the LIBGEN-defined address for the given host.



**Host**

gives meaning to the Address parameter when the drive being inspected is not defined in the LIBGEN for the host from which the View command is being entered.

If you do not specify the Host parameter, the HSC checks the LIBGEN-defined drive list for the host from which you entered the View command. If the address is found in the drive list, the command is executed.

***host-id***

the host where the transport is defined.

**PLAYgrnd**

indicates that a camera is to focus on a playground cell. If the Lsm and Column parameters are not specified, the command defaults to the relative location of the cell in the playground in LSM 00:00.

---

**Note** – The playground is a reserved area of cells where the robot deposits cartridges that it finds in its hands during LSM initialization. Normal LSM initialization recovery processing moves cartridges from the playground cells to either their home cells or their intended destinations, but under abnormal circumstances cartridges may be left in playground cells. Refer to the appropriate Oracle StorageTek hardware publication for the location of the playground in the LSM.

---

**Lsm**

identifies an LSM. If you do not specify this parameter, the command defaults to LSMid 00:00.

***lsm-id***

the LSMid. The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (decimal 00-99) and *LL* is the LSM number (decimal 00-99).

**Column**

identifies the relative location of the cell in the playground for a panel. If you do not specify this parameter, the command defaults to the relative location of the cell in the playground.

***cc***

the relative location of the cell in the playground. Allowable values for *cc* are decimal and are specific to the LSM type. (Some LSMs have multiple playground cells and some have only one.)

**PTp**

indicates that a camera is to focus on a pass-thru port (PTP) cell. You can designate a particular PTP using the Lsm and Xlsm parameters, a particular cell using the Column parameter, and specify the viewing time using the Time parameter.

**Lsm**

identifies an LSM. If you do not specify this parameter, the command defaults to LSMid 00:00.

***lsm-id***

the LSMid. The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (decimal 00-99) and *LL* is the LSM number (decimal 00-99).

**Xlsm**

identifies the PTP to be inspected by defining the LSM that shares the PTP.

Each PTP is identified by the two LSMs it services. The Lsm parameter identifies which robot is used to view the PTP, and the Xlsm parameter identifies the LSM that shares the PTP. This distinction is necessary whenever an LSM contains more than one PTP.

If Xlsm is not specified for an LSM containing two or more PTPs, the HSC examines the LIBGEN and selects the first PTP defined there for Lsm(*lsm-id*).

***ll***

the LSM number of the adjacent LSM. Values for *ll* are decimal in the range from 00-99. (The ACS is identified in the Lsm parameter.)

**Column**

identifies the column number within a panel. If you do not specify this parameter the command defaults to column 0.

***c***

the column number. Allowable values for *c* are decimal and are specific to the LSM type:

- 0-3 for LSM Models 4410, 9310, and 9740
- 0 or 1 for WolfCreek LSMs (all models).

---

**Note** – When the PTP is being shared by two different LSM types, the upper limit of the column value is determined by the LSM with the smaller PTP capacity.

---

### Interfaces:

UUI: No

Active HSC not required

The VOLPCONV command reads existing VOLDEF, SCRPFDEF, MVCDEF, and VTCS CONFIG input statements and converts them to SET VOLPARM statements. The existing VTCS configuration is also input to the utility.

## CLNPRFX

*prefix*

a three-character prefix. CLN is the default.

## Additional JCL Requirements

In addition to the required JCL definition statements described in [“Invoking SLUADMIN” on page 684](#), the following definition statements apply to the VOLPCONV JCL:

### SLSVOLA

input VOLDEF definitions in the form of VOLATTR statements.

---

**Note** – VOLATTR statements coded with the masking character (% , ? or \*) within the SERIAL parameter are not supported and will cause message SLS0227I to be issued. Any VOLATTR statement using these masking characters must be converted to a range that spans the intent of the masking characters prior to running VOLPCONV.

---

### SLSSCRP

input SCRPEDEF definitions in the form of SCRPOOL statements.

### SLSMVCP

input MVCDEF definitions in the form of MVCPOOL statements.

### SLSVTCS

input VTCS configuration definitions. The VTCS configuration definitions can be obtained by running the VTCS DECOM utility.

### SLSPARM

output VOLUME/POOL definitions in the form of POOLPARM and VOLPARM control statements. The logical record size of the SLSPARM data set is 80.

---

# VOLRpt

**Interfaces:**

Utility only  
UII: Yes

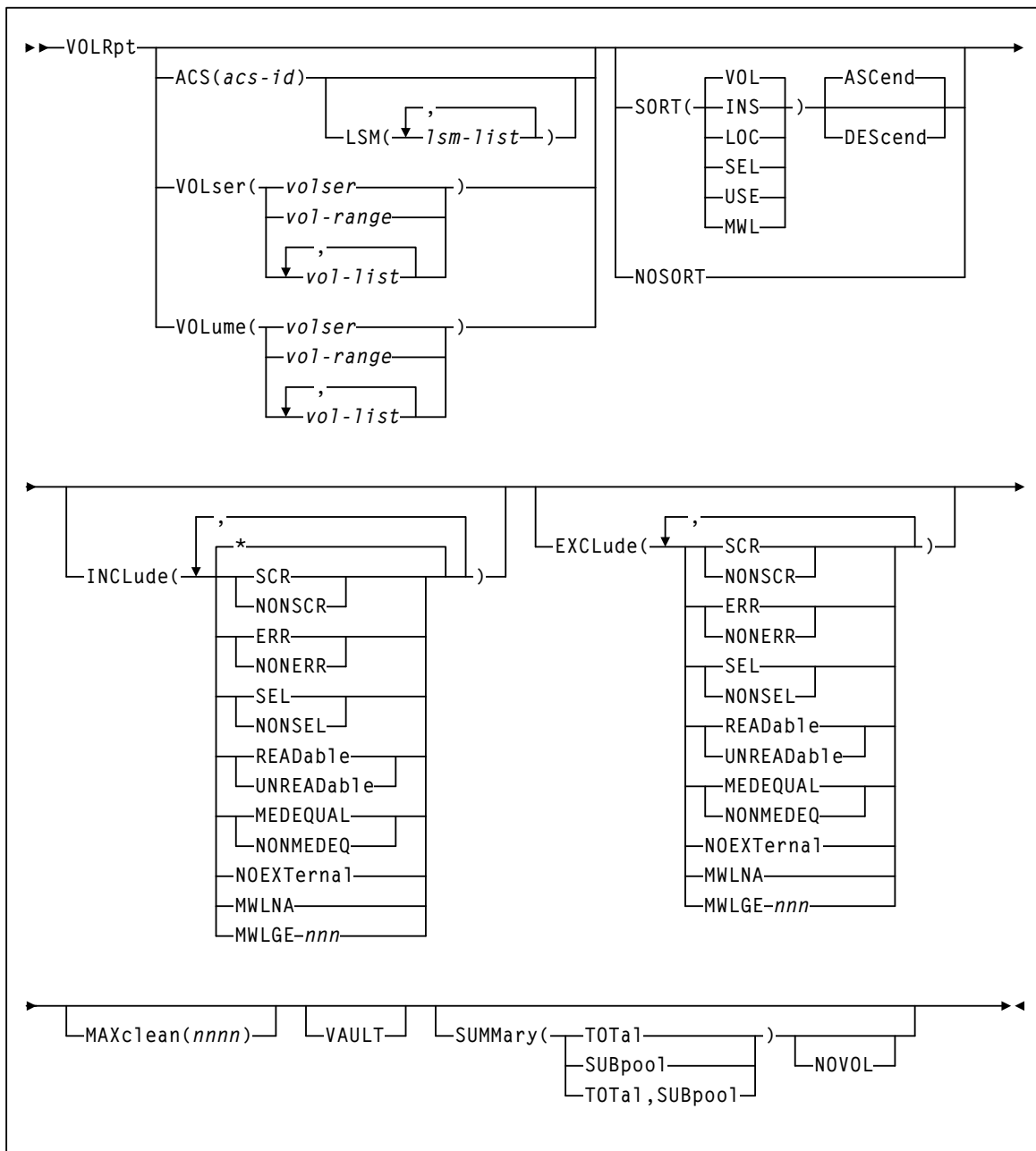
**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC not required

## Description

The VOLRpt command produces a volume report.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-212** VOLRpt syntax

## Parameters

---

**Note** – VOLRpt supports additional legacy parameters used to specify flat file or volume report generation. Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for information about these parameters.

---

### ACS

optionally, specifies that a report is to be produced for only a particular ACS.

*acs-id*

the one or two digit decimal ACS identifier.

### LSM

optionally, specifies that a report is to be produced for only certain LSMs within an ACS.

*lsm-list*

the LSMs. An lsm-list can be a single LSM number or a list of LSM numbers. An LSM number is decimal 00-99.

An LSM range is not allowed. If a list is specified, the elements must be separated by blanks or commas, and the entire list enclosed in parentheses.

### VOLser or VOLume

optionally, specifies that the report only contain information on certain VOLSERS.

*volser* or *vol-range* or *vol-list*

the volume serial numbers requested. Any subranges of volumes specified in the *vol-list* that are not in the control data set are listed in the Control Card Image Listing portion of the report using one line per subrange.

A percent sign ("%") may be used as a "wildcard" character in the VOLSER to specify pattern matching. The percent sign designates that any single character can match the corresponding position in the VOLSER.

For example, A9%%%% specifies that all of the six-character volume serial numbers that begin with the characters "A9" are selected for the report.

Q%12% specifies that all five-character VOLSERS that begin with "Q" and have a "12" in the third and fourth positions of the VOLSER are selected for the report. The percent sign cannot be specified in a range specification. Therefore, "A%0000-A%9999" is invalid.

In the Volume Report Listing of the utility, the volumes requested which are not in the control data set are not listed.

**SORT**

optionally specifies a specified sort sequence.

Multiple sort criteria may be specified. The order, from left to right, specifies the order in which the report is to be sorted.

For example, **SORT(INS,USE)** produces a report sorted by date inserted in the control data set, and then for each date, sorted by select count.

---

**Note** – SORT and NOSORT are mutually exclusive.

---

The following SORT options are available:

**VOL**

indicates that the report is to be sorted by volume serial number (**VOL** is the default).

**INS**

indicates that the report is to be sorted by date and time the volume was inserted into the control data set.

**LOC**

indicates that the report is to be sorted by location.

**SEL**

indicates that the report is to be sorted by date and time the volume was last selected.

**USE**

indicates that the report is to be sorted by selection count.

**MWL**

indicates that the report is to be sorted by Media Warranty Life (MWL) percentage, which indicates how much of the media life has been used. Media warranty life is considered to be expired at 100%.

---

**Note** – To collect and report media warranty life, tape libraries and transports must meet the following requirements:

- SL8500 or SL3000 libraries
- LMU compatibility level 21 or higher
- T9x40: all media and models at firmware level 1.42 or higher (except 9840B)
- T10000: all models and media at firmware level 1.38 or higher

Refer to the publication *Managing HSC and VTCS* for more information about media warranty life.

---

**NOSORT**

specifies that an unsorted report is to be produced.

---

**Note** – NOSORT is mutually exclusive with SORT, ASCend, and DEScend.

---



**ASCend**

optionally, specifies that the report is to be sorted in ascending order. **ASCend** is the **default**. This parameter is ignored if **NOSORT** is specified.

---

**Note** – ASCend is mutually exclusive with NOSORT and DEScend.

---

**DEScend**

optionally, specifies that the report is to be sorted in descending order. This parameter is ignored if **NOSORT** is specified.

---

**Note** – DEScend is mutually exclusive with NOSORT and ASCend.

---

**INCLude**

optionally, specifies the criteria for including volume information in the report. If this keyword is specified, all volumes that match at least one of the specified criteria are tentatively selected for the report. Information about volumes may be removed from the list of volumes selected for the report if other options, such as **EXCLUDE**, **VOL**, **ACS**, or **LSM** are specified.

**Note –**

- **INCLude** parameters are applied before **EXCLude** parameters in volume selection.
  - Parameter values are not checked for the existence of their opposite values (for example, “SEL” is still flagged even if “NONSEL” is specified, and vice versa).
  - Positive attributes are applied before negative attributes (for example, SCR is applied before NONSCR).
- 

\*

indicates that all volumes in the library are considered for being included in the report. **The default is \***. If more than one of the following parameters is specified, the parameters must be separated by commas.

**SCR**

specifies that scratch volumes match the specified criteria.

**NONSCR**

specifies that nonscratch volumes match the specified criteria.

**ERR**

specifies that errant volumes match the criteria.

**NONERR**

specifies that non-errant volumes match the criteria.

**SEL**

specifies that selected volumes match the criteria.

**NONSEL**

specifies that nonselected volumes match the criteria.

**READable**

specifies that volumes with a readable external label match the criteria.

**UNREADable**

specifies that volumes with an unreadable external label match the criteria.

**MEDEQUAL**

specifies that volumes for which the media types of the VOLATTR and the VAR are equal match the criteria.

**NONMEDEQ**

specifies that volumes for which the media types of the VOLATTR and the VAR are not equal match the criteria.

**NOEXternal**

specifies that volumes without an external label match the criteria.

For example, **INCLUDE(SEL,ERR)** tentatively chooses only selected and errant volumes for the report. **INCLude** parameters are applied before **EXCLude** parameters in volume selection.

**MWLNA**

specifies that volumes with an unknown media warranty life match the criteria. Media warranty life is obtained at volume dismount for tape libraries with an LMU compatibility level of 21 or above. Use the Display ACS command to obtain the LMU compatibility level.

**MWLGE *nnn***

specifies that volumes with a media warranty life greater than or equal to *nnn* percent match the criteria. It also excludes all volumes with an unknown media warranty life.

Specify **INCLUDE(MWLNA)** to force inclusion of all volumes with an unknown media warranty life. Valid values for *nnn* are 0-254.

---

**Note** – To collect and report media warranty life, tape libraries and transports must meet the following requirements:

- SL8500 or SL3000 libraries
- LMU compatibility level 21 or higher
- T9x40: all media and models at firmware level 1.42 or higher (except 9840B)
- T10000: all models and media at firmware level 1.38 or higher

Refer to the publication *Managing HSC and VTCS* for more information about media warranty life.

---

**EXCLude**

optionally, specifies the criteria for excluding volume information from the report. Any volumes that match one or more of the exclusion criteria are excluded from the report.

EXCLude parameter values are the same as INCLude values, except for the "\*" parameter (see the INCLude options list above).

As an example, **EXCL(NONSEL)** excludes nonselected volumes from the report.

---

**Note –**

- INCLUDE parameters are applied **before** EXCLUDE parameters in volume selection.
  - If MWLGE is specified in both the INCLUDE and EXCLUDE parameters, the EXCLUDE limit value must be greater than the INCLUDE limit value.
  - Parameter values are not checked for the existence of their opposite values (for example, “SEL” is still flagged even if “NONSEL” is specified, and vice versa).
  - Positive attributes are applied before negative attributes (for example, SCR is applied before NONSCR).
- 

**MAXclean**

optionally, specifies the maximum cleaning cartridge usage for the “over max clean” column. The MAXclean specified for each POOLPARM TYPE(CLEAN) overrides this value. Valid values are 0-32767.

**VAULT**

optionally, specifies that vaulted volumes are to be included in the detail volume report.

---

**Note –** VAULT is mutually exclusive with NOVOL, ACS, and LSM.

---

If the vault CDS subfile does not exist, this parameter is ignored.

Vaulted volumes are not included in the SUMMARY reports. In the detail report, the cell location for a vaulted volume is identified by the word “VAULT” and the insertion date/time is the date/time that the volume was inserted into the vault; i.e., ejected from the tape library. Refer to the *LCM User's Guide* for more information about vaulting.

**SUMMARY**

optionally, specifies that the utility provide totals of volume attributes on an LSM and ACS basis, and/or subpool data on an ACS or LSM basis. Totals are affected by the use of limiting parameters such as **ACS** (and possibly **LSM**), **VOLser/VOLUME**, and **INCLUDE** and/or **EXCLUDE**.

If both **TOTAL** and **SUBpool** are specified, both reports are provided. The time and date displayed in the header for the Summary Report(s) are the same as the Volume Report Listing header.

**TOTAL**

specifies that totals of scratch, selected, errant, available cells, and external label status types be provided on an LSM, ACS, and library basis in the report.

The totals are listed on a separate listing, on a new page from the Volume Report Listing and the Control Card Listing.

**SUBpool**

specifies that subpool totals be provided on an LSM, ACS, and library basis in the report.

Subpool information can be provided using the VOLPARM facility. See [“VOLPARM Control Statement” on page 592](#) for more information about defining VOLPARM information. For alternative methods of specifying subpool information, refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference*.

The totals are listed on a separate listing, on a new page from the Volume Report Listing, the Control Card Listing, and the Volume Report Totals Listing.

If subpools overlap (i.e., a volume belongs to more than one subpool), then each volume is reported only within the first subpool in which it occurs, and totals for the other subpools may be inaccurate.

**NOVOL**

optionally, when used with SUMM<sup>ary</sup>, specifies to display summary and/or subpool totals without producing volume detail.

NOVOL should not be specified by itself.

---

**Note** – NOVOL is mutually exclusive with ACS, VOLser, VOLUME, SORT, NOSORT, INCLUDE, EXCLUDE, MAXclean, and VAULT.

---

## Additional JCL Requirements

If you are not using the VOLPARM facility to define your volume characteristics, refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for a description of additional VOLRPT JCL statements that may be required.

# VTVMAINT

## Interfaces:

Utility only  
 UUI: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

The VTVMAINT command does the following:

- Unlinks VTVs from MVCs,
- Sets the VTV Management Class
- Logically dismounts specified VTVs in an offline VTSS.
- Specifies ownership of a VTV that has been electronically imported
- Adds or deletes references to electronic exported copies of VTVs.

## Syntax

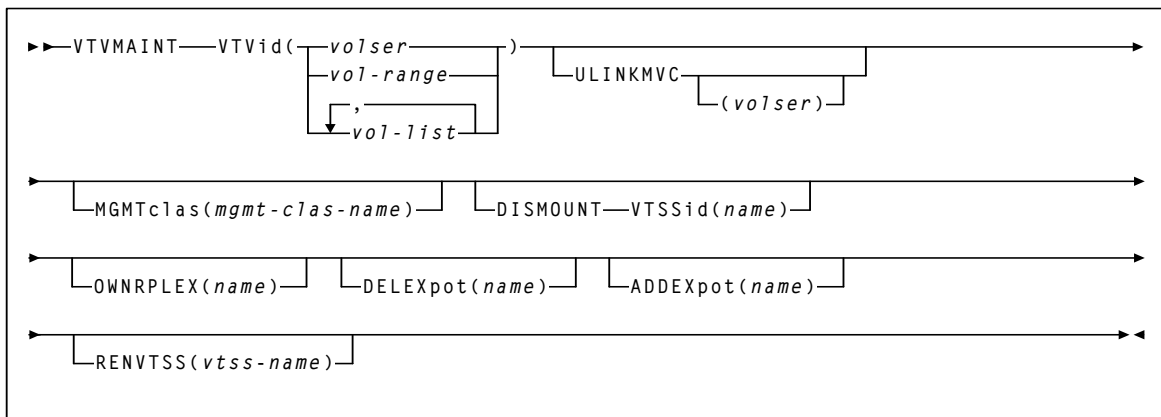


FIGURE 3-213 VTVMAINT syntax

## Parameters

### VTVid

specifies one or more VTVs.

*volser*, *vol-range* or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more VTVs.

### ULINKMVC

optionally, unlink (logically delete) MVC copies of the specified VTVs.

*volser*

Unlink the specified VTVs from the specified MVC. If no value is specified, then all MVC copies of the VTVs are deleted.

### MGMTclas

optionally, set the Management Class of the VTVs.

*mgmt-class-name*

the Management Class name that you specified on the MGMTclas control statement. For more information, see [“MGMTclas Control Statement” on page 440](#).

### DISMOUNT VTSSid

optionally, logically dismount the specified VTVs in the specified VTSS.

*name*

the VTSS name.

If migrated copies of the dismounted VTVs exist that an online VTSS can access, you can now use this VTSS to access the VTVs.

---

**Caution** – If the VTV copy mounted in the offline VTSS was modified and not migrated, the MVC copy that you recall to an alternate VTSS is not current! Therefore, Oracle **strongly** recommends that you do not recall these non-current MVC copies!

---



---

**Tip** – When the offline VTSS is ready to be brought back online, it is **strongly** recommended that you audit the VTSS before running production jobs that use the VTSS. Also ensure that you clear any boxed VTD conditions before issuing the VTSS VARY ONLINE command.

---

### OWNRPLEX

optionally, specifies ownership of a VTV that has been electronically imported.

*name*

the name of the TapePlex that owns the original copy of the VTV. This name must match one of the known TapePlex names in the configuration.

If this name matches that indicated for the THISPLEX parameter on the CONFIG TAPEplex statement, the electronic importing status is removed.

**DELEXPot**

optionally, specifies which references to electronic exported copies of the VTVs are removed.

***name***

the name of the TapePlex that is to be removed. If this parameter value is omitted, then all references to electronic export copies are removed.

This parameter merely removes the reference to the external copy of the VTV from the VTV record. It does not cause a contact of the other TapePlex to modify the remote copy in any way. Depending upon the management class definition for the VTV, removing a reference could cause an automatic re-drive of the export at some later time.

**ADDEXpot**

optionally, specifies the addition of references to the electronic export copy of the VTV.

***name***

the name of the TapePlex that is to be added. This name must match to one of the names that has been specified in the VTCS configuration.

This parameter merely adds the reference to the external copy to the VTV record. It is assumed that the required copy of the VTV will have been physically placed there by some other process. The VTV record can track a maximum of two TapePlex locations.

---

**Note** – The DELEXPot operation executes before the ADDEXpot operation. This makes it possible to replace the exported location information in a single call. For configurations where the electronic export function is not used, it is acceptable to use the ADDEXpot and DELEXPot parameters to add dummy tracking or user information to the VTV. The information in the VTV record is always cleared when the VTV data is updated.

---

**RENTSS**

optionally, sets the name of the VTSS where the VTV was last mounted to *vtss-name*.

***vtss-name***

the new VTSS name. This must be the name of an existing VTSS in your configuration.

---

**Note** – To use RENTSS, the host on which VTVMaint is run must have access to the owning VTSS.

---

## Return Codes

**TABLE 3-18** VTVMaint Return Codes

Return Code	Description
0	All requested updates for the VTV completed successfully.
4	One requested update for the VTV failed and at least one other requested update completed successfully.
8	All requested updates for the VTV failed.

---

**Note** – The **final** return code for the VTVMaint job is the **largest** return code generated by any single VTVs being updated. For example, if 5 VTVs generate a return code 0 and one VTV generates a return code 8, the final return code is 8.

---



# VTVMaint Report

FIGURE 3-214 shows an example of a VTVMaint report for the following command:

VTVMaint VTV(X00000-X00002) ULinkMVC MGMTCLAS (M1)

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)		StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility										Page 00001						
TIME 06:32:03		VTVM MAINTENANCE										DATE 2010-05-19						
VTVM		RC																
X00000		04																
X00001		04																
X00002		04																
VTVMaint EXCEPTION REPORT																		
VTVM X00000 IS ALREADY IN MGMTCLAS M1																		
VTVM X00001 IS ALREADY IN MGMTCLAS M1																		
VTVM X00002 IS ALREADY IN MGMTCLAS M1																		
SLUADMIN (7.1.0)		StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Utility										Page 00002						
TIME 06:32:03		VTCS VTM REPORT										DATE 2010-05-19						
VTVM	SIZE	COMP%	<----CREATION----->		<----LAST USED----->		MIGR	SCRT	RESD	REPL	MGMT	MVC1	MVC2	MVC3	MVC4	MAX	VTSS	NAME
VOLSER	(MB)		DATE	TIME	DATE	TIME					CLASS					VTVM		
X00000	0.01	0	2010MAY19	05:02:08	2010MAY19	05:22:08	-	-	R	-	M1	022550	022551	022552	022553	800		
X00001	0.01	0	2010MAY19	05:02:08	2010MAY19	05:22:08	-	-	R	-	M1	033550	033551	033552	033553	800		
X00002	0.01	0	2010MAY19	05:02:08	2010MAY19	05:22:08	-	-	R	-	M1	044550	044551	044552	044553	800		
3 INITIALIZED VTMS PROCESSED																		
0 NON-INITIALIZED VTMS PROCESSED																		

FIGURE 3-214 VTVMaint Report

As shown in FIGURE 3-214, the VTVMaint report shows:

- Status of VTMs processed - volser and return code (0 - all updates completed, 4 - some updates completed, 8 - no updates completed).
- An exception report of the reason for all uncompleted updates.
- A VTM report.

---

# VTVRPt

## Description

The VTVRPt command reports the status of VTVs in your VSM system.

Issue this command with either of the options listed in the following table. Each option is described individually, and in more detail, on the pages to follow.

**TABLE 3-19** VTVRPt options

This option:	Performs the following function:
BASIC	generates a basic VTV report
COPIES	generates a VTV report indicating where all current copies of a VTV reside

# VTVRpt BASIC

## Interfaces:

Utility only  
 UUI: Yes

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC not required

## Description

VTVRpt BASIC generates a basic VTV report.

## Syntax

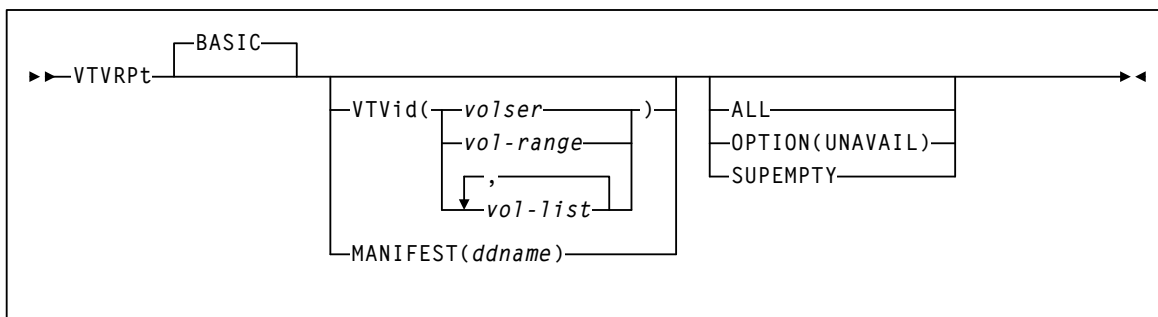


FIGURE 3-215 VTVRpt BASIC syntax

## Parameters

### BASIC

Generate a basic VTVRPT report.

### VTVID

optionally, specifies the VTVs for the report. If you do not specify the VTVs, the report includes all initialized VTVs in your VSM system. A VTV is initialized when VTCS has used it at least once.

*volser*, *vol-range*, or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more VTVs.

### MANIFEST

optionally, specifies the input ddname of the manifest file used to generate the report.

*ddname*

ddname of the manifest file. **Note that** you can specify a merged manifest file or multiple manifest files.

### ALL

optionally, specifies to report on all VTVs (including non-initialized volumes). If you do not specify ALL, only initialized VTVs are reported.

**OPTION(UNAVAIL)**

optionally, specifies to report only on unavailable VTVs (VTVs in an offline VTSS). The report lists only unavailable VTVs in three sections--unavailable mounted on a VTD, unavailable VTSS-resident, and unavailable VTSS-resident and fenced.

**SUPEMPTY**

optionally, suppress the printing of empty VTVs.

The VTV report will not print details of VTVs that contain no data or VTVs that are fenced.

---

**Note** – SUPEMPTY is mutually exclusive with ALL and OPTION(UNAVAIL).

---

**VTV Report (Basic)**

FIGURE 3-216 shows an example of a basic VTV report.

SLUADMIN (7.1.0)										STORAGETEK ENTERPRISE LIBRARY SOFTWARE UTILITY										SSYS=HSCI					PAGE 00002											
TIME 15:50:09										VTCS VTV REPORT															DATE 2010-06-17											
SLS1315I HSC1.V70EC21.CDS WAS SELECTED AS THE PRIMARY CONTROL DATA SET																																				
SLUADMIN (7.1.0)										STORAGETEK ENTERPRISE LIBRARY SOFTWARE UTILITY										SSYS=HSCI					PAGE 00003											
TIME 15:50:09										VTCS VTV REPORT															DATE 2010-06-17											
VTV	SIZE	COMP	<---CREATION---			<---LAST USED---				MGR	SCR	REPL	MGMT																MAX							
VOLSER	(MB)	%	DATE	TIME	DATE	TIME	RES	IMP	EXPT	CLASS				MVC1	MVC2	MVC3	MVC4	VTV	VTSSNAME																	
A00240	66.4	85	2010MAY22	16:27:44	2010MAY22	16:57	R	-	-	-			TRACE						4.0	VTSS92																
A00241	14.0	0	2010MAY21	13:02:30	2010MAY22	07:48	-	M	-	-			MGMT2CP	702972					0.4	VTSS90																
A00406	14.0	0	2010MAY21	13:03:50	2010MAY22	08:45	-	M	-	-			EXHPDM	700486					4.0	VTSS90																
...																																				
X50000	2,430.0	0	2009NOV18	09:04:18	2009NOV18	09:07	R	-	-	I	-	PE	EEXPORT						4.0	VTSS91																
X50047	280.0	96	2009DEC03	14:29:35	2010APR30	06:48	R	M	-	I	-	PE	QUADYES	700483	700491	700494	700498	4.0	VTSS91																	
X50048	280.0	96	2009DEC03	14:29:41	2010MAY27	21:06	-	M	-	I	-		QUADYES	702979	700492	700497	700499	4.0	VTSS91																	
X50060	0.0	0					-	-	S	I	-																									
X50066	280.0	96	2009DEC03	14:56:17	2010MAY27	21:06	-	M	-	I	-		DLVTVYES	702978					4.0	VTSS92																
X50067	42.0	0	2010JAN21	11:28:55	2010JAN21	11:28	R	-	-	I	-		EEXPORT						4.0	VTSS91																
Y50000	4.8	0	2009NOV20	09:59:52	2009DEC18	11:56	R	-	-	-		E	OTHERDIR						0.4	VTSS91																
Y50008	1,260.0	75	2009NOV20	09:59:56	2010MAY27	21:09	-	M	-	-		E	OTHERDIR	702978					0.4	VTSS92																
Y50184	578.6	34	2010FEB02	22:25:27	2010MAY22	08:42	-	M	S	-	-		APOOL	702972					0.4	VTSS90																
485434 INITIALIZED VTVS PROCESSED																																				
116566 NON-INITIALIZED VTVS PROCESSED																																				
SLS0155I CONDITTON CODE FOR UTILITY FUNCTION IS 0																																				

**FIGURE 3-216** Example VTVRPT BASIC output

*Fields*

The following list describes the fields for the report generated by a VTVRPT or VTVRPT BASIC command.

**VTV Volser**

the VTV volser.

**Size (MB)**

the **uncompressed** size of the VTV (MB). **<MOUNT>** indicates that the VTV was mounted when the report ran. **<FENCED>** indicates that the VTV's state is unknown. If **<FENCED>** appears, contact Oracle StorageTek Software Support.

**Comp %**

the VTV compression percentage achieved. This is the difference between the uncompressed and compressed VTV size expressed as a percentage of the uncompressed VTV size. For example if a 100MB VTV compresses to 40MB then the compression% will be given as 60%. A compression of 0% indicates that no compression was possible on the VTV.

**Creation Date and Time**

the date and time that the VTV was created.

**Last Used Date and Time**

the date and time that the VTV was last used. This date and time value is updated by successful completion of a VTV mount, migrate, recall, or scratch.

**Mgr/Res**

indicates the copy status of the VTV. The absence of a flag in the columns below indicates that there are no current copies of the VTV within this TapePlex.

- An 'R' in the left column indicates that there is a VTSS resident copy of the VTV.
- An 'M' in the right column indicates that there is at least one MVC copy of the VTV. As an alternative, if this column contains a 'C' then the VTV is also consolidated.

**Scr/Imp**

indicates the usability of the VTV.

- An 'S' in the left column indicates that the VTV is in a scratched state. If the VTV has also been imported from a remote TapePlex, then the VTV cannot be picked for a scratch mount.
- An 'I' in the right column indicates that the VTV has been imported from another TapePlex. Imported VTVs cannot be modified.

**Repl/Expt**

indicates the replication or electronic export status of the VTV. A VTV that is not resident does not have any replication requirements.

It can be one of the following statuses in the left column:

**PR**

The VTV is currently queued for replication.

**SR**

Replication of the VTV has started.

**R**

Replication has completed and another copy of the VTV resides in the partner to the currently resident VTSS.

It can be one of the following statuses in the right column:

**PE**

The VTV is queued for electronic export.

**SE**

Electronic export of the VTV has started.

**FE**

Electronic export of the VTV has been rejected by the remote TapePlex.

**E**

Replication has completed and another copy of the VTV resides in the partner to the currently resident VTSS.

**MGMT Class**

the name of the Management Class for the VTV specified.

**MVC1, MVC2, MVC3, MVC4**

the MVC(s) that contain the VTV (for both migration and consolidation). If all of these fields are empty, the VTV has not been migrated or consolidated. If 1 or more of these fields list an MVC volser, the VTV was migrated to each of these MVCs.

**Max VTV**

the maximum size of the VTV in GB (.4, .8, 2, or 4).

**VTSSname**

the VTSS where the VTV resides, or, if the VTV is migrated, the VTSS where the VTSS was last resident. If this field is empty, the VTV is non-existent (not created or used, scratched, and deleted) or has been manually imported.



## OPTION(UNAVAIL)

optionally, specifies to report only on unavailable VTVs (VTVs in an offline VTSS). The report lists only unavailable VTVs in three sections--unavailable mounted on a VTD, unavailable VTSS-resident, and unavailable VTSS-resident and fenced.

## SUPEMPTY

optionally, suppress the printing of empty VTVs.

The VTV report will not print details of VTVs that contain no data or VTVs that are fenced.

---

**Note** – SUPEMPTY is mutually exclusive with ALL and OPTION(UNAVAIL).

---

## VTV Report (COPIES)

FIGURE 3-216 shows an example of a VTV report generated by a VTVRPt COPIES command.

SLUADMIN (7.1.0) STORAGETEK ENTERPRISE LIBRARY SOFTWARE UTILITY SSYS=HSCI PAGE 00002									
TIME 15:50:43 VTCS VTV REPORT DATE 2010-06-17									
SLS1315I HSC1.V70EC21.CDS WAS SELECTED AS THE PRIMARY CONTROL DATA SET									
SLUADMIN (7.1.0) STORAGETEK ENTERPRISE LIBRARY SOFTWARE UTILITY SSYS=HSCI PAGE 00003									
TIME 15:50:43 VTCS VTV REPORT DATE 2010-06-17									
VTV	SIZE	MGMT	<--VTSS COPIES-->			OWNING	<---MVC COPIES AND LOCATIONS--->		
VOLSER	(MB)	CLASS	SCR	PRIMARY	REPLICA	TAPEPLEX	MVC1/3	ACS	MVC2/4 ACS
00240	10.5	TRACE	-	VTSS92	-	-			
A00241	14.3	MGMT2CP	-	-	-	-	702972	00	
A00406	14.1	EXHPDM	-	-	-	-	700486	00	
...									
X50000	2,462.3	EEXPORT	-	VTSS91	-	EC20REM			
X50047	11.4	DLVTVYES	-	VTSS91	-	EC20REM	700483	00	
X50048	11.4	DLVTVYES	-	-	-	EC20REM	702979	00	
X50060	NO COPY	DLVTVYES	-	-	-	SEC20REM			
X50066	11.4	DLVTVYES	-	-	-	EC20REM	702978	00	
X50067	42.5	EEXPORT	-	VTSS91	-	EC20REM			
Y50000	13.3	OTHERDIR	-	VTSS91	-	-			EC20REM
Y50008	316.6	OTHERDIR	-	-	-	-	702978	00	EC20REM
Y50184	385.2	APOOL	S	-	-	-	702972	00	
485434 INITIALIZED VTVS PROCESSED									
116566 NON-INITIALIZED VTVS PROCESSED									
SLS0155I CONDITION CODE FOR UTILITY FUNCTION IS 0									

FIGURE 3-218 Example VTVRPt COPIES output

### Fields

The following list describes the fields for a report generated by the VTVRPt COPIES command.

#### VTV Volser

the VTV volser.

#### Size (MB)

the **compressed** size of the VTV (MB). <MOUNT> indicates that the VTV was mounted when the report ran. <FENCED> indicates that the VTV's state is unknown. If <FENCED> appears, contact Oracle StorageTek Software Support.

#### MGMT Class

the name of the Management Class for the VTV specified.



**Scr**

indicates whether the VTV is in a scratched state.

An 'S' in this column indicates that the VTV is in a scratched state.

**Primary**

the name of the VTSS that contains the primary VTSS resident copy of the VTV. If this field is blank, then there are currently no VTSS resident copies of the VTV.

**Replica**

the name of the VTSS that contains a replica copy of the VTV. If this field is blank, then there are currently no VTSS resident replica copies of the VTV

**Owning Tapeplex**

the name of the TapePlex that has ownership of this VTV. If this field is blank, then the VTV is owned by another TapePlex and can be processed normally. If this field is set, then the VTV has been imported from another TapePlex and its contents cannot be modified.

**MVC1, MVC2, MVC3, MVC4**

the MVC(s) that contain the VTV (for both migration and consolidation). If all of these fields are empty, the VTV has not been migrated or consolidated. The number next to each MVC volser is the ACS location of the MVC. If this is set to '--', then the MVC is not library resident.

**Export Tapeplex**

the names of the TapePlexes to which copies of the VTV have been exported. The copies within these TapePlexes will show the VTV as imported and having an owning TapePlex name. This list is not exhaustive as some of these TapePlexes may have forwarded copies onto further locations. An asterisk (\*) next to the name indicates an export that has been rejected by the target TapePlex.

---

# VVAUDIT

**Interfaces:**

Utility only  
UII: Yes

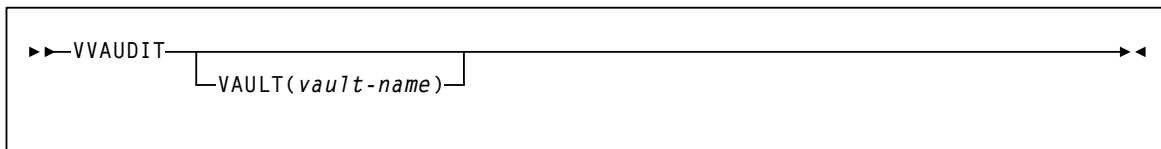
**Subsystem Requirements:**

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

The VVAUDIT command synchronizes the vault allocation map with the vault volume records. If the slot in the map indicates that it is allocated, then the vault volume records are searched. If the slot number is not found in any vault volume record, then the slot is freed.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 3-219** VVAUDIT syntax

## Parameters

**VAULT**

optionally, audits the specified *vault-name*. If VAULT is not specified, then **all** vaults are be audited.

*vault-name*

the vault name.

# Warn

## Interfaces:

Console or PARMLIB only  
 UUI: No

## Subsystem Requirements:

Active HSC at BASE or FULL service level

## Description

The Warn command sets scratch warning threshold values.

Setting a threshold value causes a warning message to be issued when the number of scratches falls below the specified threshold. The Warn command allows you to specify parameters that can narrow the scope of the threshold values you set:

- If SUBpool, MEDia, and RECtech are not supplied, the threshold value applies to scratch volumes for the specified ACS or LSM.
- If SUBpool is supplied, but MEDia and RECtech are not, the threshold value applies to scratch volumes for the specified subpool and ACS or LSM.
- If MEDia and RECtech are supplied, but SUBpool is not, the threshold value applies to scratch volumes for the specified media type, recording technique, and ACS or LSM.
- If SUBpool, MEDia, and RECtech are supplied, the threshold value applies to scratch volumes for the specified subpool, media type, and recording technique in the ACS or LSM.

---

**Note** – Use the Display THReshld command to display the current Warn threshold values. See [“Display THReshld” on page 347](#) for more information.

---

## Syntax

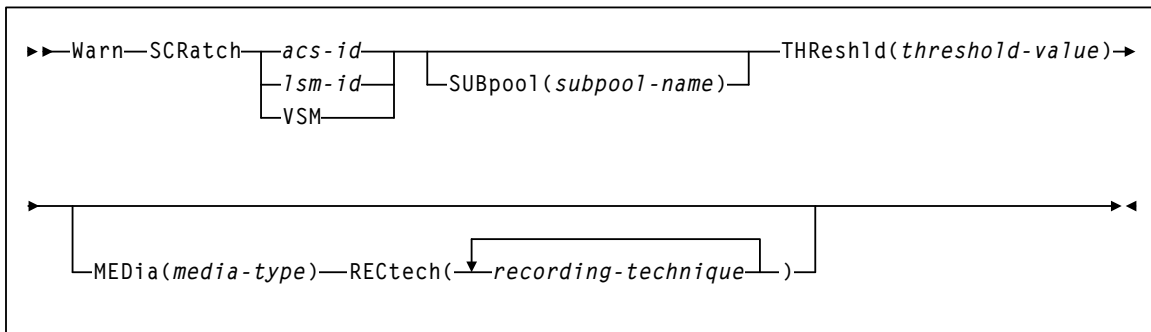


FIGURE 3-220 Warn syntax

## Parameters

### SCRatch

indicates that scratch threshold values are to be set.

#### *acs-id*

the ACS on which to alter threshold values. The ACSid is a decimal value from 00-99.

#### *lsm-id*

the LSM on which to alter threshold values. The LSMid is comprised of the ACSid and the LSM number. The format of an LSMid is *AA:LL*, where *AA* is the ACSid (decimal 00-99) and *LL* is the LSM number (decimal 00-99).

### VSM

specifies that threshold values are to be set only for subpools for virtual volumes. VSM is not allowed if *acs-id* or *lsm-id* are also specified.

### SUBpool

optionally, indicates that you want to designate a subpool. This parameter is optional.

#### *subpool-name*

the name of the subpool.

---

**Note** – Scratch subpool names are specified with the SCRPOOL control statement. Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for information.

---

### THReshd

indicates that you want to alter the threshold value.

#### *threshold-value*

the minimum number of scratch volumes that are allowed before the HSC issues a warning message. Allowable threshold values are decimal in the range from 0 through 99,999.

The warning interval values are preset at five minutes.

---

**Note** – When the number of scratch volumes in an ACS or LSM drops below the threshold value, the system issues a warning message.

---

### MEDia

optionally, specifies the media type for the threshold. When MEDia is specified, RECtech must also be specified.

#### *media-type*

the media type.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODEL Values”](#) for a list of valid *media-type* values.

**RECtech**

optionally, specifies the recording technique for the threshold. RECtech indicates the method used to record data tracks on the tape surface. When RECtech is specified, MEDia must also be specified.

You can enter a list of recording techniques, but they must be separated by commas.

***recording-technique***

the recording technique.

See [Appendix A, “MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values”](#) for valid *recording-technique* values.

---

**Note** – A list specifies a generic pool from which a selection is made. There is no implied priority.

---

Warn

## SMC Utilities

---

This chapter describes the following SMC utilities:

- **Unified User Interface utility (SMCUUUI)**

This utility allows you to issue HSC Unified User Interface (UII) commands, VTCS commands, or SMC commands from a batch job.

- **JES3 Configuration Report utility (SMCUPJS)**

This utility generates JES3 configuration data which can be used to help verify JES3 initialization deck behavior.

- **POLicy and TAPEREQ Batch Test utility (SMCUTRQ)**

This utility allows you to test POLicy and TAPEREQ lookup behavior.

- **Tape Management Extract utility (SMCUDBX)**

This utility supports scratch synchronization between the SMC client host and the HSC CDS.

- **UII Simulation utility (SMCUSIM)**

This utility allows you to issue SMC UII commands in a test environment. Changes to SMC command settings, tape policies, and allocation user exits can be tested before they are put into production without affecting existing SMC clients and HSC servers.

- **Trace Format utility (SMCUGTF)**

This utility supports scratch synchronization between the SMC client host and the HSC CDS.

Unlike HSC and VTCS utilities, **all** SMC utilities are packaged as standalone utility programs. SMC utilities are not initiated using SMC operator commands.

## SMC Utility Return Codes and Messages

SMC utilities may return the following return codes:

- A return code of 0 is returned when the utility program completes successfully with no errors or warnings.
- A return code of 4 is returned when a warning message is detected.
- A return code of 8 is returned when an error that prevents the utility from completing is detected.

Refer to the publication *ELS Messages and Codes* for a listing of SMC messages that may be returned by SMC utilities. These messages are identified by the SMCU prefix.



# Unified User Interface Utility (SMCUUUI)

The SMCUUUI utility is used to issue SMC and HSC Unified User Interface (UII) commands, or VTCS requests from a batch job. The commands can be routed to a local or remote HSC TapePlex.

Several types of output can be received for a UII command, including:

- **Plain text output**

This type of output is written to TEXTOUT, and corresponds to the normal output produced by the HSC or VTCS command or report utility. If plain text output is requested for an HSC or VTCS report, the report headings are **not** produced by the UII.

- **Structured XML**

This type of output is written to XMLOUT. Structured XML is a well formed XML data stream with XML header tags and XML data tag elements, and XML data element content. Refer to the *ELS Programming Reference* for a complete list of SMC, HSC and VTCS XML tag names and types.

- **Comma Separated Values (CSV)**

This output type is optional and is generated only if the CSV command is specified. See [“CSV Command” on page 690](#) for more information.

This type of output is written to CSVOUT. An input template of XML data tag names is used to define the format of the CSVOUT corresponding to a particular request. The output data for each request is a CSV header line that contains a comma-separated list of the XML data tags requested, followed by CSV detail lines. Each CSV detail line contains one comma-separated entry for each requested XML data tag. This type of output is readily adaptable as input into spreadsheets or customized report writers. Refer to the *ELS Programming Reference* for more information about the format for specifying CSV.

The type of output received is controlled by the data set definition statements (DD) defined in the JCL to execute the SMCUUUI utility.

---

## Note –

- In general, error messages are **not** produced for CSV output. To view error messages produced by the UII process, you **must** include either a TEXTOUT or XMLOUT DD statement.

Exception messages associated with CSV output are directed to the DD statement named CSVOUTX, if present. If no CSVOUTX DD statement is included, and only CSV output is requested, exception messages are not produced.

- If the SMCUUUI utility is directing utility functions that may include SORT (such as VOLRPT, MVCPRPT, etc.) to a remote TapePlex, caution should be exercised to run a limited number of these jobs simultaneously for a single SMC HTTP server. The exact number is dependent on the region size of the SMC running the HTTP server as well as the amount of data being processed.
-

## Sample JCL

The following JCL sample executes the SMCUUUI utility.

```
//yourstd JOB card
//STEP EXEC PGM=SMCUUUI,PARM='pgmparms'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=your.sea.linklib,DISP=SHR
//STDOUT DD DSN=yourstd.printout.dataset,DISP=SHR
//UUIIN DD *
  CSV and uui commands
//*****
/* Specify at least one of the following output data sets: *
//*****
//CSVOUT DD DSN=yourcsv.output.dataset,DISP=SHR
//CSVOUTX DD DSN=yourcsv.exceptns.dataset,DISP=SHR
//XMLOUT DD DSN=yourxml.output.dataset,DISP=SHR
//TEXTOUT DD DSN=yourtext.output.dataset,DISP=SHR
```

**FIGURE 4-1** JCL to Execute the SMCUUUI Utility

## Parameters

The following SMCUUUI utility parameters may be specified for *pgmparms* in the sample JCL:

### **SSYS(subsystem-name)**

Specifies the SMC subsystem name (one to four characters in length)

### **TAPEPlex(name)**

Specifies the name of the SMC TapePlex to which the UUI commands will be directed. If omitted, the first active TapePlex found is used.

Use TAPEPlex(SMC) to indicate that the input commands are to be issued directly to the SMC, and not to a TapePlex (such as the SMC Display Volume and Display Drive command).

### **XMLCASE**

Specifies the case of the XML and CSV output.

**M**

Mixed (default)

**U**

Uppercase

### **XMLDate(format)**

Specifies the format of date fields in XML and CSV output. Valid date formats include the following:

- YYYYMONDD (default format)
- YYYY-MM-DD
- YYYY-MON-DD
- HEXSTCK (hex character STCK format)

**NOHDR**

optionally, specifies that STDOUT and TEXTOUT report headings and pagination carriage control are not produced.

---

**Note** – NOHDR and LINECNT are mutually exclusive.

---

**LINECNT**

optionally, specifies STDOUT and TEXTOUT report pagination line count setting.

---

**Note** – LINECNT and NOHDR are mutually exclusive.

---

*nn*

the number of lines per page. Valid values are 10-99.

---

**Note** – Settings for STDOUT report headings and pagination can only be specified in the EXEC statement program parameters. Settings for TEXTOUT report headings, while initially specified by the EXEC statement program parameters, can later be modified by specifying TEXTOUT UI control statements in the UIIN command stream.

---

For example:

In the following figure, the EXEC statement program PARM='LINECNT(55)' sets the report pagination to 55 lines per page for both STDOUT and TEXTOUT output.

However, the UI command TEXTOUT NOHDR in the UIIN command stream alters the TEXTOUT report parameters to disable report headers and pagination.

```
//yourstd JOB card
//STEP EXEC PGM=SMCUUUI,PARM='LINECNT(55)'
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.sea.linklib
//STDOUT DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.stdout.dataset
//UIIN DD *
TEXTOUT NOHDR
  UI commands
//CSVOUT DD DSN=yourcsv.output.dataset,DISP=SHR
//XMLOUT DD DSN=yourxml.output.dataset,DISP=SHR
//TEXTOUT DD DSN=yourtext.output.dataset,DISP=SHR
```

## Required Data Set Definition (DD) Statements

You must specify the UUIIN and STDOUT data set definitions.

### UUIIN Data Set

The UUIIN data set can contain:

- SMCUUUI utility control statements
- SMC UUI commands
- HSC UUI commands
- VTCS PGMI requests

Native SMC UUI commands include:

- Display DRive
- Display Volume
- POLicy
- SIMulate

Refer to the *ELS Programming Reference* for a list of supported HSC UUI commands and VTCS PGMI requests.

### *Syntax Rules*

- Input must be 80 byte card images.
- Only columns 1-72 of the 80 byte card image may contain actual command input. Columns 73-80 may be used for sequence numbers if desired.
- If the last non-blank character in columns 1-72 is a "+", the logical command is continued on the next physical card.
- Comments begin with "/"\* (in column 2 or beyond) and end with "\*/".
- The maximum logical command length is 32000 bytes.

## Control Statements

Utility control statements allow the report pagination for TEXTOUT output and the target TapePlex to be altered for subsequent SMC, HSC, and VTCS UI and PGMI commands.

### PLEXDest

optionally, sets the destination TapePlex for subsequent commands to the specified *tapeplex-name*. Any communication error occurring during a subsequent SMC, HSC, or VTCS command after execution of the PLEXDest control statement results in the bypassing of all subsequent SMC, HSC, or VTCS commands until another PLEXDest control statement is encountered.

#### *tapeplex-name*

the TapePlex name of the target system for subsequent commands.

- If "SMC" is specified, all subsequent commands are assumed to be SMC UI commands and are directed to the simulated SMC environment.
- If a valid HSC TapePlex (as defined via a SMC TAPEPlex command) is specified, all subsequent commands are assumed to be HSC or VTCS commands and are directed to the specified *tapeplex-name* via the simulated SMC environment.

### TEXTOUT

optionally, sets the report pagination parameters for TEXTOUT output. If any errors are encountered on the TEXTOUT command, all subsequent UI commands are bypassed until a correct TEXTOUT command is encountered.

### NOHDR

optionally, specifies that TEXTOUT report headings and pagination carriage control are not produced.

---

**Note** – NOHDR and LINECNT are mutually exclusive.

---

### LINECNT(*nn*)

optionally, specifies TEXTOUT report pagination line count setting.

---

**Note** – LINECNT and NOHDR are mutually exclusive.

---

#### *nn*

the number of lines per page. Valid values are 10-99.

### Note –

- Settings for STDOUT report headings and pagination can only be specified in the EXEC statement program parameters. Settings for TEXTOUT report headings, while initially specified by the EXEC statement program parameters, can later be modified by specifying TEXTOUT UI control statements in the UIIN command stream.
  - If multiple TEXTOUT statements are input before a single UI command, the last TEXTOUT statement controls the TEXTOUT report pagination.
  - PLEXDest and TEXTOUT commands can be specified along with CSV commands to alter the destination TapePlex, and the CSV and TEXTOUT output characteristics of subsequent UI commands. See ["CSV Command" on page 690](#).
-

In the following example:

1. Statement 1 sets the destination for subsequent commands to the local SMC subsystem.
2. The D DRIVE statement 2 is directed to the local SMC subsystem.
3. Statement 3 resets the destination TapePlex for subsequent commands to TapePlex HSCN.
4. The DISPLAY SCRATCH statement 4 is directed to HSCN.
5. Statement 5 resets the destination TapePlex for subsequent commands to HSCQ.
6. Finally, DISPLAY SCRATCH statement 6 is directed to HSCQ.

```
//yourstd JOB card
//STEP EXEC PGM=SMCUUUI
//UUIIN DD *
PLEXDEST SMC                /* Statement #1 */
D DRIVE                      /* Statement #2 */
PLEXDEST HSCN               /* Statement #3 */
DISPLAY SCRATCH             /* Statement #4 */
PLEXDEST HSCQ              /* Statement #5 */
DISPLAY SCRATCH             /* Statement #6 */
...other JCL statements
```

In the next example:

1. Statement 1 sets the destination TapePlex for subsequent commands to TapePlex HSCN.

If HSCN is not available, or communication errors occur while processing statements 3-5, then subsequent UI commands are bypassed until the next PLEXDest command is encountered (statement 6 in this example).

2. Statement 2 sets the CSV output parameters for subsequent UI commands.

If an error occurs on the CSV command, then any subsequent UI commands are bypassed until a subsequent valid CSV command is read. In this case, if the CSV command in statement #2 is invalid, not only are statements 3-5 bypassed, but also statement 7. Statement 6 is still processed to direct subsequent commands to HSCQ.

3. Statement 8 sets new CSV output parameters to be used by statement 9.

```
//yourstd JOB card
//STEP EXEC PGM=SMCUUUI
...other JCL statements
//UIIN DD *
PLEXDEST HSCN                                /*Statement #1 */
CSV ...csv parameters                        /*Statement #2 */
SCRATCH VOL ACT001-ACT002                   /*Statement #3 */
SCRATCH VOL PAY001-PAY002                   /*Statement #4 */
SCRATCH VOL REC001-REC002                   /*Statement #5 */
PLEXDEST HSCQ                               /*Statement #6 */
SCRATCH VOL Q00001-Q00002                   /*Statement #7 */
CSV ...csv parameters                        /*Statement #8 */
DISPLAY SCRATCH                             /*Statement #9 */
...other UI commands
...other JCL statements
```

## STDOUT Data Set

The STDOUT data set is where the SMCUUUI utility reports the input and final completion code for each UUI request.

## Output Data Set Definition (DD) Statements

You **must** specify at least one of the following output data set definition statements:

- XMLOUT
- CSVOUT
- TEXTOUT

### *XMLOUT Data Set*

The XMLOUT data set is where the SMCUUUI utility outputs the structured XML output corresponding to the UUIIN command, as shown in the following example:

```
//yourstd JOB card
//STEP EXEC PGM=SMCUUUI
...
//UUIIN DD *
SCRATCH VOL(400720)
//XMLOUT DD DSN=yourxml.output.dataset,DISP=SHR
...
```

The XMLOUT DD would contain the following output:

```
<scratch_request>
<header>
<hsc_version>7.1.0</hsc_version>
<date>2008Apr19</date>
<time>13:54:34</time>
<host_name>MVSB</host_name>
</header>
<volume_data>
<volser>400720</volser>
<result>success</result>
<reason>SLS0167I Volume 400720 successfully added to library as
scratch
</reason>
</volume_data>
</scratch_request>
```



### *CSVOUT Data Set*

The CSVOUT data set is where the SMCUUUI utility writes the CSV output for the requested UIIN commands that specified corresponding CSV formatting. Refer to the *ELS Programming Reference* for more information about the Comma Separated Value (CSV) specification.

The maximum logical CSV input length is 4096 bytes.

---

**Note** – In order to view exceptions associated with generating CSV output, include a CSVOUTX DD statement in the SMCUUUI JCL.

---

### *TEXTOUT Data Set*

The TEXTOUT data set is where the SMCUUUI utility outputs plain text UII responses. This is the same output that would be received from the corresponding SMC, HSC or VTCS command, or written to the SLSPRINT DD by the SLUADMIN or SWSADMIN utility, except that page and column headings are not produced. This data set is optional.

---

## JES3 Configuration Report Utility (SMCUPJS)

The SMCUPJS utility generates JES3 configuration data which can be used to help verify that the JES3 initialization deck defines the intended devices and esoterics. This data is derived from internal SMC JES3 configuration control structures. These control structures are built during SMC/JES3 initialization through analysis of the SETNAME and SETUNIT statements in the user's JES3 initialization deck. For this reason, the SMC must be active on the system on which the report is run.

The following reports are generated from the SMC JES3 configuration control structures:

- List of XTYPE numbers in hexadecimal order with their corresponding XTYPE names
- List of XTYPEs in hexadecimal order with all esoterics in which the XTYPE appears
- List of esoterics in alphabetical order with all XTYPEs that each contains and the total number of devices in the esoteric. This report also lists any discrepancies between JES3 and HCD esoterics
- List of XTYPEs in hexadecimal order with all devices in that XTYPE, along with the location and recording technique of the devices in the XTYPE
- List of devices in hexadecimal order and the XTYPE to which each belongs, along with the location and recording technique of the device

### Sample JCL

The following JCL sample executes the SMCUPJS utility to produce the five individual reports listed above.

```
//yourstd JOB card
//STEP EXEC PGM=SMCUPJS
//STEPLIB DD DSN=your.sea.linklib,DISP=SHR
//STDOUT DD DSN=yourstd.printout.dataset,DISP=SHR
```

**FIGURE 4-2** JCL to Produce the JES3 Configuration Report

---

**Note** – *yourstd.printout.dataset* should be allocated with LRECL=80.

---

## Sample Reports

In the following report fragments, XTYPE 27 is carried through all five reports to illustrate how the reports are related. Lines pertaining to XTYPE 27 are underlined in each report.

### XTYPE Number to XTYPE Name (EXTON)

Below are fragments of the XTYPE Number to XTYPE Name report. This mapping is useful when reading other reports that reference the XTYPE number instead of the name. The number in parenthesis is the XTYPE number, followed by the XTYPE name.

```
SMCUPJS (7.1.0)          SMC JES3 CONFIGURATION REPORT          PAGE 0001
TIME 15:03:42          XTYPE NUMBER TO XTYPE NAME (EXTON)      DATE 2008-01-09

XTYPE(01) DEV01D5
XTYPE(02) DEV2504
XTYPE(03) DEV2507
XTYPE(04) DEV2506
XTYPE(05) DEV01D6
XTYPE(06) DEV01DA
XTYPE(07) DEV01DD
XTYPE(08) DEV01DF
XTYPE(09) DEV01D0
...
XTYPE(27) DEV0AA0
XTYPE(28) DEV0A20
...
```

### XTYPE Number to Esoteric (EXTOE)

Below are fragments of the XTYPE Number to Esoteric report, which lists each XTYPE in hexadecimal order, along with all esoterics that contain that XTYPE. Both the XTYPE number (in parenthesis) and name are displayed.

```
SMCUPJS (7.1.0)          SMC JES3 CONFIGURATION REPORT          PAGE 0001
TIME 15:03:42          XTYPE NUMBER TO ESOTERIC (EXTOE)        DATE 2008-01-09

XTYPE(01) DEV01D5  appears in 11 ESOTERICs
  CART    EAGLE    3590-1  HVALL    HSCV3590 MCZZZZ0  HVZZZZ01 MCZZ9840
  HV994035 HRACS1L1 HV994010
XTYPE(02) DEV2504  appears in 10 ESOTERICs
  CART
...
XTYPE(27) DEV0AA0  appears in 7 ESOTERICs
  SYS3480R  CART    3480    TL3480    SLIB      SACS0    S04480
```

## Esoteric to XTYPE (EETOX)

Below are fragments of the Esoteric to XTYPE report, which lists each esoteric in alphabetical order, along with all XTYPES in that esoteric in hexadecimal order. The XTYPE number can be mapped to its corresponding XTYPE name using the XTYPE Name to XTYPE Number report described above.

```

SMCUPJS (7.1.0)          SMC JES3 CONFIGURATION SUPPORT          PAGE 0001
TIME 15:03:42          ESOTERIC TO XTYPE NUMBER (EETOX)        DATE 2008-01-09

  ESOTERIC AUSALL      contains 4 XTYPES and 12 devices
    2C 2D 3D 85
  ESOTERIC AUSREDW     contains 1 XTYPES and 2 devices
    2D
...
  ESOTERIC CART        contains 84 XTYPES and 433 devices
    01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 0A 0B 0C 0D 0E 0F 10 11 21 22 23 24 25 26 27
    28 29 2A 2E 2F 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 3A 3B 3C 3D 3E 3F 40 41 42
    43 44 45 46 47 48 49 4A 4B 4C 4D 4E 4F 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 5A
    5B 5C 5D 5E 5F 60 61 62 63 64 65 66
...
  ESOTERIC SACS0       contains 9 XTYPES and 22 devices
    10 11 27 42 43 44 45 5E 5F
SMCU0005 *** WARNING: HCD esoteric does not match JES3 esoteric
  JES3 esoteric drives not in HCD:
    0AA3
  HCD esoteric drives not in JES3:
    (NONE)
...
  ESOTERIC SLIB        contains 13 XTYPES and 34 devices
    10 11 23 24 27 42 43 44 45 46 47 5E 5F
...
  ESOTERIC SYS3480R    contains 102 XTYPES and 1511 devices
    21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 2A 2B 2C 2D 2E 2F 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38
    39 3A 3B 3C 3D 3E 3F 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 4A 4B 4C 4D 4E 4F 50
    51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 5A 5B 5C 5D 5E 5F 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68
    69 6A 6B 6C 6D 6E 6F 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 7A 7B 7C 7D 7E 7F 80
    81 82 83 84 85 86
...
  ESOTERIC S04480      contains 1 XTYPES and 4 devices
    27
...
  ESOTERIC TL3480      contains 5 XTYPES and 48 devices
    25 26 27 28 29
...
  ESOTERIC 3480        contains 14 XTYPES and 132 devices
    21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 83 84 85 86
...

```

## XTYPE to Device Number (EXTOD)

Below are fragments of the XTYPE to Device Number report, which lists each XTYPE in hexadecimal order along with its devices. For each XTYPE number the following information is displayed:

- XTYPE number
- XTYPE name
- Number of devices in the XTYPE
- Associated TapePlex
- Device location
- Device recording technique

The device location is one of the following:

- In a TapePlex, in which case "*tapeplex-name* LSM AA:LL" is displayed, where *tapeplex-name* is the name of the TapePlex containing the HSC where the nonlibrary device is defined via the NONLIB esoteric or UNITATTR
- In a VTSS, in which case "*tapeplex-name* VTSS (nnnnnnnn)" is displayed
- Defined with an SMC UNITATTR command, in which case "nonlib" is displayed
- Neither in the library nor defined with an SMC UNITATTR command, in which case "not lib or nonlib" is displayed.

```

SMCUPJS (7.1.0)          SMC JES3 CONFIGURATION REPORT          PAGE 0001
TIME 15:03:42           XTYPE TO DEVICE NUMBER (EXTOD)        DATE 2008-01-09

  XTYPE(01) DEV01D5  contains 1 DEVICES  not lib or nonlib, rectech STK1RA35
    01D5
  XTYPE(02) DEV2504  contains 1 DEVICES  not lib or nonlib, rectech STK1RA35
    2505
  ...
  XTYPE(0F) DEV2801  contains 1 DEVICES  nonlib, rectech STK1RA35
    2801
  ...
  XTYPE(27) DEV0AA0  contains 4 DEVICES  PLEX1 LSM 00:00, rectech 18TRACK
    0AA0 0AA1 0AA2 0AA3
  ...
  XTYPE(48) DEV9000  contains 64 DEVICES  PLEX1 VTSS SVTSS1
    9000 9001 9002 9003 9004 9005 9006 9007 9008 9009 900A 900B 900C 900D
    900E 900F 9010 9011 9012 9013 9014 9015 9016 9017 9018 9019 901A 901B
    901C 901D 901E 901F 9020 9021 9022 9023 9024 9025 9026 9027 9028 9029
    902A 902B 902C 902D 902E 902F 9030 9031 9032 9033 9034 9035 9036 9037
    9038 9039 903A 903B 903C 903D 903E 903F
  ...

```

## Device Number to XTYPE (EDTOX)

Below are fragments of the Device Number to XTYPE report, which lists each device in hexadecimal order and the XTYPE to which it belongs. For each device the following is displayed:

- Associated TapePlex
- Device location
- Device recording technique

The device location and recording technique are displayed as in the XTYPE to Device Number report described above.

SMCUPJS (7.1.0)	SMC JES3 CONFIGURATION REPORT	PAGE 0001
TIME 15:03:42	DEVICE TO XTYPE NUMBER (EDTOX)	DATE 2008-01-09
DEVICE/XTYPE - 0120/3C not lib or nonlib, rectech 36ATRACK DEVICE/XTYPE - 0121/3C not lib or nonlib, rectech 36ATRACK ... DEVICE/XTYPE - 0AA0/27 PLEX1 LSM 00:00, rectech 18TRACK DEVICE/XTYPE - 0AA1/27 PLEX1 LSM 00:00, rectech 18TRACK DEVICE/XTYPE - 0AA2/27 PLEX1 LSM 00:00, rectech 18TRACK DEVICE/XTYPE - 0AA3/27 PLEX1 LSM 00:00, rectech 18TRACK ...		

# POLicy and TAPEREQ Batch Test Utility (SMCUTRQ)

The SMCUTRQ utility is used to test SMC tape policy lookups. The program accepts control cards containing the same type of information that is extracted by the SMC during tape allocation and mount processing.

After you input the jobname, stepname, program name and other attributes on the control cards, this utility formats those attributes and requests SMC tape policy lookups from the SMC subsystem as if it were a job with those simulated characteristics.

Next, the utility generates a report indicating what policy was matched, or what TREQDef TAPEREQ statements, if any, were matched for the specific criteria. If the currently active TREQDef file is accessible, as indicated by the TREQDef Llist command, the actual TAPEREQ statements matching each lookup are listed.

The SMCUTRQ utility requires an active SMC subsystem on the same host. If SMC is not active, an error message is produced and the program terminates.

## Sample JCL

Execute load module SMCUTRQ in the SMC linklib to produce the report.

The following JCL sample executes the SMCUTRQ utility:

```
//yourstd JOB card
//STEP      EXEC  PGM=SMCUTRQ
//STEPLIB DD    DSN=your.sea.linklib,DISP=SHR
//STDOUT DD    DSN=yourstd.printout.dataset,DISP=SHR
//SYSOUT DD    SYSOUT=*
//SMCIN DD      *
POL1 jobname stepname pgmname ddname nnnn yyyy/ddd mgmtclas
POL2 C volser dataset.name
```

**FIGURE 4-3** JCL to Execute the SMCUTRQ Utility

## Control Cards

Each TAPEREQ POLicy lookup requires that you enter at least one control card (POL1), and optionally one or two control cards (POL2, POL3) specifying the job step characteristics to be simulated. The control card format is as follows:

Card 1:

Column	Length	Field	Format
1	4	ID	"POL1" required identifier
6	8	jobname	1-8 character non-generic jobname
15	8	stepname	1-8 character non-generic stepname
24	8	program name	1-8 character non-generic program name
33	8	ddname	1-8 character non-generic ddname
42	4	retention period	4 digit retention period
47	8	expiration date	yyddd, yyyyddd, or yyyy/ddd format expiration date
56	8	management class	1-8 character non-generic SMS management class name

Card 2:

Column	Length	Field	Format
1	4	ID	"POL2" required identifier
6	1	volume type	"S" for specific "N" for non-specific (scratch)
8	6	volume serial	6 character volser
15	44	dataset name	44 character non-PDS MVS dataset name

Card 3:

Column	Length	Field	Format
1	4	ID	"POL3" required identifier
6	8	actual RECTECH	Valid recording technique
15	3	label type	Values SL, NL, AL, NSL
19	8	JCL esoteric	Esoteric name



---

**Note –**

- All variable length fields must be left justified.
  - Retention period and expiration date fields are mutually exclusive. When both are specified, retention period is used.
  - The management class field is used to simulate a returned SMS ACS MGMTCLAS and assumes that the SMC SMSDEF MGMTPol(ALL) or (IDAX) policy has been specified. If the SMC finds a matching policy name, then the remaining tape policy lookups are bypassed.
  - If a policy name matching the specified management class name is not found, or if the management class field was not specified, then a series of TAPEREQ lookups is performed using the remaining input criteria.
  - You may ignore the lookup fields that are not important to your lookup. This is determined by looking at what selection criteria you actually use on your TAPEREQ statements. However, it is recommended that you specify all non-mutually exclusive fields.
  - "POL1" control card is required, even if no input fields are coded. Both "POL2" and "POL3" control cards are optional.
  - You can input multiple sets of control cards.
-

## Sample Input

### Example 1

```
POL1 TSTNEWPG STEP1      TESTPGM  MYTAPE1
POL2 S 123456 ABC.QUAL1.QUAL2.TEST
```

Simulate the TAPEREQ lookup that would occur when:

- Specific volume 123456 for DSN ABC.QUAL1.QUAL2.TEST
- Allocated to DD MYTAPE1 for job TSTNEWPG, step STEP1, executing program TESTPGM.

### Example 2

```
POL1 TSTNEWPG STEP1      TESTPGM  MYTAPE1  0099
POL2 N          ABC.QUAL1.QUAL2.TEST
```

Simulate the TAPEREQ lookup that would occur when:

- Scratch volume for DSN ABC.QUAL1.QUAL2.TEST
- Allocated to DD MYTAPE1 with a retention period of 99 days
- For job TSTNEWPG, step STEP1, executing program TESTPGM.

### Example 3

```
POL1 TSTNEWPG STEP1      TESTPGM  MYTAPE1  MCLASS01
POL2 N 123456 ABC.QUAL1.QUAL2.TEST
```

Simulate the TAPEREQ lookup that would occur when:

- Scratch volume for DSN ABC.QUAL1.QUAL2.TEST
- Allocated to DD MYTAPE1
- For job TSTNEWPG, step STEP1, executing program TESTPGM, when the DFSMS ACS routine returns a management class of MCLASS01.

## Sample Output

```

SMCUTRQ 7.1.0                SMC POLICY/TAPEREQ TEST
Time 11:25:49                POLICY/TAPEREQ Lookup Report

SMCU0019 SMC subsystem=SMC0

Card 0001: *OL1|JOBNAME|STEPNAME|PGMNAME|DDNAME|RETP|EXPDT|SMSMGMT
Card 0002: *OL2|T|VOLSER|DSN
Card 0003: POL1 ANYJOB STEP1 TESTPGM DD1
Card 0004: POL2 S 123456 ABC.QUAL1.QUAL2.TEST

TAPEREQ lookup keys:
      JOBname=ANYJOB  STEPname=STEP1  PROGname=TESTPGM  DDname=DD1
      VOLType=S       VOLSer=123456   DSN=ABC.QUAL1.QUAL2.TEST

      Lookup for POLICY          not matched
      Lookup for RECTECH/MEDIA  matched TREQDEF record 5
      Statement: TAPEREQ DSN(ABC.**.TEST) MEDIA(VIRTUAL)
      Lookup for SUBPOOL        not matched
      Lookup for ESOTERIC       not matched
      Lookup for MGMTCLAS       not matched
      Lookup for DEVTPREF       not matched

Card 0005: POL1 ANYJOB ANYSTEP ANYPGM DD1
Card 0006: POL2 S 123456 ABC.D11.XYZ.ABC

TAPEREQ lookup keys:
      JOBname=ANYJOB  STEPname=ANYSTEP  PROGname=ANYPGM  DDname=DD1
      VOLType=S       VOLSer=123456   DSN=ABC.D11.XYZ.ABC

      Lookup for POLICY          not matched
      Lookup for RECTECH/MEDIA  matched TREQDEF record 10
      Statement: TAPEREQ DSN(**.XYZ.***) MEDIA(VIRTUAL)
      Lookup for SUBPOOL        not matched
      Lookup for ESOTERIC       not matched
      Lookup for MGMTCLAS       not matched
      Lookup for DEVTPREF       not matched

Processing complete; RC=0

```

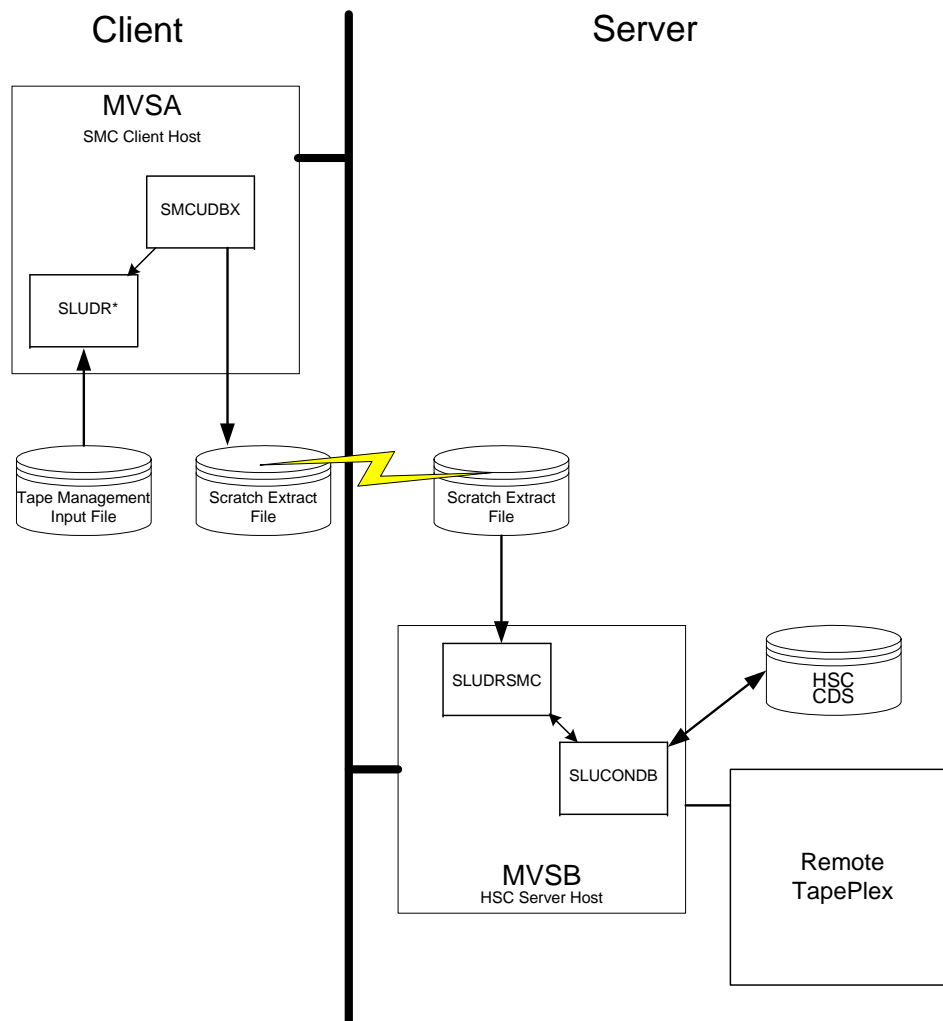
**FIGURE 4-4** SMCUTRQ Utility Sample Output

# Tape Management Extract Utility (SMCUDBX)

The SMCUDBX utility supports scratch synchronization between the SMC client host and the HSC CDS. Using common Tape Management System interface (SLUDR\*) routines with HSC and MVS/CSC, SMC accesses the client tape management system to produce an extract file that can be read as input by the HSC Scratch Conversion Utility (SLUCONDB).

**Note** – See [Appendix C, “Tape Management System Interface \(SLUDR\\*\) Routines”](#) for more information about these routines.

The SMCUDBX process is illustrated in the following figure:



**FIGURE 4-5** Scratch Synchronization Between SMC Client Host and HSC CDS

If the client and server share a tape management system, the HSC utility SLUCONDB may be run directly using the common tape management system data base as input.

If, however, the client host has a tape management system that is not accessible to the HSC host, the SMC utility SMCUDBX can be used to extract scratch volumes from the tape management system using label and date parameters. The SMCUDBX output can then be used as input on the HSC host to the SLUCONDB utility. The SMC process supports timing synchronization by comparing the GMT time of the SMCUDBX run with the last select time of the HSC CDS volume record. If the volume was selected after the SMC scratch run, it is not eligible for scratch by SLUCONDB.

## Running the SMC Scratch Extract Utility

You can run the SMC scratch extract utility regardless of whether the SMC is executing on the host.

SMCUDBX processes the CA-1 Tape Management Catalog (TMC), the CA-DYNAM/TLMS Volume Master File (VMF), the DFSMSrmm report extract file, or the Zara database, and selects the volume serial numbers for processing based on information specified on the PARM parameter of the JCL EXEC statement.

For CA-1, CA-DYNAM/TLMS, and DFSMSrmm, SMCUDBX calls the appropriate Tape Management System interface routine. For Zara, SMCUDBX invokes the SLUDRZAR routine, which in turn invokes an application programming interface (API) to read Zara's database. The data returned from these routines is used to format the SMC scratch extract file. See [Appendix C, "Tape Management System Interface \(SLUDR\\*\) Routines"](#) for more information about these routines.

If your installation uses a different tape management system, you can develop a program modeled on one of the supplied examples SLUDRCA1, SLUDRRMM, SLUDRTL, SLUDRSMC, SLUDRTL, or SLUDRZAR, or you can write your own program to produce an extract file in the following format:

Position	Field	Format
1	Scratch volume	CL6
7	GMT of run	XL8
15	Unused	CL2

The time filed in the SMC scratch extract file is a character representation of the first four bytes of the output of the MVS STCK macro. For example, if the STCK macro produces a result of X'B0912345 6789ABCD', the GMT field of the SMC extract contains the character value C'B0912345'.

SMCUDBX, SLUDRCA1, SLUDRTL, SLUDRRMM, and SLUDRZAR are provided as load modules. You can use the current versions of these load modules with CA-DYNAM/TLMS Release 5.4 and above, CA-1 Release 5.0 and above, DFSMSrmm 1.1, and Zara 1.2. The ELS MACLIB file on the ELS installation tape contains the sample source code.

---

**Note –**

- If there are local modifications to your tape management system, you must reassemble the associated TMS interface routine.
  - If your tape management system is CA-1 Release 4.9 or below, you must modify and reassemble the SLUDRCA1 routine. See [“Using SMCUDBX with CA-1 Release 4.9 or Below” on page 670](#) for information about modifying and reassembling this routine.
  - If your tape management system is CA-DYNAM/TLMS Release 5.3 or below, you must reassemble the SLUDRTL routine. See [“Using SMCUDBX with CA-DYNAM/TLMS Release 5.3 or Below” on page 670](#) for information about reassembling this routine.
  - If your tape management system is Zara, the SMCUDBX utility must be able to access the data set that contains the Zara API module (ZARAAPI1). You can either store this module in the LINKLIST, or include a JOBLIB or STEPLIB DD statement in the SMCUDBX JCL that points to the library containing the module.
  - Any routine that you modify and reassemble must be re-linked as non-reentrant (NORENT parameter) with AMODE=24 and RMODE=24.
- 

## Using SMCUDBX with CA-1 Release 4.9 or Below

To use SMCUDBX with CA-1 Release 4.9 or below, you must modify and reassemble the SLUDRCA1 routine. The CA-1 MACLIB containing the TMRECORD MACRO must be accessible during the assembly.

Perform the following steps for CA-1 Release 4.9:

1. Delete the asterisk in column 1 of the following line:

```
TMRECORD
```

2. Add an asterisk in column 1 of the following line:

```
TMMTMREC
```

3. Reassemble the SLUDRCA1 routine.

## Using SMCUDBX with CA-DYNAM/TLMS Release 5.3 or Below

Perform the following steps to use SMCUDBX with CA-DYNAM/TLMS Release 5.3 or below:

1. Verify that the CA-DYNAM/TLMS Release 5.3 MACLIB containing the VMFBASE MACRO is accessible for the re-assembly of the SLUDRTL routine.
2. Reassemble the SLUDRTL routine; no modifications to the source code are required.

## Syntax

SMCUDBX uses program parameters to determine the Tape Management System interface (SLUDR\*) routine to invoke and method of operation. See [Appendix C, “Tape Management System Interface \(SLUDR\\*\) Routines”](#) for more information about these routines.

You can specify the following values for the PARM parameter on the JCL EXEC statement when running the SMCUDBX utility:

---

**Note** – You must enter parameters in the specified order and include commas for omitted parameters.

---

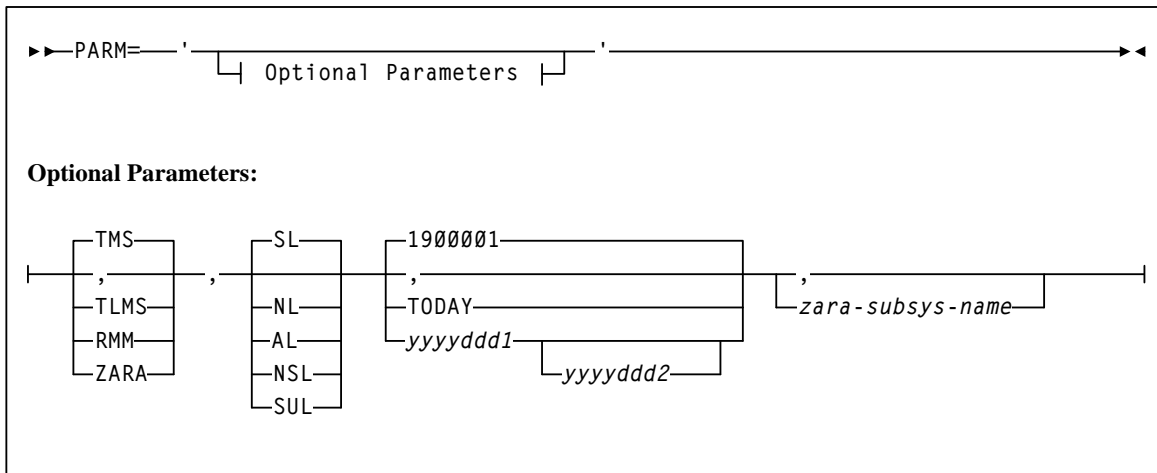


FIGURE 4-6 SMCUDBX PARM parameter syntax

## Parameters

### **PARM=**

specifies the parameters that follow can be accessed by the program indicated in the PGM parameter in the JCL.

### **TMS**

optionally, specifies the CA-1 tape management system (TMS). This is the default.

### **TLMS**

optionally, specifies the TLMS: CA-DYNAM/TLMS tape management system.

### **RMM**

optionally, specifies the DFSMSrmm tape management system.

### **ZARA**

optionally, specifies the ZARA tape management system.

### **SL**

optionally, specifies standard label type for the scratch volume selection. This is the default.

### **NL**

optionally, specifies nonlabeled type for the scratch volume selection.

### **AL**

optionally, specifies ANSI label type for the scratch volume selection.

### **NSL**

optionally, specifies nonstandard label type for the scratch volume selection.

### **SUL**

optionally, specifies standard user label type for the scratch volume selection.

### **1900001**

optionally, specifies January 1, 1900 as the date. This is the default.

### **TODAY**

optionally, indicates the current system date.

#### ***yyyyddd1***

optionally, the "from" date. The "to" date defaults to the current system date. All specified dates are in Julian notation.

#### ***yyyyddd1-yyyyddd2***

optionally, the date range in which the volumes became scratch. Neither of these dates can be greater than the current system date.

### ***zara-subsys-name***

Specifies the subsystem name for the Zara tape management system, where *zara-subsys-name* is the four-character name. The default subsystem name is ZARA.



## JCL Requirements

The following definitions apply to the SMCUDBX JCL:

### DBTMS

Input to the Scratch Extract utility in the form of the CA-1 TMS, the CA-DYNAM/TLMS VMS, or DFSMSrmm report extract file. This DD statement is not required for Zara.

### STDOUT

Output messages from the Scratch Extraction utility. This DD statement is required.

### DBEXTFIL

Output file from the Scratch Extract Utility. If a DCB LRECL is specified, it must specify a 16-byte value.

If Zara is the tape management system, the Zara API module must either reside in the MVS LINKLIST, or you must include one of the following JCL statements to access the module.

```
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR, DSN=your.zaraapi1.library
           DD DISP=SHR, DSN=your.tmsextract.library
```

```
//JOBLIB DD DISP=SHR, DSN=your.zaraapi1.library
```

The following figure shows sample JCL used to invoke the Scratch Extraction utility to process the CA-DYNAM/TLMS VMF for all tapes scratched in 2003.

```
//yourstd JOB card
//STEP0 EXEC PGM=SMCUDBX,PARM='TLMS,,2003001-2003365'
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.sea.linklib
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.SLUDRxxx.linklib
//DBTMS DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.tlms.database
//DBEXTFIL DD DISP=(NEW,KEEP),DSN=scratch.extract.file,
//          SPACE=(TRK,(5,1)),UNIT=SYSDA
//STDOUT DD SYSOUT=*
/*
```

**FIGURE 4-7** Sample JCL for Scratch Extraction Utility

## Output Description

SMCUDBX output includes the following:

- Messages associated with error conditions resulting from an unsuccessful attempt to execute scratch extraction processing
- Messages indicating errors or actions occurring during processing
- Output data set containing Scratch Update utility control statements

The following figure shows sample output from the SMCUDBX utility.

SMCUDBX 7.1.0	SMC TMS DB SCRATCH EXTRACT	Page 0001
TIME 15:26:41		Date 2008-08-14
Total records extracted for scratch volumes = 977		

**FIGURE 4-8** Scratch Extraction Utility Sample Output Messages

---

# SMC UUI Simulation Utility (SMCUSIM)

The SMCUSIM utility is used to issue SMC UUI commands, including the SMC SIMulate command, in a test environment. Changes to SMC command settings, tape policies, and allocation user exits can be tested before they are put into production without affecting existing SMC clients and HSC servers.

SMCUSIM code executes similarly to the SMC subsystem, with the following exceptions:

- It does not initialize the MVS SSI allocation interfaces.
- It does not set up any command or message handling intercepts.
- It does not utilize any CSA storage for processing.

The SMCUSIM utility runs as a batch program, and can execute on the same host as the existing SMC subsystem without interfering with SMC client operations. SMCUSIM processing occurs in two phases.

## Phase 1 Processing

In this phase, the utility operates similarly to the SMC subsystem startup routine. SMC modules are loaded and the SMCPARMS and SMCCMDS data sets are read.

Similarly to SMC subsystem startup, the SMCPARMS and SMCCMDS data sets are optional. However, as SMCUSIM does not include the SMC subsystem command intercept, you must specify any commands required to set up your test environment during this phase.

---

### Note –

- Follow the guidelines in [“Specifying SMC Commands in the SMCCMDS or SMCPARMS Data Sets” on page 54](#) for commands to include in the SMCPARMS and SMCCMDS data sets.
  - See [Chapter 2, “SMC Commands and Control Statements”](#) for more information about each individual command.
- 

The SMCUSIM utility processes TAPEPLEX and SERVER commands as if it were an active SMC subsystem, and TCP/IP services may be required. Therefore, the security administration considerations for communication described in the publication *Configuring and Managing SMC* do apply.

The following SMC commands are disabled by the SMCUSIM because they may interfere with the actual SMC subsystem or HSC server:

- CMDDef
- HTTP
- LOG
- Route

These commands can be included in the SMCPARMS or SMCCMDS data sets, but are ignored by the utility.

## Phase 2 Processing

In this phase, the utility reads and processes the UUI data set similarly to the SMCUUI utility, except that only SMC commands are permitted. These commands are targeted to the SMCUSIM simulated environment, and have no effect on the actual SMC subsystem.

You can include SMC SIMulate commands, or any other SMC command in the UUI data set to test how a job with the specified parameters would be processed using the SMCPARMS and SMCCMDS data sets configured in phase 1. HSC UUI commands are not valid, and are flagged in error. Several types of output can be received, including:

- **Plain text output**

This type of output is written to TEXTOUT, and corresponds to the normal output produced by the SMC command.

- **Structured XML**

This type of output is written to XMLOUT. Structured XML is a well formed XML data stream with XML header tags and XML data tag elements, and XML data element content. Only specific SMC commands produced structured XML. Refer to the *ELS Programming Reference* for a complete list of SMC XML tag names and types.

- **Comma Separated Values (CSV)**

This type of output is written to CSVOUT. An input template of XML data tag names is used to define the format of the CSVOUT corresponding to a particular request. The output data for each request is a CSV header line that contains a comma-separated list of the XML data tags requested, followed by CSV detail lines. Each CSV detail line contains one comma-separated entry for each requested XML data tag. This type of output is readily adaptable as input into spreadsheets or customized report writers. Refer to the *ELS Programming Reference* for more information about the format for specifying CSV.

The type of output received is controlled by the data set definition statements (DD) defined in the JCL to execute the SMCUSIM utility.

## Sample JCL

The following JCL sample executes the SMCUSIM utility:

```
//yourstd JOB card
//STEP EXEC PGM=SMCUSIM, PARM='pgmparms'
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.sea.linklib
//          DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.sea.exitlib
//*****
/* The following data sets are input to phase 1 and are optional
//*****
//SMCPARMS DD DISP=SHR,DSN=parmlib_name(parm_member_name)
//SMCCMDS DD DISP=SHR,DSN=cmdlib_name(cmd_member_name)
//*****
/* The following data set is required
//*****
//STDOUT DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.stdout.dataset
//*****
/* The following data set is input to phase 2 and is required
//*****
//UUIIN DD *
CSV and UUI commands
//*****
/* At least 1 of the following data sets must be specified
//*****
//CSVOUT DD DSN=yourcsv.output.dataset,DISP=SHR
//XMLOUT DD DSN=yourxml.output.dataset,DISP=SHR
//TEXTOUT DD DSN=yourtext.output.dataset,DISP=SHR
```

**FIGURE 4-9** JCL to Execute the SMCUSIM Utility

## Parameters

The following SMCUSIM utility parameters may be specified for *pgmparms* in the sample JCL:

### XMLCASE

Specifies the case of the XML and CSV output.

**M**

Mixed (default)

**U**

Uppercase

### XMLDate(format)

Specifies the format of date fields in XML and CSV output. Valid date formats include the following:

- YYYYMONDD (default format)
- YYYY-MM-DD
- YYYY-MON-DD
- HEXSTCK (hex character STCK format)

**NOHDR**

optionally, specifies that STDOUT and TEXTOUT report headings and pagination carriage control are not produced.

---

**Note** – NOHDR and LINECNT are mutually exclusive.

---

**LINECNT**

optionally, specifies STDOUT and TEXTOUT report pagination line count setting.

---

**Note** – LINECNT and NOHDR are mutually exclusive.

---

*nn*

the number of lines per page. Valid values are 10-99.

---

**Note** – Settings for STDOUT report headings and pagination can only be specified in the EXEC statement program parameters. Settings for TEXTOUT report headings, while initially specified by the EXEC statement program parameters, can later be modified by specifying TEXTOUT UUI control statements in the UUIIN command stream.

---

For example:

In the following figure, the EXEC statement program PARM='LINECNT(55)' sets the report pagination to 55 lines per page for both STDOUT and TEXTOUT output.

However, the UUI command TEXTOUT NOHDR in the UUIIN command stream alters the TEXTOUT report parameters to disable report headers and pagination.

```
//yourstd JOB card
//STEP EXEC PGM=SMCUSIM,PARM='LINECNT(55)'
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.sea.linklib
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.sea.exitlib
//SMCPARMS DD DISP=SHR,DSN=parmlib_name(parm_member_name)
//SMCCMDS DD DISP=SHR,DSN=cmdlib_name(cmd_member_name)
//STDOUT DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.stdout.dataset
//UUIIN DD *
    TEXTOUT NOHDR
    UUI commands
//CSVOUT DD DSN=yourcsv.output.dataset,DISP=SHR
//XMLOUT DD DSN=yourxml.output.dataset,DISP=SHR
//TEXTOUT DD DSN=yourtext.output.dataset,DISP=SHR
```

**MAXRC**

specifies whether SMCUSIM initialization is to be terminated when the specified command return code is exceeded. If MAXRC is not specified, then the SMCUSIM always attempts to complete its initialization regardless of any SMCPARMS or SMCCMDS command failure(s). This is the default behavior.

*nn*

specifies the highest allowed return code. If an SMC command executed from the SMCPARMS or SMCCMDS data set exceeds this value, then SMC0236 and SMC0237 messages are produced, and the SMCUSIM utility terminates before any commands are read from the UIIN DD. Allowable values are 0, 4, 8, and 12.

**Note –**

- Certain SMC commands, such as CMDDef, HTTP, LOG, and Route, that are allowed in the SMC subsystem environment, but are not allowed in the SMCUSIM environment are merely ignored under SMCUSIM and do not affect MAXRC processing, if specified.
- Only commands executed as part of the simulated SMC subsystem startup (i.e. those read from the SMCPARMS and SMCCMDS data sets) are evaluated as part of MAXRC processing. Commands read from the UIIN DD which result in a return code greater than the specified MAXRC value do not automatically terminate the SMCUSIM utility.

**PLEXRC**

specifies whether SMC subsystem initialization is to be terminated based on the status of TapePlexes returned from the automatically issued RESYNC command.

If PLEXRC is not specified, then the SMC subsystem will complete its initialization regardless of the outcome of the RESYNC command. This is the default behavior.

*n*

specifies the highest allowed return code from the RESYNC command. Valid values are 0 and 4.

The SMC RESYNC command sets a return code of 8 if SMC is unable to communicate with any defined TapePlex, and a return code of 4 if SMC is able to communicate with one or more, but not all, defined TapePlexes.

## Required Data Set Definition (DD) Statements

You **must** specify the UUIIN and STDOUT data set definitions.

### UUIIN Data Set

The UUIIN data set can include:

- SMC UUI commands
- HSC UUI commands
- VTCS PGMI requests

Native SMC UUI commands include:

- Display Drive
- Display Volume
- POLicy
- SIMulate

Refer to the *ELS Programming Reference* for a list of supported HSC UUI commands and VTCS PGMI requests.

### *Syntax Rules*

- Input must be 80 byte card images.
- Only columns 1-72 of the 80 byte card image may contain actual command input. Columns 73-80 may be used for sequence numbers if desired.
- If the last non-blank character in columns 1-72 is a "+", the logical command is continued on the next physical card.
- Comments begin with "/"\* (in column 2 and beyond) and end with "\*/".
- The maximum logical command length is 32000 bytes.

### *Control Statements*

Utility control statements allow the report pagination for TEXTOUT output and the target TapePlex to be altered for subsequent SMC, HSC, and VTCS UUI and PGMI commands.

#### **TEXTOUT**

optionally, sets the report pagination parameters for TEXTOUT output. If any errors are encountered on the TEXTOUT command, all subsequent UUI commands are bypassed until a correct TEXTOUT command is encountered.

#### **NOHDR**

optionally, specifies that TEXTOUT report headings and pagination carriage control are not produced.

---

**Note** – NOHDR and LINECNT are mutually exclusive.

---



**LINECNT(*nn*)**

optionally, specifies TEXTOUT report pagination line count setting.  
*nn* is the number of lines per page. Valid values are 10-99.

---

**Note** – LINECNT and NOHDR are mutually exclusive.

---

**Note –**

- Settings for STDOUT report headings and pagination can only be specified in the EXEC statement program parameters. Settings for TEXTOUT report headings, while initially specified by the EXEC statement program parameters, can later be modified by specifying TEXTOUT UI control statements in the UIIN command stream.
  - If multiple TEXTOUT statements are input before a single UI command, the last TEXTOUT statement controls the TEXTOUT report pagination.
  - PLEXDext and TEXTOUT commands can be specified along with CSV commands to alter the destination TapePlex, and the CSV and TEXTOUT output characteristics of subsequent UI commands.
- 

**STDOUT Data Set**

The STDOUT data set is where the SMCUSIM utility reports the input and final completion code for each UIIN request.

**SMCUSIM Utility Sample CSV**

The following CSV sample displays Y/N values for major sources of tape policy for the specified simulated job step. Refer to the *ELS Programming Reference* for a complete list of XML tags and their structure.

```
csv field=(jobname,dsname,ifax_matched_policy_flag,      +
ifax_matched_tapereq_flag,ifax_policy_esoteric_flag,    +
ifax_storggrp_esoteric_flag,sms_info_flag,               +
policy_info_flag,tapereq_info_flag,                      +
userexit_info_flag,owning_tapeplex),                     +
break(simulate_request) notitle fixed
```

---

## Trace Format Utility (SMCUGTF)

The SMCUGTF utility converts SMC GTF output created with the "compact" format (the default format) into the original SMC trace format.

### Sample JCL

The following JCL sample executes the SMCUGTF utility.

```
// yourstd jobcard
//STEP      EXEC  PGM=SMCUGTF
//STEPLIB   DD   DSN=your.sea.linklib,DISP=SHR
//GTFIN     DD   DSN=your.compact.gtftrace.dsn,DISP=SHR
//GTFOUT    DD   DSN=your.formatted.gtftrace.dsn,
//          DISP=(NEW,CATLG,DELETE),UNIT=SYSDA,
//          SPACE=(space parameters)
```

**FIGURE 4-10** JCL to Execute the SMCUGTF Utility

---

**Note** – Space required for the output GTF trace is approximately 6 times the size of the COMPACT input file.

---

## HSC Stand-Alone Utilities

---

This chapter describes HSC stand-alone utilities. These utilities run as independent programs.

The following utilities are included:

- Utility Administrator (SLUADMIN)
- SLICREAT
- Scratch Conversion Utility (SLUCONDB)

---

## Utility Administrator (SLUADMIN)

The SLUADMIN program operates as a batch job and controls initialization processing for most utility functions. The utility administrator (SLUADMIN) can accept multiple commands which are handled as serial requests for multiple utilities. If all requirements needed to execute the utility function are met, control is passed to the appropriate program which handles the actual processing.

Utility functions represented by additional control statements are not started until the prior utility function stops and control is returned to the SLUADMIN program.

---

**Caution** – The maximum length of a control statement is 32,767 characters. Exceeding this limit causes message SLS0241I to be displayed, which indicates an invalid utility control statement.

---

## Invoking SLUADMIN

For convenience, most utility programs are packaged to appear as a single, user-invoked program. An exception is Scratch Conversion.

All other utility functions are invoked as a normal batch job using the SLUADMIN program and user-specified commands needed to invoke the required utility function.

Utility functions represented by additional commands are not started until the prior utility function stops and control is returned to the SLUADMIN program.

The following is a generic example of JCL that can be modified to execute SLUADMIN.

Where “utility and CSV commands” appears in this sample JCL, enter the utility or CSV commands you wish to execute.

For example:

```
SET HOSTID(HSC2) FORHOST(HSCB)
OFFLoad LOGF
SCREdist ACS(01)
```

Use the following JCL to invoke SLUADMIN:

```
//jobname      job (account),programmer,REGION=0M
//S1 EXEC      PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM=MIXED
//STEPLIB      DD DSN=your.sea.linklib,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT      DD SYSOUT=A
//SLSIN DD      *
               utility and CSV commands
               .
               .
               .
//*****
/* Optional UI Output Definition Statements *
//*****
//SLSCSV DD DSN=yourcsv.output.dataset,DISP=SHR
//SLSCSVX DD SYSOUT=*
//SLXML DD DSN=yourxml.output.dataset,DISP=SHR
/*
//
```

---

**Note** – Specify a region size of 0M on the JOB statement for all utility functions.

---

## SLUADMIN Execution Parameters

The following optional parameters may be specified for PARM= on the SLUADMIN EXEC statement:

### NOHDR

Suppresses printing of report headings (error messages still can be written to the report file). This parameter is useful when you issue the VOLRpt command with the VOLDATA parameter to create a raw volume (flat) data file.

This parameter can be used only with the ACTivities, MOVE, and VOLRpt utility commands.

---

**Note** – NOHDR and LINECNT are mutually exclusive.

---

If NOHDR is not specified, the default is to print headings that include the following information:

- date/time of the report
- page number(s)
- host software version number
- name of the utility function executed

**NOPHDR**

Suppresses printing of page headings, but produces control headers in the output, such as:

SLS0030I Message ID NNNN Help Info:

or:

SLS0041I Command CCCCCCCC Help Info:

---

**Note** – NOPHDR is mutually exclusive with LINECNT and NOHDR.

---

This parameter is useful when you issue the Display CMd or Display Message command to create a file that includes help text for commands or messages.

**MIXED**

Prints all report headings and messages in mixed case. The default is uppercase.

**LINECNT=*nn***

Specifies the number of lines per page for the SLUADMIN report. Allowable values are 10 through 99; the default is 60 lines per page.

---

**Note** – LINECNT and NOHDR are mutually exclusive.

---

**SSYS(*ssss*)**

Optionally, specifies the name of the HSC subsystem for which the SLUADMIN utility is being run. This parameter is required when the HSC subsystem(s) running on the LPAR have specified the MULT parameter.

**XMLDate(*date*)**

Defines the format of date fields in XML and CSV output. Valid date formats include the following:

- *yyyymondd*
- *yyyy-mm-dd*
- *yyyy-mon-dd*
- HEXSTCK (hex character STCK format)

The default format is *yyyymondd*. For example, 2005Oct14.

**XMLCase(*case*)**

Defines the case of alphabetic data fields in XML and CSV output. Valid case formats include the following:

- M (mixed uppercase and lowercase)
- U (all uppercase)

The default is M.

## SLUADMIN Definition Statements

---

**Note** – Additional statements may be required for certain HSC and VTCS commands. In this publication, these statements are described with the applicable command.

---

### *General Definition Statements*

The following definition statements are **always** required:

**STEPLIB**

specifies the link library that contains the ELS modules.

**SLSPRINT**

specifies the destination for the utility output (plain text).

**SLSIN**

specifies the input to the SLUADMIN (utility command names and parameters).

**SLSOUT**

specifies the destination for SLUADMIN processing messages.

### *CDS Definition Statements*

One or more of the following CDS definition statements are **required** for utility commands executed on a host where the HSC is inactive. These statements specify a primary CDS, and optionally, a secondary and standby CDS.

---

**Note** – These statements can be omitted for commands that execute on a host with **HSC active**. If these statements are omitted, the data sets used by the active HSC on the host are accessed.

---

**SLSCNTL**

specifies the primary CDS. This statement is **required** for utility commands executed on a host where the HSC is inactive.

**SLSCNTL2**

optionally, specifies the secondary CDS.

If a secondary CDS exists, include this statement so that if a switch occurs and the secondary CDS becomes active, the CDSs can be reordered to maintain database integrity.

**SLSSTBY**

optionally, specifies the standby CDS.

If a standby CDS exists, include this statement so that if a switch occurs and the standby CDS becomes active, the CDSs can be reordered to maintain database integrity.

When you specify CDS definition statements, the following conditions apply:

- The number of DD statements specified must equal the number defined by the SET TCHNIQE command. When you run the SET TCHNIQE command, the number of DD statements defined must equal the number implied by the new technique.
- Rules for selecting primary, secondary, and standby CDS versions are the same as those used by the HSC subsystem. Refer to the publication *Managing HSC and VTCS* for more information about CDS configuration.
- For utilities that are "read only" (e.g. VOLRpt), you can specify a single DD (SLSCNTL) and no internal or external name validation is performed.

### *UUI Output Definition Statements*

One or more of the following definition statements are required when you wish to generate output types added through Unified User Interface (UUI) requests. See ["Requesting SLUADMIN Output" on page 689](#) for more information about requesting these output types.

#### **SLSCSV**

specifies the destination for the utility output in Comma Separated Value (CSV) format.

#### **SLSCSVX**

specifies the destination for CSV exceptions.

#### **SLSXML**

specifies the destination for the utility output in structured XML format.



## Requesting SLUADMIN Output

In addition to plain text, SLUADMIN supports output types added through Unified User Interface (UII) requests. Refer to the *ELS Programming Reference* for a list of commands and utilities supported by the UII.

The output type is controlled by DD statements defined in the SLUADMIN JCL. Output types include the following:

- **Plain text**

Plain text output is always produced and is unchanged from previous releases. Output is written to the data set specified by the SLSPRINT definition statement.

- **Structured XML**

This output type is optional and is generated only if the SLSXML definition statement is specified. Output is written to the data set specified by this statement.

Structured XML is a well-formed XML data stream containing XML header tags, data tags, and data element content. Refer to the *ELS Programming Reference* for XML tag names and structure for all UII requests.

- **Comma Separated Values (CSV)**

This output type is optional and is generated only if the CSV command and SLSCSV definition statement are specified.

CSV output can be customized. A template of XML data tag names can be input by the user to specify which data values will be output. The output data is a single CSV header line followed by CSV detail lines.

A CSV header line is a list of the XML data tag names requested; each name is separated by a comma. Each CSV detail line is a specified fixed number of data values, separated by a comma. This kind of output is readily adaptable as input into spreadsheets or customizable report writers.

---

**Note** – The VOLRpt VOLDATA parameter produces a volume flat file. This option is still supported, but may be discontinued in future releases. Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for more information.

---

## Requesting XML Output

If the SLSXML DD statement is present, it indicates that structured XML output should be provided for all SLUADMIN commands that support the UII interface.

When XML is generated, exceptions are generated under their own header tag, <exceptions>, at the end of each request. Each exception is reported using the <reason> tag. Refer to the *ELS Programming Reference* for more information.

## Requesting CSV Output

If the SLSCSV DD statement is present, comma separated value (CSV) output is provided for all SLUADMIN commands that support the UUI interface.

If the SLSCSVX DD statement is present, CSV exceptions are reported. The SLSCSVX DD statement is valid only if the SLSCSV DD statement is provided. CSV exceptions are generated only if the CSV command is in effect for a request.

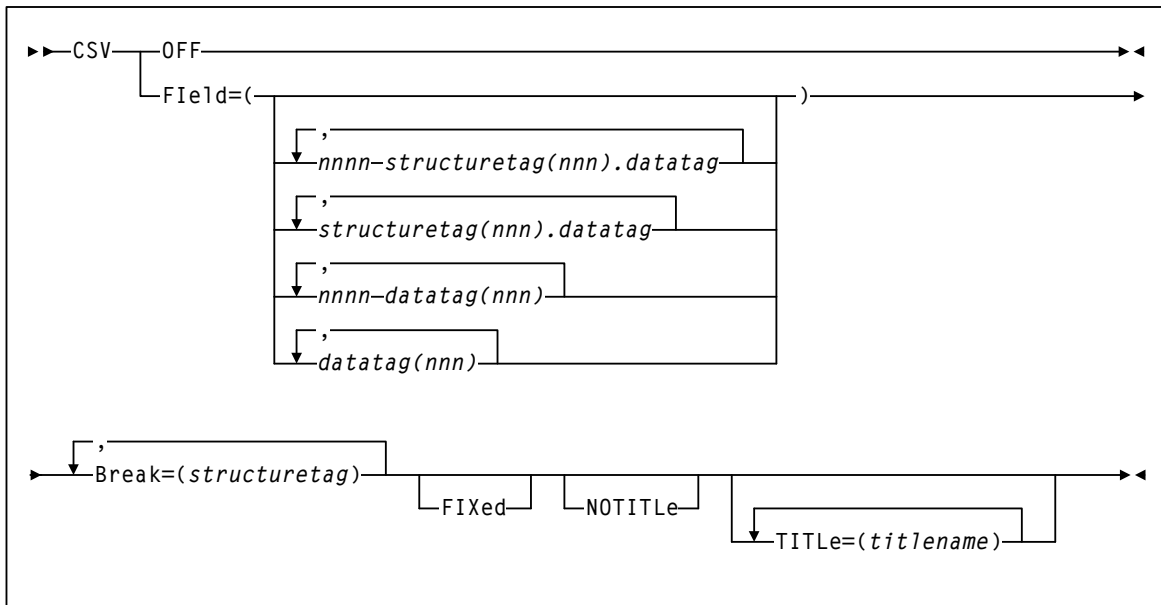
The default DCB information for this DD is the same as SLSPRINT, LRECL=121, RECFM=FB).

## CSV Command

The CSV command controls CSV output processing.

Each CSV command contains a list of CSV element definitions separated by commas. Each CSV element definition specifies an XML data tag name with optional XML structure tag and subscript values. Refer to the *ELS Programming Reference* for more information about ELS XML tags.

## Syntax



**FIGURE 5-1** CSV Command

## Parameters

### OFF

Disables CSV processing for subsequent requests.

---

**Note** – OFF is mutually exclusive with all other CSV parameters.

---

### Field

Required if OFF is not specified.

#### *nnnn-*

an optional field name prefix containing 1 to 4 numeric characters followed by a dash. When a field name is prefixed by "*n(nnn)-*", the CSV output for the field always contains exactly the number of characters specified. Numeric fields are right-justified with the most left-most digits truncated; other fields are left-justified with the right-most characters truncated. If the value specified is longer than the actual value, it is padded with blanks on the left for numeric fields and blanks on the right for other fields.

For example:

- 8-acs\_status truncates the acs\_status value to 8 characters.
- 12-acs\_status blank-pads the acs\_status value to 12 characters.

The maximum value of *nnnn* is 1024. The specification of "*nnnn-*" is valid only when the parameter **FIXed** is also specified.

#### *structuretag(nnn).datatag*

an optional XML structure tag and data tag pair. An XML structure tag is an element that contains other elements but does not have content value. Refer to the *ELS Programming Reference* for more information about ELS XML tags.

Specify an XML structure tag/data tag pair only when the data tag occurs within multiple structure tags. For example, the **DISPLAY LSM** request data tag **free\_cell\_count** is used under the structure **lsm\_data** to contain the total LSM free cell count and under the structure **panel\_data** to contain the panel free cell count. Specifying **lsm\_data.free\_cell\_count** requests the free cell count from the **lsm\_data** structure; specifying **panel\_data.free\_cell\_count** requests the free cell count from the **panel\_data** structure. If no structure tag is coded for a data tag that occurs under multiple structure tags, the first occurrence of the data tag in the generated XML is used.

#### *nnn*

an optional subscript that determines how many of the multiple XML data values are included in the CSV output.

Specify a subscript only when the structured XML data for a single request contains multiple XML structure elements with the same name. This is indicated in the requestXML description whenever the column labelled "Maximum Occurrences" is greater than 1. A subscript value can be specified in **BOTH** the structure tag name **AND** the data tag name, for example:

```
CSV FIELD=(mvc_instance(4).volser,+
mvc_instance(4).partition_id(2))
```

creates CSV output with 12 fields, four mvc\_instance volser occurrences, followed by two fields representing the partition\_id values associated with the first MVC volser, then two fields representing the partition\_id values associated with the second MVC, etc.

***datatag(nnn)***

an optional XML data tag.

If a data tag does not under more than one structure tag in a request, it is not necessary to specify a structure tag qualifier.

***nnn***

an optional subscript that determines how many of the multiple XML data values are included in the CSV output.

Specify a subscript only when the structured XML data for a single request contains multiple XML structure elements with the same name. This is indicated in the requestXML description whenever the column labelled "Maximum Occurrences" is greater than 1.

---

**Note** – The XML tag names are NOT case-sensitive and can be specified in any combination of upper and lower case characters.

---

**BReak**

Required if OFF is not specified. The break tag must be a valid structure tag defined for the input request. Whenever a trailer tag matching the break tag is found in the output process, a new CSV record is created. Examples of valid break tags are:

- For DISPLAY CDS, cds\_data or host\_data
- For VOLRPT or Display Volume, volume\_data

**FIXed**

Generates fixed format CSV output. Each field in the CSV output is blank-padded so that it occupies a fixed number of characters. This option can be used to create a customer-specified format flat file for reporting.

**NOTITLe**

Specifies that no CSV title line is produced. If this keyword is omitted, the first line of each CSV request is a title line containing comma separated tag names.

**TITLe**

If TITLe is specified, the title names specified are used in the title output line in place of the XML tag names. For any omitted title name, the specified XML tag name from the FIELD parameter is used in the title.

### JCL Example: CSV Output

The following SLUADMIN JCL executes the MVCRRPT command to produce a report of the percentage of space available for all MVCs in CSV format. After the job executes, you can FTP the CSV output file to your spreadsheet application.

Refer to the *ELS Programming Reference* for information about the structure and data tags used in this example.

```
//MVCRRPT JOB x,CHRIS,CLASS=A,MSGCLASS=E
//*
//*
//*
//MVCRRPT EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,
// PARM='MIXED,XMLDATE=YYYY-MM-DD'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=your.sea.LINKLIB,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL DD DSN=your.sea.CLUSTER.CDS,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSOUT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSCSV DD DISP=(,CATLG),DSN=hlq.MVCRRPT.CSV,
// DCB=(RECFM=VB,LRECL=4096,BLKSIZE=32000),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(x,y))
//SLSIN DD *
CSV FIELD=(mvc_data.volser,mvc_data.percent_available)+
BREAK=(mvc_data)+
NOTITLE
MVCRRPT
/* */
//
```

**FIGURE 5-2** JCL Example: CSV Output for the MVCRRPT command.

## SLUADMIN Program Return Codes

The SLUADMIN program sets a return code for the execution of the job step as defined in [TABLE 5-1](#).

The return code for each utility function is listed in a message. For return codes other than 0, additional messages are listed providing more information and description of the error condition. Refer to the publication *ELS Messages and Codes* for any messages encountered.

**TABLE 5-1** SLUADMIN Return Codes

Return Code	Description
0	All utility functions requested via control statements completed normally.
4	At least one utility function encountered an abnormal situation, but it did not cause termination of that utility function or any subsequent utility functions.
8	At least one utility function encountered an error condition that prevented continuation of that utility function, but any subsequent utility functions represented by control statements were attempted.
12	An error condition was detected that either prevented the start of any utility functions, or terminated the active utility function and prevented processing of subsequent utility functions.

---

**Note** – If the return code occurred because of a problem with the HSC CDS or journal files, the problem must be resolved before the HSC can be initialized safely.

---

## Reports Created By Utility Commands

Several utility commands produce reports when executed. These reports are in addition to the utility function. The following utility commands produce reports:

- LIBGen
- ACTivities
- AUDit
- BACKup
- MOVE
- VOLRpt

### Report Headings

Report headings include the following information:

- date/time of the report
- page number(s)
- host software version number
- name of the utility function executed

---

# SLICREAT

The SLICREAT program creates library control data sets and displays library volume capacity in a confirmation message.

These library control data sets are created based on the data set definitions you specify in the SLICREAT data set initialization JCL.

Using SLICREAT involves the following steps:

1. Create data set definitions in the data set initialization JCL using the SLICREAT program.
2. Execute the SLICREAT program to create the library control data sets.
3. Verify successful completion of the SLICREAT program and note the library volume capacity displayed in the confirming message.

These steps are described in the following sections. They must be performed before the library is operational.

---

**Note –**

- Before using SLICREAT, you must first create, assemble and link the LIBGen macros. Refer to the publication *Configuring HSC and VTCS* for more information.
  - You can use SLICREAT to reformat your HSC SLSJRNN journal file(s). Refer to the *ELS Legacy Interfaces Reference* for more information.
-

## Creating Control Data Set Initialization JCL

Creating the definitions for the library control data set is done by coding JCL in a job file named SLICREAT.

The following is an example of JCL for the SLICREAT program. This sample is also included in the HSC SAMPLIB as member JCLCRT.

```
//SLICREAT JOB (account),'programmer',CLASS=A
//CREATE EXEC PGM=SLICREAT, CDS CREATE MODULE
// PARM='libgen-load-module-name',
// REGION=0M
//*
//STEPLIB DD DSN=your.sea.linklib,DISP=SHR
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=* MESSAGES
//*
/*****
/* LIBRARY PRIMARY CONTROL DATASET (CDS)
/*****
//SLSCNTL DD DSN=SLS.SLSCNTL, PRIMARY CDS
// SPACE=(4096,s,,CONTIG,ROUND), REPLACE 's' WITH YOUR
// DISP=(NEW,CATLG,DELETE), SPACE CALCULATIONS
// UNIT=SYSDA
/*****
/* LIBRARY SECONDARY CONTROL DATASET (CDS)
/*****
//SLSCNTL2 DD DSN=SLS.SLSCNTL2, SECONDARY CDS
// SPACE=(4096,s,,CONTIG,ROUND), REPLACE 's' WITH YOUR
// DISP=(NEW,CATLG,DELETE), SPACE CALCULATIONS
// UNIT=SYSDA
/*****
/* LIBRARY STANDBY CONTROL DATASET (CDS)
/*****
//SLSSTBY DD DSN=SLS.SLSCNTL3, STANDBY CDS
// SPACE=(4096,s,,CONTIG,ROUND), REPLACE 's' WITH YOUR
// DISP=(NEW,CATLG,DELETE), SPACE CALCULATIONS
// UNIT=SYSDA
/*****
/* LIBRARY JOURNAL DATASET (INITIAL)
/*****
//SLSJRN01 DD DSN=SLS.SLSJRN01, INITIAL JOURNAL
// SPACE=(4096,u,,CONTIG,ROUND), REPLACE 'u' WITH YOUR
// DISP=(NEW,CATLG,DELETE), SPACE CALCULATIONS
// UNIT=SYSDA
/*****
/* LIBRARY JOURNAL DATASET (ALTERNATE)
/*****
//SLSJRN02 DD DSN=SLS.SLSJRN02, ALTERNATE JOURNAL
// SPACE=(4096,u,,CONTIG,ROUND), REPLACE 'u' WITH YOUR
// DISP=(NEW,CATLG,DELETE), SPACE CALCULATIONS
// UNIT=SYSDA
/*****
/* ONE PAIR OF JOURNALS ARE REQUIRED FOR EACH GENED HOST
/*****
/*
```

**FIGURE 5-3** SLICREAT JCL Example



## DD Statements

The following JCL DD statements must be used to define the library control data sets:

### SYSPRINT

output messages.

Refer to the following criteria when allocating the control and journal data sets:

- Do not specify the DCB statement. The HSC defines the required blocksize (4K).
- The data set(s) must be allocated in a single contiguous extent.
- The CDS(s) must not include existing data sets containing records prior to running the SLICREAT process.
- Oracle StorageTek recommends that the CDSs do not reside on the same volume(s) as other CDSs or other data sets that generate high I/O activity.

### SLSCNTL

primary library control data set.

This is the initial data set that is used to control and synchronize all activities within the HSC. It is used by the HSC until the controlling data set is switched to the secondary, either automatically or manually.

SLSCNTL also controls the SLICREAT process. If you do not include an SLSCNTL DD statement when you run SLICREAT,

- the CDSs will not be formatted, and
- the size requirement (in blocks) of the LIBGEN load module included in the PARM statement will be calculated and reported and journal formatting will be attempted.

### SLSCNTL2

secondary copy of the primary control data set.

This is required only if the SLIRCVRY macro TECHNIQUE parameter is SHADOW, STANDBY, BOTH, or ALL.

### SLSSTBY

standby control data set.

This data set is required only if the SLIRCVRY macro TECHNIQUE parameter is STANDBY or ALL. A secondary data set is required if a standby control data set is specified. This data set is also required for STBYONLY processing (see [“Using SLICREAT to Create Only the Standby CDS” on page 699](#)).

## Executing the SLICREAT Program

Execute the SLICREAT program to create the library control data sets.

### SLICREAT EXEC Statement

Use the following EXEC statement to execute the SLICREAT program:

```
EXEC PGM=SLICREAT, PARM=' libgen-load-module-name '
```

The PARM= value indicates the LIBGEN load module name. The steplib statement must point to the appropriate library in which the LIBGEN load module currently resides.

---

#### Note –

- SLICREAT requires a LIBGEN load module assembled with the same level macros as the release LINKLIB. A LIBGEN load module created with earlier HSC releases cannot be used as input to a later release of SLICREAT.
  - The CDS files that are created by SLICREAT (SLSCNTL, SLSCNTL2, and SLSSTBY) are verified to be empty data sets prior to being formatted. If SLICREAT identifies any of these files as containing records, an error message is displayed and the creation process terminates. If this occurs, specify a different data set(s) or delete and redefine the data set(s) and re-execute SLICREAT.
- 

## Verifying Successful Completion of the SLICREAT Program

After the SLICREAT program is successfully processed, a message is generated indicating the status and the capacity of the library. An example is:

```
SLS0557I DATABASE SUCCESSFULLY INITIALIZED; TOTAL CARTRIDGE  
CAPACITY: DDDDDDDDDDD VOLUMES
```

### Calculating Cartridge Capacity - SL8500 and SL3000

Message SLS0557I displays the total cartridge capacity for the library. **For the SL8500 and SL3000 libraries**, you must first vary the library online (Vary ACS command) to see the actual capacity of the library rather than the maximum capacity of the library. Before you vary the library, the maximum capacity is based on the highest possible number of panels that the HSC allows to be defined, not the number you defined in LIBGEN.

After you vary the library online, issue the Display Acs or Display Lsm command to show the actual library capacity.

## Other Uses for SLICREAT

### Using SLICREAT to Create Only the Standby CDS

SLICREAT can be used to create an additional CDS. If the HSC was previously installed without a standby CDS, you can run the SLICREAT program to create one.

This method does not make a backup of the primary CDS. It formats the additional CDS and allows you to activate it with the CDS Enable command.

#### *SLICREAT EXEC Statement to Create Standby CDS*

Specify PARM='STBYONLY' on the SLICREAT EXEC statement to create a standby CDS:

```
EXEC PGM=SLICREAT, PARM= ' STBYONLY '
```

---

#### **Note –**

- You must have a primary CDS before you can run the STBYONLY option of SLICREAT.
  - For a standby data set to be recognized by the system, it must be defined by a CDSDEF statement in the PARMLIB.
- 

### Using SLICREAT to Calculate DASD Space

You can determine the minimum DASD space required for the CDSs by executing SLICREAT without specifying the SLSCNTL and SLSJRNN DD statements. The HSC generates a message that indicates the minimum space requirements in 4096-byte blocks. When you execute SLICREAT, you must specify the number of blocks for each of these data sets that is at least as large as this minimum.

---

**Note –** If you are specifying multiple CDSs (SLSCNTL2, SLSSTBY), Oracle StorageTek recommends that you allocate the same amount of space (in blocks) for all your data sets when you define them.

---

If the data sets are defined with different space allocations, the HSC uses the size of the smallest data set to determine the number of 4K blocks that it will use for the CDS. The additional space in the other CDS data sets, if any, will not be used by the HSC.

The difference in space between the minimum space required (returned by SLICREAT) and the size of the smallest CDS copy is formatted as CDS free blocks.

---

# Scratch Conversion Utility (SLUCONDB)

The SLUCONDB program generates scratch transactions from CA-1, CA-DYNAM/TLMS, DFSMSrmm and Zara tape management systems, or from a file extracted from a client system by the SMC SMCUDBX utility.

---

**Note** – See [“Tape Management Extract Utility \(SMCUDBX\)” on page 668](#) for more information about the SMCUDBX utility.

---

SLUCONDB can execute as a standalone utility, generating scratch transactions for input to SLUADMIN. Alternatively, it can execute on a host with an active HSC system, and, using the SLUCONDB LIBONLY parameter, generate UUI scratch transactions sent directly to the active HSC system. In a client/server system, using the TAPEPLEX parameter, SLUCONDB can access an HSC system on another host to acquire CDS data and to send UUI scratch transactions.

---

**Warning –**

- SLUCONDB should not be executed with any other SCRATCH, UNSCRATCH, or REPLACEALL activity.
  - The SLUCONDB module is no longer distributed as source. If you wish to synchronize scratch processing with a tape management system not supported by SLUCONDB, alter one of the distributed SLUCONDB tape management interface modules to use the SLUDRINF interface format.
-

## Syntax

SLUCONDB uses program parameters to determine the Tape Management System interface (SLUDR\*) routine to invoke and method of operation. See [Appendix C, “Tape Management System Interface \(SLUDR\\*\) Routines”](#) for more information about these routines.

You can specify the following values for the PARM parameter on the JCL EXEC statement when running the SLUCONDB utility:

---

**Note** – You must enter parameters in the specified order and include commas for omitted parameters.

---

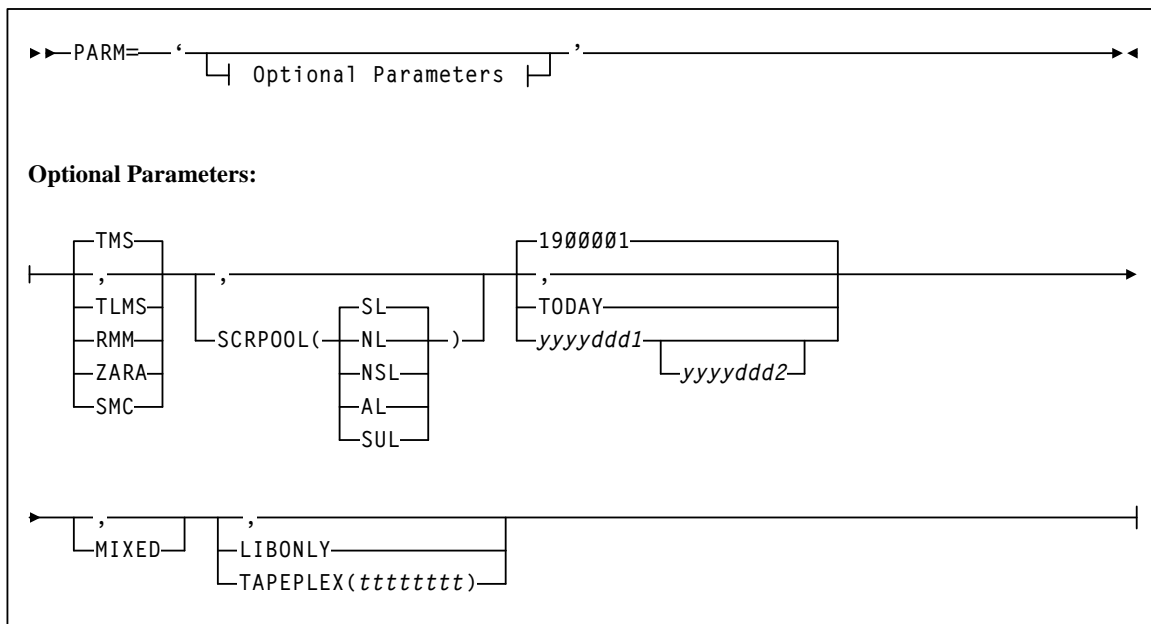


FIGURE 5-4 SLUCONDB PARM parameter syntax

## Parameters

### **PARM=**

specifies the parameters that follow can be accessed by the program indicated in the PGM parameter in the JCL.

The defaults for the PARM are:

- TMS
- All label types
- All scratches from January 1, 1900 to the current system date
- Uppercase only
- Generate scratch transactions (no direct update).

The keywords for the PARM are positional. If you accept the system defaults, either do not specify PARM, or code PARM=".

### **TMS**

optionally, specifies the CA-1 tape management system (TMS). This is the default.

### **TLMS**

optionally, specifies the TLMS: CA-DYNAM/TLMS tape management system.

### **RMM**

optionally, specifies the DFSMSrmm tape management system.

### **ZARA**

optionally, specifies the ZARA tape management system.

### **SMC**

optionally, specifies the extract file from the SMC utility SMCUDBX.

If SMC is specified, label and date parameters are not permitted. (Label and date selection are performed by the SMC utility when it creates the extract file.)

### **SCRPOOL**

optionally, specifies the scratch pool label type used by the library. Valid label type values are:

#### **(SL)**

standard label (the default).

#### **(NL)**

nonlabeled.

#### **(NSL)**

nonstandard label.

#### **(AL)**

ANSI label.

#### **(SUL)**

standard user label.

### **1900001**

optionally, specifies January 1, 1900 as the date. This is the default.

**TODAY**

optionally, indicates the current system date.

*yyyyddd1*

optionally, the "from" date. The "to" date defaults to the current system date. All specified dates are in Julian notation.

*yyyyddd1-yyyyddd2*

optionally, the date range in which the volumes became scratch. Neither of these dates can be greater than the current system date.

**MIXED**

optionally, specifies to print all the headings and messages in mixed case characters (uppercase and lowercase characters).

---

**Note** – If a comma is specified, or if this keyword is not specified, the system defaults to uppercase letters.

---

**LIBONLY**

optionally, specifies that volumes are to be placed in scratch status through the UUI interface. Specifying LIBONLY requires an active HSC, and requires that SLUCONDB be executed from an APF-authorized library.

**TAPEPLEX**

optionally, specifies the name of an SMC tapeplex to be used to extract CDS volumes and run UUI scratch commands.

*ttttttt*

the TapePlex name.

The specified tapeplex may be a local HSC executing on the same host as SLUCONDB, or may be an HSC subsystem on another host accessed via the SMC client server feature. Specifying the TAPEPLEX parameter requires an active SMC system on the SLUCONDB host, an active HSC system for the TapePlex, and requires that SLUCONDB be executed from an APF-authorized library.

## JCL Requirements

The following definitions apply to the SLUCONDB JCL:

### SLSTMS

input to the utility in the form of either the CA-1 TMC, CA-DYNAM/TLMS Volume Master File (VMF), or DFSMSrmm report extract file. This statement is required.

### SLSSOUT

output from the utility specifying the Scratch Update utility control statement. This statement is required if LIBONLY or TAPEPLEX is not specified.

If specifying a temporary or permanent data set for 'DSN=' in the JCL, you must include the appropriate DCB information (i.e., LRECL=72).

### SLSPRINT

output messages from the utility program. This statement is required.

---

**Note –** The Scratch Conversion utility uses the UUI to extract volume and VTV records from the CDS. The UUI requires read access to the CDS, either from statements in the JCL or by getting the data set information from an active HSC. The SLSCNTL, SLSCNTL2, and SLSSTBY DD statements are optional if an active HSC is running on the same system. The SLSCNTL, SLSCNTL2, and SLSSTBY DD statements are not allowed if either LIBONLY or TAPEPLEX parameters are specified.

---

### SLSCNTL

the primary control data set. This statement is optional.

### SLSCNTL2

the secondary control data set. This statement is optional.

### SLSSTBY

the standby control data set. This statement is optional.



## JCL Examples

The following examples illustrate both generating scratch transactions and directly updating the HSC CDS.

The library referred to as "your.sea.smp/e.loadlib" in the following examples refers to the SEALINK library generated during the ELS installation. This library contains the TMS interface (SLUDR\*) modules. If you reassemble these modules, this library is the output of your link edit.

---

**Note** – The UNIT, SPACE, and DCB parameter settings are determined by the user.

---

### JCL to Process Tape Management Databases, with Active HSC, Generating Scratch Update Transactions

```
//JOBSCUP JOB (account),programmer
//STEP1      EXEC PGM=SLUCONDB,
//              PARM=('TLMS,,MIXED')
//STEPLIB    DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.sea.smp/e.loadlib
//SLSTMS     DD DSN=TMS.MASTER.FILE,DISP=SHR
//SLSSOUT    DD DSN=&&SCUPINPT,DISP=(NEW,PASS),
//              UNIT=,SPACE=,DCB=
//SLSPRINT   DD SYSOUT=*
//*
//STEP2      EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,COND=(4,LT,STEP1),PARM=MIXED
//SLSIN      DD DSN=&&SCUPINPT,DISP=(OLD,DELETE)
//SLSPRINT   DD SYSOUT=*
//
```

### JCL to Process TMS Database, with HSC CDS DDnames, Generating Scratch Update Transactions

```
//JOBSCUP JOB (account),programmer
//STEP1      EXEC PGM=SLUCONDB,
//              PARM=('',2009100-2009110,MIXED')
//STEPLIB    DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.sea.smp/e.loadlib
//SLSTMS     DD DSN=TMS.MASTER.FILE,DISP=SHR
//SLSSOUT    DD DSN=&&SCUPINPT,DISP=(NEW,PASS),
//              UNIT=,SPACE=,DCB=
//SLSPRINT   DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSCNTL    DD DSN=primary.control.dataset,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL2   DD DSN=secondary.control.dataset,DISP=SHR
//SLSSTBY    DD DSN=standby.control.dataset,DISP=SHR
//*
//STEP2      EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,COND=(4,LT,STEP1),PARM=MIXED
//SLSIN      DD DSN=&&SCUPINPT,DISP=(OLD,DELETE)
//SLSPRINT   DD SYSOUT=A
//
```

## JCL to Process DFSMSrmm Database, with Direct Scratch Updates (HSC Active on Host)

```
//JOBSCUP JOB (account),programmer
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=EDGHSKP,PARM='RPTEXT,DATEFORM(J)'
//MESSAGE DD DSN=rmm.message.dataset,DISP=SHR
//REPTTEXT DD DSN=rmm.report.extract,DISP=SHR
//*
//STEP2 EXEC PGM=SLUCONDB,
// PARM=('RMM,,,MIXED,LIBONLY')
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.sea.smp/e.loadlib
//SLSTMS DD DSN=rmm.report.extract,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//
```

## JCL to Process SMC Extract File:

```
//JOBSCUP JOB (account),programmer
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=SLUCONDB,PARM='SMC,,,MIXED,LIBONLY'
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.sea.smp/e.loadlib
//SLSTMS DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.smc.extract.file
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//
```

## JCL to Process from SMC to a Remote TapePlex:

```
//JOBSCUP JOB (account),programmer
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=SLUCONDB,
// PARM=',,,MIXED,TAPEPLEX(PRODPLX)'
//STEPLIB DD DISP=SHR,DSN=your.sea.smp/e.loadlib
//SLSTMS DD DSN=TMS.MASTER.FILE,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//
```

## Output Description

SLUCONDB output includes:

- a listing of input commands with appropriate messages if syntax errors occur
- messages associated with errors in the SLUCONDB process
- messages associated with error conditions resulting from an unsuccessful attempt to scratch a volume (using LIBONLY or TAPEPLEX parameters)
- scratch input transactions (if LIBONLY or TAPEPELX is not specified).

```
StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Scratch Conversion Utility      Page 00001
Time 12:15:39                                                         Date 2010-03-31

SLS4723I Volume (VTV) 400021 used after SLUCONDB start or TODATE
SLS0286I 000005 volumes have been selected
SLS0155I Condition code for utility function is 0
```

**FIGURE 5-5** Scratch Conversion Utility Sample Output - Without LIBONLY or TAPEPLEX

```
StorageTek Enterprise Library Software Scratch Conversion Utility      Page 00001
Time 12:15:39                                                         Date 2010-03-31

SLS2321I Volume A00020 successfully added to VSM as scratch
SLS2321I Volume A00023 successfully added to VSM as scratch
SLS0167I Volume FB2110 successfully added to library as scratch
SLS0167I Volume TIM021 successfully added to library as scratch
SLS2280I Volume 400021 selected after SCRATCH command USETOKN
SLS1312I 000004 volumes successfully scratched
SLS0155I Condition code for utility function is 4
```

**FIGURE 5-6** Scratch Conversion Utility Output - With LIBONLY or TAPEPLEX



## VTCS Stand-Alone Utilities

This chapter describes VTCS stand-alone utilities. These utilities are not issued using the common utility administrator program (SLUADMIN).

### RTV Utility

The RTV utility converts VTVs contained on MVCs to data sets on volumes (real tape volumes). This utility is a standalone utility executed using the SWSRTV program.

Refer to the publication *Managing HSC and VTCS* for detailed information about when to use this utility.

### Syntax

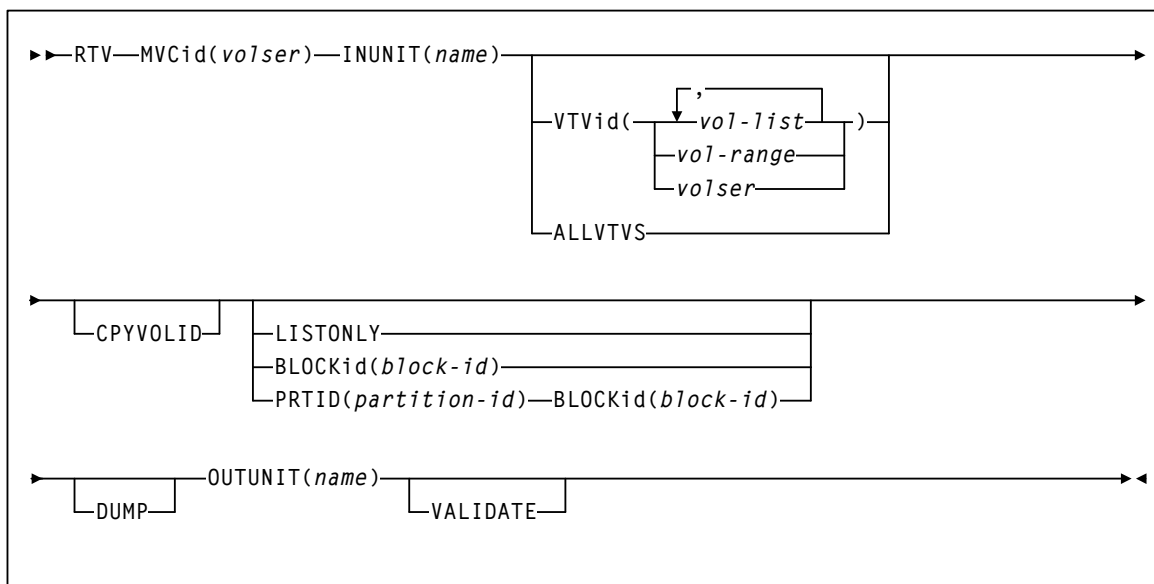


FIGURE 6-1 RTV utility syntax

## Parameters

### MVCid

specifies the MVC that contains the VTVs that RTV converts to volume(s) which become real tape versions of the VTVs.

*volser*

the MVC volser.

### INUNIT

the name to use to allocate the input tape unit. You can specify an MVS unit address, an esoteric name, or a generic name. The valid values are the same as for the UNIT= JCL parameter.

*name*

the unit name.

### VTVid

optionally, specifies one or more VTVs to convert.

*volser*, *vol-range*, or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more VTVs.

### ALLVTVS

optionally, convert the most current copy of all VTVs on the specified MVC. That is, if there are multiple copies of a VTV on the specified MVC, RTV only converts the most current copy of the VTV.

---

**Note** – VTVid and ALLVTVS are mutually exclusive.

---

### CPYVOLID

optionally, copy the VTV internal volser from the VTV to the output volume VOL1 record. The default is to not copy the VTV VOLID.

---

**Caution** – Use the CPYVOLID parameter carefully! The volser of the output tape will be changed to the volser of the VTV. If the output tape has an external label or if the output is directed to another VTV, this will cause label mismatches and can cause unpredictable and undesirable results.

---

### Note –

- If the output tape is non-labelled or has a non-standard tape label, CPYVOLID will be automatically specified for this VTV decompression, and a standard label tape will be created on the output device.
  - RTV supports VTVs created with standard or ANSI labels. If you do not specify CPYVOLID, RTV processes these label types as described in [TABLE 6-1](#). Note that this only applies to the VOL1 record. The HDR1/HDR2 labels are always copied from the VTV by RTV for every VTV processed.
-

**TABLE 6-1** RTV Label Types

VTV Label Type	Output Standard Label	Output ANSI Label	Output Non-Label
Standard label	VOL1 label not copied	WTOR issued	VOL1 label is copied
ANSI label	WTOR issued	VOL1 label not copied	VOL1 label is copied

In [TABLE 6-1](#), the WTOR is as follows:

SWSRTV - Label mismatch - Reply RELABEL, RETRY, or CANCEL

The operator responses produce the following results:

**RELABEL**

Decompress the RTV and overwrite the volser on the output volume.

**RETRY**

Mount another output volume and retry the operation.

**CANCEL**

Do not decompress the RTV.

**LISTONLY**

optionally, lists (but does not convert) the VTVs on the specified MVC. For more information, see [“RTV LISTONLY Listing” on page 717](#).

**BLOCKID**

optionally, specifies the logical block ID where the VTV begins on the MVC.

*block-id*

the logical block ID (8 hexadecimal characters).

---

**Note –**

- BLOCKID and LISTONLY are mutually exclusive. In addition, if you specify the ALLVTVs parameter, or if a list or range of VTVs is specified, the BLOCKid parameter is ignored.
  - Not specifying a BLOCKid value can cause very long execution times with high capacity media. The BLOCKid is used for high speed positioning to a VTV on the MVC.
- 

---

**Tip –** The LISTONLY parameter listing on [“RTV LISTONLY Listing” on page 717](#) supplies a Block ID value that you can use as input to the RTV utility to convert a VTV to a volume.

---

**PRTID**

optionally, specifies the partition id of the VTV being recovered from a partitioned MVC.

*partition-id*

the hexadecimal partition ID

**Note –**

- If PRTID is specified, BLOCKid must also be specified.
- PRTID and LISTONLY are mutually exclusive. In addition, if you specify the ALLVTVs parameter, or if a list or range of VTVs is specified, the BLOCKid parameter is ignored.

**DUMP**

produce a S0C3 abend dump if RTV cannot decompress a VTV. If you specify DUMP, create a SYSMDUMP DD JCL statement to capture the dump.

**OUTUNIT**

the name to use to allocate the output tape unit. You can specify an MVS unit address, an esoteric name, or a generic name. The valid values are the same as for the UNIT= JCL parameter. This parameter is required if you do not specify LISTONLY.

*name*

the unit name.

**VALIDATE**

Validates that the RTV utility can successfully process the specified VTV(s) without creating an output tape.

## JCL Requirements

The following are required or optional statements for the RTV utility JCL:

**STEPLIB**

specifies the link library (SEALINK) that contains the RTV modules.

**SLSPRINT**

specifies the destination of the RTV utility report.

**SLSIN**

specifies the input to the SWSRTV program (RTV utility name and parameters).

**SYSMDUMP**

optional DD to capture dump.

---

**Note –** Because the RTV utility must be capable of rewriting the tape standard labels on the output unit and positioning over label information on the input unit, Dynamic Allocation is used to invoke bypass label processing (BLP) on the tape volumes. This requires that the library that contains the SWSRTV executable code be APF authorized.

---



## RTV Utility Report Messages

The RTV report displays the following messages:

`Block number too large in compressed data`

**Explanation:** An error was found in a compressed data record while processing a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

`Chunked record logic error`

**Explanation:** An error was found while processing a chunked data record for a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

`Decompress invalid length parameter`

**Explanation:** This indicates a program logic error. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

`Decompress invalid parameter list`

**Explanation:** This indicates a program logic error. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

`Decompress logic error`

**Explanation:** This indicates a program logic error. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

`Decompress pointer to work area is zero`

**Explanation:** This indicates a program logic error. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

`Dynamic allocation error. Reason Code = xxxx-xxxx`

**Explanation:** An error was encountered while attempting to dynamically allocate the INUNIT or OUTUNIT device. Refer to the *IBM MVS Authorized Assembler Services Guide* for a description of the dynamic allocation reason codes.

`I/O error on input MVC`

**Explanation:** An I/O error was encountered while reading a MVC. Further processing is stopped. The utility terminates with return code 12.

I/O error on output volume

**Explanation:** An I/O error was encountered while writing the output VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Invalid compressed data block read

**Explanation:** This indicates that an invalid data record was found while processing this VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Invalid VTV page number encountered

**Explanation:** A record sequence error was found in a compressed data record while processing a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Invalid VTV record encountered

**Explanation:** An error was found in a compressed data record while processing a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

MVC volser # does not match requested volser #

**Explanation:** The volume mounted as the input MVC did not match that requested by the MVCid() parameter. The utility terminates with return code 12.

MVC record length error

**Explanation:** A length error was found in a compressed data record while processing a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Incorrect algo byte

**Explanation:** Explanation: An error was found in a compressed data record while processing a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

No HDR1 record found for requested VTV

**Explanation:** Following positioning by a BLOCKid() statement, there was no HDR1 record located at the desired position. Remove the BLOCKid statement and rerun the utility. The utility terminates with return code 12.

No HDR1 record found on input MVC

**Explanation:** The volume mounted as a MVC contained no HDR1 record. The utility terminates with return code 12.

No UHL1 record found on input MVC

**Explanation:** The volume mounted as a MVC contained no UHL1 record. The utility terminates with return code 12.

No VOL1 record found on input MVC

**Explanation:** The volume mounted as a MVC contained no VOL1 record. The utility terminates with return code 12.

NULL input buffer pointer

**Explanation:** This indicates a program logic error. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

NULL output buffer pointer

**Explanation:** This indicates a program logic error. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Requested VTV not found on MVC

**Explanation:** The volser requested by the VTVID() parameter was not found on the MVC. The utility terminates with return code 12.

Spanned length final error

**Explanation:** An error was found while processing a spanned data record for a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Spanned length intermediate error

**Explanation:** An error was found while processing a spanned data record for a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Unexpected request on input I/O

**Explanation:** This indicates a program logic error. Further processing is stopped. The utility terminates with return code 12.

Unexpected end of tape on output volume

**Explanation:** While writing the output VTV, an end of tape indication was encountered. The VTV must be completely contained on a single output volume. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Unexpected request on output I/O

**Explanation:** This indicates a program logic error. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Unexpected tape mark on input MVC

**Explanation:** An unexpected tape mark was found on a MVC. Further processing is stopped. The utility terminates with return code 12.

VTVid range parameter is invalid

**Explanation:** An invalid range value was found in the VTVid() specification. The utility terminates with return code 12.

VTV logical data check encountered

**Explanation:** A data check indicator was found in a compressed data record while processing a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

VTV volser # does not match requested volser #

**Explanation:** Following positioning by a BLOCKid statement, the VTV volser did not match that requested by the VTVid() parameter. The utility terminates with return code 12. Remove the BLOCKid statement and rerun the utility.

## RTV LISTONLY Listing

The following figure shows an example of the listing that RTV produces when you specify the LISTONLY parameter.

SWSRTV		(1.0.0)	StorageTek VTCS RTV Utility					
PAGE 0001								
TIME 14:23:33			Control Card Image Listing					
DATE 12/01/00								
RTV MVC(C83107) LISTONLY								
SWSRTV		(1.0.0)	StorageTek VTCS RTV Utility					
PAGE 0002								
TIME 14:23:33			MVC C83107 Contents Report					
DATE 12/01/00								
VTV	File	Block	<---Created---		<---Migrated---		VTVPAGE	VTV
Volser	#	ID	Date	Time	Date	Time	Size	Status
VV6825	1	00000000	20060Nov30	12:07:56	20060Nov30	12:15:56	Large	
VV6863	2	92005F0F	20060Sep27	12:57:54	20060Sep27	12:59:54	Large	
VV6893	3	92005F18	20060Aug18	08:57:26	20060Aug18	08:59:26	Large	
VV0403	4	92005F21	20060Aug18	08:57:26	20060Aug18	08:59:26	Large	

**FIGURE 6-2** Example RTV LISTONLY listing

This report lists the VTV's:

- Volser
- Logical file number on the MVC
- Block ID on the MVC
- Time created and migrated
- VTVPAGE size - STANDARD or LARGE
- Status - Not Current, or if blank, the VTV is current

## RTV Decompress Listing

The following figure shows an example of the listing that RTV produces when you do not specify the LISTONLY parameter (that is, you run RTV to convert VTVs to volumes).

SWSRTV (1.0.0) StorageTek VTCS RTV Utility								
PAGE 0001								
TIME 14:28:33			Control Card Image Listing				DATE 2010-1-31	
RTV MVC(C8228) VTV(VV6800-VV6900) CPYVOLID								
SWSRTV (1.0.0) StorageTek VTCS RTV Utility								
PAGE 0002								
TIME 14:28:33			MVC C83223 Contents Report				DATE 2010-1-31	
VTV	File	Block	<---Created---		<---Migrated---		VTVPAGE	VTV
Volser	#	ID	Date	Time	Date	Time	Size	Status
VV6070	1	00000000	20060Nov30	12:07:56	20060Nov30	12:15:56	Large	
VV0874	2	2B001384	20060Sep27	12:57:54	20060Sep27	12:59:54	Large	
VV0772	3	A3002707	20060Aug18	08:57:26	20060Aug18	08:59:26	Large	
VV6828	4	9B002AB9	20060Aug18	08:57:26	20060Aug18	08:59:26	Large	Not current
VV6828	5	9B002AC2	20060Aug18	08:57:26	20060Aug18	08:59:26	Large	
VV6826	6	9B002ACB	20060Aug18	08:57:26	20060Aug18	08:59:26	Large	
SWSRTV (1.0.0) StorageTek VTCS RTV Utility								
PAGE 0003								
TIME 14:28:33			MVC C83223 Decompress Report				DATE 2010-1-31	
VTV		Mounted			Final		Decompress	
Volser		Volser			Volser		Status	
VV6826		XX0772			VV6826		Successful	
VV6828		XX0773			VV6828		Successful	

**FIGURE 6-3** Example RTV Decompress Listing

In addition to the contents fields shown in Figure 67 on page 136, the decompress listing shown in Figure 68 on page 137 lists the VTV's:

- Volser of the output volume as initially mounted
- Final volser of the output volume; if CPYVOLID is specified, the final volser will be identical to the VTV volser, otherwise is final volser is identical to the volser of the output volume as initially mounted
- Decompress status

## MEDia, RECtech, and MODel Values

---

This appendix provides values for MEDia, RECtech, and MODel parameters. These parameters are used to specify drive and media characteristics. They are specified in various ELS commands and control statements.

---

**Note –**

- The SL8500 library supports only the T9840A/B/C/D, T9940B, LTO, SDLT, and T10000A/B/C media types and recording techniques.
  - The SL3000 library supports only the T9840C/D, LTO, SDLT, and T10000A/B/C media types and recording techniques.
  - LTO and SDLT drives are not supported in an MVS environment. These drives are recognized by the HSC but are accessible only to open systems clients using LibraryStation.
- 

---

## Media Type (MEDia)

The Media type is used to specify the desired type of media to be used for a data set. It is specified in the following ELS commands and control statements:

**SMC:**

- POLicy operator command
- TAPEREQ control statement

**HSC/VTCS:**

- Display Drives command
- Display SCRatch command
- Display THReshld command
- Eject command
- SCREdist command
- Warn command
- VOLPARM control statement

The following table describes valid MEDia types:

**TABLE A-1** Media Types

Media Type	Description
LONGitud	Indicates any Standard or enhanced (ECART) cartridge.
ZLONGI	Indicates standard, enhanced (ECART), or extended-enhanced (ZCART) capacity cartridges.
Standard	Indicates a standard length, 3480 cartridge. It can be read on any longitudinal drive (4480, 4490, 9490, or 9490EE). Data can be written in 36-track mode on a 4490, 9490, or 9490EE drive but cannot be read on an 18-track (4480) drive. Synonyms include CST, MEDIA1, STD, 1, and 3480.
ECART	Indicates a 3490E, extended capacity cartridge. It can be used only on a 36-track drive (4490, 9490, or 9490EE). Synonyms include E, ECCST, ETAPE, Long, MEDIA2, and 3490E.
ZCART	Indicates a 3490E, extended-enhanced capacity cartridge. It can be used only on a 9490EE drive. ZCART can be abbreviated as Z.
Virtual	Indicates a VTV (Virtual Tape Volume) mounted on a VTD (Virtual Tape Drive).
HELical	Indicates a helical cartridge. A helical cartridge can be used only on RedWood drives. The following subtypes and abbreviations specify a helical cartridge:  <b>DD3</b> indicates any DD3A, DD3B, or DD3C helical cartridge. <b>DD3A or A</b> indicates a helical cartridge with a 10GB media capacity. <b>DD3B or B</b> indicates a helical cartridge with a 25GB media capacity. <b>DD3C or C</b> indicates a helical cartridge with a 50GB media capacity.  The seventh position in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (i.e., A, B, or C).
STK1	Indicates any T9840 cartridge.
STK1R	Indicates a T9840 data cartridge. The media indicator in the external label is encoded with the cartridge type (R). STK1R can be abbreviated as R.  T9840 cartridge media capacities are 20GB (T9840A and T9840B), 40GB (T9840C), or 75GB (T9840D).
STK1U	Indicates a T9840A, T9840B, or T9840C cleaning cartridge. STK1U can be abbreviated as U.
STK1Y	Indicates a T9840D cleaning cartridge. STK1Y can be abbreviated to Y.
STK2	Indicates any T9940 cartridge.
STK2P	Indicates a T9940 data cartridge. STK2P can be abbreviated as P.  T9940 cartridge media capacities are 60GB (T9940A) or 200GB (T9940B).
STK2W	Indicates a T9940 cleaning cartridge. STK2W can be abbreviated as W.
LTO-10G	Indicates an LTO 10GB capacity cartridge.
LTO-35G	Indicates an LTO 35GB capacity cartridge.



**TABLE A-1** Media Types (Continued)

Media Type	Description
LTO-50G	Indicates an LTO 50GB capacity cartridge.
LTO-100G	Indicates an LTO 100GB capacity cartridge.
LTO-200G	Indicates an LTO 200GB capacity cartridge.
LTO-400G	Indicates an LTO 400GB capacity cartridge.
LTO-400W	Indicates an LTO Generation 3 WORM cartridge.
LTO-800G	Indicates an LTO 800GB capacity cartridge.
LTO-800W	Indicates an LTO Generation 4 WORM cartridge.
LTO-1.5T	Indicates an LTO 1.5TB capacity cartridge.
LTO-1.5W	Indicates an LTO Generation 5 WORM cartridge.
LTO-CLN1	Indicates an LTO type 1 cleaning cartridge.
LTO-CLN2	Indicates an LTO type 2 cleaning cartridge.
LTO-CLNU	Indicates an LTO universal cleaning cartridge.
SDLT	Indicates an SDLT 160GB cartridge.
SDLT-2	Indicates an SDLT 125GB cartridge.
SDLT-S1	Indicates an SDLT Generation S1 cartridge.
SDLT-S2	Indicates an SDLT Generation S2 cartridge.
SDLT-S3	Indicates an SDLT Generation S3 cartridge.
SDLT-S4	Indicates an SDLT Generation S4 cartridge.
SDLT-4	Indicates an SDLT Generation 4 cartridge.
T10000T1	Indicates a full-capacity 500GB T10000A or 1TB T10000B cartridge. T10000T1 can be abbreviated as T1.
T10000TS	Indicates a smaller-capacity 120GB T10000A or 240GB T10000B cartridge. T10000TS can be abbreviated as TS.
T10000CT	Indicates a T10000A or T10000B cleaning cartridge. T10000CT can be abbreviated as CT.
T10000T2	Indicates a full-capacity 5TB T10000C cartridge. T10000T2 can be abbreviated as T2.
T10000TT	Indicates a smaller-capacity 1TB T10000C cartridge. T10000TT can be abbreviated as TT.
T10000CL	Indicates a T10000A, T10000B, or T10000C cleaning cartridge. T10000CL can be abbreviated as CL.

---

**Note** – T10000C drives can read T10000T1 or T10000TS media but cannot write to that media. T10000C drives can only write to T10000T2 or T10000TT media.

---

When the MEDia parameter is not specified, a default is chosen based on the value of the RECtech parameter. The following table shows default values used if MEDia is omitted:

**TABLE A-2** Media Type Defaults

RECtech Entered	MEDia Default
18track	Standard
36track, 36Atrack, 36Btrack	LONGItud
36Ctrack	ZLONGI
LONGItud	LONGItud
DD3, Helical	DD3A
STK1R, STK1R34, STK1R35 STK1RA, STK1RA34, STK1RA35 STK1RB, STK1RB34, STK1RB35 STK1RAB, STK1RAB34, STK1RAB35 STK1RC, STK1RC34, STK1RC35 STK1RD, STK1RDE, STK1RDN, STK1RD34, STK1RD35, STK1RDE4, STK1RDE5	STK1R
STK2P, STK2P34, STK2P35 STK2PA, STK2PA34, STK2PA35 STK2PB, STK2PB34, STK2PB35	STK2P
T10K, T10KN, T10KE T10KA, T10KAN, T1A34, T1A35, T10KAE, T1AE34, T1AE35 T10KC, T10KCN, T1C34, T1C35, T10KCE, T1CE34, T1CE35	T10000T1*

\* T10000C drives can read T10000T1 or T10000TS media but cannot write to that media. T10000C drives can only write to T10000T2 or T10000TT media.

## Recording Technique (RECtech)

The recording technique, or RECtech, is used to specify the method used to record data tracks on the tape surface for the desired data set. It is specified in the following ELS commands and control statements:

SMC:

- POLicy command
- UNITAttr command
- TAPEREQ control statement

HSC/VTCS:

- Display Drives command
- Display SCRatch command
- Display THReshld
- Eject command
- SCREdist command
- Warn command
- VOLPARM control statement

The following table describes valid recording techniques:

**TABLE A-3** Recording Techniques

Recording Technique	Description
LONGItud	Indicates any device that uses longitudinal recording. Devices include 4480, 4490, 9490, and 9490EE drives.
18track	Indicates a 4480 drive.
36track	Indicates a 4490, 9490, or 9490EE drive (any device that records in 36-track mode).
36Atrack	Indicates a 4490 (Silverton) drive.
36Btrack	Indicates a 9490 (Timberline) drive.
36Ctrack	Indicates a 9490EE drive.
HELical	Indicates a device using helical recording.
DD3	Indicates a device using helical recording.
STK1R	Indicates any T9840 drive.
STK1R34	Indicates a 3490E-image T9840 drive.
STK1R35	Indicates a 3590-image T9840 drive.
STK1RA	Indicates any T9840A drive.
STK1RA34	Indicates a 3490E-image T9840A drive.
STK1RA35	Indicates a 3590-image T9840A drive.
STK1RB	Indicates any T9840B drive.
STK1RB34	Indicates a 3490E-image T9840B drive.

**TABLE A-3** Recording Techniques (Continued)

<b>Recording Technique</b>	<b>Description</b>
STK1RB35	Indicates a 3590-image T9840B drive.
STK1RAB	Indicates any T9840A or T9840B drive.
STK1RAB4	Indicates a 3490E-image T9840A or T9840B drive.
STK1RAB5	Indicates a 3590-image T9840A or T9840B drive.
STK1RC	Indicates any T9840C drive.
STK1RC34	Indicates a 3490E-image T9840C drive.
STK1RC35	Indicates a 3590-image T9840C drive.
STK1RD	Indicates any T9840D drive.
STK1RDE	Indicates an encryption-enabled T9840D drive.
STK1RDN	Indicates a non-encryption-enabled T9840D drive.
STK1RD34	Indicates a non-encryption-enabled 3490E-image T9840D drive.
STK1RD35	Indicates a non-encryption-enabled 3590-image T9840D drive.
STK1RDE4	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T9840D drive.
STK1RDE5	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T9840D drive.
STK2P	Indicates any T9940 drive.
STK2P34	Indicates a 3490E-image T9940 drive.
STK2P35	Indicates a 3590-image T9940 drive.
STK2PA	Indicates any T9940A drive.
STK2PA34	Indicates a 3490E-image T9940A drive.
STK2PA35	Indicates a 3590-image T9940A drive.
STK2PB	Indicates any T9940B drive.
STK2PB34	Indicates a 3490E-image T9940B drive.
STK2PB35	Indicates a 3590-image T9940B drive.
T10K	Indicates any T10000 drives.
T10KN	Indicates all non-encrypted T10000 drives.
T10KE	Indicates all encrypted T10000 drives.
T10KA	Indicates any T10000A drive.
T10KAN	Indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000A drive.
T1A34	Indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T10000A drive.
T1A35	Indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T10000A drive.
T10KAE	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000A drive.
T1AE34	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000A drive.
T1AE35	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000A drive.
T10KB	Indicates any T10000B drive.

**TABLE A-3** Recording Techniques (Continued)

<b>Recording Technique</b>	<b>Description</b>
T10KBN	Indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000B drive.
T1B34	Indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T10000B drive.
T1B35	Indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T10000B drive.
T10KBE	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000B drive.
T1BE34	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000B drive.
T1BE35	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000B drive.
T10KC	Indicates any T10000C drive.
T10KCN	Indicates a non-encrypted 3490E- or 3590-image T10000C drive.
T1C34	Indicates a non-encrypted 3490E-image T10000C drive.
T1C35	Indicates a non-encrypted 3590-image T10000C drive.
T10KCE	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E- or 3590-image T10000C drive.
T1CE34	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000C drive.
T1CE35	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000C drive.
Virtual	Indicates a VTV (Virtual Tape Volume) mounted on a VTD (Virtual Tape Drive).

When the RECtech parameter is not specified, a default is chosen based on the value of the MEDia parameter. The following table shows default values used if RECtech is omitted.

**TABLE A-4** Recording Technique Defaults

<b>MEDia Entered</b>	<b>RECtech Default</b>
LONGItud	LONGItud
ZLONGI	LONGitude
Standard	LONGItud
ECART	36track
ZCART	36Ctrack
DD3A, DD3B, DD3C, DD3D	DD3
STKR, STK1U, STKY	STK1R
STK2P, STK2W	STK2P
T10000T1, T10000TS, T10000CL	T10K
T10000CT	T10KA + T10KB
T10000T2, T10000TT	T10KC
Virtual	Virtual

# MODeI Type (MODeI)

The model type is used to specify the model number of a transport (drive), or drive. MODeI provides the same type of information as RECtech, but a user may find it more convenient to specify a transport model rather than a recording technique.

---

**Note** – MODeI and RECtech are mutually exclusive.

---

MODeI is specified in the following ELS commands and control statements:

SMC:

- POLIcy command
- UNITAttr command
- TAPEREQ control statement

HSC/VTCS:

- Display Drives command

The following table describes valid MODeI types:

---

**Note** –

- The SL8500 library supports only model types associated with T9840, T9940, and T10000 series drives.
  - You can specify multiple values for this parameter; separate each value with a comma.
- 

**TABLE A-5** Model Types

Model Type	Description
4480	Indicates a 4480 (18-track) drive.
4490	Indicates a 4490 (36-track Silverton) drive.
9490	Indicates a 9490 (36-track Timberline) drive.
9490EE	Indicates a 9490EE (36-track Timberline EE) drive.
SD3	Indicates an SD-3 (RedWood) drive.
9840	Indicates a 3490E-image T9840A drive.
984035	Indicates a 3590-image T9840A drive.
T9840B	Indicates a 3490E-image T9840B drive.
T9840B35	Indicates a 3590-image T9840B drive.
T9840C	Indicates a 3490E-image T9840C drive.
T9840C35	Indicates a 3590-image T9840C drive.
T9840D	Indicates a non encryption-enabled 3490E-image T9840D drive.
T9840D35	Indicates a non encryption-enabled 3590E-image T9840D drive.

**TABLE A-5** Model Types (Continued)

Model Type	Description
T9840DE	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T9840D drive.
T9840DE5	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3590E-image T9840D drive.
T9940A	Indicates a 3490E-image T9940A drive.
T9940A35	Indicates a 3590-image T9940A drive.
T9940B	Indicates a 3490E-image T9940B drive.
T9940B35	Indicates a 3590-image T9940B drive.
HP-LTO2	Indicates an HP LTO Generation 2 drive.
HP-LTO3	Indicates an HP LTO Generation 3 drive.
HP-LTO4	Indicates an HP LTO Generation 4 drive.
HP-LTO5	Indicates an HP LTO Generation 5 drive.
IBM-LTO2	Indicates an IBM LTO Generation 2 drive.
IBM-LTO3	Indicates an IBM LTO Generation 3 drive.
IBM-LTO4	Indicates an IBM LTO Generation 4 drive.
IBM-LTO5	Indicates an IBM LTO Generation 5 drive.
SDLT-600	Indicates a SuperDLT model 600 drive.
DLT-S4	Indicates a Quantum DLT-S4 drive.
T1A34	indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T10000A drive.
T1A35	Indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T10000A drive.
T1AE34	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000A drive.
T1AE35	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000A drive.
T1B34	Indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T10000B drive.
T1B35	Indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590E-image T10000B drive.
T1BE34	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000B drive.
T1BE35	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000B drive.
T1C34	indicates a non-encryption enabled 3490E-image T10000C drive.
T1C35	Indicates a non-encryption enabled 3590-image T10000C drive.
T1CE34	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3490E-image T10000C drive.
T1CE35	Indicates an encryption-enabled 3590-image T10000C drive.
Virtual	Indicates a VTV (Virtual Tape Volume) mounted on a VTD (Virtual Tape Drive).





## Library Identification

---

Each ACS, LSM, and CAP is assigned a unique identification number during LIBGEN. Use this number in ELS commands and utilities to identify a specific ACSid, LSMid, or CAPid.

---

### ACSid

Each ACS is identified by an ACSid (*acs-id*), a two digit decimal identifier from 00-99.

The first ACS acquires an identifier of 00, the second ACS acquires an identifier of 01, and so forth until all ACSs are identified.

---

### LSMid

Each LSM is identified by an LSMid (*lsm-id*), consisting of an ACSid and LSM number separated by a colon. The LSMid differentiates each LSM from every other LSM in a library.

The format is *AA:LL*, where:

- *AA* is the ACSid, a two digit decimal identifier from 00-99.
- *LL* is the LSM number, a two digit decimal identifier from 00-99.

---

# CAPid

Each library CAP is identified by a CAPid (*cap-id*), consisting of an LSMid and CAP number separated by a colon. The format is *AA:LL:CC*, where:

- *AA:LL* is the LSMid.
- *CC* is the CAP number, a two digit decimal identifier from 00-11.

## CAP Numbers

### 00

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, standard 21-cell CAP or the right-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For 9740 LSMs, fixed rack 14-cell or 10-cell removable magazine CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a 234-cell AEM CAP
- For SL8500 LSMs, the CAP consists of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

### 01

- For 4410 and 9310 LSMs, left-hand 40-cell enhanced CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.
- For SL8500 LSMs, this is an optional CAP consisting of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

### 02

- priority CAP (PCAP) for a 4410 or 9310 LSM enhanced CAP
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is an optional CEM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.
- For SL8500 LSMs, this is an optional CAP consisting of 3, 13-cell removable magazines.

### 03, 04, 05

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are optional CEM/DEM CAPs consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

### 06

- For SL3000 LSMs, this is the only required BDM CAP consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

### 07, 08, 09, 10

- For SL3000 LSMs, these are an optional CEM CAPs consisting of 2, 13-cell removable magazines.

### 11

- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a right-side AEM CAP, consisting of 18, 13-cell removable magazines.
- For SL3000 LSMs, this is a 234-cell AEM CAP.

# Panels, Rows and Columns

Certain ELS commands and utilities allow you to specify panels, rows, and columns within a library.

## Panels

### *panel-list*

Each *panel-list* element is a one or two digit decimal number, specific to the LSM type:

- **LSM Models 4410 and 9310 PowderHorn**
  - 0-11 for outer wall panels
  - 12-19 for inner wall panels
- **LSM Model 9360 WolfCreek**
  - 0-2 for Model 9360-050
  - 0-3 for Model 9360-075
  - 0-4 for Model 9360-100
- **LSM Model 9740 TimberWolf**
  - 0-2 (panel 3 is included if the optional cells are present).
- **LSM Model SL3000 Library**
  - Access Expansion Module (AEM optional) - panels 0-1 and 22-23 are located on both ends of the library and in this release serve only as library end caps.
  - Base Drive Module (BDM required) - panels 12-13
  - Drive Expansion Module (DEM optional) - panels 10-11 are located left of the BDM.
  - Cartridge Expansion Module (CEM optional) - panels 2-9 are located left of the BDM or optional DEM.
  - Cartridge Expansion Module (CEM optional) - panels 14-21 are located right of the BDM.
  - Parking Expansion Module (PEM) - Dual Robots only - panel numbers equate to the same panel numbers of the CEM it replaces, depending on its location right or left of the BDM.

---

**Note** – The SL3000 library has static panels numbers starting with the left-most back panel (panel 0) and ending with the right-most front panel (panel 23) on a fully-configured library. The panel numbering starts with the BDM, the only required module (panels 12 and 13), and works outward to the left and to the right.

---

- **LSM Model SL8500 Library**
  - base library
    - 2-10
  - With one expansion panel
    - 2-18 (expansion panel is 8-15)
  - With two expansion panels

- 2-26 (expansion panels are 8-23)
- With three expansion panels
  - 2-34 (expansion panels are 8-31)

## Rows

### *row-list*

Each *row-list* element is a one or two digit decimal number, specific to the LSM type:

- **LSM Models 4410 and 9310 PowderHorn**
  - 0-14 for outer wall panels
  - 0-5 and 8-14 for inner wall panels.
  - The maximum list is 4 rows (approximately 100 cells).
- **LSM Model 9360 WolfCreek**
  - 0-41 (all models). The maximum list is 20 rows (approximately 100 cells).
- **LSM Model 9740 TimberWolf**
  - 0-41 on panels 0, 2, and 3
  - 36-41 on panel 1

---

### **Note –**

- Column 3 on panel 2 allows row entries only on rows 28-41.
  - The cells on panel 3 are optional.
- 

- **LSM Model SL3000 Library**
  - Access Expansion Modules - panels 0-1 and 22-23 (no cells in this initial release)
  - Base Drive Module (BDM) - panel 12 (back)
    - 12-47 with 8 drives installed
    - 23-47 with 16 drives installed
    - 35-47 with 24 drives installed
  - Base Drive Module (BDM) - panel 13 (front)
    - 0-51 on the front panel
  - Drive Expansion Module (DEM) - panel 10 (back)
    - 12-47 available with 8 drives installed
    - 23-47 available with 16 drives installed
    - 35-47 available with 24 drives installed
    - No rows available with 32 drives installed
  - Drive Expansion Module (DEM) - panel 11 (front)
    - 0-51 available on the front panel
  - Cartridge Expansion Modules (CEM) - all panels
    - 0-51 available on both front and back panels
  - Parking Expansion Module (PEM) - all panels
    - 0-51 available on the back and front panels
- **LSM Model SL8500 Library**
  - 0-26 on a standard panel
    - 0-12 on a short panel (panels 4, 6-7)
    - 6-12 on a PTP panel (panel 5)

# Columns

## *column-list*

Each *column-list* element is a one or two digit decimal number, specific to the LSM type:

- **LSM Models 4410 and 9310 PowderHorn**
  - 0-23 for outer wall panels
  - 0-19 for inner wall panels
- **LSM Model 9360 WolfCreek**
  - 0-5 (all models).
- **LSM Model 9740 TimberWolf**
  - 0-3 for panels 0, 2, and 3 (if the optional cells are present)
  - 0-2 for panel 1
- **LSM Model SL3000 Library**
  - Access Expansion Module (AEM) panels 0-1 and 22-23
    - No columns available in the initial release
  - Base Drive Module (BDM) - panel 12 (back)
    - 0 available, if a CEM or DEM is added to the left of the BDM
    - 1-5 available for rows 12-47 with 8 drives installed
    - 1-5 available for rows 23-47 with 16 drives installed
    - 1-5 available for rows 35-47 with 24 drives installed
  - Base Drive Module (BDM) - panel 13 (front)
    - 0 available with expansion to the left of the BDM
    - 5 available for rows 39-51 with expansion to the right of the BDM
    - 1-3 available for rows 0-38 with a CAP installed
    - 1-4 available for rows 39-51 with a CAP installed
    - 1-3 not available for rows 9-16 with optional window/Operator panel installed
  - Drive Expansion Module (DEM) - panel 10 (back)
    - 0 is available with expansion to the left of the DEM
    - 1-5 available for rows 12-47 with 8 drives installed
    - 1-5 available for rows 23-47 with 16 drives installed
    - 1-5 available for rows 35-47 with 24 drives installed
    - No columns available with 32 drives installed.
  - Drive Expansion Module (DEM) - panel 11 (front)
    - 0 available with expansion to the left DEM
    - 1-3 available for rows 0-38 with a CAP installed
    - 1-5 available for rows 39-51, with a CAP installed
    - 1-3 not available for rows 9-16 with a window installed
    - 1-5 available for rows 0-51 on a standard DEM panel
  - Cartridge Expansion Module (CEM) - panels 2, 4, 6, 8 (back)
    - 0 available with expansion to the left
    - 1- 5 available on the standard CEM back panel
  - Cartridge Expansion Module (CEM) - panels 3, 5, 7, 9 (front)
    - 0 available with expansion to the left
    - 1-3 available for rows 0-38 with a CAP installed
    - 1-4 available for rows 39-51, with a CAP installed
    - 1-4 available on the standard CEM front panel

- Cartridge Expansion Module (CEM) - panels 14, 16, 18, 20 (back)
  - 0-5 available on the standard CEM back panel
- Cartridge Expansion Module (CEM) - panels 15, 17, 19, 21 (front)
  - 0-3 available for rows 0-38 with a CAP installed
  - 0-5 available for rows 39-51 with a CAP installed
  - 0-5 available on the standard CEM front panel
- Parking Expansion Module (PEM) - left side PEM
  - 3-5 available on the back and front panels with a second robot installed
- Parking Expansion Module (PEM) - right side PEM
  - 0-2 available on the back and front panels with a second robot installed
- **LSM Model SL8500 Library**
  - 0-1 for all panel types

---

**Note** – All SL3000 columns are numbered 0-5 (left to right).

---

## Tape Management System Interface (SLUDR\*) Routines

---

This appendix describes TMS (Tape Management System) interface routines called by the HSC SLUCONDB utility and SMC SMCUDBX utility. These utilities call the appropriate routine based on the tape management system being used.

Routines include the following:

- SLUDRCA1
- SLUDRRMM
- SLUDRTLMM
- SLUDRSMC
- SLUDRZAR

These routines are included in the SEALINK library generated during ELS installation. The data returned from these routines is used to format the SMC scratch extract file.

---

### SLUDRCA1

The SLUDRCA1 routine is called to read the CA-1 Tape Management Catalog (TMC) when CA-1 is defined as the tape management system. SLUDRCA1 utilizes CA-1 macros to map the layout of the CA-1 TMC.

The macro names which map the CA-1 TMC have changed from Release 4.9 to Release 5.0. Both macros are located at the end of the SLUDRCA1 routine with the CA-1 Release 4.9 macro as a comment. The version of SLUDRCA1 supplied in SAMPLIB utilizes CA-1 Release 5.0 macro and was assembled using this macro.

- If you are using CA-1 Release 4.9 or earlier, you must comment out the Release 5.0 macro, remove the asterisk in column 1 of the Release 4.9 macro, and reassemble this module. Make sure the appropriate CA-1 macro library is used in the assemble SYSLIB concatenation.
- If you are running CA-1 Release 5.0 without any local modifications, this module does not need to be reassembled and nothing further must be done to this module. If you have local modifications, you must reassemble this module.

## SLUDRRMM

The SLUDRRMM routine is called to read the DFSMSrmm report extract file when DFSMSrmm is defined as the tape management system. SLUDRRMM uses the DFSMSrmm EDGRVEXT macro to map the layout of the report extract file.

Fields read in the extract file include:

- RVTYPE (record type)
- RRVOLSER (volser number)
- RVLCDATE (last change date)
- RVNAME (unit type)
- RVSTATUS (volume status)
- RVEXPDT (volume expiration date)
- RVEXPDTO (volume original expiration date)
- RVLABEL (volume label type).

SLUDRRMM processes the extract and passes the volume record information to SLUCONDB, which builds scratch card images to be input to SLUADMIN. Volume scratch status (scratch/nonscratch) is then updated in the CDS for each volume record in the extract file.

Dates on the RMM report must be in Julian date format (EDGHSKP run with PARM 'DATEFORM(J)'). Tapes listed on the RMM report without expiration dates are skipped by SLUDRRMM.

---

## SLUDRSMC

The SLUDRSMC routine is called to read the extract file created by the SMCUDBX utility from a client tape management system. This file includes one record for every scratch volume extracted that contains the volume serial number and the time of the extract run.

During execution, correct scratch synchronization is provided by matching the time (in GMT format) of the scratch extract run with the volume's "last select time." Any volume selected after the scratch selection run is skipped in SLUCONDB processing.

---

## SLUDRTL

The SLUDRTL routine is called to read the CA-DYNAM/TLMS Volume Master File (VMF) when CA-DYNAM/TLMS is defined as the tape management system. SLUDRTL utilizes a CA-DYNAM/TLMS COPY member to map the layout of the VMF.

SLUDRTL must be re-assembled if you are running TLMS Release 5.4 or if you have local modifications. If you re-assemble this module, make sure the appropriate CA-DYNAM/TLMS source library is used in the assemble SYSLIB concatenation.



---

# SLUDRZAR

The SLUDRZAR routine is called to invoke an application programming interface (API) to read Zara's database when Zara is defined as the tape management system.



# Glossary

---

This glossary defines terms and abbreviations used in this publication.

---

## A

**abnormal end of task (abend)** A software or hardware problem that terminates a computer processing task.

**access method** A technique for moving data between processor storage and input/output devices.

**ACSid** A method used in the LIBGEN process to identify ACSs by using decimal digits, 00 to 99.

**ACS** *See* Automated Cartridge System.

**ACS library** A library is composed of one or more Automated Cartridge Systems (ACSs), attached cartridge drives, and cartridges residing in the ACSs.

**ACS routine** An SMS term, referring to automatic class selection routine. Not to be confused with the HSC term, ACS, referring to automatic cartridge system.

**address** Coded representation of hardware id, or the destination or origination of data.

**allocation** The assignment of resources to a specific task.

**AMT** Automatic Migration Threshold.

**APF** Authorized Program Facility.

**APPL** VTAM APPLID definition for the HSC.

**archiving** The storage of backup files and associated journals, usually for a given period of time.

**asynchronous transmission** Character-oriented data transmission (as distinct from IBM's block-mode transmission).

**audit** A VSM audit (which is not the same as an HSC audit) reconstructs VTV and MVC information.

**Automated Cartridge System (ACS)** A fully-automated, cartridge storage and retrieval library subsystem consisting of one or more Library Storage Modules (LSMs) connected by pass-thru ports.

**Automated Cartridge System Library Software (ACSL)** The library control software, which runs in the UNIX®-based Library Control System.

**automatic mode** A relationship between an LSM and all attached hosts. LSMs operating in automatic mode handle cartridges without operator intervention. This is the normal operating mode of an LSM that has been modified online. The opposite situation is “manual mode.” *See* manual mode.

**automatic migration** Migrating VTVs to MVCs that is automatically initiated and controlled by VSM.

**automatic migration threshold (AMT)** AMT values are percentage values that determine when virtual tape volume migration begins and ends. VTV migration begins when the VTSS buffer reaches the high AMT and ends when the buffer reaches or falls below the low AMT. These thresholds apply to all VTSSs.

**automatic recall** Recalling VTVs to the VTSS that is automatically initiated and controlled by VSM.

**automatic reclaim** Reclaiming MVC space that is automatically initiated and controlled by VSM.

---

## B

**back-end capacity** The capacity of the VTSS disk buffer, in bytes, as defined in disk arrays excluding space for system overhead.

**bar code** A code consisting of a series of bars of varying widths. This code appears on the external label attached to the spine of a cartridge and is equivalent to the volume serial number (volser). This code is read by the robot’s machine vision system.

**BISYNC** Binary Synchronous Communications. An early low-level protocol developed by IBM and used to transmit data on a synchronous communications link. It is a form of data transmission in which synchronization of characters is controlled by timing signals generated at the sending and receiving stations.

**block** A collection of contiguous records recorded as a unit. Blocks are separated by interblock gaps, and each block may contain one or more records.

**buffer** A routine or storage used to compensate for a difference in rate of data flow, or time of occurrence of events, when transferring data from one device to another.

---

## C

**CAP** *See* Cartridge Access Port.

**capacity** *See* media capacity.

**CAPid** A CAPid uniquely defines the location of a CAP by the LSM on which it resides. A CAPid is of the form "AA:LL:CC" where "AA:LL" is the LSMid and "CC" is the two digit CAP number.

**cartridge** The plastic housing around the tape. It is approximately 4 inches (100 mm) by 5 inches (125 mm) by 1 inch (25 mm). The tape is threaded automatically when loaded in a transport. A plastic leader block is attached to the tape for automatic threading. The spine of the cartridge contains an OCR/Bar Code label listing the VOLSER (tape volume identifier).

**Cartridge Access Port (CAP)** An assembly that allows several cartridges to be inserted into or ejected from an LSM without human entry into the LSM.

**cartridge drive (CD)** A hardware device containing two or four cartridge transports and associated power and pneumatic supplies.

**cartridge tape I/O driver** Operating system software that issues commands (for example, read, write, and rewind) to cartridge subsystems. It is the software focal point for attaching a particular type of control unit. (An example is Oracle's StorageTek CARTLIB product.)

**cartridge transport** *See* transport.

**CAW** *See* Channel Address Word.

**CDRM** Cross Domain Resource Manager definition (if not using existing CDRMs).

**CDRSC** Cross Domain Resource definition.

**CDS** *See* control data set.

**CE** Channel End.

**cell** A receptacle in the LSM in which a single cartridge is stored.

**CFT** Customer field test.

**CGI** Common Gateway Interface

**channel** A device that connects the host and main storage with the input and output devices' control units. A full-duplex channel has two paths (that is, 2 wires, or one wire with signals at two frequencies). A half-duplex channel requires that one port receives while the other transmits.

**Channel Address Word (CAW)** An area in storage that specifies the location in main storage at which a channel program begins.

**channel-to-channel (CTC)** Refers to the communication (transfer of data) between programs on opposite sides of a channel-to-channel adapter.(I)

**check** Detection of an error condition.

**CI** Converter/Interpreter (JES3).

**client** The ultimate user of the ACS services as provided by the Library Control System.

**client link** The communications link between the LCS and a client.

**client-server** A model of interaction in a distributed system in which a program at one site serves a request to a program at another site and awaits a response. The requesting program is called a client; the program satisfying the request is called a server.

**client system** The system to which the LCS provides an interface to an Oracle StorageTek Automated Cartridge System.

**Client System Component (CSC)** Software that provides an interface between the Client Computing System's operating system and the Oracle StorageTek Library Control System (LCS).

**Clink (cluster link)** The path between a primary VTSS and secondary VTSS in a cluster. The Clink path is used to copy replicate VTVs from the primary to the secondary.

**Cluster** Two VTSSs which are physically cabled together by Clink paths and are defined in CONFIG as a cluster. A cluster consists of a primary and a secondary VTSS. VTVs with the replicate attribute attached will be copied from the primary to the secondary as soon as possible after dismount time.

**coaxial cable** A transmission medium used in data transmissions for networks using synchronous communications, as opposed to twisted-pair, the primary medium for asynchronous RS-232 communications.

**complex** A system composed of other systems, specifically the ACS server system and the client system.

**connected mode** A relationship between a host and an ACS. In this mode, the host and an ACS are capable of communicating (in the sense that at least one station to this ACS is online).

**connection number** The unique identifier on the server for a communications path. The number is assigned by TCP/IP to identify the unique connection between the server node and a specific port on the server, and the client node and a specific port on the client. The connection number exists only as long as the connection exists.

**console** The primary I/O device to control a session on a system.

**control data set (CDS)** The data set used by the host software to control the functions of the automated library. Also called a library database.

**control data set allocation map** A CDS subfile that marks individual blocks as used or free.

**control data set data blocks** CDS blocks that contain information about the library and its configuration or environment.

**control data set directory** A part of the CDS that maps its subdivision into subfiles.

**control data set pointer blocks** CDS blocks that contain pointers to map data blocks belonging to a subfile.

**control data set recovery area** A portion of the CDS reserved for maintaining integrity for updates that affect multiple CDS blocks.

**control data set subfile** A portion of the CDS consisting of Data Blocks and Pointer Blocks containing related information.

**Control Path Adaptor (CPA)** A Bus-Tech, Inc. hardware device that allows communications between a host processor's block multiplexer channel and a local area network.

**Control Unit (CU)** A microprocessor-based unit situated locally between a channel and an I/O device. It translates channel commands into device commands and sends device status to the channel.

**conventional transport** An HSC-controlled transport that is not defined to VSM as an RTD.

**coupling facility** A special logical partition that provides high-speed caching, list processing, and locking functions in a sysplex.(I)

**coupling facility channel** A high bandwidth fiber optic channel that provides the high-speed connectivity required for data sharing between a coupling facility and the central processor complexes directly attached to it.(I)

**coupling services** In a sysplex, the functions of XCF that transfer data and status between members of a group residing on one or more MVS systems in the sysplex.(I)

**cross-host recovery** The ability for one host to perform recovery for another host that has failed.

**cross-system coupling facility (XCF)** XCF is a component of MVS that provides functions to support cooperation between authorized programs running within a sysplex.(I)

**CSE** Customer Service Engineer.

**CSI** Consolidated System Inventory.

**CSL** Cartridge Scratch Loader.

**CSRC** Central Support Remote Center (*See* Remote Diagnostics Center)

**CSW** Channel Status Word.

**CTC** Channel-to-channel.

**CU** *See* Control Unit.

---

## D

**DAE** Dump Analysis Elimination.

**DASD** Direct access storage device.

**data** Any representations such as characters or analog quantities to which meaning is, or might be, assigned.

**data class** A collection of allocation and space attributes, defined by the storage administrator, that are used to create a data set.

**data compaction** An algorithmic data-reduction technique that encodes data from the host and stores it in less space than unencoded data. The original data is recovered by an inverse process call decompaction.

**data-compaction ratio** The number of host data bytes divided by the number of encoded bytes. It is variable depending on the characteristics of the data being processed. The more random the data stream, the lower the opportunity to achieve compaction.

**Data Control Block (DCB)** A control block used by access routines in storing and retrieving data.

**Data Path Adapter** A hardware device which translates from a client computing system's data protocol to the data protocol of the Oracle StorageTek Control Unit or IMU. An example is DEC's TC44-AA/BA STI-to-4400 ACS Interconnect.

**data set** A set of records treated as a unit.

**data sharing** The ability of concurrent subsystems or application programs to directly access and change the same data while maintaining data integrity.(I)

**data streaming** A continuous stream of data being transmitted in character or binary-digit form, using a specified format.

**DBU** disk buffer utilization.

**DCB** Data Control Block.

**demand allocation** An MVS term meaning that a user has requested a specific unit.

**demand migration** Migrating VTVs to MVCs that an administrator does with the MIGRATE command or utility.

**demand recall** Recalling VTVs to the VTSS that an administrator does with the RECALL command or utility.

**demand reclaim** Reclaiming MVC space that an administrator does with the RECLAIM command or utility.

**device number** A four-digit hexadecimal number that uniquely identifies a device attached to a processor.

**device preferencing** The process of preferring one 36-track transport type over another 36-track transport type.

**device separation** *See* drive exclusion.

**DFSMS** Data Facility Storage Management Subsystem.



**direct access storage device (DASD)** IBM's term for a disk drive storage device.

**directed allocation** *See* drive prioritization.

**disconnected mode** A relationship between a host and an ACS. In this mode, the host and the ACS are not capable of communicating (there are no online stations to this ACS).

**disk buffer utilization (DBU)**. The ratio of used to total VTSS buffer capacity.

**DOMed** Pertaining to a console message that was previously highlighted during execution, but is now at normal intensity.

**dotted-decimal notation** The syntactic representation of a 32-bit integer that consists of four 8-bit numbers written in base ten with periods (dots) separating them. In TCP/IP descriptions, dotted-decimal notation is used for Internet addresses.

**drain** The deletion of data from an MVC. May be accompanied by a "virtual" eject to prevent the MVC from being reused.

**drive exclusion** (previously referred to as *device separation*) refers to the SMC function of excluding drives for an allocation request based on SMC exclusion criteria.

**drive loaded** A condition of a tape drive in which a tape cartridge has been inserted in the drive, and the tape has been threaded to the beginning-of-tape position.

**drive panel** An LSM wall containing tape transports. The drive panel for a T9840 transport can contain either 10 or 20 transports. The drive panel for a non-T9840 transport can contain a maximum of 4 transports.

**drive prioritization** (previously referred to as *directed allocation*) refers to the SMC function of influencing selection of a particular drive based on allocation criteria, including volume location.

**Dual LMU** A hardware/microcode feature that provides a redundant LMU capability.

**dump** A printed representation of the contents of main storage at time *t*. This representation is used for debugging purposes.

**Dynamic Device Reconfiguration (DDR)** A facility that allows a demountable volume to be moved, and repositioned if necessary, without abnormally terminating the job or repeating the initial program load procedure.

**dynamic server switching** The capability of switching server processors when a system failure occurs on the active server.

---

## E

**ECART** Enhanced Capacity Cartridge.

**EDL** *See* eligible device list.

**eligible device list** A group of tape drives that are available to satisfy an allocation request.

**enhanced CAP** An enhanced CAP contains two forty-cell magazine-style CAPs and a one-cell priority CAP (PCAP). Each forty-cell CAP holds four removable magazines of ten cells each. An LSM access door with an enhanced CAP contains no cell locations for storing cartridges. An enhanced CAP is ordered as Feature Number CC80. (*see also*, Cartridge Access Port (CAP), standard CAP, WolfCreek CAP, WolfCreek optional CAP.)

**Effective Recording Density** The number of user bytes per unit of length of the recording medium.

**eject** The LSM robot places a cartridge in a Cartridge Access Port (CAP) so the operator can remove it from the LSM.

**Enhanced Capacity Cartridge** A cartridge that has a length of 1100 feet and can be used only on 36-track transports (i.e., 4490, 9490, and 9490EE).

**Enterprise Systems Connection (ESCON)** A set of products and services that provides a dynamically connected environment using optical cables as a transmission medium.(I)

**EOT** End-of-Tape marker.

**EPO** Emergency Power Off.

**ERDS** Error Recording Data Set.

**EREP** Environmental Recording, Editing, Printing.

**ERP** Error recovery procedures.

**error codes (EC)** Numeric codes displayed by messages indicating the type of problem that caused an error.

**error recovery procedures (ERP)** Procedures designed to help isolate and, where possible, to recover from errors in equipment.

**ESCON** Enterprise Systems Connection.

**esoteric name** The name assigned to transports that have the same device type.

**Ethernet** One LAN architecture using a bus topology that allows a variety of computers to be connected to a common shielded coaxial spine. The Ethernet architecture is similar to the IEEE 802.3 standard.

**event control block (ECB)** Provides an area for a completion code to be stored when an operation has completed.

**ExPR** Expert Performance Reporter.

**Expert Performance Reporter** Expert Performance Reporter collects performance data and generates reports about Oracle StorageTek Nearline ACSs and VTSS status and performance. It has an MVS component and a PC component.

---

## F

**file** A set of related records treated as a unit.

**file protected** Pertaining to a tape volume from which data can be read only. Data cannot be written on or erased from the tape.

**File Transfer Protocol (FTP)** A TCP/IP command that provides a way to transfer files between machines connected through TCP/IP.

**foreign socket** One of two end-points in a TCP/IP connection-oriented protocol. Specifies the address of a foreign host that can connect to the server.

**format** The arrangement or layout of data on a data medium.

---

## G

**GB** 1,073,741,834 bytes of storage

**GDG (Generation Data Group)** An MVS data set naming convention. Sequence numbers are appended to the basic data set name to track the generations created for that data set.

**GTF (Generalized Trace Facility)** An MVS facility used to trace software functions and events.

---

## H

**handshake** A flow-of-control signal sent by one process to another.

**HDA** Head/disk assembly.

**helical cartridge** A high capacity, helical scan cartridge that can hold up to 50GB of uncompressed data. This cartridge can be used only on RedWood (SD-3) transports.

**host computer** A computer that controls a network of computers.

**Host Software Component (HSC)** Software running on the Library Control System processor that controls the functions of the ACS.

**HSM** Hierarchical Storage Manager.

**HTTP** Hypertext Transfer Protocol.

**HWS** High Watermark Setup. Relates to chains set up for tape transport allocation in JES3.

---

# I

**IEEE 802.3** A standard produced by the IEEE and accepted worldwide for local area networks using CSMA/CD (Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection).

**ICRC** See Improved Cartridge Recording Capability.

**Improved Cartridge Recording Capability (ICRC)** A compression and compaction feature that increases the amount of data that can be stored on a 1/2-inch cartridge.

**ID** Identifier or identification.

**IDAX (Interpreter Dynamic Allocation Exit)** This is a subfunction of the DFSMS/MVS subsystem request (SSREQ 55) that the MVS JCL Interpreter and dynamic allocation functions issue for calling DFSMS ACS routines for management of the data set requested.

**IML** See Initial Microprogram Load.

**index** a function performed by the cartridge loader that moves cartridges down the input or output stack one cartridge position. A loader can perform multiple consecutive indexes.

**Initial Microprogram Load (IML)** A process that activates a machine reset.

**initial program load (IPL)** A process that activates a machine reset.

**Interactive Storage Management Facility** A series of applications for defining DFSMS/MVS storage groups and classes.

**Internet** A collection of networks using TCP/IP that functions as a virtual network.

**Internet address** The numbering system used to specify a network or host on that network for TCP/IP communications. Standard Internet address notation is dotted-decimal format.

**Internet Protocol (IP)** Formal description of messages and rules two networks use to exchange messages.

**ISMF** Interactive Storage Management Facility.

**IVP Installation Verification Programs.** A package of programs that is run by a user after the library is installed in order to verify that the library is functioning properly.

---

## J

**JCL** *See* Job Control Language.

**JES** Job entry subsystem.(I)

**JES2** An MVS subsystem that receives jobs into the system, converts them to internal format, selects them for execution, processes their output, and purges them from the system. In an installation with more than one processor, each JES2 processor independently controls its job input, scheduling, and output processing. *See also* JES3.(I)

**JES3** An MVS subsystem that receives jobs into the system, converts them to internal format, selects them for execution, processes their output, and purges them from the system. In complexes that have several loosely coupled processing units, the JES3 program manages processors so that the global processor exercises centralized control over the local processors and distributes jobs to them via a common job queue. *See also* JES2.(I)

**job control language** A problem oriented language designed to describe a job's processing requirements to an operating system.

**journal** The log associated with journaling. The log (stored in a data set) contains a record of completed work and changes to the control data set since the last backup was created.

**journaling** A technique for recovery that involves creating a backup control data set and maintaining a log of all changes (transactions) to that data set.

---

## L

**LAN** *See* local area network.

**LCS** *See* Library Control System.

**LCS processor console** The Library Control System processor console is used to control the VM operating system (for the VM-based LCS).

**LCU** *See* Library Control Unit.

**LIBGEN** The process of defining the configuration of a library to the HSC.

**library** *See* TapePlex.

**library cartridge transport** *See* transport.

**library complex** A library complex consists of one HSC Control Data Set (CDS) and may contain up to 256 Automatic Cartridge Systems (ACSs), each of which may contain up to 24 Library Storage Modules (LSMs).

**library control component** Software that controls the mounting and dismounting of cartridges in an ACS.

**library control platform** The hardware and software that provides the proper environment for the Library Control System.

**library control processor** Properly configured computer hardware that supports the operation of the Library Control System.

**Library Control Software** A library control component, the client system interface, and library utilities.

**Library Control System (LCS)** The library control platform and the Library Control Software.

**Library Control Unit (LCU)** The portion of an LSM that controls the movements of the robot.

**library database** A file or data set containing information about the location and status of the removable media volumes, such as cell location, scratch status. Also called a control data set (CDS).

**library drive** A cartridge drive in the ACS, as distinct from a stand-alone cartridge drive.

**Library Management Unit (LMU)** A hardware and software product that coordinates the activities of one or more LSMs/LCUs.

**library mode** The operation of a 4480 Cartridge Subsystem as part of a 4400 Automated Cartridge System, as opposed to manual mode, in which the operator inserts cartridges into the transports. *See* manual mode.

**LibraryStation** Software that allows MVS hosts to share ACS facilities with client systems.

**Library Storage Module (LSM)** The standard LSM (4410) a twelve-sided structure with storage space for up to around 6000 cartridges. It also contains a free-standing, vision-assisted robot that moves the cartridges between their storage cells and attached transports. *See* also PowderHorn, SL8500, and WolfCreek.

**LMU** *See* Library Management Unit.

**local area network (LAN)** A network in a small (local) geographic area.

**local port** The designation of a given application or process among many that are available for a TCP/IP-capable host processor.

**local socket** The address combination of a TCP/IP-capable host's network address and a specific port for an application process.

**logical ejection** The process of removing a volume from the control data set without physically ejecting it from its LSM location.

**logical port (LP)** CLS software that interfaces with the client system. The CLSLP is one of the software components used to pass data between the client system and the VM/HSC.

**LP** *See* logical port.

**LSM** *See* Library Storage Module.

**LSMid** An LSMid is composed of the ACSid joined to (concatenated with) the LSM number.

**LSM number** A method used to identify an LSM. An LSM number is the result of defining the SLIACS macro LSM parameter during a LIBGEN. The first LSM listed in this parameter acquires the LSM number of 00 (decimal) the second LSM listed acquires a number of 01, and so forth, until all LSMs are identified (up to a maximum of 99).

---

## M

**management class** A collection of management attributes, assigned by the storage administrator, that are used to control the allocation and use of space by a data set. Note that SMS Management Classes are different from VSM Management Classes.

**manual mode** Operation of a cartridge drive apart from an ACS. *See* library mode.

**master LMU** The LMU currently controlling the functional work of the ACS in a dual LMU configuration.

**media capacity** The amount of data that can be contained on storage media and expressed in bytes of data.

**migration** The movement of VTVs from the VTSS to the RTD where the VTVs are stacked onto MVCs. *See automatic migration and demand migration.*

**mixed configuration** A configuration that contains different types of cartridge drives in both manual and library modes.

**modem** A device that enables digital data to be transmitted over an analog transmission facility.

**multi-client** The environment where more than one (homogenous or heterogeneous) client system is connected to one LCS.

**Multi-Volume Cartridge (MVC)** A physical tape cartridge residing in an LSM that either contains migrated virtual tape volumes (VTVs) or is identified as a volume that can be selected for VTV stacking.

**MVS system console** The MVS/CSC provides an operator interface through the MVS system console.

---

## O

**OCR label** Optical character recognition label. An external label attached to the spine of a cartridge that is both human and machine readable.

**operator console** In this document, the operator console refers to the MVS client system console.

**operating system (OS)** Software that controls the execution of programs that facilitate overall system operation.

---

## P

**PARMLIB control statements** Parameter library (PARMLIB) control statements allow you statically specify various operation parameters which take effect at HSC initialization. Identifying your system requirements and then specifying the appropriate control statements permits you to customize the HSC to your data center.

**Pass-thru Port (PTP)** A mechanism that allows a cartridge to be passed from one LSM to another in a multiple LSM ACS.

**physical port** The communications hardware required to support a server/client link.

**physical volume** A physically bound unit of data file media. *See* cartridge.

**PowderHorn (9310)** The high-performance version of the standard LSM.

**pre-configured package** A storage server package including all hardware, software, and configuration parameter settings delivered by the vendor.

**primary** One of two VTSSs in a cluster which is designated in CONFIG as the primary. During normal operations the primary services the host workload and copies replicate VTVs to the secondary.

**product change request (PCR)** A request for enhancement to a product. Normally, this request comes from a client, but may come from Oracle.

**program temporary fix (PTF)** A software release designed to remedy one or a series of defects.

**program update tape (PUT)** One or more tapes containing updates to, or new versions of, the MVS/CSC system software.

**protocol** A formal description of message formats and the rules two or more machines must follow to exchange these messages.

**HSC** *See* Host Software Component.

**PTF** *See* Program Temporary Fix.

**PTP** *See* pass-thru port.

**PUT** *See* Program Update Tape.



---

## R

**RACF** See Resource Access Control Facility.

**Real Tape Drive (RTD)** The physical transport attached to the LSM. The transport has a data path to a VTSS and may optionally have a data path to MVS or to another VTSS.

**recall** The movement of VTVs from the MVC back to the VTSS. May be automatic or on demand.

**reclaim** Refers to MVC space reclamation. For automatic and demand reclamation, VTCS uses the amount of fragmented free space on the MVC and the amount of VTV data that would have to be moved to determine if space reclamation is justified.

**reconciliation** An automatic process initiated when a cluster is reestablished after the primary or secondary has been offline. Reconciliation ensures that the contents of the primary and secondary are identical with respect to replicate VTVs.

**recovery** Automatic or manual procedures to resolve problems in the server system.

**reel-id** Identifier of a specific tape volume. Equivalent to volume serial number (VOLSER).

**replication** Copying a replicate VTV from the primary VTSS to the secondary VTSS in a cluster. When replication completes, there are two copies of the VTV, one in the primary and one in the secondary.

**replicate VTV** A VTV which has had the replicate attribute attached to it by a management class statement.

**request** Term used to refer to commands issued to the 4400 ACS to perform a tape-related function.

**Resource Access Control Facility (RACF)** Security software controlling access to data sets.

**RTD** See real tape drive.

---

## S

**scratch tape** A tape that is available to any user because it is not owned.

**scratch tape subpool** A defined subset of all scratch tapes. Subpools are composed of one or more ranges of volumes with similar physical characteristics (type of volume—reel or cartridge, reel size, length, physical location, and so on). Some installations may also subdivide their scratch pools by other characteristics such as label type.

**SD-3** The Oracle StorageTek helical cartridge transport. Also known as RedWood.

**secondary** One of two VTSSs in a cluster which is designated in CONFIG as the secondary. During normal operations the secondary receives copies of replicate VTVs, stores them, and makes a migration copy on an MVC as soon as possible.

**secondary recording** A technique for recovery involving maintaining both a control data set and a copy (secondary) of the control data set.

**SER** Software Enhancement Request.

**server** An NCS library control system such as HSC. In SMC a server is represented by a named SERVER path to a named TAPEPLEX. While the HTTP server software component is required as the middle ware on the remote host, the server, as far as SMC is concerned is the NCS library control system operating on the remote host.

**Small Programming Enhancement (SPE)** A supplement to a released program that can affect several products or components.

**SMP** System Modification Program.

**SMP/E** System Modification Program Extended.

**SMS** System Managed Storage.

**socket** A unique address on a network plus a node address plus the id of one specific application on a specific network. An abstraction used by TCP/IP.

**SPE** Small Programming Enhancement.

**standard capacity cartridge** A cartridge that can be used on any longitudinal transport (i.e., 4480, 4490, 9490, or 9490EE).

**standby** The status of a station that has been varied online but is connected to the standby LMU of a dual LMU ACS.

**standby LMU** The redundant LMU in a dual LMU configuration that is ready to take over in case of a Master LMU failure or when the operator issues a SWITCH command.

**station** A hardware path between the host computer and an LMU over which the VM/HSC and LMU send control information.

**storage class** A named list of storage attributes that identify performance goals and availability requirements for a data set. Note that SMS Storage Classes are different from VSM Storage Classes.

**storage group** A collection of storage volumes and attributes defined by the storage administrator. Note that this is an SMS concept, not a VSM concept.

**storage server** A set of hardware and software products designed to enable heterogeneous computer systems to use automated tape cartridge library services.

**Storage Management Component (SMC)** Software interface between IBM's z/OS operating system and Oracle StorageTek real and virtual tape hardware. SMC performs the allocation processing, message handling, and SMS processing for the ELS solution.

**switchover** The assumption of master LMU function by the standby LMU.

**synchronous** *See* BISYNC.

**synchronous LAN** Local area network built on synchronous communications.

**sysplex** A set of MVS systems communicating and cooperating with each other through certain multisystem hardware components and software services to process customer workloads.(I)

**Systems Network Architecture (SNA)** A description of the logical structure, formats, protocols, and operational sequences for transmitting information units through and controlling the configuration and operation of networks.

---

## T

**tape drive** A tape processing device consisting of up to four transports in a cabinet. A drive can refer to an individual transport.

**tape library management system (TLMS)** TLMS, as used in this document, refers to any tape library management system, not to CA-1.

**TapePlex** (formerly "library"), a single Oracle StorageTek hardware configuration, normally represented by a single HSC Control Data Set (CDS). A TapePlex may contain multiple Automated Cartridge Systems (ACSs) and Virtual Tape Storage Subsystems (VTSSs).

**TCP/IP** Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol.

**trace event type** Types of event traced through the system when tracing is enabled.

**trace file** A file that contains information useful for debugging the system.

**transaction** A specific set of input that triggers the execution of a specific process.

**Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)** An inter-network standard protocol that provides a full-duplex stream service.

**transport** An electro-mechanical device used to thread, position, and read or write from a tape.

---

## U

**UCB** Unit Control Block.

**userid** Sometimes referred to as the VM userid, the userid is the name that identifies a specific “virtual machine” user or client.

**utility** Program that performs a function ancillary to the chief function(s) of a computer system.

---

## V

**virtual machine (VM)** A functional simulation of a computer and its associated devices. Each virtual machine is controlled by a suitable operating system.

**virtual storage** A feature of the OS where main storage requirements are allocated by segments (or pages) as needed by programs, thus creating the apparent existence of unlimited or virtual storage.

**Virtual Storage Manager (VSM)** A storage solution that virtualizes volumes and transports in a VTSS buffer in order to improve media and transport use. The hardware includes VTSS, which is the DASD buffer, and RTDs. The software includes VTCS, an HSC-based host software, and VTSS microcode.

**Virtual Tape Control System (VTCS)** The primary host code that controls activity and information about VTSSs, VTVs, RTDs, and MVCs.

**Virtual Tape Drive (VTD)** An emulation of a physical transport in the VTSS that looks like a physical tape transport to MVS. The data written to a VTD is really being written to DASD. The VTSS has 64 VTDs that do virtual mounts of VTVs.

**Virtual Tape Storage Subsystem (VTSS)** The DASD buffer containing virtual volumes (VTVs) and virtual drives (VTDs). The VTSS is a STK RAID 6 hardware device with microcode that enables transport emulation. The RAID device can read and write “tape” data from/to disk, and can read and write the data from/to an RTD.

**Virtual Tape Volume (VTV)** A portion of the DASD buffer that appears to the operating system as a real tape volume. Data is written to and read from the VTV, and the VTV can be migrated to and recalled from real tape.

**Virtual Telecommunications Access Method (VTAM)** IBM host-resident communications software that serves as a common interface for communications.

**virtual thumbwheel** An HSC feature that allows read-only access to a volume that is not physically write-protected.

**volume** A tape cartridge (data carrier) that is mounted or dismounted as a unit.

**volume serial number (VOLSER)** An identifier of a physical volume.

**VSM** *See* Virtual Storage Manager.

**VTCS** *See* Virtual Tape Control System.

**VTD** *See* virtual tape drive.

---

## W

**WolfCreek (9360)** The high-performance LSM with a smaller capacity than the standard LSM.

**Write Tape Mark (WTM)** The operation performed to record a special magnetic mark on tape. The mark identifies a specific location on the tape.

**WTM** *See* Write Tape Mark.

**WTO** Write-to-Operator.

**WTOR** Write-to-Operator with reply.

---

## X

**XCF** Cross-system coupling facility.

---

## Z

**ZCART** An extended-enhanced cartridge that uses a thinner media to provide twice the capacity of the enhanced capacity (ECART) cartridge. This cartridge has a length of 2200 feet and can be used only on TimberLine 9490EE 36-track transports.

---

# Numerics

**802.3** See IEEE 802.3.

**3270** IBM synchronous, block-mode, half-duplex terminals preferred for use with IBM 370 and related types of machine.

**3270 protocol** A telecommunications protocol that supports networks of 327x CRTs on IBM mainframes.

**3274** Terminal control unit used on the ACS for processor-to-LMU communications.

**3480** IBM's 18-track half-inch cartridge tape drive model.

**3490** IBM's 36-track half-inch cartridge tape drive model.

**3590** IBM's newest cartridge tape drive model that supports 128-track recording technique.

**4400 Automated Cartridge System (ACS)** A fully automated, cartridge-based, 18-track storage and retrieval library. A 4400 ACS consists of 1 to 256 LMUs with each LMU connected to from 1 to 24 LSMs.

**4410** The standard Library Storage Module (LSM).

**4411** Library Control Unit (LCU).

**4480** The StorageTek 18-track 1/2-inch cartridge transport.

**4480 Cartridge Subsystem** The StorageTek 4480 Cartridge Subsystem consists of a control unit (CU) plus cartridge drives (CDs).

**4490** The StorageTek 36-track long-tape cartridge transport with ESCON support. Also known as Silverton.

**4780** Same as a 4480, but is used for attachment to certain non-IBM computers.

**8380** StorageTek DASD system.

**9310** The PowderHorn, a high-performance version of the standard LSM (4410)

**9360** The WolfCreek, a high-performance LSM with a smaller capacity than the standard LSM (4410).

**9490** The StorageTek 36-track cartridge transport. Also known as TimberLine.

**9490EE** The StorageTek 36-track cartridge transport. Also known as TimberLine EE.

**9740** A small, four-sided StorageTek library that supports large-style cartridge transports. This library can be configured to contain either 326 cartridges or 494 cartridges.

**SL3000** The StorageTek high performance library scalable from 200 to 3,000 cartridge slots.

**SL8500** The StorageTek high performance library scalable from 29 terabytes to 70 petabytes with up to 70,000 tape slots.

**T9840A** The StorageTek access-centric cartridge transport capable of reading and writing 9840A cartridges.

**T9840B** The StorageTek access-centric cartridge transport capable of reading and writing T9840B cartridges.

**T9840C** The StorageTek access-centric cartridge transport capable of reading and writing T9840C cartridges.

**T9840D** The StorageTek access-centric cartridge transport capable of reading and writing T9840D cartridges.

**T9940A** The StorageTek capacity-centric cartridge transport capable of reading and writing 60GB T9940A cartridges.

**T9940B** The StorageTek capacity-centric cartridge transport capable of reading and writing 200GB T9940B cartridges.

**T10000** The StorageTek high-capacity cartridge transport capable of reading and writing 120GB or 500GB T10000A cartridges.

**T10000B** The StorageTek high-capacity cartridge transport capable of reading and writing 240GB or 1TB T10000B cartridges.

**T10000C** The StorageTek high-capacity cartridge transport capable of reading and writing 1TB or 5TB T10000C cartridges.





# Index

---

## A

### ACTivities command

- additional JCL requirements, 180
- description, 178
- parameters, 179
- syntax, 178

### ACTMVCgn command

- additional JCL requirements, 182
- description, 181
- parameters, 182
- syntax, 181

### ALLOCDef command

- description, 64
- parameters, 66
- syntax, 65

### ALLOCJob command

- description, 72
- parameters, 73
- syntax, 72

### ARCHive command

- description, 183
- parameters, 184
- reports, 185
- syntax, 183

### AUDit command

- description, 189
- report, 195
- report messages, 196
- syntax, 190

## B

### BACKup command

- additional JCL requirements, 200
- description, 199
- parameters, 199
- syntax, 199

balancing scratch volumes in LSM, 546

Base service level, initiating with the SRVlev command, 594

## C

### CANcel command

description, 201

parameters, 201

syntax, 201

### CAPPref command

description, 202

parameters, 203

syntax, 202

### cartridges

- controlling whether a scratch cartridge is automatically, 477
- displaying location, 350

### CDs command

description, 205

parameters, 206

syntax, 205

### CDSDData command

description, 208

parameters, 209

syntax, 208

### CDSDEF command

description, 210

parameters, 211

syntax, 210

### CLeaen command

description, 212

parameters, 212

syntax, 212

### CMDDef command

description, 75

parameters, 75

syntax, 75

Column values, 733

### COMMPath command

description, 213

parameters, 214

syntax, 214

### COMMtest command

description, 77

parameters, 78

syntax, 77

communications, VTAM, 215

### CONFIg command

- description, 217
- parameters, 218
- syntax, 217
- CLINK statement
  - description, 240
  - parameters, 241
  - syntax, 240
- CLUSTER statement
  - description, 239
  - parameters, 239
  - syntax, 239
- GLOBAL statement
  - description, 220
  - parameters, 221
  - syntax, 220
- HOST statement
  - description, 243
  - parameters, 243
  - syntax, 243
- MVCVOL statement
  - description, 231
- RECLAIM statement
  - description, 228
  - parameters, 228
  - syntax, 228
- RTD statement
  - description, 235
  - parameters, 235
  - syntax, 235
- STORMNGR statement
  - description, 244
  - parameters, 244
  - syntax, 244
- TAPEPLEX statement
  - description, 245
  - parameters, 245
  - syntax, 245
- VTD statement
  - description, 237
  - parameters, 237
  - syntax, 237
- VTSS statement
  - description, 232
  - parameters, 232
  - syntax, 232
- VTVOL statement
  - description, 230
- CONSolid command
  - description, 247
  - parameters, 248
  - reports, 249
  - syntax, 247
- control data set (CDS)
  - disabling, 207
  - enabling, 206
- conventions
  - control statements, 44

- typographic, 40

## D

- DEComp command
  - description, 250
  - output, 251
  - parameters, 250
  - syntax, 250
- DELETSCR command
  - additional JCL requirements, 255
  - description, 253
  - parameters, 254
  - report, 255
  - syntax, 253
- DIRBLD command
  - description, 256
  - parameters, 256
  - syntax, 256
- DISMount command
  - description, 257
  - parameters, 258
  - syntax, 257
- Display command (HSC/VTCS)
  - overview, 259
- Display AcS
  - description, 261
  - parameters, 261
  - syntax, 261
- Display ACTive
  - description, 263
  - output, 263
  - parameters, 263
  - syntax, 263
- Display ALI
  - description, 270
  - syntax, 270
- Display Cap
  - description, 271
  - output, 272
  - parameters, 271
  - syntax, 271
- Display CDS
  - description, 273
  - syntax, 273
- Display CLInk
  - description, 274
  - output, 274
  - syntax, 274
- Display CLUster
  - description, 277
  - output, 277
  - syntax, 277
- Display CMD
  - description, 280
  - parameters, 280
  - syntax, 280

- Display COMMPath
  - description, 281
  - parameters, 281
  - syntax, 281
- Display CONFIG
  - description, 282
  - output, 283
  - syntax, 282
- Display DRIVE\_INFO
  - description, 289
  - parameters, 290
  - syntax, 289
- Display DRives
  - description, 286
  - parameters, 287
  - syntax, 286
- Display EXceptns
  - description, 292
  - output, 293
  - parameters, 292
  - syntax, 292
- Display LMUPDEF
  - description, 295
  - syntax, 295
- Display LOCKs
  - description, 296
  - output, 296
  - syntax, 296
- Display Lsm
  - description, 298
  - output, 299
  - parameters, 298
  - syntax, 298
- Display Message
  - description, 300
  - parameters, 300
  - syntax, 300
- Display MGMTDEF
  - description, 301
  - syntax, 301
- Display MIGrate
  - description, 302
  - output, 304
  - parameters, 302
  - syntax, 302
- Display MNTD
  - description, 307
  - syntax, 307
- Display MONitor
  - description, 308
  - parameters, 308
  - syntax, 308
- Display MVC
  - description, 309
  - output, 310
  - parameters, 309
  - syntax, 309
- Display MVCPool
  - description, 315
  - output, 316
  - parameters, 315
  - syntax, 315
- Display OPTion
  - description, 318
  - syntax, 318
- Display PATH
  - description, 319
  - output, 320
  - syntax, 319
- Display Queue
  - description, 322
  - parameters, 322
  - syntax, 322
- Display REPlicat
  - description, 323
  - output, 324
  - syntax, 323
- Display Requests
  - description, 325
  - syntax, 325
- Display RTD
  - description, 326
  - output, 327
  - parameters, 326
  - syntax, 326
- Display SCRatch
  - description, 330
  - parameters, 330
  - syntax, 330
- Display SEN
  - description, 335
  - events, 336
  - parameters, 335
  - syntax, 335
- Display SERVER
  - description, 337
- Display SRVlev
  - description, 338
  - syntax, 338
- Display Status
  - description, 339
  - output, 339
  - syntax, 339
- Display STORCLas
  - description, 340
  - output, 341
  - parameters, 340
  - syntax, 340
- Display STORMNgr
  - description, 342
  - output, 343
  - syntax, 342
- Display TASKs
  - description, 345

- syntax, 345
- Display THReshld
  - description, 347
  - parameters, 347
  - syntax, 347
- Display Volser
  - description, 350
  - output, 351
  - parameters, 350
  - syntax, 350
- Display VOLUME\_Info
  - description, 352
  - parameters, 352
  - syntax, 352
- Display VSCRatch
  - description, 353
  - syntax, 353
- Display VTD
  - description, 355
  - parameters, 355
  - syntax, 355
- Display VTSS
  - description, 358
  - output, 359
  - parameters, 358
  - syntax, 358
- Display VTV
  - description, 364
  - output, 365
  - parameters, 364
  - syntax, 364
- Display DRive command (SMC)
  - description, 80
  - parameters, 81
  - syntax, 80
- Display RC
  - description, 82
- Display RC command
  - parameters, 83
  - syntax, 82
- Display Volume command (SMC)
  - description, 84
  - parameters, 84
  - syntax, 84
- DRAIn command
  - description, 368
  - parameters, 368
  - syntax, 368
- DRCHKPT command
  - description, 369
  - parameters, 369
  - syntax, 369
- DRIVemap command
  - description, 85
  - parameters, 86
- DRMONitr command

- description, 370
  - parameters, 371
  - syntax, 370
- DRTEST command
  - DRTEST CREATE
    - additional JCL requirements, 377
    - description, 374
    - parameters, 375
    - syntax, 375
  - DRTEST PRIMEprd
    - description, 379
    - syntax, 380
  - DRTEST RESET
    - description, 382
    - syntax, 382
  - DRTEST START
    - description, 383
    - syntax, 383
  - DRTEST STOP
    - description, 384
    - syntax, 384

## E

- EDTOX report, JES3 Configuration, 662
- EETOX report, JES3 Configuration, 660
- EEXPORT command
  - description, 385
- EEXPORTcommand
  - description, 385
  - parameters, 386
  - syntax, 385
- EJect command
  - description, 388
  - parameters, 390
  - syntax, 389
- enable the SEN (Significant Event Notification)
  - facility, 524
- ENter command
  - description, 393
  - parameters, 393
  - syntax, 393
- event notification, enabling, 524
- examples
  - EDTOX report, 662
  - EETOX report, 660
  - EXTOD report, 661
  - EXTOE report, 659
  - EXTON report, 659
- EXECParm command
  - description, 395
  - parameters, 395
  - syntax, 395
- expanding the control data set, 206
- EXPORT command
  - additional JCL requirements, 398

- description, 397
- parameters, 398
- syntax, 397
- EXTOD report, JES3 Configuration, 661
- EXTOE report, JES3 Configuration, 659
- EXTON report, JES3 Configuration, 659

## F

- FMTLOG command
  - additional JCL requirements, 399
  - description, 399
  - syntax, 399
- freeze panel considerations
  - SET SLIDRIVS utility, 571

## H

- Help command
  - description, 87
  - parameters, 87
  - syntax, 87
- HSC
  - control statements, 177
  - operator commands, 177
- HTTP command
  - description, 87, 89
  - parameters, 90
  - syntax, 89

## I

- IDAX command
  - description, 92
  - parameters, 93
  - syntax, 92
- IMPORT command
  - additional JCL requirements, 403
  - description, 400
  - parameters, 401
  - syntax, 401
- INITialize command
  - additional JCL requirements, 407
  - description, 404
  - parameters, 405
  - syntax, 405
- INVENTORY command
  - description, 408
  - parameters, 409
  - reports, 411
  - return codes, 410
  - syntax, 408

## J

- JES3 Configuration Report Utility (SMCUPJS), 658

## L

- LIBGen command

- additional JCL requirements, 413
- description, 412
- output, 414
- syntax, 412

- List command (SMC)

- description, 95
- parameters, 96
- syntax, 95

- LMUPATH control statement

- description, 417
- parameters, 417
- syntax, 417

- LMUPDEF command

- description, 415
- parameters, 416
- syntax, 415

- LOG command

- description, 97
- parameters, 98
- syntax, 98

- LOGUTIL command

- description, 419
- parameters, 420
- syntax, 420

- FOR\_LOSTMVC statement

- description, 422
- parameters, 422
- syntax, 422

- GENAUDIT statement

- description, 424
- parameters, 424
- syntax, 424

- LOCATE\_VTV statement

- description, 425
- parameters, 425
- syntax, 425

- UNDELETE statement

- description, 427
- parameters, 427
- syntax, 427

## M

- Media Type (MEDIA) values, 719

- Media Warranty Life (MWL), 351, 624, 626

- MERGEcds command

- additional JCL requirements, 430
- description, 428
- parameters, 429
- syntax, 428

- MERGMFST command

- additional JCL requirements, 435
- description, 434
- parameters, 434
- syntax, 434

- messages

- AUDit report, 196

- displaying in uppercase or mixed case, 523
  - METAdata command (HSC/VTCS)
    - description, 436
    - parameters, 437
    - syntax, 436
  - METAdata command (SMC)
    - description, 101
    - parameters, 101
    - syntax, 101
  - MGMTclas control statement
    - description, 440
    - parameters, 442
    - syntax, 441
  - MGMTDEF command
    - description, 438
    - parameters, 439
    - syntax, 438
  - MIGrate command
    - description, 470
    - parameters (format 1), 471
    - parameters (format 2), 472
    - syntax (format 1), 470
    - syntax (format 2), 472
  - MIGRSEL control statement
    - description, 451
    - parameters, 451
    - syntax, 451
  - MIGRVTV control statement
    - description, 454
    - parameters, 454, 456
    - syntax, 454
  - MNTD command
    - description, 473
    - parameters, 474
    - syntax, 473
  - MODel Type (MODel) values, 726
  - MODify command
    - description, 479
    - parameters, 480
    - syntax, 480
  - Modify command, MVS, 57
  - MONitor command
    - description, 103
    - parameters, 104
    - syntax, 103
  - Mount command
    - description, 483
    - parameters, 485
    - syntax, 484
  - MOUNTDef command
    - description, 106
    - parameters, 108
    - syntax, 107
  - MOVE command
    - description, 488
    - parameters, 489
    - syntax, 488
  - MSGDef command
    - description, 111
    - parameters, 112
    - syntax, 111
  - MSGJob command
    - description, 114
    - parameters, 115
    - syntax, 114
  - MVCATTR control statement
    - description, 456
    - parameters, 456
    - syntax, 456
  - MVCDRain command
    - description, 491
    - parameters, 492
    - syntax, 491
  - MVCMAINT command
    - additional JCL requirements, 497
    - description, 494
    - parameters, 495
    - reports, 499
    - return codes, 498
    - syntax, 494
  - MVCPLRPT command
    - description, 500
    - parameters, 500
    - reports, 502
    - syntax, 500
  - MVCRPt command
    - additional JCL requirements, 509
    - description, 507
    - parameters, 508
    - reports, 509
    - syntax, 507
- ## N
- native IP support, 240
- ## O
- OFFload command
    - description, 516
  - LOGFILE
    - additional JCL requirements, 518
    - description, 517
    - parameters, 518
    - syntax, 517
  - OPTion command
    - description, 520
    - parameters, 522
    - syntax, 521
  - OPTION TITLE control statement
    - description, 519
    - parameters, 519

syntax, 519

## P

Panel values, 731

PITCOPY command

additional JCL requirements, 527

description, 526

parameters, 526

syntax, 526

POLicy and TAPEREQ Batch Test Utility (SMCUTRQ), 663

POLicy command

description, 117

parameters, 120

syntax, 119

POOLPARM control statement

description, 586

parameters, 587

syntax, 586

programmatic interface

displaying status of move requests, 308

## R

READ command

description, 127

parameters, 127

syntax, 127

RECall command

description, 528

parameters, 529

syntax, 528

RECLaim command

description, 530

parameters, 531

syntax, 530

RECONcil command

description, 533

parameters, 534

reports, 536

syntax, 534

Recording Technique (RECtech) values, 723

RECOVER command

description, 540

parameters, 540

syntax, 540

RELease command

description, 541

parameters, 541

syntax, 541

REPLaceall command

description, 542

output, 542

parameters, 542

syntax, 542

report

VTVMaint command, 633

VTVRPt BASIC command, 636

VTVRPt COPIES command, 640

reports

CONSolid, 249

DELETSR, 255

INVENTORY command, 411

MVCMAINT command, 499

MVCPLRPT command, 502

MVCRPt command, 509

RECONcil command, 536

reports, JES3 Configuration, 659

RESTore command

additional JCL requirements, 544

description, 543

output, 545

parameters, 543

syntax, 543

RESYNChronize command

description, 130

parameters, 130

syntax, 130

return codes

INVENTORY, 410

MVCMAINT, 498

SMC utilities, 648

VTVMaint command, 632

Route command

description, 131

parameters, 132

syntax, 131

Row values, 732

RTV Utility

description, 709

JCL requirements, 712

parameters, 710

report messages, 713

RTV Decompress listing, 718

RTV LISTONLY listing, 717

syntax, 709

## S

SCRATch command

description, 545

output, 545

parameters, 545

syntax, 545

Scratch Conversion Utility (SLUCONDB), 700

scratch subpool 0, 122

SCREdist command

description, 546

parameters, 547

syntax, 547

SENter command

description, 550

- parameters, 550
- syntax, 550
- SERVer command
  - description, 133
  - syntax, 134
- SET command
  - description, 551
- SET CLNPRFX
  - description, 552
  - parameters, 552
  - procedure, 553
  - syntax, 552
- SET COMPRFX
  - description, 554
  - parameters, 554
  - syntax, 554
- SET DRVHOST
  - description, 556
  - parameters, 556
  - syntax, 556
- SET EJCTPAS
  - description, 557
  - parameters, 557
  - syntax, 557
- SET FREEZE
  - description, 558
  - parameters, 558
  - syntax, 558
- SET HOSTID
  - description, 560
  - parameters, 560
  - syntax, 560
- SET HSCLEVel
  - description, 561
  - parameters, 561
- SET LOGFILE
  - description, 562
  - parameters, 563
  - syntax, 562
- SET MAJNAME
  - description, 564
  - parameters, 564
  - syntax, 564
- SET MIGOPT
  - description, 565
  - parameters, 565
  - syntax, 565
- SET NEWHOST
  - description, 567
  - parameters, 567
  - syntax, 567
- SET RMM
  - additional JCL requirements, 569
  - description, 568
  - parameters, 568
  - syntax, 568
- SET SCRLABL
  - description, 569
  - parameters, 569
  - syntax, 569
- SET SLIDRIVS
  - description, 570
  - parameters, 571
  - procedure, 574
  - syntax, 570
- SET SLISTATN
  - description, 575
  - parameters, 575
  - syntax, 575
- SET SMF
  - description, 577
  - parameters, 577
  - syntax, 577
- SET TAPEPlex
  - description, 578
  - parameters, 578
  - syntax, 578
- SET TCHNIQ
  - description, 579
  - parameters, 580
  - procedure, 580
  - syntax, 579
- SET VAULT
  - description, 581
  - parameters, 582
  - syntax, 581
- SET VAULTVOL
  - description, 583
  - parameters, 583
  - syntax, 583
- SET VOLPARM
  - additional JCL requirements, 585
  - description, 584
  - parameters, 585
  - syntax, 584
- Significant Event Notification (SEN) facility
  - enabling, 524
- SIMulate command
  - description, 138
  - output, 140, 141
  - parameters, 139
  - syntax, 139
- SL8500 library
  - auditing panels 0 and 1, 192
- SLICREAT Utility
  - DD statements, 697
  - description, 695
  - executing, 698
  - JCL, 696
  - other uses, 699
  - verifying, 698
- SLSMERGE control statement
  - description, 431



- parameters, 432
- syntax, 431
- SLUADMIN utility
  - definition statements, 687
  - description, 58, 684
  - execution parameters, 685
  - invoking, 684
  - output, 689
  - return codes, 694
- SLUCONDB Utility, 700
- SLUDR\* routines, 735
- SLUDRCA1 routine, 735
- SLUDRRMM routine, 736
- SLUDRSMC routine, 736
- SLUDRTLm routine, 736
- SLUDRZAR routine, 737
- SMCUDBX Utility, 668
- SMCUGTF Utility, 682
- SMCUPJS Utility, 658
- SMCUSIM Utility, 675
- SMCUTRQ Utility, 663
- SMCUUUI Utility, 649
- SMSDef command
  - description, 142
  - parameters, 143
  - syntax, 143
- SRVlev command
  - description, 594
  - parameters, 594
  - syntax, 594
- STOPMN command
  - description, 595
  - parameters, 595
  - syntax, 595
- STORclas control statement
  - description, 458
  - parameters, 458
  - syntax, 458
- STORLST control statement
  - description, 462
  - parameters, 462
  - syntax, 462
- STORMNGR command
  - description, 146
- STORSEL control statement
  - description, 463
  - parameters, 463
  - syntax, 463
- SWitch command
  - description, 596
  - parameters, 597
  - syntax, 597
- syntax
  - ACTivities command, 178

- ACTMVCgn command, 181
- ALLOCDef command, 65
- ALLOCJob command, 72
- ARCHive command, 183
- AUDit command, 190
- BACKup command, 199
- CANcel command, 201
- CAPPref command, 202
- CDs command, 205
- CLean command, 212
- CMDDef command, 75
- COMMPath command, 214
- COMMtest command, 77
- CONFIg CLINK statement, 240
- CONFIg CLUSTER statement, 239
- CONFIg command, 217
- CONFIg GLOBAL statement, 220
- CONFIg HOST statement, 243
- CONFIg RECLAIM, 228
- CONFIg RTD statement, 235
- CONFIg STORMNGR statement, 244
- CONFIg TAPEPLEX statement, 245
- CONFIg VTD statement, 237
- CONFIg VTSS statement, 232
- CONSolid command, 247
- DEComp command, 250
- DELETSR command, 253
- DIRBLD command, 256
- DISMount command, 257
- Display Acs, 261
- Display ACTive command, 263
- Display ALI, 270
- Display Cap command, 271
- Display CDS command, 273
- Display CLink command, 274
- Display CLUster command, 277
- Display CMD command, 280
- Display COMMPath command, 281
- Display CONFIG command, 282
- Display DRive command (SMC), 80
- Display DRIVE\_INFO command, 289
- Display DRives, 286
- Display EXceptns command, 292
- Display LMUPDEF command, 295
- Display LOCKs command, 296
- Display Lsm command, 298
- Display Message, 300
- Display MGMTDEF command, 301
- Display MIGrate command, 302
- Display MNTD command, 307
- Display MONitor command, 308
- Display MVC command, 309
- Display MVCPool command, 315
- Display OPTion command, 318
- Display PATH command, 319
- Display Queue command, 322
- Display RC command, 82

- Display REPLicat command, 323
- Display Requests command, 325
- Display RTD command, 326
- Display SCRatch command, 330
- Display SEN command, 335
- Display SRVlev command, 338
- Display Status command, 339
- Display STORCLas command, 340
- Display STORMNgr command, 342
- Display TASKs command, 345
- Display THReshld command, 347
- Display Volser command, 350
- Display Volume command (SMC), 84
- Display VOLume\_Info command, 352
- Display VSCRatch command, 353
- Display VTD command, 355
- Display VTSS command, 358
- Display VTV command, 364
- DRAin command, 368
- DRCHKPT command, 369
- DRIVemap command, 85
- DRMONitr command, 370
- DRTEST CREATE command, 375
- DRTEST PRIMEprd command, 380
- DRTEST RESET, 382
- DRTEST START command, 383
- DRTEST STOP command, 384
- EEXPORT command, 385
- Eject command, 389
- ENter command, 393
- EXECParM command, 395
- EXPORT command, 397
- FMTLOG command, 399
- IDAX command, 92
- IMPORT command, 401
- INITialize command, 405
- INVENTORY command, 408
- LIBGen, 412
- List command (SMC), 95
- LMUPATH control statement, 417
- LMUPDEF command, 415
- LOG command, 98
- LOGUTIL command, 420
- LOGUTIL FOR\_LOSTMVC statement, 422
- LOGUTIL GENAUDIT statement, 424
- LOGUTIL LOCATE\_VTV statement, 425
- LOGUTIL UNDELETE statement, 427
- MERGEcds command, 428
- MERGMST command, 434
- METAdata command (HSC/VTCS), 436
- METAdata command (SMC), 101
- MGMTDEF command, 438
- MIGrate command (format 1), 470
- MIGrate command (format 2), 472
- MIGRSEL control statement, 451
- MNTD command, 473
- MODify command, 480

- MONitor command, 103
- Mount command, 484
- MOUNTDef command, 107
- MOVE command, 488
- MSGDef command, 111
- MSGJob command, 114
- MVCDRain command, 491
- MVCMAINT command, 494
- MVCPLRPT command, 500
- MVCRPt command, 507
- OFFload LOGFILE command, 517
- OPTion command, 521
- OPTION TITLE control statement, 519
- PITCOPY command, 526
- POLicy command, 119
- POOLPARM control statement, 586
- READ command, 127
- RECall command, 528
- RECLaim command, 530
- RECOVer command, 540
- RELease command, 541
- REPLaceall command, 542
- REStore command, 543
- RESYNChronize command, 130
- Route command, 131
- SCRAtch command, 545
- SEnter command, 550
- SERVer command, 134
- SET CLNPRFX command, 552
- SET COMPRFX command, 554
- SET DRVHOST command, 556
- SET EJCTPAS command, 557
- SET FREEZE command, 558
- SET HOSTID command, 560
- SET LOGFILE command, 562
- SET MAJNAME command, 564
- SET MIGOPT command, 565
- SET NEWHOST command, 567
- SET RMM command, 568
- SET SCRLABL command, 569
- SET SLIDRIVS command, 570
- SET SLISTATN command, 575
- SET SMF command, 577
- SET TAPEPlex command, 578
- SET TCHNIQE command, 579
- SET VAULT command, 581
- SET VAULTVOL command, 583
- SET VOLPARM command, 584
- SIMulate command, 139
- SMSDef command, 143
- SRVlev command, 594
- STOPMN command, 595
- STORclas control statement, 458
- STORLST control statement, 462
- STORSEL control statement, 463
- SWitch command, 597
- TAPEPlex command, 149

- TAPEREQ control statement, 164
- TCPip command, 152
- TRace command, 156, 599
- TRACELKP command, 601
- TREQDef command, 160
- UEXIT command, 604
- UEXit command, 171
- UNITAttr command, 174
- UNSCratch command, 606
- UNSElect command, 607
- USERMsg command, 176
- Vary command, 610
- Vlew command, 614
- VOLPARM control statement, 592
- VOLPCONV command, 619
- VOLRpt command, 622
- VTSSLST control statement, 465
- VTSSSEL control statement, 467
- VTVMaint command, 629
- VTVRPt BASIC command, 635
- VTVRPt COPIES command, 639
- VVAUDIT command, 642
- Warn command, 643

## T

- Tape Management Extract Utility (SMCUDBX), 668
- TAPEPlex command
  - description, 148
  - parameters, 150
  - syntax, 149
- TAPEREQ control statement
  - description, 163
  - parameters, 165
  - syntax, 164
- TCPip command
  - description, 152
  - parameters, 153
  - syntax, 152
- TMS interface (SLUDR\*) routines, 735
- TRace command
  - additional JCL requirements, 601
  - description, 155, 599
  - parameters, 157, 600
  - syntax, 156, 599
- Trace Format Utility (SMCUGTF), 682
- TRACELKP command
  - description, 601
  - overview, 601
  - parameters, 601
  - syntax, 601
- tracing LOOKUP events, 601
- TREQDef command
  - description, 160
  - parameters, 161
  - syntax, 160

## U

- UEXIT command
  - description, 603
  - parameters, 604
  - syntax, 604
- UEXit command
  - description, 170
  - parameters, 171
  - syntax, 171
- Unified User Interface Utility (SMCUUUI), 649
- UNITAttr command
  - description, 173
  - parameters, 174
  - syntax, 174
- UNSCratch command
  - description, 606
  - parameters, 606
  - syntax, 606
- UNSElect command
  - description, 607
  - parameters, 608
  - syntax, 607
- USERMsg command
  - description, 176
  - parameters, 176
  - syntax, 176
- utilities
  - HSC
    - Scratch Conversion Utility (SLUCONDB), 700
    - SLICREAT, 695
    - SLUADMIN, 58, 684
  - SMC
    - JES3 Configuration Report Utility (SMCUPJS), 658
    - POLicy and TAPEREQ Batch Test Utility (SMCUTRQ), 663
    - Tape Management Extract Utility (SMCUDBX), 668
    - Trace Format Utility (SMCUGTF), 682
    - Unified User Interface Utility (SMCUUUI), 649
    - UI Simulation Utility (SMCUSIM), 675
  - VTCS
    - RTV Utility, 709
- utility return codes and messages, SMC, 648
- UI Simulation Utility (SMCUSIM), 675

## V

- Vary command
  - description, 609
  - parameters, 610
  - syntax, 610
- Vlew command
  - description, 614
  - parameters, 615
  - syntax, 614

- VOLPARM control statement
  - description, 592
  - parameters, 593
  - syntax, 592
- VOLPCONV command
  - additional JCL requirements, 620
  - description, 619
  - parameters, 619
  - syntax, 619
- VOLRpt command
  - additional JCL requirements, 628
  - description, 621
  - parameters, 623
  - syntax, 622
- VTAM communications, 215
- VTCS
  - control statements, 177
  - operator commands, 177
- VTSSLST control statement
  - description, 465
  - parameters, 465
  - syntax, 465
- VTSSSEL control statement
  - description, 467
  - parameters, 468
  - syntax, 467
- VTVMaint command
  - description, 629
  - parameters, 630
  - report, 633
  - return codes, 632
  - syntax, 629
- VTVRpt command
  - description, 634
  - BASIC
    - description, 635
    - parameters, 635
    - report, 636
    - syntax, 635
  - COPIES
    - description, 639
    - parameters, 639
    - report, 640
    - syntax, 639
- VVAUDIT command
  - description, 642
  - parameters, 642
  - syntax, 642

## W

- Warn command
  - description, 643
  - parameters, 644
  - syntax, 643